Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health
Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health
DISEASE CONTROL PRIORITIES • THIRD EDITION

Series Editors
Dean T. Jamison
Rachel Nugent
Hellen Gelband
Susan Horton
Prabhat Jha
Ramanan Laxminarayan
Charles N. Mock

Volumes in the Series
Essential Surgery
Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health
Cancer
Mental, Neurological, and Substance Use Disorders
Cardiovascular, Respiratory, and Related Disorders
HIV/AIDS, STIs, Tuberculosis, and Malaria
Injury Prevention and Environmental Health
Child and Adolescent Development
Disease Control Priorities: Improving Health and Reducing Poverty
DISEASE CONTROL PRIORITIES

Budgets constrain choices. Policy analysis helps decision makers achieve the greatest value from limited available resources. In 1993, the World Bank published Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries (DCP1), an attempt to systematically assess the cost-effectiveness (value for money) of interventions that would address the major sources of disease burden in low- and middle-income countries. The World Bank’s 1993 World Development Report on health drew heavily on DCP1’s findings to conclude that specific interventions against noncommunicable diseases were cost-effective, even in environments in which substantial burdens of infection and undernutrition persisted.

DCP2, published in 2006, updated and extended DCP1 in several aspects, including explicit consideration of the implications for health systems of expanded intervention coverage. One way that health systems expand intervention coverage is through selected platforms that deliver interventions that require similar logistics but deliver interventions from different packages of conceptually related interventions, for example, against cardiovascular disease. Platforms often provide a more natural unit for investment than do individual interventions. Analysis of the costs of packages and platforms—and of the health improvements they can generate in given epidemiological environments—can help to guide health system investments and development.

DCP3 differs importantly from DCP1 and DCP2 by extending and consolidating the concepts of platforms and packages and by offering explicit consideration of the financial risk protection objective of health systems. In populations lacking access to health insurance or prepaid care, medical expenses that are high relative to income can be impoverishing. Where incomes are low, seemingly inexpensive medical procedures can have catastrophic financial effects. DCP3 offers an approach to explicitly include financial protection as well as the distribution across income groups of financial and health outcomes resulting from policies (for example, public finance) to increase intervention uptake. The task in all of the DCP volumes has been to combine the available science about interventions implemented in very specific locales and under very specific conditions with informed judgment to reach reasonable conclusions about the impact of intervention mixes in diverse environments. DCP3’s broad aim is to delineate essential intervention packages and their related delivery platforms to assist decision makers in allocating often tightly constrained budgets so that health system objectives are maximally achieved.

DCP3’s nine volumes are being published in 2015 and 2016 in an environment in which serious discussion continues about quantifying the Sustainable Development Goal (SDG) for health. DCP3’s analyses are well-placed to assist in choosing the means to attain the health SDG and assessing the related costs. Only when these volumes, and the analytic efforts on which they are based, are completed will we be able to explore SDG-related and other broad policy conclusions and generalizations. The final DCP3 volume will report those conclusions. Each individual volume will provide valuable, specific policy analyses on the full range of interventions, packages, and policies relevant to its health topic.

More than 500 individuals and multiple institutions have contributed to DCP3. We convey our acknowledgments elsewhere in this volume. Here we express our particular gratitude to
the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation for its sustained financial support, to the InterAcademy
Medical Panel (and its U.S. affiliate, the Institute of Medicine of the National Academy of
Medicine), and to the External and Corporate Relations Publishing and Knowledge division
of the World Bank. Each played a critical role in this effort.

Dean T. Jamison
Rachel Nugent
Hellen Gelband
Susan Horton
Prabhat Jha
Ramanan Laxminarayan
Charles N. Mock
Contents

Foreword xi
Preface xiii
Abbreviations xv

1. Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health: Key Messages of This Volume 1
   Robert E. Black, Neff Walker, Ramanan Laxminarayan, and Marleen Temmerman

PART 1  REPRODUCTIVE, MATERNAL, AND CHILD MORTALITY AND MORBIDITY AND THE UNMET NEED FOR FAMILY PLANNING

2. Burden of Reproductive Ill Health 25
   Alex Ezeh, Akinrinola Bankole, John Cleland, Claudia Garcia-Moreno, Marleen Temmerman, and Abdhalah Kasiira Ziraba

3. Levels and Causes of Maternal Mortality and Morbidity 51
   Véronique Filippi, Doris Chou, Carine Ronsmans, Wendy Graham, and Lale Say

4. Levels and Causes of Mortality under Age Five Years 71
   Li Liu, Kenneth Hill, Shefali Oza, Dan Hogan, Yue Chu, Simon Cousens, Colin Mathers, Cynthia Stanton, Joy Lawn, and Robert E. Black

5. Levels and Trends in Low Height-for-Age 85
   Gretchen A. Stevens, Mariel M. Finucane, and Christopher J. Paciorek

PART 2  INTERVENTIONS TO IMPROVE REPRODUCTIVE HEALTH AND REDUCE MATERNAL AND CHILDHOOD MORBIDITY AND MORTALITY

6. Interventions to Improve Reproductive Health 95
   John Stover, Karen Hardee, Bella Ganatra, Claudia García Moreno, and Susan Horton

7. Interventions to Reduce Maternal and Newborn Morbidity and Mortality 115
   A. Metin Gálmezoglou, Theresa A. Lawrie, Natasha Hezelgrave, Olufemi T. Oladapo, João Paulo Sousa, Marijke Gielin, Joy E. Lawn, Rajiv Bahl, Fernando Alhabe, Daniela Colaci, and G. Justus Hofmeyr

8. Diagnosis and Treatment of the Febrile Child 137
   Julie M. Herlihy, Valérie D’Acremont, Deborah C. Hay Burgess, and Davidson H. Hamer
Foreword

When I became the Deputy Director of the Child Survival Partnership in 2004, I knew the task at hand was a challenging one. We were only four years into the Millennium Development Goals (MDGs), but we already knew that moving the needle on maternal and child survival would take more headway and greater advances. Since then, and particularly since 2010, we have accelerated progress in an unprecedented manner, mobilized actors and partners, and improved our way of working.

We have undergone an extraordinary transformation, halving maternal and child mortality under the MDGs. As we transition to the Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs), we are in a much better position to achieve the global and equitable progress we seek for all people. Goal 3 of the 17 SDGs is “to ensure healthy lives and promote well-being for all at all ages.” This broad goal embraces the unfinished agenda of the MDGs and goes beyond—to virtually end preventable maternal, newborn, and child deaths and to improve access to sexual and reproductive health, as well as access to medicines and vaccines. By moving toward this goal, we are working to protect the future and well-being of those closest to us: our mothers, children, and communities.

The 2010–15 Global Strategy for Women’s and Children’s Health brought together hundreds of partners around the Every Woman Every Child movement to jointly achieve the ambitious goals for maternal and child health. Building on this progress, the United Nations (UN) Secretary-General, in September 2015, launched a follow-up roadmap for 2016–30 at the UN General Assembly, The Global Strategy for Women’s, Children’s, and Adolescents’ Health. The new strategy aligns fully with the SDGs, embracing the vision of a future where we reach the highest attainable standard of health for all women, children, and adolescents. A new funding mechanism, The Global Financing Facility in Support of Every Woman, Every Child, aims to bring together existing and new sources of financing for “smart, scaled, and sustainable financing” to accelerate efforts to end preventable maternal, newborn, and child deaths by 2030.

Strategy, financing, and delivery of services need to be guided by the best available scientific knowledge on the efficacy of interventions and the effectiveness of programs. This volume of the Disease Control Priorities, third edition (DCP3) series, Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health, provides this rigorous knowledge base. Readers now have at their fingertips the most relevant technical information on which interventions, programs, service delivery platforms, and policies can best help all to reach the ambitious Global Goal 3 targets—maternal mortality rates lower than 70 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births, neonatal mortality rates of 9 per 1,000 live births, and stillbirth rates of 9 per 1,000 total births. It is a source of great pride to know that my WHO team, led by Professor Dr. Marleen Temmerman, Director of the Department of Reproductive Health and Research, contributed to this work. My team will continue its efforts to end preventable mortality worldwide and to achieve the three broad goals embraced by the new Global Strategy—survive, thrive, and transform.

We all have a role to play as we put this Global Strategy into practice in every corner of the globe. We need everyone’s continued engagement, support, and commitments. We have the knowledge, the tools, and the will. A transformation by 2030 is within our reach.

Dr. Flavia Bustreo
Assistant Director-General, Family, Women, and Children’s Health, World Health Organization
Preface

Reproductive, maternal, newborn, and child health (RMNCH) encompasses health concerns spanning the life course from adolescent girls to women before and during pregnancy to newborns and older children. In recent years, it has been recognized that appropriately addressing these concerns requires organizing services in a continuum of care that encompasses these stages in the life course. The rationale for the organization of the RMNCH volume is based on the link between interventions at each stage and health effects at that stage and future stages, and consequently the need to deliver integrated, preventive, and therapeutic interventions for mothers and children.

In considering interventions that span the RMNCH continuum, DCP3 has departed from the disease-specific framing of interventions that was followed in previous editions. DCP1, published in 1993, largely focused on individual diseases and conditions with those regarding RMNCH. DCP1 referred to the “unfinished agenda” that included major diseases, such as acute respiratory infection, diarrhea, malaria, and poliomyelitis, as well as malnutrition, HIV/AIDS and sexually transmitted infections, “excess fertility,” and maternal and perinatal health, but it did not include the broader issue of neonatal health. In DCP2, published in 2006, nine of the 73 chapters were on RMNCH, reflecting the broader scope of that edition including a greater emphasis on noncommunicable diseases, health system strengthening, and cross-cutting issues.

The “unfinished agenda” of RMNCH continues to be as important today as it was in 1993. This volume contains 19 chapters that range from descriptions of the current levels and causes of reproductive ill health, maternal and child morbidity and mortality, undernutrition, and compromised child development, to consideration of preventive and therapeutic interventions, as well as cost-effectiveness of these interventions and health system considerations for their implementation. The volume gives particular attention to the efficient and effective use of delivery platforms to provide packages of interventions—a framing that supports country decision-making for universal health care. Despite our objective of covering a broad range of RMNCH topics in this volume, some topics of relevance to women and children were found to fit better in other volumes. These include surgical conditions, cancer, mental and developmental disorders, HIV/AIDS and sexually transmitted infections, malaria, injuries, and adolescent health and development.

RMNCH interventions have received significant attention in low- and middle-income countries and among international donors. The reasons for this include the high burden of disease and the evidence that many efficacious and cost-effective interventions are available to dramatically reduce the burden of ill health. The promulgation of the Millennium Development Goals, with their strong focus on RMNCH concerns, gave further impetus to implementation of the proven interventions. It has been important that review of the evidence for new interventions and program approaches has continued through academic journals such as The Lancet, DCP, and other critical exercises that have identified the needs and opportunities in RMNCH. Substantial success has been achieved with unprecedented declines in maternal and child mortality and fertility; however, problems remain, including large inequities among and within low- and middle-income countries in health services and outcomes.

We intend for this volume to provide an update of the evidence and help to shape what can be implemented
in integrated packages of services for reproductive health, maternal and newborn health, and child health to achieve the new Sustainable Development Goals. In addition, we hope that consideration of delivery of interventions with greatest coverage and equity will prioritize strengthening of the three interlinked platforms: communities, primary health centers, and hospitals. We now have the knowledge and means to fully address the unfinished agenda of RMNCH and must not miss the opportunity and the obligation to act.

We thank the following individuals who provided valuable assistance and comments in the development of this volume: Brianne Adderley, Kristen Danforth, Alex Ergo, Victoria Fan, Mary Fisk, Glenda Gray, Rajat Khosla, Nancy Lammers, Rachel Nugent, Rumit Pancholi, Helen Pitchik, Carlos Rossel, Lale Say, Rachel Upton, Kelsey Walters, and Gavin Yamey. We also thank the RMNCH Authors Group for the preparation of the chapters and the reviewers organized by the National Academy of Medicine (formerly the Institute of Medicine).

Robert E. Black
Ramanan Laxminarayan
Marleen Temmerman
Neff Walker
### Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACT</td>
<td>artemisinin-based combination therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFHS</td>
<td>Adolescent Friendly Health Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANC</td>
<td>antenatal care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARI</td>
<td>acute respiratory infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ART</td>
<td>antiretroviral therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASHA</td>
<td>accredited social health activist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCG</td>
<td>Bacille Calmette-Guérin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BEP</td>
<td>balanced protein energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BES</td>
<td>balanced energy and protein supplementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BF</td>
<td>breastfeeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI</td>
<td>body mass index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBD</td>
<td>community-based distribution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCM</td>
<td>community case management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCT</td>
<td>conditional cash transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEA</td>
<td>cost-effectiveness analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CF</td>
<td>complementary feeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFR</td>
<td>case fatality rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHERG</td>
<td>Child Health Epidemiology Reference Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHV</td>
<td>community health volunteer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHW</td>
<td>community health worker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CI</td>
<td>confidence interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLTS</td>
<td>Community-Led Total Sanitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMAM</td>
<td>community-based management of acute malnutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CQI</td>
<td>continuous quality improvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRS</td>
<td>congenital rubella syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS</td>
<td>cesarean section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSB</td>
<td>corn-soy blend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP</td>
<td>couple-years of protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DALY</td>
<td>disability-adjusted life year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHS</td>
<td>demographic and health survey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPT</td>
<td>diphtheria, pertussis, and tetanus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTP3</td>
<td>third dose of DTP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBF</td>
<td>exclusive breastfeeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECEA</td>
<td>extended cost-effectiveness analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECV</td>
<td>external cephalic version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EED</td>
<td>environmental enteric dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPI</td>
<td>Expanded Program on Immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBF</td>
<td>fortified blended flour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRP</td>
<td>financial risk protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAM</td>
<td>global acute malnutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gavi</td>
<td>Global Alliance for Vaccines and Immunization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBS</td>
<td>Group B streptococcus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDP</td>
<td>gross domestic product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GNI</td>
<td>gross national income</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAZ</td>
<td>height-for-age Z-score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HBNC</td>
<td>home-based neonatal care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEP</td>
<td>health extension program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEW</td>
<td>health extension worker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HiB</td>
<td>Haemophilus influenzae B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HICs</td>
<td>high-income countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV</td>
<td>human immunodeficiency virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HR</td>
<td>hazard ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSV-2</td>
<td>herpes simplex virus-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAP</td>
<td>intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iCCM</td>
<td>Integrated Community Case Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICD</td>
<td>International Classification of Diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICPD</td>
<td>International Conference on Population and Development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDA</td>
<td>iron deficiency anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIV</td>
<td>inactivated influenza vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMCI</td>
<td>Integrated Management of Childhood Illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMNCl</td>
<td>Integrated Management of Neonatal and Childhood Illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPAC</td>
<td>Integrated Management in Pregnancy and Childcare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPT</td>
<td>intermittent preventive treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITN</td>
<td>insecticide-treated bednet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IU</td>
<td>international unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUD</td>
<td>intrauterine device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUGR</td>
<td>intrauterine growth restriction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IYCF</td>
<td>infant and young child feeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JE</td>
<td>Japanese encephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LBW</td>
<td>low birth weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LHWs</td>
<td>Lady Health Workers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LICs</td>
<td>low-income countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LiST</td>
<td>Lives Saved Tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMICs</td>
<td>low- and middle-income countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNS</td>
<td>lipid-based nutrient supplement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LRI</td>
<td>lower respiratory tract infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LYS</td>
<td>life-year saved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAM</td>
<td>moderate acute malnutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD</td>
<td>mean difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDG</td>
<td>Millennium Development Goal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MgSO₄</td>
<td>magnesium sulphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MICs</td>
<td>middle-income countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMR</td>
<td>maternal mortality ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MNP</td>
<td>multiple micronutrient powder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUAC</td>
<td>mid-upper arm circumference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIMS</td>
<td>Nutrition Impact Model Study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMR</td>
<td>newborn mortality rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPV</td>
<td>net present value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OHT</td>
<td>One Health Tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OOP</td>
<td>out-of-pocket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPV</td>
<td>oral polio vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORS</td>
<td>oral rehydration solution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBF</td>
<td>performance-based financing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCV</td>
<td>pneumococcal conjugate vaccination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPH</td>
<td>postpartum hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUFA</td>
<td>polyunsaturated fatty acids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QALY</td>
<td>quality-adjusted life year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCT</td>
<td>randomized controlled trial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDS</td>
<td>respiratory distress syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDT</td>
<td>rapid diagnostic test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMNCH</td>
<td>reproductive, maternal, newborn, and child health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR</td>
<td>relative risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RUF</td>
<td>ready-to-use food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RUSF</td>
<td>ready-to-use supplementary food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RUTF</td>
<td>ready-to-use therapeutic food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAM</td>
<td>severe acute malnutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SFP</td>
<td>supplementary feeding program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SGA</td>
<td>small for gestational age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STI</td>
<td>sexually transmitted infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TFC</td>
<td>therapeutic feeding center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TFR</td>
<td>total fertility rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCTs</td>
<td>unconditional cash transfers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UHC</td>
<td>universal health coverage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UMICs</td>
<td>upper-middle-income countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UN</td>
<td>United Nations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNICEF</td>
<td>United Nations Children’s Fund</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USAID</td>
<td>United States Agency for International Development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPF</td>
<td>universal public finance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLY</td>
<td>value of a life-year saved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WASH</td>
<td>Water, sanitation, and hygiene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHO</td>
<td>World Health Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHZ</td>
<td>weight-for-height z-score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YICSSG</td>
<td>Young Infants Clinical Signs Study Group</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health: Key Messages of This Volume

Robert E. Black, Neff Walker, Ramanan Laxminarayan, and Marleen Temmerman

VOLUME SUMMARY

Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health (RMNCH) covers the health concerns and interventions across the life course involving women before and during pregnancy; newborns, that is, the first 28 days of life; and children to their fifth birthday. The volume identifies 61 essential interventions and because of the timing of their delivery in the life course, groups them into three packages: 18 for reproductive health, 30 for maternal and newborn health, and 13 for child health, although some interventions, such as vaccines for immunization, have multiple components. The volume considers the health system needs for implementing these interventions in health service platforms in communities, in primary health centers, and in hospitals and the cost-effectiveness of interventions for which data are available. This chapter summarizes the volume and considers the potential impact and cost of scaling up proven interventions to reduce maternal, newborn, and child deaths and stillbirths.

• The annual number of global maternal and child deaths has dropped markedly in the past 25 years, yet the rate of reduction in many countries has been too slow to achieve Millennium Development Goals 4 and 5 by 2015.

• Progress could be accelerated by scaling up integrated packages of essential interventions across the continuum of care for RMNCH. These interventions are highly cost-effective and result in benefit-cost ratios of 7–11 to 2035 (net present value in U.S. dollars of benefits to costs).

• Scaling up all interventions in the packages of maternal and newborn health, plus folic acid before pregnancy, and child health from the existing rate of coverage to 90 percent would avert 149,000 maternal deaths; 849,000 stillbirths; 1,498,000 neonatal deaths; and 1,515,000 child deaths, representing the impact in 2015 at current rates of pregnancy, birth, and mortality.

• The reproductive health package is particularly important for providing contraceptive services. Addressing 90 percent of unmet need in 2015 would reduce annual births by almost 28 million, which would consequently prevent 67,000 maternal deaths; 440,000 neonatal deaths; 473,000 child deaths; and 564,000 stillbirths from avoided pregnancies.

• Individual interventions that have the highest impact on deaths are provision of contraception; management of labor and delivery; care of preterm births; treatment of severe infectious diseases, including pneumonia, diarrhea, malaria, and neonatal sepsis; and management of severe acute malnutrition.
INTRODUCTION

Reproductive, maternal, newborn, and child health (RMNCH) has been a priority for both governments and civil society in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs). This priority was affirmed by world leaders in the Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) that called for countries to reduce child mortality by 67 percent and maternal mortality by 75 percent between 1990 and 2015. Although substantial progress on these targets has been made, few countries achieved the needed reductions. The United Nations (UN) Secretary-General’s Global Strategy for Women’s and Children’s Health, launched in 2010 and expanded in 2015 to include adolescents, is an indication of the continued global commitment to the survival and well-being of women and children (Ban 2010). Annual official development assistance for maternal, newborn, and child health has increased from US$2.7 billion in 2003 to US$8.3 billion in 2012, when there was an additional US$4.5 billion for reproductive health (Arregoces and others 2015). A continued focus on RMNCH is needed to address the remaining considerable burden of disease in LMICs from unwanted pregnancies; high maternal, newborn, and child mortality and stillbirths; high rates of undernutrition; frequent communicable and non-communicable diseases; and loss of human capacity. Cost-effective interventions are available and can be implemented at high coverage in LMICs to greatly reduce these problems at an affordable cost.

RMNCH encompasses health problems across the life course from adolescent girls and women before and during pregnancy and delivery, to newborns and children. An important conceptual framework is the continuum-of-care approach in two dimensions. One dimension recognizes the links from mother to child and the need for health services across the stages of the life course. The other is the delivery of integrated preventive and therapeutic health interventions through service platforms ranging from the community to the primary health center and the hospital.

This volume presents the levels and trends of RMNCH indicators, proven interventions for prevention of mortality, costs of these interventions and potential health service delivery platforms, and system innovations. Other volumes in the third edition of Disease Control Priorities also cover topics of importance to women and children that are related to the RMNCH health services packages (box 1.1). These topics include the following:

- Trauma care; obstetric surgery; obstetric fistula; surgery for family planning, abortion, and postabortion care; and surgery for congenital anomalies (Volume 1, Essential Surgery)
- Breast cancer, cervical cancer and precancer, childhood cancer, and cancer pain relief (Volume 3, Cancer)
- Childhood mental and developmental disorders (Volume 4, Mental, Neurological, and Substance Use Disorders)
- Cardiovascular and respiratory disorders (Volume 5, Cardiovascular, Respiratory, and Related Disorders)
- HIV/AIDS and other sexually transmitted infections, tuberculosis, and malaria (Volume 6, HIV/AIDS, STIs, Tuberculosis, and Malaria)
- Road traffic injury and interpersonal violence (Volume 7, Injury Prevention and Environmental Health)
- Child (older than five years) and adolescent development (the subject of the entire Volume 8, Child and Adolescent Development).
Budgets constrain choices. Policy analysis helps decision makers achieve the greatest value from limited available resources. In 1993, the World Bank published *Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries* (DCP1), an attempt to systematically assess the cost-effectiveness (value for money) of interventions that would address the major sources of disease burden in low- and middle-income countries (Jamison and others 1993). The World Bank's 1993 *World Development Report* on health drew heavily on DCP1’s findings to conclude that specific interventions against noncommunicable diseases were cost-effective, even in environments in which substantial burdens of infection and undernutrition persist (World Bank 1993).

DCP2, published in 2006, updated and extended DCP1 in several respects, including explicit consideration of the implications for health systems of expanded intervention coverage (Jamison and others 2006). One way that health systems expand intervention coverage is through selected platforms that deliver interventions that require similar logistics but address heterogeneous health problems. Platforms often provide a more natural unit for investment than do individual interventions, and conventional health economics has offered little understanding of how to make choices across platforms. Analysis of the costs of packages and platforms—and of the health improvements they can generate in given epidemiological environments—can help guide health system investments and development.

The third edition is being completed. DCP3 differs substantively from DCP1 and DCP2 by extending and consolidating the concepts of platforms and packages and by offering explicit consideration of the financial-risk-protection objective of health systems. In populations lacking access to health insurance or prepaid care, medical expenses that are high relative to income can be impoverishing. Where incomes are low, seemingly inexpensive medical procedures can have catastrophic financial consequences. DCP3 offers an approach that explicitly includes financial protection as well as the distribution across income groups of financial and health outcomes resulting from policies (for example, public finance) to increase intervention uptake (Verguet, Laxminarayan, and Jamison 2015). The task in all the volumes has been to combine the available science about interventions implemented in very specific locales and under very specific conditions with informed judgment to reach reasonable conclusions about the impact of intervention mixes in diverse environments. DCP3’s broad aim is to delineate essential intervention packages—such as the essential packages in this volume—and their related delivery platforms. This information will assist decision makers in allocating often tightly constrained budgets so that health system objectives are maximally achieved.

DCP3’s nine volumes are being published in 2015 and 2016 in an environment in which serious discussion continues about quantifying the sustainable development goal (SDG) for health (United Nations 2015). DCP3’s analyses are well placed to assist in choosing the means to attain the health SDG and assessing the related costs. Only when these volumes, and the analytic efforts on which they are based, are completed will we be able to explore SDG-related and other broad policy conclusions and generalizations. The final DCP3 volume will report those conclusions. Each individual volume will provide valuable specific policy analyses on the full range of interventions, packages, and policies relevant to its health topic.

Dean T. Jamison
Rachel Nugent
Hellen Gelband
Susan Horton
Prabhat Jha
Ramanan Laxminarayan
Charles N. Mock
LEVELS AND TRENDS IN RMNCH INDICATORS

Reproductive Health

Poor reproductive health outcomes for women and their children may result from a broad spectrum of morbid conditions and adverse circumstances and risk factors, such as unsafe sex leading to unwanted pregnancies and sexually transmitted infections, as well as violence against women and girls. Because these are sensitive matters and are often related to gender inequality in a cultural and social context, measuring and quantifying the burden of these conditions and risk factors remains a challenge. This DCP3 volume focuses on four conditions and risk factors that have significant impacts on reproductive health: unwanted pregnancies, unsafe abortions, infertility, and violence against women.

In 2015, 12 percent of married or in-union women of reproductive age worldwide want to delay or avoid pregnancy but are not using any method of contraception. For example, women in Sub-Saharan Africa are twice as likely to have an unmet need for family planning compared with the rest of the world (UN 2015). The total fertility rate remains very high in many countries in Sub-Saharan Africa (map 1.1, panel a).

An estimated 74 million unintended pregnancies occurred in LMICs in 2012 (Sedgh, Singh, and Hussain 2014). Some of these ended by unsafe abortion, a major cause of maternal morbidity and mortality (Singh, Sedgh, and Hussain 2010). About 8.5 million women worldwide suffer complications from unsafe abortions annually (Singh, Darroch, and Ashford 2014). Regardless of legal status or policies on abortion, it can be fairly stated that preventing unsafe abortion is critical and that effective programming for reproductive health needs should be uncoupled from laws on the legal status of abortion. The large effects of reducing unwanted pregnancies on maternal, neonatal, and child deaths and stillbirths are estimated in a later section of this chapter.

Another hidden burden of reproductive health is infertility. In 2010, an estimated 48.5 million women were involuntarily childless as a result of male or female infertility, or both. This is especially concerning in LMICs, where infertility can lead to severe stigmatization, economic deprivation and denial of inheritance, divorce, and social isolation (Chachamovich and others 2010; Cui 2010).

As an extreme manifestation of social and gender inequality, violence against women and girls is often a hidden problem, with serious health consequences. Women exposed to intimate partner violence are more likely to have poor pregnancy outcomes; acquire HIV

Map 1.1 Total Fertility, Maternal Mortality Ratios, and Under-Five Mortality Rates by Country, 2015

a. Total Fertility (children per woman) 2010–15

Source: Based on UNPD 2015 (http://esa.un.org/unpd/wpp); map re-created based on WHO 2015.

Map continues next page
(in some regions), syphilis, chlamydia, or gonorrhea; experience depression; or have alcohol abuse disorders (WHO, Department of Reproductive Health and Research, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, and South African Medical Research Council 2013). Studies have found between 3 percent and 31 percent of women report partner violence during pregnancy (Devries and others 2010). Worldwide, 30 percent of women age 15–49 years in a relationship experience physical or sexual violence by their intimate partner at some point in their lives (WHO, Department of Reproductive Health and Research, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, and South African Medical Research Council 2013). Tragically, many women do not seek help following these events.
Maternal Mortality and Morbidity

Globally, the total number of maternal deaths decreased by 43 percent, from 532,000 in 1990 to 303,000 in 2015, and the global maternal mortality ratio declined by 44 percent, from 385 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births in 1990 to 216 in 2015 (Alkema and others 2015). LMICs continue to account for 99 percent (302,000 out of 303,000) of global maternal deaths. The highest risks of maternal death are in countries in South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa (map 1.1, panel b). Thus, while considerable progress has been made, particularly in recent years, the goal of reducing maternal mortality by 75 percent by 2015 was not met.

The risk of maternal death has two components: the risk of getting pregnant, which is a risk related to fertility and its control or lack of control; and the risk of developing a complication and dying while pregnant, in labor, or postpartum. Chapter 3 of this volume, on maternal morbidity and mortality, focuses on the risk during pregnancy, delivery, and postpartum, which is highest at the time of delivery (Filippi and others 2016).

The most important causes of maternal death are obstetric hemorrhage, hypertension, abortion, and sepsis (figure 1.1, panel a). The overall proportion of HIV-related maternal deaths is highest in Sub-Saharan Africa (Say and others 2014). Most maternal deaths do not have well-defined medical causes, and given that many occur in the community rather than health facilities, determining the cause is challenging. Deaths due to abortive outcomes (for example, ectopic pregnancy, induced abortion, and miscarriage), obstructed labor, and indirect causes are of considerable programmatic interest, but are particularly difficult to capture because of poor reporting resulting from lack of knowledge and the sensitive nature of abortion and maternal deaths in facilities. Deaths due to abortion are often not reported to avoid stigma. Despite the availability of proven interventions, the persistence of deaths due to hemorrhage and hypertension are particularly concerning.

The common causes of maternal morbidity in the community vary by region; these causes include anemia, preexisting hypertension or diabetes, depression, and other mental health conditions. Prolonged and obstructed labor is associated with a high burden of morbidity and disability, including that due to obstetric fistula. The true extent of maternal morbidity is not known because of difficulties in definition and measurement. The World Health Organization (WHO) is currently working with partners to develop standard definitions and tools to close this gap.

Perinatal, Neonatal, and Child Mortality

The under-five mortality rate (U5MR), the probability of dying between a live birth and the fifth birthday, is one of the most important measures of the health of a population. Although MDG 4 was not achieved globally, some high-mortality countries in South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa have achieved this target (Afnan-Holmes and others 2015; Amouzou and others 2012). The U5MR remains very high, especially in many countries in Sub-Saharan Africa (map 1.1, panel c).

The U5MR in 2015 is 42.5 per 1,000 live births, a decline from 90.6 per 1,000 live births in 1990 (You and others 2015). The U5MR fell by half or more from 1990 to 2015 in all world regions. The UN estimates that only 24 of 82 low- or lower-middle-income countries achieved the MDG 4 target (You and others 2015). However, it is important to note that compared with historical trends, the reduction of U5MR has accelerated since 2000, when the MDGs were approved (You and others 2015).

The neonatal mortality rate is now widely followed as an important population health measure because a large proportion (45 percent in 2015) of the deaths in children under age five years occurs in the first month of life. In addition, the rate of stillbirths has received more attention with the recognition of the large number of viable fetuses (2.6 million in 2015) who die after 28 weeks of gestation, often at the time of delivery (Blencowe and others 2016).

Of the 5.9 million deaths occurring after a live birth before age five years, pneumonia, diarrhea, and neonatal sepsis or meningitis are the leading infectious causes (figure 1.1, panel b). The leading single cause of child deaths was complications from preterm birth, followed by pneumonia and intrapartum-related complications, formerly known as birth asphyxia. In the next 15 years, with further implementation of proven health interventions, it is anticipated that the infectious causes of death will decline more quickly than noninfectious causes (Liu and others 2014).

The proportion of global live births in Sub-Saharan Africa is projected to increase from 24.9 percent currently to 32.6 percent by 2030 because of the region’s high fertility rate compared with other regions. If the current regional trends in child mortality are continued to 2030, global child deaths will fall to 4.4 million (Liu and others 2014). However, because of both the high number of births and high U5MR, Sub-Saharan Africa’s share of global child deaths is expected to increase from 49.6 percent to 59.8 percent by 2030.
MATERNAL, FETAL, AND CHILD MALNUTRITION AND EARLY CHILD DEVELOPMENT

Malnutrition includes both undernutrition and the growing problem of overweight, both important problems in women and children under age five years. In women of reproductive age (age 20–49 years), a body mass index (BMI) of less than 18.5 kilograms weight/height in meters squared (kg/m²) is defined as undernutrition or excessive thinness, and a BMI of greater than or equal to 25 kg/m² is considered overweight. The prevalence of maternal undernutrition has fallen from almost 20 percent in Asia and Africa to about 10 percent, which is still too high (Black and others 2013). The prevalence of overweight in women has steadily increased during the same period in all world regions, reaching more than or equal to 25 kg/m² is considered overweight. The prevalence of maternal undernutrition has fallen from almost 20 percent in Asia and Africa to about 10 percent, which is still too high (Black and others 2013). The prevalence of overweight in women has steadily increased during the same period in all world regions, reaching more than or equal to 25 kg/m² is considered overweight. The prevalence of maternal undernutrition has fallen from almost 20 percent in Asia and Africa to about 10 percent, which is still too high (Black and others 2013).

Restriction of fetal growth, usually assessed by a low weight for gestational age at birth, is due to poor maternal nutrition and other morbidity, infection, and toxic in-utero exposures (Das and others 2016). Compared to a U.S. birthweight reference, more than a quarter of all live births in LMICs, or 32.4 million babies, were born small-for-gestational age (Black and others 2013). A new international birthweight standard has subsequently been published (Villar and others 2014). Compared with this standard, the estimated global prevalence of small-for-gestational-age births is about one-quarter lower (Kozuki and others 2015). As neonates and infants, these babies have a higher risk of mortality than babies who were appropriate weight for gestational age, and this risk is similar using either the U.S. reference or the new international standard (Kozuki and others 2015). They also have an increased risk of stunted linear growth (Black and others 2013; Christian and others 2013). The risk of mortality with small-for-gestational age birth increases if they are also premature.

Compared with an international growth standard, it was estimated that in 2011 26 percent of children globally had stunted linear growth (height-for-age of less than −2 standard deviations of the growth standard), totaling 165 million children (Black and others 2013). The prevalence of stunting has declined in LMICs since 1990, more in Asia and Latin America than in Africa. Stunting prevalence has declined at similar rates in rural and urban areas but remains higher in rural areas (Stevens, Paciorek, and Finucane 2016). Severe wasting, which was estimated to affect 3 percent, or 19 million, of the world’s children in 2011, requires urgent intervention with therapeutic feeding and treatment of concurrent infections (Lenters, Wazny, and Bhutta 2016). Severe wasting, which was estimated to affect 3 percent, or 19 million, of the world’s children in 2011, requires urgent intervention with therapeutic feeding and treatment of concurrent infections (Lenters, Wazny, and Bhutta 2016). Severe wasting, which was estimated to affect 3 percent, or 19 million, of the world’s children in 2011, requires urgent intervention with therapeutic feeding and treatment of concurrent infections (Lenters, Wazny, and Bhutta 2016). Severe wasting, which was estimated to affect 3 percent, or 19 million, of the world’s children in 2011, requires urgent intervention with therapeutic feeding and treatment of concurrent infections (Lenters, Wazny, and Bhutta 2016). Severe wasting, which was estimated to affect 3 percent, or 19 million, of the world’s children in 2011, requires urgent intervention with therapeutic feeding and treatment of concurrent infections (Lenters, Wazny, and Bhutta 2016).
standard weight for height) has steadily increased since 1990 to 7 percent, an increase of more than 50 percent, affecting 43 million children.

Fetal growth restriction, suboptimal breastfeeding, stunting, wasting, and deficiencies of vitamin A and zinc, usually in combination with infectious diseases, are important underlying causes of neonatal and child deaths. These conditions have been estimated to be the underlying causes of 45 percent of deaths in children under age five years (Black and others 2013).

Grantham-McGregor and International Child Development Committee (2007) estimate that a high proportion of the world’s surviving children do not reach their developmental potential, based on rates of stunting and poverty. This poor development outcome has numerous causes, including antenatal and postnatal nutrition, exposure to violence, brain injuries or infections, and environments with insufficient stimulation (Aboud and Yousafzai 2016). Critical periods for brain development are during fetal growth and in the first two years of life. Micronutrient deficiencies in pregnancy have important consequences, such as compromised mental development with iodine deficiency and neural tube defects with folic acid deficiency (Black and others 2013). Inadequate diets and high rates of infectious diseases in the first two years of life lead to short stature (stunting) and permanent deficits in cognitive and social development. Additional important determinants of development in children are the amount and quality of household psychosocial stimulation (Singla, Kumbakumba, and Aboud 2015) and the effects of maternal illness, including depression (Walker and others 2007).

### INTERVENTIONS TO REDUCE MATERNAL AND CHILD MORBIDITY AND MORTALITY

The RMNCH volume identifies essential interventions, based on their efficacy and appropriateness, to address important health conditions. Tables 1.1–1.3 list these interventions in the least advanced service platform at which their delivery is possible. The three platforms represent services that can be provided by (1) community health workers or health posts; (2) primary health centers; or (3) hospitals, both first-level and referral. The interventions are grouped by the point at which they are needed in the continuum of care. We also consider the nature of their delivery (urgent, continuing care, or routine care), which has important implications for the organization and responsibilities of the health system.

### ESSENTIAL INTERVENTIONS ON STILLBIRTHS AND MATERNAL, NEONATAL, AND CHILD DEaths

In this volume, we define three packages of interventions across the RMNCH continuum with the greatest potential to reduce deaths and disability: reproductive health, maternal and newborn health, and child (age 1–59 months) health.

We report on estimated morbidity and mortality from 75 countries that include more than 95 percent of the world’s maternal and child deaths, the countries that had been monitored in the Countdown to 2015 initiative (Requejo and others 2015). Estimates are derived using the Lives Saved Tool (LiST; box 1.2) by increasing the coverage of each intervention to 90 percent from the current level of coverage in each of these 75 countries (Requejo and others 2015).

The deaths averted by individual interventions in the maternal and newborn health and the child health packages are shown in figure 1.2. The immediate (for 2015) impact on deaths of the individual interventions and their combined effects if implemented together was estimated. For these estimates, the effects of folic acid supplementation in the reproductive health package are considered, and these effects are combined with the maternal and newborn package for presentation.

A separate analysis was undertaken for family planning services in the reproductive health package, in which the provision of contraception is scaled up to cover 90 percent of current unmet need (Walker, Tam, and Friberg 2013). Because this reduces the number of pregnancies, we calculated the number of maternal, neonatal, and child deaths and stillbirths that would be prevented if the rates of mortality in 2015 had applied to these pregnancies and births. Estimates of the effects of other interventions such as human papillomavirus vaccination or targeted health care approaches for adolescents are considered in other volumes (for example, volume 3 Cancer and volume 8 Child and Adolescent Development).

The impact is also considered for interventions provided by each of three platforms for health services (see tables 1.1–1.3). The community platform includes all interventions that can be delivered by a community-based health worker with appropriate training and support or by outreach services, such as child health days, immunizations, vitamin A, and other interventions. For ill children, the integrated community case management (iCCM) approach is assumed to include diagnosis and treatment of pneumonia, diarrhea, and malaria cases without danger signs that indicate the need for referral (Hamer and others 2012; Young and others 2012).
The primary health center (PHC) platform is a facility with a doctor or a nurse midwife (or both), nurses and support staff, as well as basic diagnostic and treatment capabilities. The PHC provides facility-based contraceptive services, including long-acting reversible contraceptives (implants, intrauterine devices); surgical sterilization (vasectomy, tubal ligation); care during pregnancy and delivery for uncomplicated pregnancies; provision of medical care for adults and children, such as injectable antibiotics, that cannot be done in the community; and training and supervision of community-based workers. For LiST modeling, the effects of meeting the unmet need for contraceptives are considered to be delivered by the PHC platform. For young infants and children, the Integrated Management of Childhood Illness approach is assumed to be used at the PHC level (Bryce and others 2004). The hospital platform, consisting of both first-level and referral hospitals, includes more advanced services for management of labor and delivery in high-risk women or those with complications, including operative

Box 1.2

Lives Saved Tool

The Lives Saved Tool (LiST) has been continually developing since 2003. The initial version of the software was developed as part of the work for the Child Survival Series in The Lancet in 2003 (Jones and others 2003). The original purpose of the program was to estimate the impact that scaling up community-based interventions would have on under-five mortality (Jones and others 2003). The Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation provided support for the further development and maintenance of the software as part of the work of the Child Health Epidemiology Reference Group (CHERG). At that point, the software was shifted into the free and publicly available Spectrum software package, to take advantage of the demographic capabilities in that software and to provide links to other models for family planning and AIDS (Stover, McKinnon, and Winfrey 2010). Since that time, LiST has expanded its scope to examine the impact of interventions on birth outcomes and stillbirths (Pattinson and others 2011), maternal mortality, and incidence of pneumonia and diarrhea (Bhutta and others 2013), as well as neonatal and child mortality.

LiST has been characterized as a linear, mathematical model that is deterministic (Garnett and others 2011). It describes fixed relationships between inputs and outputs that will produce the same outputs each time one runs the model. The primary inputs in LiST are coverage of interventions with the condition that the quality of that intervention is sufficient to be effective, what is commonly referred to as effective coverage. The outputs are changes in population-level risk factors (such as wasting or stunting rates, birth outcomes such as prematurity, or size at birth) and cause-specific mortality (neonatal, child mortality for those age 1–59 months, maternal mortality, and stillbirths). The relationship between an input (change in intervention coverage) and one or more outputs is specified as a measure of the effectiveness of the intervention in reducing the probability of that outcome. The outcome can be cause-specific mortality or a risk factor. The overarching assumption in LiST is that mortality rates and cause-of-death structure will not change except in response to changes in coverage of interventions.

The roughly 70 separate interventions within LiST (see tables 1.1–1.3) target stillbirths, neonatal mortality, mortality in children age 1–59 months, maternal mortality, or risk factors such as stunting and wasting, within the model. In LiST, interventions can be linked to multiple outcomes, with some interventions linked to multiple causes of death and risk factors. LiST allows the impact of scaling up coverage of multiple interventions to be examined simultaneously.

CHERG, along with its institutional sponsors, the WHO and UNICEF, developed rules of evidence to decide what interventions should be included in the model as well as how to develop the estimates of effectiveness (Walker and others 2010). The assumptions used within LiST are drawn from various sources, but most of the evidence about effectiveness of interventions is presented in three journal supplements (Fox and others 2011; Sachdev, Hall, and Walker 2010; Walker 2013). The set of assumptions and their sources can be found at the LiST website (http://www.livessavedtool.org).
delivery, full supportive care for preterm newborns, and children with severe infection or severe acute malnutrition with infection.

The reproductive health package, other than provision of contraceptive services, consists primarily of educational interventions that are not expected to have a direct impact on deaths, but are important to encourage behaviors to prevent infections, ensure proper nutrition of girls before pregnancy, or to seek care for antenatal or delivery services at other levels. The effects of these practices or treatments are included in LiST and are assigned to the level at which the practice or treatment occurs.

Some deaths are averted through provision of folic acid before conception and in early pregnancy, reducing both stillbirths and neonatal deaths by preventing fetal neural tube defects, resulting in a reduction of stillbirths of 26,000 and neonatal deaths of 48,000 at the current rates of fertility. These deaths are included in the maternal and newborn package for presentation in this chapter.

The largest effect of the reproductive health package is from the contraceptive services that prevent unintended pregnancies. It is estimated that if 90 percent of current unmet need for contraceptives had been met, 28 million births would have been prevented in 2015. This level of...
### Table 1.1 Essential Interventions for Reproductive Health

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information and education</th>
<th>Delivery platforma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Community workers or health post</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Sexuality education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Nutritional education and food supplementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Promotion of care-seeking for antenatal care and delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Prevention of sexual and reproductive tract infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. Prevention of female genital mutilation (may be for daughters of women of reproductive age)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service delivery</td>
<td>8. Folic acid supplementationb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9. Immunization (human papillomavirus, hepatitis B)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Notes:
- Red type denotes urgent care, blue type denotes continuing care, and black type denotes routine care. In this table, the community worker or health post consists of a trained and supported health worker based in or near communities working from home or a fixed health post. A primary health center is a health facility staffed by a physician or clinical officer and often a midwife to provide basic medical care, minor surgery, family planning and pregnancy services, and safe childbirth for uncomplicated deliveries. First-level and referral hospitals provide full supportive care for complicated neonatal and medical conditions, deliveries, and surgeries.
- HIV = human immunodeficiency virus.
- a. All interventions listed for lower-level platforms can be provided at higher levels. Similarly, each facility level represents a spectrum and diversity of capabilities. The column in which an intervention is listed is the lowest level of the health system in which it would usually be provided.
- b. The intervention effect was included in the Lives Saved Tool (LiST).

### Table 1.2 Essential Interventions for Maternal and Newborn Health

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pregnancy</th>
<th>Delivery platforma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Community worker or health post</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Preparation for safe birth and newborn care; emergency planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Micronutrient supplementationb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Nutrition educationb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table continues next page
### Table 1.2 Essential Interventions for Maternal and Newborn Health (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Community worker or health post</th>
<th>Delivery platform*</th>
<th>First-level and referral hospitals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4. IPTp&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Food supplementation&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Education on family planning</td>
<td>1. Management of unwanted pregnancy&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Promotion of HIV testing</td>
<td>2. Screening and treatment for HIV and syphilis&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Management of miscarriage or incomplete abortion and postabortion care&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Antibiotics for pPRoM&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. Management of chronic medical conditions (hypertension, diabetes mellitus, and others)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6. Tetanus toxoid&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7. Screening for complications of pregnancy&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8. Initiate antenatal steroids as long as clinical criteria and standards are met&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1. Antenatal steroids&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9. Initiate magnesium sulfate (loading dose)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2. Magnesium sulfate&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10. Detection of sepsis&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3. Treatment of sepsis&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11. Management of labor and delivery in low-risk women by skilled attendant&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>4. Induction of labor postterm&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12. Kangaroo mother care&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>5. Ectopic pregnancy case management&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13. Neonatal resuscitation&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>6. Detection and management of fetal growth restriction&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14. Jaundice management&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Delivery (woman)**

| 8. Management of labor and delivery in low-risk women by skilled attendant<sup>b</sup> | 11. Management of labor and delivery in low-risk women (BEmNOC) including initial treatment of obstetric and delivery complications prior to transfer<sup>b</sup> | 7. Management of labor and delivery in high-risk women, including operative delivery (CEmNOC)<sup>b</sup> |

**Postpartum (woman)**

| 9. Promotion of breastfeeding<sup>b</sup> |                                   |                                   |

**Postnatal (newborn)**

| 10. Thermal care for preterm newborns<sup>b</sup> | 12. Kangaroo mother care<sup>b</sup> | 8. Full supportive care for preterm newborns<sup>b</sup> |
| 11. Neonatal resuscitation<sup>b</sup> |                                   |                                   |
| 12. Oral antibiotics for pneumonia<sup>b</sup> | 13. Injectable and oral antibiotics for sepsis, pneumonia, and meningitis<sup>b</sup> | 9. Treatment of newborn complications, meningitis, and other very serious infections<sup>b</sup> |
| 14. Jaundice management<sup>b</sup> |                                   |                                   |

**Note:** Red type denotes urgent care, blue type denotes continuing care, black type denotes routine care. In this table, the community worker or health post consists of a trained and supported health worker based in or near communities working from home or a fixed health post. A primary health center is a health facility staffed by a physician or clinical officer and often a midwife to provide basic medical care, minor surgery, family planning and pregnancy services, and safe childbirth for uncomplicated deliveries. First-level and referral hospitals provide full supportive care for complicated neonatal and medical conditions, deliveries, and surgeries. BEmNOC = basic emergency newborn and obstetric care; CEmNOC = comprehensive emergency newborn and obstetric care; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IPTp = intermittent preventive treatment in pregnancy; pPRoM = preterm premature rupture of membranes.

<sup>a</sup> All interventions listed for lower-level platforms can be provided at higher levels. Similarly, each facility level represents a spectrum and diversity of capabilities. The column in which an intervention is listed is the lowest level of the health system in which it would usually be provided.

<sup>b</sup> The intervention effect was included in the Lives Saved Tool (LiST).
contraception, in turn, would reduce maternal deaths by 67,000, neonatal deaths by 440,000, child deaths by 473,000, and stillbirths by 564,000. Because about half of unwanted pregnancies are ended in abortion, preventing these pregnancies would also reduce millions of abortions, more than half of which would have been unsafe (Singh and others 2009). In addition, delayed age of first pregnancy and avoidance of short interpregnancy intervals would reduce adverse birth outcomes such as preterm delivery. It is important to note that these potential deaths averted by preventing unplanned pregnancies cannot be added to the potential lives saved by the maternal and newborn and child health packages (plus folic acid supplementation), which are estimated at the current rates of fertility and mortality.

The maternal and newborn package provides many interventions resulting in large effects on all of the mortality outcomes in the current year (figure 1.3). We estimate that 2,574,000 deaths would be averted, including 149,000 maternal deaths, 849,000 stillbirths, 1,498,000 neonatal deaths, and 78,000 child deaths (figure 1.2). For stillbirths, 19 percent could be averted with the community platform, 46 percent with the PHC platform, and an additional 35 percent in hospitals. For maternal deaths, 13 percent could be averted with the community platform, 71 percent with the PHC platform, and the remaining 16 percent with hospital care. For neonatal deaths, the relative effects on level of services are different from maternal deaths, with a possible 48 percent of newborn deaths averted with the community platform, an additional 12 percent with the PHC platform, and a further 40 percent with hospital care. The interventions with the largest effects are labor and delivery management, care of preterm births, and treatment of neonatal sepsis and pneumonia (figure 1.2).

The child health package includes essential interventions across all three service platforms and together these could avert 1,437,000 child deaths. The largest impact (93 percent of avertable child deaths) can be realized by interventions in the community platform (figure 1.3), especially through immunizations and treatment of infectious diseases (figure 1.2). The PHC platform

### Table 1.3 Essential Interventions for Child Health

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Community worker or health post</th>
<th>Primary health center</th>
<th>First-level and referral hospitals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Promote breastfeeding and complementary feeding&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1. Antiretroviral therapy for HIV-positive children&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1. Treat severe acute malnutrition associated with serious infection&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Provide vitamin A, zinc, and food supplementation&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2. Treat severe acute malnutrition&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2. Detect and treat serious infections with danger signs (IMCI)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Immunizations&lt;sup&gt;b,c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3. Detect and treat serious infections with danger signs (IMCI)&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3. Detect and treat serious infections with full supportive care&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Education on safe disposal of children’s stools and handwashing&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>5. Education on safe disposal of children’s stools and handwashing&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>5. Education on safe disposal of children’s stools and handwashing&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Distribute and promote use of ITNs or IRS&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>6. Distribute and promote use of ITNs or IRS&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>6. Distribute and promote use of ITNs or IRS&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Detect and refer severe acute malnutrition&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>7. Detect and refer severe acute malnutrition&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>7. Detect and refer severe acute malnutrition&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Detect and treat serious infections without danger signs (iCCM&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;); refer if danger signs&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>8. Detect and treat serious infections without danger signs (iCCM&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;); refer if danger signs&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>8. Detect and treat serious infections without danger signs (iCCM&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;); refer if danger signs&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Red type denotes urgent care, blue type denotes continuing care, black type denotes routine care. In this table, the community worker or health post consists of a trained and supported health worker based in or near communities working from home or a fixed health post. A primary health center is a health facility staffed by a physician or clinical officer and often a midwife to provide basic medical care, minor surgery, family planning and pregnancy services, and safe childbirth for uncomplicated deliveries. First-level and referral hospitals provide full supportive care for complicated neonatal and medical conditions, deliveries, and surgeries. HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; iCCM = integrated community case management; IMCI = integrated management of childhood illness; IRS = indoor residual spraying; ITN = insecticide-treated net.

<sup>a</sup> All interventions listed for lower-level platforms can be provided at higher levels. Similarly, each facility level represents a spectrum and diversity of capabilities. The column in which an intervention is listed is the lowest level of the health system in which it would usually be provided.

<sup>b</sup> The intervention effect was included in the Lives Saved Tool (LiST).

<sup>c</sup> Immunizations included in the standard package are those for diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus, polio, bacillus Calmette-Guerin, measles, hepatitis B, Haemophilus influenzae type b, pneumococcus, rotavirus.

<sup>d</sup> Components of iCCM are treatments for diarrhea, pneumonia, and malaria; and of IMCI are treatments of diarrhea, pneumonia, malaria, AIDS (acquired immune deficiency syndrome), other infections, and severe acute malnutrition.
results in additional effects on child deaths primarily through treatment of severe infectious diseases and of severe acute malnutrition (SAM). SAM can be managed on an outpatient basis with therapeutic feeding but is placed in the PHC platform because of the need for initial assessment and stabilization. The hospital platform averts some additional deaths with full supportive care for very severe infectious diseases and malnutrition.

Scaling up all interventions in the maternal and newborn health and child health packages in 2015 would avert 149,000 maternal deaths, 849,000 stillbirths, 1,498,000 neonatal deaths, and 1,515,000 child deaths, a total of 4,011,000 deaths averted. Then, interventions would result in a reduction in about half of the estimated global 303,000 maternal deaths in 2015 and also about half of the 5,900,000 global newborn and child deaths (Alkema and others 2015; You and others 2015). However, they would result in a reduction of only about one-third of the 2,600,000 stillbirths (Blencowe and others, forthcoming). Well-functioning community and PHC platforms could avert 77 percent of maternal, newborn, and child deaths and stillbirths that are preventable by these essential interventions, with hospitals contributing the remaining averted deaths through more advanced management of complicated pregnancies and deliveries and newborn and child conditions.

An additional consideration for the organization of health services is whether the interventions can be provided as scheduled routine care (shown in black in tables 1.1–1.3); provided as continuing care such as for chronic conditions (shown in blue in tables 1.1–1.3); or if the service has to be available at all times and offered as urgent care (shown in red in tables 1.1–1.3). Because of the unpredictable nature of most life-threatening conditions in maternal, newborn, and child health, such as complications of labor and delivery or acute illnesses, most of the essential interventions must be available for urgent care at all times of the day.

**COST-EFFECTIVENESS**

Individual RMNCH interventions, summarized in figure 1.4, have been shown to be cost-effective (Horton and Levin 2016). This volume explores the cost-effectiveness of packages of interventions that have not yet been scaled up across LMICs. It also reports on new results from extended cost-effectiveness analyses that look at financial-risk-protection outcomes in addition to the health outcomes that are part of traditional cost-effectiveness analyses.

Expansion of coverage of the traditional Expanded Program on Immunization package of bacillus Calmette-Guerin; diphtheria, pertussis, and tetanus; measles; polio; and hepatitis B vaccines remains highly cost-effective, regardless of delivery modality. Introduction of pneumococcal and rotavirus vaccines at Gavi (the Global Vaccine Alliance) prices can avert deaths at a cost of less
than US$100 per death (Horton and Levin 2016), but these estimates do not include reduced out-of-pocket expenditures, improved financial risk protection for households, or long-term benefits of improved cognition and lifetime productivity (Barnighausen and others 2014). Megiddo and others (2014) find that introduction of a rotavirus vaccine in India was cost-saving and was estimated to avert 34.7 (95 percent uncertainty range [UR], 31.7–37.7) deaths and US$215,569 (95 percent UR, US$207,846–US$223,292) out-of-pocket expenditure per 100,000 children under age five years.

Chapters in this volume have calculated that home-based management of maternal and neonatal care, including interventions to train traditional birth attendants for safer births (Sabin and others 2012), can be cost-effective with lower-end estimates of cost-effectiveness of less than US$1,000 per death averted. Scaling up midwifery services with referral when needed and family planning would cost US$2,200 per death averted (Bartlett and others 2014).

Using extended cost-effectiveness analysis (Verguet and others 2015), it was shown that investing in the provision of universal public finance for pneumonia treatment and for combined treatment with pneumococcal conjugate vaccine provides substantially higher financial risk protection and saves more lives for the poor in Ethiopia than the current situation. Financial risk protection associated with an intervention is measured using the money-metric-equivalent value of insurance, which is simply what an individual would pay as an insurance premium to ensure that they are fully protected against the disease or adverse health condition.

India alone accounts for 28 percent of neonatal deaths globally. In 2011, India introduced a home-based newborn care (HBNC) package to be delivered by community health workers across rural areas of the country. Nandi and others (2015) estimate the disease and economic burdens averted by scaling up the HBNC among households in rural India. Compared with a baseline of no coverage, providing the care package through the existing network of community health workers could avert 48 (95 percent uncertainty range [UR] 34–63) incident cases of severe neonatal morbidity and 5 (95 percent UR 4–7) related deaths, save US$4,411 (95 percent UR US$3,088–US$5,735) in out-of-pocket treatment expenditure, and provide US$285 (95 percent UR US$200–US$371) in insurance value per 1,000 live births.

Figure 1.4 Cost-Effectiveness Ranges of Selected Interventions for Reproductive, Maternal, Neonatal, and Child Health for Cost per Death Averted (2012 U.S. dollars)
births in rural India. Intervention benefits were greater for lower socioeconomic groups.

Investments that increase the supply and demand for RMNCH interventions can have long-lasting effects—for example, the benefits of investments in nutrition can go beyond the immediate improvement in nutritional status by also improving cognitive development, school performance, and future earnings (Victora and others 2008; Walker and others 2007).

The economic and social benefits of a set of integrated RMNCH interventions include health and fertility impacts (Stenberg and others 2014). Some of these benefits are strictly economic, reflected in higher gross domestic product (GDP) from increased workforce participation and higher productivity. Other benefits, denoted as social benefits, are not reflected in conventional GDP measures. For example, the value of a child’s life saved does not depend only on his or her participation in the labor force when an adult. When taking into consideration the full-income approach that goes beyond GDP to also capture these social benefits, including from reducing morbidity and controlling fertility, the benefit-cost ratios indicate high returns on increased investment in RMNCH in most countries, especially when benefits beyond the intervention period are included. For all LMICs considered as a group, the benefit-cost ratio is 8.7 for the intervention period to 2035 at a 3 percent discount rate (Stenberg and others 2014; Stenberg and others 2016).

### COST OF SCALING UP ESSENTIAL INTERVENTIONS FOR REPRODUCTIVE, MATERNAL, NEWBORN, AND CHILD HEALTH

This volume estimates the annual cost of scaling up three service packages for reproductive health (family planning costs only), maternal and newborn health, and child health in 74 of the 75 Countdown countries (Sudan is not included because of lack of data). These countries account for more than 95 percent of the world’s maternal and child deaths. We estimate the annual incremental costs of scaling up the three packages described in table 1.1, based on per capita cost estimates from a global reproductive, maternal, newborn, and child health investment case (Stenberg and others 2014). Using population estimates for 2015 associated with the health impact shown in figure 1.3, the annual incremental cost is US$62 billion in low-income countries, US$124 billion in lower-middle-income countries, and US$79 billion in upper-middle-countries (table 1.4). Considering a longer time horizon of 2013 to 2035, the annual incremental costs of scaling up the three packages increases slightly depending on the country income groups, reflecting a larger target population, consistent with Stenberg and others (2014) and chapter 16 in this volume (Stenberg and others 2016). These estimates include health system strengthening costs, such as program management, infrastructure needs, improved

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Package</th>
<th>Low-income countries</th>
<th>Lower-middle-income countries</th>
<th>Upper-middle-income countries</th>
<th>Total cost per package</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>2035</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>2035</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reproductive health package costs</td>
<td>$562</td>
<td>$603</td>
<td>$520</td>
<td>$560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost per capita</td>
<td>$0.6</td>
<td>$0.5</td>
<td>$0.2</td>
<td>$0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maternal and newborn health package</td>
<td>$1,183</td>
<td>$1,268</td>
<td>$2,922</td>
<td>$3,542</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost per capita</td>
<td>$1.3</td>
<td>$1.0</td>
<td>$1.1</td>
<td>$1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child health package costs</td>
<td>$4,484</td>
<td>$4,810</td>
<td>$8,838</td>
<td>$10,712</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost per capita</td>
<td>$4.8</td>
<td>$3.9</td>
<td>$3.4</td>
<td>$3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total costs</td>
<td>$6,229</td>
<td>$6,681</td>
<td>$12,406</td>
<td>$14,884</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total per capita costs</td>
<td>$6.7</td>
<td>$5.4</td>
<td>$4.7</td>
<td>$4.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Estimates have been inflated to 2012 U.S. dollars using U.S. consumer price index data (World Bank World Development Indicators).

a. Package costs include commodities, front-line health workers, and additional health system strengthening costs for scaling up services.
Governance, and health system information and logistics systems. These costs account for 73 percent of total package costs in low-income countries, 50 percent in lower-middle-income countries, and 41 percent in upper-middle-income countries.

The child health package requires the greatest additional cost to scale up to 2035 with an additional US$22 billion per year. It includes a wide range of commodities and services to prevent and treat childhood illness, including immunization, malaria, and HIV. Scaling up the maternal and newborn package requires an additional US$6.7 billion per year. The reproductive health package is the least costly to scale up and requires an additional US$1.4 billion per year, covering commodities and personnel costs of front-line workers delivering modern family planning methods associated with the greatest reductions in fertility. The estimate does not include the costs of educational interventions in the reproductive health package because these were not available. One reproductive health package service, folic acid, is included in the maternal and newborn health package in this chapter, while human papillomavirus vaccination is included and costed in the package of essential cancer services.

The cost of family planning is low at an average of US$0.20 per capita per year and an annual incremental cost of US$1.4 billion per year. However, because the model only estimates the cost of adding an average 104 million new users for the period, we also estimated the cost of eliminating unmet need for all women who desire to prevent a pregnancy, but do not currently use effective contraceptive methods, by 2035 (Stenberg and others 2014). In this scenario, 208 million additional users are reached during this period at a total cost of US$2.9 billion or US$14.0 per additional user (US$15.8 per additional user for low-, US$10.0 for lower-middle-, and US$24.4 for upper-middle-income countries) (table 1.5).

For comparison, a recent study by the Guttmacher Institute (Singh, Darroch, and Ashford 2014) estimates that meeting all women’s needs for modern contraceptives will cost US$5.3 billion per year more than current spending. Although the services included are very similar to those included in our reproductive health package, the Guttmacher estimate covers all LMICs rather than the 74 Countdown countries, includes the costs of improving the quality of care for current family planning users, and includes costs of scaling up services for an estimated 225 million women with unmet need (Singh, Darroch, and Ashford 2014).

In sum, differences between this and our estimate reflect differences in scope (all LMICs compared with only Countdown countries), methods, and underlying assumptions regarding the rate of scaling up and the methods mix of modern family planning among the target population.

Scaling up the three essential packages will require an average additional investment of US$4.7 per person per year in the 74 countries with 95 percent of the global maternal and child mortality burden. It provides rates of return based on economic and social benefit that are up to nine times the investment by 2035 (Stenberg and others 2016). The current (2015) cost of the three packages, inclusive of health system costs, ranges from US$6.70 per capita in low-income settings to US$4.80 and US$3.90 in lower-middle-income and upper-middle-income country settings. These estimates may be higher or lower depending on the country context and current levels of investment and commitment to health system strengthening.

Results from the RMNCH investment case (Stenberg and others 2014) are complemented by new evidence on individual interventions in reproductive, maternal and newborn, and child health interventions also presented in this volume. Although information on empirical costs has grown substantially in the past decade, it remains imperfect and lacks up-to-date data on relatively well-established interventions, such as vitamin A capsule distribution and family planning where modern contraceptive coverage is low in spite of high expressed unmet need. In emerging areas, such as maternal depression and intimate partner violence, few published studies are available. However, the literature does support trends in relative costs across the essential packages and provides a wealth of information especially for child illness and for a variety of platforms. For example, average unit costs (cost per beneficiary) are lower for family planning interventions, antenatal

---

Table 1.5 Average Additional Modern Contraceptive Users, Cost per Additional User, and Incremental Costs over the Period 2013–35 (2012 U.S. dollars)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Low-income countries</th>
<th>Lower-middle-income countries</th>
<th>Upper-middle-income countries</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additional users</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost per additional user</td>
<td>$15.8</td>
<td>$10.0</td>
<td>$24.4</td>
<td>$14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental costs</td>
<td>$1,188</td>
<td>$1,065</td>
<td>$663</td>
<td>$2,916</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health: Key Messages of This Volume 17
care visits, and normal deliveries at home or health centers with trained birth attendants. Costs per beneficiary tend to increase with the complexity of the service (that is, treatment of obstetric or abortion complications, treatment of severe acute child malnutrition, and a range of community-based nutrition interventions). For example, breastfeeding support and prevention of micronutrient deficiencies are inexpensive compared with facility-based treatment of severe acute malnutrition. Within packages, costs are also likely to vary depending on the context and condition—the prevention and treatment of malaria and diarrheal disease are less expensive per child (US$20 to US$100) than treating pneumonia and meningitis, which more often require inpatient admission (US$150 per visit, or US$800 per child treated for pneumonia; US$300 to US$500 for inpatient care treatment of meningitis and pneumonia).

IMPROVING INTERVENTION UPTAKE AND QUALITY

Supply- and demand-side interventions to improve intervention uptake and quality are increasingly used to ensure that essential RMNCH services are delivered with quality and used appropriately.

Supply-Side Interventions

On the supply side, interest has been growing in the use of pay-for-performance, which rewards providers or health care organizations for achieving coverage or quality targets. One study in Rwanda shows a 23 percent increase in facility delivery and larger increases in preventive care visits by young children in facilities enrolled in a payment plan compared with randomly selected controls (Basinga and others 2011).

A study of performance-based financing in Rwanda in which the government implemented an incentive program in several districts to motivate providers to improve the quality of care and increase service output found no significant differences in the use of maternal health services between intervention and control sites (Priedeman Skiles and others 2013). Only facility birth deliveries (p = 0.014) were 10 percentage points higher for the intervention sites compared with controls. Performance-based financing may be useful if targeted at specific services, such as facility deliveries, but only if service use was consistently low. Peabody and others (2014) considered payment-for-performance incentives and child health outcomes in the Philippines using clinical performance vignettes among randomly chosen physicians every six months during a three-year period to assess physicians’ quality indicators. Bonus payments were awarded if qualifying scores were met. Outcomes of interest—including age-adjusted wasting, C-reactive protein, hemoglobin level, parental self-reported health of children, and children under age five years hospitalized for diarrhea or pneumonia—were not improved in intervention sites. Only two indicators improved. Parental self-reported health of children increased by 7 percentage points and wasting declined by 9 percentage points. A Cochrane review suggests that the quality of evidence is too poor to draw general conclusions about the effectiveness of pay for performance and notes that several studies arrive at contradictory results (Witter and others 2012).

Safe childbirth (intrapartum care) checklists have been proposed as a way of reducing newborn deaths, but there are gaps in the evidence base. The WHO childbirth safety checklist was developed to help reduce the major causes of these deaths (hemorrhage, infection, obstructed labor, and others) (Spector and others 2013; Temmerman, Khosla, Bhutta, and Bustreo 2015; Temmerman, Khosla, Laski, and others 2015). Since most deaths associated with childbirth occur within a 24-hour window and the major causes are well described, checklists have promise for improving healthy delivery. Follow-up studies are currently underway that focus directly on health outcomes attributable to the increase in these practices. The quality of RMNCH services can also be improved using supportive supervision for front-line health workers, which is associated with small benefits for provider practice and knowledge (Bosch-Capblanch, Liaqat, and Garner 2011).

Recent efforts have been made in task-shifting—an innovative approach to increase the delivery of RMNCH services by reassigning certain tasks to community workers. Lay community health workers are increasingly being deployed to classify and treat childhood infectious diseases, such as pneumonia, diarrhea, and malaria, and approaches such as iCCM for their management are expanding widely (Young and others 2012). A recent WHO Guidance Panel on Task Shifting suggested that health workers could carry out many tasks related to maternal and newborn health, provided they received adequate training and support (WHO 2012). These personnel include lay workers (for example, for promotion of appropriate care-seeking behavior and antenatal care during pregnancy, administration of misoprostol to prevent postpartum hemorrhage, and promotion and support of breastfeeding), auxiliary nurses (for example, for administration of injectable contraceptives), auxiliary nurse midwives (for example, for neonatal resuscitation
and insertion and removal of intrauterine devices, nurses (for example, for administration of a loading dose of magnesium sulfate to prevent or treat eclampsia), midwives (for example, for vacuum extraction during childbirth), and associate clinicians (for example, for manual removal of the placenta).

**Demand-Side Interventions**

Countries are increasingly relying on demand-side interventions to expand coverage. Brazil’s Bolsa Familia, launched in 2003, transfers payments to families on the condition that beneficiaries obtain health services (such as vaccinations and prenatal care for pregnant women) and that children maintain a minimum daily attendance rate at school. The program was associated with a 9.3 percent ($p < 0.01$) decline in the infant mortality rate and a 24.3 percent ($p < 0.01$) decrease in the postneonatal mortality rate (Shei 2013).

Lagarde, Haines, and Palmer (2009) conducted a systematic review of conditional cash transfers (CCTs) in low- and middle-income countries to see whether CCTs improve access to and use of health care services as well as health outcomes. Of the 11 CCT studies reviewed, 10 find significant positive effects on the outcome variable being examined. Only the Janani Suraksha Yojana program in India had no significant benefit, but its failure to lower the maternal mortality rate likely stems from beneficiaries’ lack of access to quality health care facilities (Lim and others 2010). A 2009 Cochrane review finds that CCTs were associated with higher service use and may be an effective approach to promoting use of frequently undervalued preventive interventions, such as immunization (Lagarde, Haines, and Palmer 2009). Removal of user fees can result in increased use of the targeted RMNCH service, sometimes by a large margin (Lagarde and Palmer 2008; Ponsar and others 2011). Although few rigorous evaluations have been conducted, vouchers have been linked to increases in use of facility delivery and family planning (Bellows and others 2013; Bellows, Bellows, and Warren 2011). A meta-analysis of women’s participatory learning and action groups finds that vouchers could potentially reduce maternal mortality by 37 percent and newborn mortality by 23 percent (Prost and others 2013).

**CONCLUSIONS**

Despite sizable recent reductions in child and maternal deaths, the rate of mortality decline has been too slow to achieve MDGs 4 and 5 globally. Particular regions, especially Sub-Saharan Africa, have high rates of fertility, maternal mortality, and under-five mortality, providing a compelling case for integrated RMNCH interventions. Most deaths from RMNCH conditions could be greatly reduced by scaling up integrated packages of interventions across the continuum of care. Many of these interventions, especially family planning, labor and delivery management, promotion of breastfeeding, immunizations, improved childhood nutrition, and treatment of severe infectious diseases, are among the most cost-effective of all health interventions. Nevertheless, implementation research is still needed to adapt these interventions to the local health service context and achieve the greatest effects. The benefits of scaling up packages extend beyond health to also include substantial economic and social outcomes. Improved access and quality of care around childbirth can generate a quadruple return on investment by saving maternal and newborn lives and preventing stillbirths and disability. Furthermore, these benefits extend beyond survival—for example, investing in early childhood nutrition and stimulation can reduce losses in cognitive development and adult capacity. Strengthening health systems and improving data for decision making are, among others, key strategies to drive improvement, equity, and accountability.

The 2015 UN Global Strategy for Women’s, Children’s, and Adolescents’ Health builds on evidence presented in this volume, as well as the need to focus on critical population groups such as adolescents and those living in fragile and conflict settings; build the resilience of health systems; improve the quality of health services and equity in their coverage; and work with health-enhancing sectors on issues such as women’s empowerment, education, nutrition, water, sanitation, and hygiene (Temmerman, Khosla, Bhutta, and Bustreo 2015). The objectives of universal health coverage, including public health interventions and preventive as well as curative services (Schmidt, Gostin, and Emanuel 2015), and ensuring financial security and health equity are critical if the Sustainable Development Goals are to be achieved. A new vision and commitment to realize good health and human rights for all women, adolescents, and children needs to be articulated.

**ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

The Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation provides financial support for the Disease Control Priorities Network project, of which this volume is a part. Carol Levin provided sections of the chapter on cost-effectiveness and cost of interventions. Doris Chou assisted with sections on reproductive health and maternal morbidity and mortality, and Li Liu on child mortality. The following...

NOTES
World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:
  - Lower-middle-income = US$1,046 to US$4,125
  - Upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126 to US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

1. For the maternal and newborn health package, health service costs are assumed to constitute 19 percent, 23 percent, and 22 percent of the total package for low-, lower-middle, and upper-middle-income groups, respectively. For the child health package, they are 72 percent, 71 percent, and 76 percent of the total for low-, lower-middle, and upper-middle-income groups, respectively.

REFERENCES


Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health


INTRODUCTION

This chapter presents the burden of global reproductive ill health and, where data permit, regional estimates for selected conditions. Ill health refers to morbid conditions such as infections and injury and to nonmorbid measures of reproductive health that directly contribute to adverse reproductive health outcomes, including unwanted pregnancies and violence against women. The chapter is organized into six subsections: unintended pregnancies, unsafe abortions, non-sexually transmitted reproductive tract infections (RTIs), infertility, violence against women, and female genital mutilation (FGM). Unintended pregnancies lead to unintended births and induced abortions. Unintended births often occur among young women who are emotionally and physiologically not mature, which has effects on the health of the mother, the pregnancy, and its outcome. Induced abortions in countries where the practice is illegal are often provided in unsafe environments and by untrained personnel, which contribute to the high maternal death from abortion complications. Sexually transmitted infections (STIs) of the reproductive tract receive attention in programming and research, but little attention is focused on other infections that affect fertility and increase the risk of transmission of other infections. Violence against women violates their rights, including limiting access to and use of prevention and treatment services in addition to physical injury and death. FGM causes bodily disfigurement and may present immediate surgical complications and long-term risk of poor reproductive outcomes, especially during delivery.

Approach to Data Presentation and Limitations

The greatest challenge in undertaking this work is the lack of appropriate data at the global, regional, national, and subnational levels. Even available data are often not adequately disaggregated by important characteristics. Differences in methods and designs adopted by the various studies often limit the comparative value. In many low- and middle-income countries (LMICs), sexual concerns are often not discussed with third parties, which impedes health care seeking. Measuring and quantifying most of these conditions is logistically difficult, and the reliability of responses given by respondents is often poor (Allotey and Reidpath 2002). Because most reproductive conditions are more prevalent during prime ages, missed cases are likely to lead to serious underestimation of the burden of disease as measured by disability-adjusted life years (DALYs) of health lost (AbouZahr and Vaughan 2000).

UNINTENDED PREGNANCIES

Premarital sexual abstinence, prolonged breastfeeding, and abortion all influence fertility; however, contraceptive practice has been the most important driver of
falling fertility and population growth rates in the past half century. Because of its direct link to family sizes and population change, contraception has a wide range of social, economic, and environmental benefits, in addition to its well-documented health advantages for women and children. It enables women to escape the incessant cycle of pregnancies and infant care and represents progress toward gender equality and enhanced opportunities for women. At the national level, a fall in birth rates brings about declines in dependency ratios and increases potential opportunities for economic growth.

Contraception has wider social and economic benefits, but its immediate purpose is to avoid unintended pregnancies. The majority of these pregnancies stem from the non-use of contraceptive methods among women wishing to avoid or postpone childbearing. This section discusses the measurement of unintended pregnancies, both levels and trends, and reasons for and consequences of unintended births.

Measurement

Measurement of unintended pregnancies is complicated because many are terminated, and these terminations are underreported. Because most induced abortions are from unintended pregnancies, the solution is to combine survey data on unintended births with indirect estimates of abortion incidence available for all subregions and many countries.

Demographic and Health Surveys (DHS) are the main source of data on unintended births. The measurement of unintended births or current pregnancies from this source has been approached in three ways:

- Answers to questions on total desired family size
- Prospective questions on whether another child is wanted
- Retrospective questions on each recent birth to ascertain whether the child was wanted, unwanted, or mistimed by two or more years.

In the first approach, births that exceed total desired family size are defined as unwanted; if they are equal to or less than total desired family size, they are considered wanted. This classification can be expressed as unwanted or wanted fertility rates. No account is taken of mistimed births. A more serious problem stems from the likelihood that desired total family sizes are, in part, a rationalization of actual family sizes, with the consequence that unwanted births are likely to be underestimated.

The second approach is straightforward in prospective studies, but its application is severely limited by the lack of studies. This method has been adapted to single and successive cross-sectional surveys to provide aggregate estimates of unwanted fertility (Casterline and El-Zeini 2007). As with the first approach, mistimed births are ignored.

The third approach uses retrospective questions concerning the wantedness and preferred timing of recent births. It has the advantage of incorporating mistimed as well as unwanted births, but estimates are vulnerable to post factum rationalization due to an understandable reluctance of mothers to report children as unwanted or mistimed. Prospective studies in India, Malawi, Morocco, and Pakistan indicate that a large proportion of births to women who reported at baseline a desire to have no more children were subsequently classified by mothers as wanted or mistimed (Baschieri and others 2013; Jain and others 2014; Speizer and others 2013; Westoff and Bankole 1998). Similarly, an appreciable fraction of births that occur as the result of accidental pregnancy while using a contraceptive method or after abandoning a method are reported as wanted. (Ali, Cleland, and Shaw 2012; Curtis, Evens, and Sambisa 2011; Trussell, Vaughan, and Stanford 1999). These inconsistencies are usually interpreted as the consequence of rationalization, but they may reflect a genuine difference between a more abstract preference before childbirth and a more emotional reaction after the event.

The three approaches to measurement yield very different results. No consensus exists on how best to obtain valid estimates of unintended births, even in the United States, where the topic has attracted considerable attention (Campbell and Mosher 2000; Santelli and others 2003). This section presents results based on the retrospective method because studies using this method are the sole source of global and regional estimates, but the results are presented with the caveat that they may be downwardly biased. Another approach that has been tried, but on a limited scale, is the London Measure of Unplanned Pregnancy (Morof and others 2012; Wellings and others 2013).

Prevalence and Incidence

By combining regional estimates on induced abortion and retrospective survey data on mistimed and unwanted births with allowances for miscarriages, Sedgh, Singh, and Hussain (2014) derive global and regional estimates on the incidence of unintended pregnancies and the proportion of all pregnancies that are unintended (table 2.1). Globally, their prevalence data indicate that 40 percent of all pregnancies in 2012 were unintended. The prevalence of unintended pregnancies is higher, and such pregnancies are more likely to be
terminated, in high-income countries (HICs) than in LMICs. However, when expressed as annual rates per 1,000 women of reproductive age, unintended pregnancies are more common in LMICs.

There is little relationship between the prevalence or incidence of unintended pregnancy and the level of contraceptive use or unmet need. The reason for this apparently counterintuitive observation is that exposure to risk of unintended pregnancy increases as desired family size and fertility fall. In societies in which sexual activity starts early and couples want two or fewer children, the risk of an unintended pregnancy spans 20 years or more. The use of effective contraception for so many years is a daunting prospect. In societies in which the preference for larger families remains high, as in much of Sub-Saharan Africa, the risk span is shorter. Despite this upward pressure from increasing exposure to risk, unintended pregnancy rates per 1,000 women of reproductive age fell by an estimated 4.8 percent and 5.3 percent in HICs and LMICs, respectively, between 2008 and 2012 (Sedgh, Singh, and Hussain 2014). There was a 5.6 percent decline in Latin America and the Caribbean.

### Table 2.1 Indicators of Unintended Pregnancies, 2012

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Total number of pregnancies (millions)</th>
<th>Pregnancy rate per 1,000 women ages 15–44 years</th>
<th>Percent of pregnancies that are unintended</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All pregnancies</td>
<td>Intended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worldwide</td>
<td>213.4</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More developed</td>
<td>23.4</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less developed</td>
<td>190.0</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>53.8</td>
<td>224</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eastern</td>
<td>19.4</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>279</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern</td>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western</td>
<td>17.6</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>119.7</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eastern</td>
<td>36.6</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South-Central</td>
<td>56.5</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southeastern</td>
<td>18.8</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>141</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>14.1</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eastern</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin America and the Caribbean</td>
<td>17.8</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caribbean</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central America</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South America</td>
<td>11.4</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North America</td>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oceania</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Sedgh, Singh, and Hussain 2014.

Note: In this table, “more developed” comprises Australia, Europe, Japan, New Zealand, and North America. “Less developed” comprises all others.

a. If mistimed births in North America were limited to those that occurred at least two years before they were wanted, as in Africa, Asia, and Latin America and the Caribbean, the unintended pregnancy rate would be 44 percent and the proportion of pregnancies that were unintended in North America would be 42 percent.
and a 6 percent decline in both Asia and Africa. Intended pregnancy rates in LMICs did not change during the period (85 per 1,000 women of reproductive age).

In Sub-Saharan Africa, the proportion of mistimed births is about twice that of unwanted pregnancy among all unplanned births. In Latin America and the Caribbean, mistimed births are about 37 percent higher than unwanted pregnancy as a percentage of all unplanned births (Sedgh, Singh, and Hussain 2014). An application of the standard DHS measure of unwanted fertility, based on total desired family size, shows that unwanted fertility rates are strongly related to household poverty. Averaged across 41 LMICs, the poorest quintile recorded 1.2 unwanted births, compared with about 0.5 such births among the richest quintile (Gillespie and others 2007).

Reasons for Unintended Pregnancies

Approximately 70 percent of unintended pregnancies in LMICs are the direct result of no use or discontinued use of contraceptives; the balance results from accidental pregnancy while using contraception inconsistently or incorrectly and from method failure (Bradley, Croft, and Rutstein 2011; Singh, Darroch, and Ashford 2014). Accordingly, the reasons for unintended pregnancy should be sought primarily in reasons for non-use of contraceptives. In-depth studies confirm survey evidence that health concerns and low perceived risk of conception are genuine and common reasons for non-use but also suggest that lack of knowledge and social obstacles, including fear of others’ disapproval, are more important barriers than the survey data imply (Sedgh, and Hussain 2014; Westoff 2012).

Consequences

Insufficient data exist to indicate whether unintended pregnancies carried to term are disadvantaged in health or schooling, compared with intended births. Other effects of unintended pregnancies on family health are easier to document. A reduction in the number of unintended pregnancies is the greatest health benefit of contraception. In 2008, contraception prevented an estimated 250,000 maternal deaths, and an additional 30 percent of maternal deaths could be avoided by fulfillment of the unmet need for contraception (Cleland and others 2012). By preventing high-risk pregnancies, especially in women of high parities, and those that would have ended in unsafe abortion, increased contraceptive use has also reduced the maternal mortality ratio—the risk of maternal death per 100,000 live births—by 26 percent in little more than a decade. The reduction in unintended pregnancies represents major savings in the costs of maternal and neonatal health services (Singh and Darroch 2012).

The reduction of mistimed and unwanted births also improves perinatal outcomes and child survival by lengthening interpregnancy intervals. In LMICs, the risk of prematurity and low birth weight doubles when conception occurs within six months of a previous birth; children born within two years of an older sibling are 60 percent more likely to die in infancy than are those born three years or more after their sibling. In early childhood, children who experience the birth of a younger sibling within two years have twice the risk of death than other children. In high-fertility countries, where most children have younger and older siblings, ensuring an interval of at least two years between births would reduce infant mortality by 10 percent and early childhood deaths by 20 percent (Cleland and others 2012; Cohen and others 2012; Hobcraft, McDonald, and Rutstein 1985; Kozuki and Walker 2013; Kozuki and others 2013).

The reduction of teenage pregnancies is an international priority, both because of the excess risk to maternal health of pregnancy and childbirth before age 18 and because it may curtail schooling and blight aspirations. In most Sub-Saharan African countries, more than 25 percent of women become mothers before age 18 years; equally high probabilities of early childbirth are recorded in Bangladesh, India, the Republic of Yemen, and several countries in Latin America and the Caribbean (Dixon-Mueller 2008). However, the primary cause is early marriage, and first births within marriage are unlikely to be considered unintended.

With respect to perinatal and child health and survival, evidence of an adverse effect of large family sizes is weak (Desai 1995). Excess risk of death is restricted to children of birth order seven or higher, and the relationship between birth order and malnutrition is small and irregular in Sub-Saharan Africa (Mahy 2003; Mukuria, Cushing, and Sangha 2005).

Finally, evidence from Matlab, Bangladesh, suggests the long-term benefits of reduced fertility. In the experimental area in which an early decline in fertility occurred, women had better nutritional status, more assets, and higher earnings than in higher fertility areas. Boys’ schooling and girls’ nutrition benefited from low fertility (Canning and Schultz 2012).

UNSAFE ABORTION

The World Health Organization (WHO) defines unsafe abortion as the termination of an unwanted pregnancy, either by persons lacking the necessary skills or in an environment lacking minimal medical standards or both.
Unsafe abortion is a major cause of maternal morbidity and mortality, especially in LMICs. About 7 million women are treated for complications from unsafe abortion procedures annually in LMICs (Singh and Maddow-Zimet 2015). Two studies, using different methodologies, indicate that at least 8 percent of maternal mortality is due to unsafe abortion, and the contribution of abortion may be as high as 18 percent of these deaths (Kassebaum and others 2014; Say and others 2014).

**Measurement**

In countries in which abortion is legally restricted or socially stigmatized, official statistics on abortion are usually nonexistent; those that do exist are typically incomplete and unreliable (Ahman and Shah 2012). Approaches that directly measure unsafe abortion, such as sample surveys and in-depth interviews, are unreliable. Accordingly, efforts to better measure incidence have largely used indirect methods (Ahman and Shah 2012), including surveys of abortion providers, complications statistics, anonymous third-party reports, estimates from experts, and regression equation approaches (Rossier 2003; Singh, Prada, and Juarez 2011).

The WHO’s indirect approach involves using available information on unsafe abortion and associated mortality from hospital records and surveys of abortion providers, women’s abortion-seeking behavior, postabortion care, and laws regarding abortion to obtain country estimates of unsafe abortion rates. The country-level estimates are then aggregated at the regional and global levels to ensure robust estimates that can potentially offset underestimation or error at the level of individual countries (Ahman and Shah 2012; WHO 2011). The WHO has used this methodology to produce global and regional estimates of unsafe abortion for 1990, 1993, 1996, 2000, 2003, and 2008. These estimates are likely to be conservative (Ahman and Shah 2012).

Much of what is known about the magnitude of unsafe abortion at the country level is from indirect methods, particularly the residual method (Johnston and Westoff 2010), and the Abortion Incidence Complications Methodology (AICM) (Singh, Prada, and Juarez 2011). The AICM relies primarily on data from two surveys: a nationally representative survey of health facilities likely to provide postabortion care, and a purposive sample of health professionals knowledgeable about abortion in the country. The methodology yields estimates of the incidence of unsafe abortion and abortion-related morbidity (table 2.3, columns 1 and 3). The rates tend to be higher in Latin America and the Caribbean than in Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa. Although AICM has been an important source of knowledge in countries with restrictive abortion laws, its limitations include high costs, dependence on a number of assumptions, and reliance on the opinions of health professionals (Juarez, Cabigon, and Singh 2010).

**Incidence**

An estimated 21.6 million unsafe abortions, or 14 per 1,000 women ages 15–44 years, were performed in 2008 (WHO 2011). These unsafe procedures constituted nearly 49 percent of all abortions, which totaled 43.8 million, or 28 per 1,000 women ages 15–44 years that year (Sedgh and others 2012). Virtually all of the unsafe abortions (98 percent) occurred in LMICs; the highest rates were found in Latin America and the Caribbean (31 per 1,000), followed by Sub-Saharan Africa (28) and Asia (11). The rate of unsafe abortion in HICs is only one per 1,000 (WHO 2011).

The global incidence has remained virtually unchanged since 1995, at 15 per 1,000 women ages 15–44 years in 1995 and 14 per 1,000 in 2003 and 2008 (table 2.2). In LMICs, unsafe abortion is highest among women ages 20–24 years and 25–29 years, with rates of 30 and 31, respectively, per 1,000 women in these age groups (Ahman and Shah 2012). The rate is lowest among women ages 40–44 years (13 per 1,000), and the rate among adolescent women is moderate (16 per 1,000).

**Consequences**

**Maternal Mortality**

Unsafe abortion involves health, economic, and social sequelae (Singh and others 2006). The WHO estimates that in 2008, 47,000 women died from unsafe abortion, translating to 30 unsafe abortion deaths per 100,000 live births (WHO 2011). Nearly two-thirds of the deaths (29,000) occurred in Sub-Saharan Africa.

Worldwide, the abortion case fatality rate is 220 per 100,000 unsafe abortions. The rate is highest in Sub-Saharan Africa (460 per 100,000); it is 160 in Asia and 80 in Latin America and the Caribbean. This wide variation across regions is not surprising, since the measure is largely a function of the risks associated with prevalent abortion methods and access to emergency care. Accordingly, while the incidence of unsafe abortion is similar for Sub-Saharan Africa and Latin America and the Caribbean, the procedure is less deadly in Latin America and the Caribbean because of widespread use of medical abortion and better access to health care (WHO 2011). In 2015, the estimated number of maternal deaths worldwide was 303,000 (Alkema and others 2015). According to two more recent parallel studies, the proportion of these deaths that is due to unsafe abortion ranges between...
### Table 2.2 Trends in Rates of Unsafe Abortion and the Proportion of All Abortions That Are Unsafe: 1995–2008

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region and subregion</th>
<th>2008 Rate of unsafe abortion*</th>
<th>Percentage of all abortions that are unsafe</th>
<th>2003 Rate of unsafe abortion*</th>
<th>Percentage of all abortions that are unsafe</th>
<th>1995 Rate of unsafe abortion*</th>
<th>Percentage of all abortions that are unsafe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>World</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HICs</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMICs</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin America and the Caribbean</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North America</td>
<td>&lt;0.5</td>
<td>&lt;0.5</td>
<td>&lt;0.5</td>
<td>&lt;0.5</td>
<td>&lt;0.5</td>
<td>&lt;0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oceania</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Sedgh and others 2012.

*Note: HICs = high-income countries; LMICs = low- and middle-income countries.

*Abortions per 1,000 women ages 15–44 years.

### Table 2.3 Incidence of Abortion and Complications from Unsafe Abortion in Low- and Middle-Income Countries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country, date</th>
<th>Annual number of women who had abortions (a)</th>
<th>Abortion rates per 1,000 women (b)</th>
<th>Number of women with complications from unsafe abortion treated in health facilities (c)</th>
<th>Annual rate of complications treated in health facilities per 1,000 women (d)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Africa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burkina Faso, 2008 (a)</td>
<td>87,200</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>22,900</td>
<td>6.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt, Arab Rep. 1996 (b)</td>
<td>324,000</td>
<td>23.0</td>
<td>216,000</td>
<td>15.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethiopia, 2008 (c)</td>
<td>382,450</td>
<td>23.1</td>
<td>52,600</td>
<td>3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenya, 2013 (d)</td>
<td>464,700</td>
<td>48.0</td>
<td>119,900</td>
<td>12.4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malawi, 2009 (e)</td>
<td>67,300</td>
<td>23.0</td>
<td>18,700</td>
<td>6.4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nigeria, 1996 (f)</td>
<td>610,000</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>142,200</td>
<td>6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda, 2009 (g)</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>16,700</td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uganda, 2002 (h)</td>
<td>296,700</td>
<td>54.0</td>
<td>85,000</td>
<td>16.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bangladesh, 2010 (i)</td>
<td>647,000</td>
<td>18.2</td>
<td>231,400</td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pakistan, 2002 (j)</td>
<td>890,000</td>
<td>29.0</td>
<td>197,000</td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippines, 2000 (k)</td>
<td>78,900</td>
<td>27.0</td>
<td>78,150</td>
<td>4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin America and the Caribbean</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil, 1991 (f)</td>
<td>1,444,000</td>
<td>40.8</td>
<td>288,700</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chile, 1990 (f)</td>
<td>160,000</td>
<td>50.0</td>
<td>31,900</td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colombia, 2008 (l)</td>
<td>400,400</td>
<td>39.0</td>
<td>93,300</td>
<td>9.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(table continues next page)
8 percent and 18 percent, excluding late maternal death (Kassebaum and others 2014; Say and others 2014).

Abortion-Related Morbidity
Each year, 7 million women receive treatment for complications from unsafe abortions in the developing world (Singh 2006, 2010; Singh and others 2009). The annual rate of treatment after unsafe abortions is 6.9 per 1,000 women of reproductive age, which means 4.6 million women receive needed treatment in Asia, as do 1.6 million in Sub-Saharan Africa and 757,000 in Latin America and the Caribbean (Singh 2006). The incidence and severity of unsafe abortion complications are closely related to the training of the providers and the abortion methods used. A substantial proportion of the procedures are performed by untrained providers, including by pregnant women. In each country in which the AICM has been applied to estimate abortion incidence, a substantial number of women are admitted annually for treatment of complications resulting from unsafe abortions. These estimates are approximations based on the best guesses of health care providers and professionals, as well as on a number of assumptions. Table 2.3 shows abortion rate and abortion complication rate.

Health complications typically associated with unsafe abortion include hemorrhage; sepsis; peritonitis; RTIs; and trauma to the cervix, vagina, uterus, and abdominal organs (Grimes and others 2006; Henshaw and others 2008). Beginning with an effort sparked by a seminal WHO-led study in 1986, a fairly standard method has been developed and used to measure the nature and severity of unsafe abortion complications based on nationally representative surveys (Benson and Crane 2005; Fetters 2010; Figtalamanca and others 1986).

Table 2.3 Incidence of Abortion and Complications from Unsafe Abortion in Low- and Middle-Income Countries (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country, date</th>
<th>Annual number of women who had abortions (a)</th>
<th>Abortion rates per 1,000 women (b)</th>
<th>Number of women with complications from unsafe abortion treated in health facilities (c)</th>
<th>Annual rate of complications treated in health facilities per 1,000 women (d)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dominican Republic, 1990 (f)</td>
<td>82,000</td>
<td>47.0</td>
<td>16,500</td>
<td>9.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guatemala, 2003 (m)</td>
<td>65,000</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>21,800</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico, 2009 (n)</td>
<td>874,700</td>
<td>33.0</td>
<td>159,000</td>
<td>5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peru, 1989 (f)</td>
<td>271,000</td>
<td>56.1</td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sources: (a) = Sedgh and others 2011; (b) = Henshaw and others 1999; (c) = Singh and others 2010; (d) = African Population and Health Research Center and Ministry of Health Kenya 2013; (e) = Levandowski and others 2013; (f) = Henshaw and others 1999; (g) = Basinga and others 2012; (h) = Singh and others 2005; (i) = Singh and others 2012; (j) = Sathar, Singh, and Fikree 2007; (k) = Juarez and others 2005; (l) = Prada, Biddlecom, and Singh 2011; (m) = Singh, Prada, and Kestler 2006; (n) = Juarez and Singh 2012.

*Figures were not reported in original source; they are derived as d = (c/a)×100.

Table 2.4 Prevalence of Severe Symptoms from Unsafe Abortion in Low- and Middle-Income Countries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country, date</th>
<th>Percentage of women with severe symptoms among those presenting with unsafe abortion complications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>South Africa, 2000 (a)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malawi, 2009 (b)</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethiopia, 2008 (c)</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenya, 2012 (d)</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cambodia, 2005 (e)</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sources: (a) = Jewkes and others 2005; (b) = Kalilani-Phiri and others 2015; (c) = Gebreselassie and others 2010; (d) = African Population and Health Research Center and Ministry of Health Kenya 2013; (e) = Fetters and others 2008.

Studies report that among women presenting with unsafe abortion complications in health facilities, the proportion diagnosed with severe symptoms varies widely (table 2.4).

Severe complications, if not well managed, may result in anemia, RTIs, elevated risk of ectopic pregnancy, premature delivery or miscarriage in subsequent pregnancies, and infertility (WHO 2004). Almost 5 million women are living with temporary or permanent disabilities associated with unsafe abortion; more than 3 million of these women suffer from the effects of RTIs, and close to 1.7 million experience secondary infertility (WHO 2007).

Economic and Social Consequences
Unsafe abortion has direct and indirect costs. Direct costs include expenses related to the provision of medical care to women presenting with abortion-related complications, such as cost of medicine, providers’ time, and hospital stays. Indirect costs are opportunity
costs due to death or disability stemming from the complications.

**Direct costs.** In 2006, the average direct per-patient costs of treating abortion-related complications were US$130 in Latin America and the Caribbean and US$114 in Sub-Saharan Africa (Vlassoff, Walker, and others 2009). After including indirect costs, per-patient costs of treating postabortion complications in the two regions rose to US$227–US$320.

**Indirect costs.** A study in Uganda (Sundaram and others 2013) finds that most women treated for unsafe abortion complications experienced one or more adverse effects, including loss of productivity (73 percent); deterioration in household economic circumstances (34 percent); and negative consequences for their children, such as inability to eat well or go to school (60 percent).

Unsafe abortion also has social costs, including social stigma, sanctions, divorce, and spousal and family neglect (Levandowski and others 2012; Moore, Jagwe-Wadda, and Bankole 2011; Rossier 2007; Shellenberg and others 2011).

**Unintended pregnancy, unmet need for contraception, and unsafe abortion.** Meeting the contraceptive needs of all 225 million women in LMICs who had unmet need for modern contraception in 2014 would have prevented an estimated 52 million unintended pregnancies and averted 24 million abortions, 14 million of which would have been unsafe (Singh, Darroch, and Ashford 2014). Similar associations have been found at the country level (Darroch and others 2009; Sundaram and others 2009; Vlassoff, Sundaram, and others 2009; Vlassoff and others 2011). The demand for family limitation may not be fully satisfied by the use of contraceptives, and some women and couples may resort to abortion. In such situations, both contraceptive use and abortion rates may rise, while fertility declines (Marston and Cleland 2003).

**Vulvovaginal Candidiasis**

VVC is characterized by excessive growth of a normal vaginal flora fungus, candida, often associated with vulval itching, abnormal vaginal discharge, vulval excoriation, and dyspareunia. It is common among women of reproductive age. VVC is relatively more common among women who are pregnant, have poorly controlled diabetes mellitus, or have compromised immunity due to human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (HIV/AIDS) or other causes (Buchta and others 2013; de Leon and others 2002; Duerr and others 2003). It is also common in women receiving antibiotic treatment and those using vaginal douching and other forms of vaginal applications (Brown and others 2013; Ekpenyong and others 2012).

**Measurement**

Measurement of prevalence and incidence of VVC in most settings is challenging. Clinical diagnosis based on symptoms is inadequate owing to the low sensitivity and specificity of criteria used to identify clinically important candida infections. Estimates from such studies cannot be depended upon to generate a reliable epidemiologic profile to act as a basis for public health planning of interventions (Geiger, Foxman, and Gillespie 1995; Rathod and others 2012). In a study of women in India, the positive predictive value for candidiasis was only 19 percent, implying a high likelihood of confusing VVC with BV, since the two are common and may occur together (Rathod and others 2012). However, not all positive laboratory tests for candida constitute clinically important cases of VVC. In response to this challenge, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has provided diagnostic criteria that include symptoms and laboratory findings (CDC 2010; Ilkit and Guzel 2011). According to these criteria, a patient must have (1) one or more symptoms, such as vaginal itching or discharge; and (2) a positive wet preparation or gram stain or positive culture (CDC 2010).

**Measurement**

Measurement of prevalence and incidence of VVC in most settings is challenging. Clinical diagnosis based on symptoms is inadequate owing to the low sensitivity and specificity of criteria used to identify clinically important candida infections. Estimates from such studies cannot be depended upon to generate a reliable epidemiologic profile to act as a basis for public health planning of interventions (Geiger, Foxman, and Gillespie 1995; Rathod and others 2012). In a study of women in India, the positive predictive value for candidiasis was only 19 percent, implying a high likelihood of confusing VVC with BV, since the two are common and may occur together (Rathod and others 2012). However, not all positive laboratory tests for candida constitute clinically important cases of VVC. In response to this challenge, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has provided diagnostic criteria that include symptoms and laboratory findings (CDC 2010; Ilkit and Guzel 2011). According to these criteria, a patient must have (1) one or more symptoms, such as vaginal itching or discharge; and (2) a positive wet preparation or gram stain or positive culture (CDC 2010).

Given the challenges involved in conducting community-based studies using gynecologic specimens, most studies that have assessed prevalence or incidence have been clinic-based among symptomatic women. Only a few studies have been population based (Ahmad and Khan 2009; Goto and others 2005; Oliveira and others 2007). Estimates derived from clinic-based studies cannot be generalized. Even where community-based studies have been conducted, the tendency is to report the prevalence of candida species recovered from the specimens and symptoms separately; no effort is made to use the criteria that integrate laboratory findings and symptoms to derive the proportion of women with clinically significant candida infection.

**NON-SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED INFECTIONS OF THE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM**

RTIs may be classified as either transmitted sexually, as with syphilis and gonorrhea, or non-sexually, for example, bacterial vaginosis (BV); others, such as yeast infections, may be both. The focus in this section is on non-STIs of the reproductive tract, specifically two neglected reproductive health morbidities: BV and vulvovaginal candidiasis (VVC). These RTIs are increasingly identified as having substantial public health importance because of the increased risk of STI transmission, including human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) (Cohen and others 2012; Martin and others 1999; Myer and others 2005; Namkinga and others 2005).
Prevalence of Vulvovaginal Candidiasis

The prevalence of VVC varies between subpopulations along characteristics such as age, sexual activity, and socioeconomic status. The proportion of candida species–positive women among women attending clinics with symptoms is generally higher than levels observed in the general population. In some clinic-based studies, results have shown prevalence as high as 40 percent to 60 percent (Ibrahim and others 2013; Nwadioha and others 2013; Okungbowa, Isikhuemhen, and Dede 2003).

Table 2.5 summarizes community-based studies of the prevalence of candida species from vaginal or cervical specimens and of VVC. In the few studies reporting VVC based on clinical and laboratory findings, prevalence seems to be generally less than 10 percent. This result implies that studies and estimates based on only clinical diagnoses tend to overdiagnose, and possibly result in overtreatment of, vaginal candidiasis. The consequences may include unnecessary treatment costs, side effects, and development of resistance to commonly prescribed antifungal drugs.

Consequences of Vulvovaginal Candidiasis

Although VVC might be considered a nuisance, the inflammatory process of VVC puts women at increased risk of transmission of RTIs, including STIs and HIV (Hester and Kennedy 2003; Rathod and others 2012). Against this background, like STIs, VVC should always be managed for the extra benefit of reducing the risk of contracting other STIs. The fact that treatment for VVC is cheap and available over the counter in many countries presents another challenge of overtreatment and potential drug resistance. In most settings, the diagnosis is clinical; however, this diagnosis has a low specificity resulting in cases of BV being treated as VVC, leaving BV untreated.

Bacterial Vaginosis

In BV, normal vaginal lactobacilli are replaced by other bacteria, especially Gardnerella vaginalis and other anaerobic bacteria (Hay and Taylor-Robinson 1996). There is a link between BV and known risk factors for STIs, including multiple sexual partnerships and early onset of sexual activity (Fethers and others 2008; Foxman 1990; Morris, Rogers, and Kinghorn 2001; Reed and others 2003). Indeed, the debate about whether BV is sexually transmitted or enhanced remains unsettled. Other factors associated with BV include black race (Hay and others 1994; Koumans and others 2007; Ness and others 2003; Wenman and others 2004), use of intrauterine devices (Baeten and others 2001; Madden and others 2012), menses (Eschenbach and others 2000), lack of male circumcision (Gray and others 2009), and douching (Brotman and others 2008).

Measurement

Clinical diagnosis is difficult because symptoms have low predictive values, yet laboratory facilities are not always available, especially in developing countries (Landers and others 2004; Rathod and others 2012). There has been debate on the clinical presentation of BV and isolation of causative bacteria (Hay and Taylor-Robinson 1996).

Table 2.5 Prevalence of Candida Species and Vulvovaginal Candidiasis from Community-Based Studies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Prevalence of candida species (%)</th>
<th>Prevalence of vulvovaginal candidiasis* (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Epidemiologic features of vulvovaginal candidiasis among reproductive-age women in India (a)</td>
<td>35.0</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reproductive tract infections among young married women in Tamil Nadu, India (b)</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sexually transmitted infections, bacterial vaginosis, and candidiasis in women of reproductive age in rural Northeast Brazil: a population-based study (c)</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevalence and risk factors for bacterial vaginosis and other vulvovaginitis in a population of sexually active adolescents from Salvador, Bahia, Brazil (d)</td>
<td>22.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sexually transmitted infections in a female population in rural Northeast Brazil: prevalence, morbidity, and risk factors (e)</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community-based study of reproductive tract infections among women of the reproductive age group in the Urban Training Centre Area in Hubli Kamataka, India (f)</td>
<td>16.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevalence of and factors associated with reproductive tract infections among pregnant women in 10 communes in Nghe An Province, Vietnam (g)</td>
<td>17.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevalence and risk factors for vaginal candidiasis among women seeking primary care for genital infections in Dar es Salaam, Tanzania (h)</td>
<td>45.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sources: (a) = Rathod and others 2012; (b) = Prasad and others 2005; (c) = Oliveira and others 2007; (d) = Mascarenhas, Machado, and others 2012; (e) = de Lima Soares and others 2003; (f) = Balamurugan and Bendigeri 2012; (g) = Goto and others 2005; (h) = Namkinga and others 2006.

*According to Centers for Disease Control and Prevention criteria—one or more symptoms and signs and positive lab test or culture.
The commonly used clinical criteria are the Amsel criteria, with reported sensitivity of more than 90 percent and specificity of more than 75 percent as judged against gram staining (Landers and others 2004). The Nugent Scoring System criteria are considered the gold standard, with better sensitivity and specificity (Mota and others 2000; Nugent, Krohn, and Hillier 1991); however, few studies have used these criteria.

Little systematic effort has been made to estimate the global prevalence of BV. The few systematic reviews that have been conducted reveal that the current evidence is based on small studies (Kenyon, Colebunders, and Crucitti 2013). Estimates from these studies are discussed here in the context of where the study was conducted rather than as global or regional estimates (Kenyon, Colebunders, and Crucitti 2013). International comparisons are difficult because of differences in the populations studied, as well as in the methods used in selecting participants. Also, because of the associations between BV, VVC, pregnancy status, and sexual activity, we only present estimates from studies that include participants from the general adult female population. We exclude those that only focus on pregnant women, those attending sexually transmitted diseases clinics, and those restricted to only sexually experienced women.

### Prevalence of Bacterial Vaginosis

Estimates presented here are from studies that use the Nugent Scoring System. A diagnosis of BV is defined as a Nugent score of 7 or higher out of 10 (Nugent, Krohn, and Hillier 1991). Table 2.6 summarizes population-based studies from regions with estimates of BV prevalence.

Although there are no global estimates, it is clear that BV is common and variations exist across countries and subpopulations. The variation within regions makes interpretation of spatial distribution difficult.

### Consequences of Bacterial Vaginosis

Although the etiologic mechanism of anaerobic bacteria found in BV-causing pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)
has not been demonstrated, studies have recovered anaerobic bacteria from PID cases. PID is a major cause of tubal factor secondary infertility, therefore identification and treatment of BV is important (van Oostrum and others 2013). BV is also known to facilitate transmission of other STIs including HIV (Kinuthia and others 2015). Like VVC, clinical diagnosis of BV has low sensitivity and a high likelihood of misdiagnosis and mistreatment; efforts to have a confirmed laboratory diagnosis should always be made. BV has also been associated with miscarriages, premature delivery, and postpartum infection (Nelson and others 2015).

INFERTILITY

Involuntary infertility may bring about much psychological, economic, and social distress to affected individuals, especially in societies in which childbearing is highly expected of any couple. Causes of infertility are many, ranging from ovulation dysfunction, tubal factor (often sequelae), implantation disorders in the uterus, and male factors. Secondary infertility, the more prevalent type, often results from complications following miscarriage, delivery, untreated STI, and induced abortion in low-resource settings (Cates, Farley, and Rowe 1985; Cates, Rolfs, and Aral 1990; Larsen, Masenga, and Mlay 2006). Untreated STIs such as gonorrhea, chlamydia, and PID are responsible for the majority of tubal factor infertility cases (Boivin and others 2007; Bunnell and others 1999; Che and Cleland 2002; Desai, Kosambiya, and Thakor 2003; Heiligenberg and others 2012; Inhorn 2003).

Definition and Measurement

There are disciplinary variations in the definition and operationalization of measurement of infertility, including clinical, epidemiologic, and demographic (Gurunath and others 2011; WHO 2006a; Zegers-Hochschild and others 2009).

The key issues in operationalization of the definition of infertility or childlessness that make comparison and interpretation of estimates from various studies difficult include the following:

- **Exposure to risk of pregnancy as captured by union status, intention of getting pregnant, and contraceptive use**: The nature of a union has implications for frequency and regularity of sexual intercourse, which translates into risk of pregnancy. Similarly, variations occur in measurement of contraceptive use (Gurunath and others 2011).

- **Exposure time**: Sensitivity analysis using DHS data show that using a period of less than five years was likely to result in misclassification of fertile unions as infertile (Mascarenhas, Cheung, and others 2012). Shorter periods of one year help identify individuals and couples who may benefit from earlier intervention; epidemiological studies use two-year time frames that allow the problem of infertility to be quantified at the population level and limit misclassification of either fertile or infertile unions (WHO 2006a).

- **Outcome measure**: The medical literature focuses on failure to achieve or to maintain a clinical pregnancy, which misclassifies women as fertile who have repeat early miscarriage, or endometrial insufficiency resulting in repeat late fetal death or stillbirth. Demographers often use live birth as a more easily measurable outcome that defines childlessness (Gurunath and others 2011). Generally, the clinical definition and its operationalization are best suited for purposes of early diagnosis and management of infertility, whereas the epidemiological definition is best suited for population-level estimates, and demographic definitions for trend analysis.

- **Populations studied**: Some studies have examined women ages 15–44 years and 20–44 years, while others have examined women ages 15–49 years. In countries with high levels of voluntary childlessness, this difference needs to be accounted for because older women (older than age 44 years) may likely be considered infertile although menopausal, and younger women (younger than age 20 years) may likely be considered fertile, yet they may already suffer from tubal factor infertility (Rutstein and Shah 2004; Larsen 2005; Mascarenhas, Cheung, and others 2012).

The definitions of infertility used in the WHO Trend Analysis are as follows:

- **Primary infertility** is the absence of a live birth for women who desire a child, have been in a union for at least five years, and who did not use contraceptives during that time. The prevalence of primary infertility is calculated as the number of women in infertile union divided by the total number of fertile and infertile women.

- **Secondary infertility** is the absence of a live birth for women who desire a child, have been in a union for at least five years since their last live birth, and who did not use contraceptives during that time. The prevalence of secondary infertility is calculated as the number of women in a secondary infertile union divided by all fertile and infertile women who have had at least one live birth.
Prevalence of Primary and Secondary Infertility

The estimates reported here are derived from a global study that evaluates trends, and adjusts downward based on the lowest ranking of the disease as part of the DALY exercise by the Global Burden of Disease group, and reported in the World Report on Disability (WHO and World Bank 2011). The WHO, as part of the Global Burden of Disease exercise (Mascarenhas, Flaxman, and others 2012), developed an algorithm that included live birth and a registered desire to have a child. More than 277 health surveys were analyzed to produce trend estimates of infertility at national, regional, and global levels, for the years closest to 1990 and 2010.

The estimates for both primary and secondary infertility are presented by seven regions (high income, Central and Eastern Europe and Central Asia, East Asia and Pacific, Latin America and the Caribbean, North Africa and the Middle East, Sub-Saharan Africa, and South Asia) for the two time frames, 1990 and 2010, for comparative purposes (tables 2.7 and 2.8). Secondary fertility is more prevalent than primary infertility at regional and global levels. Overall, an estimated 48.5 million women worldwide were infertile (involuntarily childless) in 2010. About 1.9 percent of women ages 20–44 years who were exposed to risk of pregnancy had primary infertility, and an additional 10.5 percent had secondary infertility.

Sub-Saharan Africa and South Asia showed declines in the prevalence of primary infertility of 0.8 percentage points and 0.6 percentage points, respectively. Sub-Saharan Africa also recorded a 1.9 percentage point decline in secondary infertility over the period. The only region with an increase in primary infertility was Central and Eastern Europe and Central Asia, where primary infertility went from 1.9 percent in 1990 to 2.3 percent in 2010.

Consequences of Infertility

The consequences of primary and secondary involuntary childlessness in LMICs, where having biological children is highly valued, include stigmatization, economic deprivation, denial of inheritance, divorce, and social isolation (Chachamovich and others 2010; Cui 2010; Dyer and Patel 2012; Fisher and Hammarberg 2012; Hasanpoor-Azghdy, Simbar, and Vedadhir 2014). In many LMICs, family ties are highly valued, and having own biological children is seen as a form of insurance in old age. Women who are unable to bear children feel insecure in their marital unions with respect to inheritance, and they face the possibility of their husbands getting a second wife and divorce.

Prevention and treatment of some of the major causes of infertility, such as STIs, is effective and affordable; treatment of infertility itself is expensive and often inaccessible. Advanced infertility treatment technologies, such as in vitro fertilization, which is the only intervention that can overcome tubal factor infertility, are mainly available in the private sector where the costs are high (Katz and others 2011). Because most affected individuals suffer in silence and the cost of treatment is high, governments have not prioritized the treatment of infertility; insurance either charges high premiums.

Table 2.7 Global and Regional Prevalence Estimates for Trend Analysis of Primary Infertility in Women Exposed to the Risk of Pregnancy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Age-standardized prevalence of primary infertility</th>
<th>1990</th>
<th>2010</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Estimate (percent) Lower 95% CI Upper 95% CI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central and Eastern Europe and Central Asia</td>
<td>1.9 1.2 2.7</td>
<td>2.3 1.6 3.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Saharan Africa</td>
<td>2.7 2.5 3.0</td>
<td>1.9 1.8 2.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle East and North Africa</td>
<td>2.7 2.3 3.1</td>
<td>2.6 2.1 3.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Asia</td>
<td>2.9 2.5 3.3</td>
<td>2.3 1.9 2.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East Asia and Pacific</td>
<td>1.5 1.3 1.7</td>
<td>1.6 1.3 2.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin America and the Caribbean</td>
<td>1.6 1.4 2.0</td>
<td>1.5 1.2 1.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-income</td>
<td>1.9 1.6 2.3</td>
<td>1.9 1.3 2.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World</td>
<td>2.0 1.9 2.2</td>
<td>1.9 1.7 2.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Mascarenhas, Flaxman, and others 2012.
Note: CI = confidence interval.
or does not cover fertility treatment. As a result, cost of treatment of infertility is almost always borne by those affected; in many cases, the available treatment is basic and ineffective (Dyer and Patel 2012).

VIOLENCE AGAINST WOMEN

Violence against women is a serious health problem and a violation of human rights. It has significant impacts on women’s health and development, and its consequences are individual as well as intergenerational and societal. Violence affects women’s health and well-being, productivity, and ability to bond with and care for their children. Although violence against women has been accepted as an important public health and clinical care issue, it remains unaddressed in the health care policies of many countries.

This section focuses on violence against women and, in particular, on intimate partner violence (IPV) and sexual violence because these are the most common forms of violence experienced globally, and they have important sexual and reproductive health consequences.

Definitions and Measurements

The United Nations Declaration on the Elimination of Violence against Women (1993) defines violence against women1 as “any act of gender-based violence that results in, or is likely to result in, physical, sexual, or mental harm or suffering to women, including threats of such acts, coercion, or arbitrary deprivation of liberty, whether occurring in public or in private life.” The declaration describes the many forms this violence can take, including the following:

Intimate partner violence (IPV), sexual violence, including abuse of female children, dowry-related violence, killings in the name of “honor,” forced marriages, FGM and other traditional practices harmful to women, violence related to exploitation, sexual harassment and intimidation in workplaces, educational institutions, and elsewhere, trafficking, forced prostitution, and violence perpetrated or condoned by the state.

According to Heise and Garcia-Moreno (2002), IPV is behavior by an intimate partner or ex-partner that causes physical, sexual, or psychological harm, including physical aggression, sexual coercion, psychological abuse, and controlling behaviors.

Sexual violence is any sexual act, attempt to obtain a sexual act, or other act directed against a person’s sexuality, using coercion, by any person, regardless of their relationship to the victim, in any setting. It includes rape, defined as the physically forced or otherwise coerced penetration of the vulva or anus with a penis, other body part, or object (Jewkes and others 2002).

There are many challenges to measuring violence against women; studies are often not comparable because they use different samples (all women, married women, ever-partnered women, currently partnered), different measures of violence, different time frames (ever, last 12 months, last month). There are also specific ethical and safety concerns related to asking women about partner violence. However, a consensus exists that the best way to measure violence

### Table 2.8 Global and Regional Prevalence Estimates for Trend Analysis of Secondary Infertility in Women Exposed to the Risk of Pregnancy, Who Have Had a Previous Live Birth

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Estimate (percent)</th>
<th>Lower 95% CI</th>
<th>Upper 95% CI</th>
<th>Estimate (percent)</th>
<th>Lower 95% CI</th>
<th>Upper 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Region</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2010</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central and Eastern Europe and Central Asia</td>
<td>16.3</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>21.4</td>
<td>18.0</td>
<td>13.8</td>
<td>24.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Saharan Africa</td>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>14.5</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>12.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle East and North Africa</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Asia</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>12.2</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>14.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East Asia and Pacific</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>11.4</td>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>13.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin America and the Caribbean</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-income</td>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worlda</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>11.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Mascarenhas, Flaxman, and others 2012.
Note: CI = confidence interval.

a. Estimates exclude China.
against women is by asking about behavioral acts; stand-
dardized methodologies are being developed, particularly
for partner violence and sexual violence. Measuring vio-
lation against women in conflict settings is even more chal-
lenging. Gaps remain in the measurement of other forms
such as trafficking, honor killings, and violence in conflict.

The methodology and ethical and safety guidelines
developed for the Multi-country Study on Women’s
Health and Domestic Violence against Women (García-
Moreno and others 2005) has contributed substantially
to a standardized methodology. They have informed the
UN Statistics Division guidelines for measuring violence
against women and the violence against women module
of the DHS. The past 10 years have seen growing num-
ers of population-based prevalence surveys using either
DHS or the WHO methodology.

In 2013, slightly more than 80 countries had data on
IPV; data on nonpartner sexual violence are more lim-
ited (WHO, LSHTM, and MRC-SA 2013).

Magnitude of the Problem

Worldwide, 35 percent of women have experienced
physical or sexual IPV or nonpartner sexual vio-
lence; 38 percent of women who were murdered were
murdered by their intimate partners (WHO, LSHTM,
and MRC-SA 2013). Estimates of IPV by World Health
Organization region are shown in map 2.1; South-
East Asia (37.7 percent), the Eastern Mediterranean
(37.0 percent), and Africa (36.6 percent) have the highest
rates (WHO, LSHTM, and MRC-SA 2013). A systematic
review of sexual violence among women who were refu-
gees and internally displaced people in complex human-
itarian emergencies in 14 countries finds that 21 percent
of women had experienced sexual violence (both inte-
mate partner and nonpartner) (Vu and others 2014).

Sexual abuse during childhood affects boys and
girls. A systematic review of population-based studies
suggests that 8.1 percent of women and 5.5 percent of
men experienced some form of sexual abuse before age
15 years. The prevalence was higher among women than
men in every region (Devries and others 2014).

Violence among young people, including dating vio-
lence, is a common problem. The WHO multicountry
study finds that the first sexual experience for many women
was reported as forced, for example, 17 percent in rural
areas of Tanzania, 24 percent in rural Peru, and 30 percent
in rural Bangladesh (García-Moreno and others 2005).

Many women do not report their experiences of
IPV or sexual violence or seek help for cultural and
service-related reasons, including fear of being stigma-
tized, shame, or nonexistence or lack of trust in services.

Map 2.1 Rates of Intimate Partner Violence, by World Health Organization Region, 2010

Source: WHO 2013.
Note: Regional prevalence rates are presented for each WHO region, including low- and middle-income countries. High-income countries are analyzed separately.
Health and Other Consequences

The direct consequences of violence against women are injury, disability, or death. Indirect consequences include physical, mental, and sexual and reproductive health problems, such as stress-induced physiological changes, substance use, and lack of fertility control and personal autonomy (WHO 2013). Women who experience violence are more likely to have STIs, HIV/AIDS, unintended pregnancies, unsafe abortions, and gynecological problems, compared with women who do not experience such violence (Campbell 2002; Ellsberg and others 2008; Plichta and Falik 2001). Women who have experienced IPV are 1.5 times more likely to have STIs and, in some regions, HIV/AIDS; more than twice as likely to have an abortion; almost twice as likely to report depressive episodes and alcohol use problems; and 4.5 times more likely to have attempted suicide, compared with women who have not been exposed to violence (WHO 2013). IPV has been associated with chronic pelvic pain and other pain syndromes, hypertension, obesity, and other non-communicable diseases (Campbell 2002; Ellsberg and others 2008; Plichta and Falik 2001). Sexual violence is also associated with higher rates of mental health disorders, such as depression and anxiety disorders (WHO 2013).

IPV can begin or persist during pregnancy and result in serious maternal and perinatal health problems. In the WHO multicountry study, between 1 percent and 28 percent of ever-pregnant women reported being physically abused during at least one pregnancy, with most sites falling between 4 percent and 12 percent (García-Moreno and others 2006). Violence during pregnancy is associated with increased risk of miscarriage, premature labor, perinatal death, and low-birth weight babies (Campbell 2002; Fanslow and others 2008; Janssen and others 2003). Women who have experienced IPV are 16 percent more likely to have a low-birth weight baby (WHO 2013). IPV during pregnancy is also significantly associated with adverse health behaviors during pregnancy, including smoking, alcohol and substance abuse, and delay in prenatal care, even after controlling for other mediating factors (Campbell 2002).

Violence against women can also lead to death from suicide; homicide, including in the name of honor, usually committed by family members for cultural reasons; female infanticide; maternal death from unsafe abortion; and deaths from HIV/AIDS. Up to 38 percent of murders of women are committed by their partners, compared with 6 percent of murders of men (Stockl and others 2013).

Sexual abuse during childhood is associated with higher rates of sexual risk taking, substance use, and additional victimization. Each of these behaviors increases the risks of subsequent health problems.

There are often long-term intergenerational health consequences for those who witness violence, especially children, with negative consequences for their health and development. IPV is associated with increased mortality in infants and children younger than age five years (Ahmed, Koenig, and Stephenson 2006; Asling-Monemi, Tabassum, and Persson 2008; Boy and Salihu 2004), and with behavioral problems among children, as well as low educational attainment. Health systems and health care providers can play a critical role in identification, assessment, treatment, documentation, referral, and follow-up; this role needs to be integrated into national health programs and policies (WHO 2013).

FEMALE GENITAL MUTILATION

FGM comprises all procedures that involve the partial or total removal of external genitalia or other injury to the female genital organs for nonmedical reasons (OHCHR and others 2008). Although FGM is internationally recognized as a violation of human rights, and legislation to prohibit the procedure has been put in place in many countries, the practice has still been documented in many African countries and several regions in Asia and the Middle East (OHCHR and others 2008). Some forms of FGM have also been reported in other countries, including among certain ethnic groups in Central and South America, as well as among some migrants living in HICs (Yoder, Abderrahim, and Zhuzhini 2004). The importance of FGM from a public health perspective arises from the fact that, in addition to medical and psychological complications, the practice violates human rights and child rights, given that it is almost always carried out among minors (Yoder and Wang 2013).

Measurement

Data on FGM at the population level have become increasingly available, mainly from population-based surveys that include questions on the practice among women ages 15–49 years and their daughters, such as the DHSs and the UNICEF Multiple Indicator Cluster Surveys (MICS) (Yoder and Wang 2013; Yoder, Abderrahim, and Zhuzhini 2004). Before the DHSs, there were no national population-level data on FGM. Currently, many Sub-Saharan African countries have national-level prevalence data, as do some in the Middle East, including the Republic of Yemen and Iraq (Yoder and Wang 2013).
The prevalence of FGM is calculated from survey questions in the following areas:

- Circumcision status of respondents
- Information on the event among those who were circumcised
- Circumcision status of one’s daughters
- Women’s and men’s opinions of the practice.

Although the phrasing and level of depth of inquiry vary by country, the key question used to estimate prevalence is often phrased, “Have you (yourself) been circumcised?” The current global estimate of FGM is derived from weighted averages of FGM prevalence among girls ages 0–14 years and girls and women ages 15–49 years, using DHS, MICS, and Household Health Survey data. The number of girls and women who have been cut was calculated using 2011 demographic figures produced by the UN Population Division (UNPD 2013). The number of cut women ages 50 years and older is based on FGM prevalence in women ages 45–49 (UNICEF 2013).

**Prevalence of Female Genital Mutilation**

An estimated 125 million girls and women concentrated in 29 countries in the Middle East and Sub-Saharan Africa have undergone FGM (UNICEF 2013). The global estimate of FGM is unknown because the exact number of those with FGM among migrants from countries with the practice is unknown. Although prevalence estimates among migrants have been computed in some host countries, the overall burden is unknown (Dorkenoo, Morison, and Macfarlane 2007; Dubourg and others 2011; Exterkate 2013).

Table 2.9 shows the national prevalence estimates of FGM in 29 countries by age category and place of residence. The prevalence varies across countries from as low as less than 5 percent in Cameroon, Ghana, Niger, Togo, and Uganda, to more than 90 percent in Djibouti, the Arab Republic of Egypt, Guinea, and Somalia. With the exception of Chad, Iraq, Mali, Nigeria, and the Republic of Yemen, the prevalence of FGM is higher in rural areas than in urban areas. In most countries, older age groups have higher prevalence of FGM.

**Consequences of Female Genital Mutilation**

FGM is painful, traumatic, and emotionally distressful. Immediate and long-term health consequences include gynecological complications, such as the following:

- Structural complications of the genitourinary system, such as vaginal stenosis, urethral strictures, labial fusion, and fistulae involving the genital tract
- Postprocedural complications of the skin and subcutaneous tissue, such as keloids, sebaceous cysts, scars and fibrosis, and nonhealing ulcers
- Disorders of the urinary system, such as acute or chronic urinary tract infections, meatus, urinary crystals, pyelonephritis, urinary retention and incontinence, and kidney failure
- Infections
- Hemodynamic complications, such as hemorrhage, hypovolemic or septic shock, and anemia
- Procedural and everyday life difficulties, such as gynecological examination, cytology testing, evacuation of the uterus postabortion, intrauterine device placement, and tampon usage
- Pain associated with the female genital organs or menstrual cycle, such as hematocolpos, vulvodynia, dyspareunia, acute or chronic lower abdominal pain, hypersensitivity of the genital area, and clitoral neuroma
- Injury of neighboring organs and structures, such as the urethra, bladder, urinary meatus, vaginal wall, anus, and rectum
- Death.

FGM has been associated with obstetric complications. Studies, including a large WHO study in African countries, show that women with FGM are significantly more at risk of cesarean section, postpartum hemorrhage, episiotomy, extended maternal hospital stay, resuscitation of infants, low–birth weight infants, and inpatient perinatal death (Kaplan and others 2013; Lovel, McGettigan, and Mohammed 2000; WHO 2006b).

Several sexual and mental health complications are also associated with FGM, including sexual aversion and lack of sexual enjoyment or desire, vaginal dryness, orgasmic dysfunction, nonorganic vaginismus, apureunia, posttraumatic stress disorder, depression, somatization disorder, neurasthenia, anxiety disorders, specific phobias, psychosomatic disorders, and eating disorders (Berg, Denison, and Rappaport 2010).

Although health care professionals are aware of FGM and some of its health consequences, their ability to identify and manage complications remains suboptimal (WHO 2001). Moreover, some health care providers still consider certain forms of FGM as not harmful; some perform medical FGM (Ali 2012). The WHO has condemned medicalization of FGM and recognizes that its cessation is an essential component of the human rights–based approach.
Table 2.9 Prevalence of Female Genital Mutilation among Girls and Women

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country (data source)</th>
<th>Reference year</th>
<th>FGM prevalence among girls and women (%)</th>
<th>FGM prevalence among girls and women by age and residence (%)</th>
<th>Residence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Age category</td>
<td>Urban</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benin (DHS)</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>8 10 14 14 16 17 16</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burkina Faso (DHS and MICS)</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>58 70 78 83 85 88 89</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cameroon (DHS)</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.4 3 2 1 1 2 2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central African Republic (MICS)</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>18 22 25 26 28 30 34</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chad (MICS)</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>41 43 46 45 46 45 47</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Côte d’Ivoire (MICS)</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>28 34 38 43 44 41 40</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Djibouti (MICS)</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>90 94 93 96 95 93 94</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt, Arab Rep. (DHS)</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>81 87 94 95 96 96 96</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eritrea (DHS)</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>78 88 91 93 93 93 94</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethiopia (DHS)</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>62 73 78 78 81 82 81</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Gambia (MICS)</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>77 77 78 75 73 75 79</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ghana (MICS)</td>
<td>2011</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2 2 3 4 6 7 6</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guinea (DHS)</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>89 95 97 97 99 98 100</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guinea-Bissau (MICS/RHS)</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>48 49 51 50 49 54 50</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iraq (MICS)</td>
<td>2011</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5 8 9 9 10 9 10</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenya (DHS)</td>
<td>2008–09</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>15 21 25 30 35 40 49</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liberia (DHS)</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>44 58 68 70 73 78 85</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mali (MICS)</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>88 88 88 89 90 89 89</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mauritania (MICS)</td>
<td>2011</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>66 66 67 71 72 76 75</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niger (DHS/MICS)</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2 2 2 2 3 3 3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues next page
Table 2.9 Prevalence of Female Genital Mutilation among Girls and Women (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country (data source)</th>
<th>Reference year</th>
<th>FGM prevalence among girls and women (%)</th>
<th>FGM prevalence among girls and women by age and residence</th>
<th>Residence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Age category</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nigeria (MICS)</td>
<td>2011</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>19 22 26 30 32 35 38</td>
<td>33 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senegal (DHS/MICS)</td>
<td>2010–11</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>24 24 26 25 29 27 29</td>
<td>23 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sierra Leone (MICS)</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>80 87 92 93 96 95 96</td>
<td>81 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somalia (MICS)</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>97 98 98 99 99 98 99</td>
<td>97 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sudan (SHHS)</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>84 87 90 88 90 90 89</td>
<td>84 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tanzania (DHS)</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>7 11 12 19 22 22 22</td>
<td>8 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Togo (MICS)</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 2 4 5 6 5 7</td>
<td>3 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uganda (DHS)</td>
<td>2011</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 1 2 2 1 2 2</td>
<td>1 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: DHS = Demographic and Health Survey; FGM = female genital mutilation; MICS = Multiple Indicator Cluster Survey; RHS = Reproductive Health Survey; SHHS = Sudan Household Health Survey.
CONCLUSIONS

This chapter focuses on selected reproductive health diseases and their predisposing factors that lead to morbidity and mortality but that are generally neglected in research and public health programming. Although the data remain scant, these conditions are clearly pervasive; some are predisposing factors for other conditions.

Part of the challenge to policy makers is in measurement. Variations in definitions and reference populations affect the comparability of data. Unwanted pregnancies, abortions, infertility, infections of the reproductive tract, and violence against women are associated with stigmatization, especially in LMICs, and are often underreported or misreported in surveys and health care facilities. There are few global, regional, or national estimates of some of these conditions. Some estimates are based on indirect methods, and questions arise about their validity.

Most of these conditions have cost-effective interventions. Most unwanted pregnancies can be averted through the provision of proven family-planning technologies; safe abortion services are associated with low complication rates. Treatment for RTIs is available and affordable, yet many women never receive treatment, predisposing them to the risk of other infections, including HIV/AIDS. Violence against women is equally prevalent; while preventive interventions pose challenges, health systems can do much more for prevention, provision of care and services, and mitigation of consequences.

The poor integration and mainstreaming of these cost-effective interventions in public health prevention and management programs exacerbates their public health impacts. The counterargument might be that the burden of these conditions and their economic costs are vague, and no concrete evidence exists for advocacy within and across countries and regions. However, the evidence of the substantial burden of violence against women has yet to translate into significant policy and programmatic action to address the problem in many LMICs.

For consistency and ease of comparison, DCP3 is using the World Health Organization’s Global Health Estimates (GHE) for data on diseases burden, except in cases where a relevant data point is not available from GHE. In those instances, an alternative data source is noted.

1. Violence against women is also referred to as gender-based violence because most of the violence that women experience is rooted in gender inequality. More recently, however, gender-based violence has come to be understood by some as also including violence against men and on the basis of sexual orientation or gender identity.

REFERENCES


NOTES

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:
  - a) lower-middle-income = US$1,046–US$4,125
  - b) upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126–US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.


Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health


Levels and Causes of Maternal Mortality and Morbidity

Véronique Filippi, Doris Chou, Carine Ronsmans, Wendy Graham, and Lale Say

Chapter 3

INTRODUCTION

In September 2000, 189 world leaders signed a declaration on eight Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) to improve the lives of women, men, and children in their respective countries (United Nations General Assembly 2000). Goal 5a calls for the reduction of maternal mortality by 75 percent between 1990 and 2015. Goal 5a was supplemented by MDG 5b on universal access to contraception. MDGs 5a and 5b have been important catalysts for the reductions in maternal mortality levels that have been achieved in many settings.

Despite substantial progress, challenges remain. The majority of low-income countries (LICs), particularly in Sub-Saharan Africa and postconflict settings, have not made sufficient progress to meet MDG 5a. The post-2015 agenda on sustainable development is broader than the MDG agenda, with a greater number of nonhealth goals and a strong focus on inequity reduction; the new agenda includes an absolute reduction in maternal mortality as a marker of progress. This new indicator is expected to be framed as targets for preventable maternal deaths (Bustreo and others 2013; Gilmore and Camhe Gebreyesus 2012).

The International Classification of Diseases (ICD-10) defines maternal death as “[The] death of a woman while pregnant or within 42 days of the end of pregnancy, irrespective of the duration and site of the pregnancy, from any cause related to or aggravated by the pregnancy or its management, but not from accidental or incidental causes” (WHO 2010, 156). Subsequent guidance on the classification of causes includes nine groups of underlying causes (box 3.1) (WHO 2012).

Despite the increased global focus on maternal mortality as a public health issue, little detailed knowledge is available on the levels of maternal mortality and morbidity and the causes of their occurrence. A large proportion of maternal deaths occur in settings in which vital registration is deficient and many sick women do not access services. To obtain data on population levels of maternal mortality in these settings, special surveys are needed, including the following (Abouzahr 1999):

- Reproductive Age Mortality Studies, which investigate all reproductive age deaths
- Demographic and Health Surveys, which interview women and men about their siblings’ survival in adulthood to identify deaths of sisters during or following pregnancy (the siblings are from the same mother) (Ahmed and others 2014)
- Smaller studies, which use the indirect sisterhood method
- National investigations, which add questions to censuses
- Verbal autopsy studies, which provide information on causes and circumstances of deaths.
Maternal death studies require large sample sizes; recent national-level data are often nonexistent, and maternal mortality tracking relies principally on mathematical models. This lack of data has led to a repeated call for countries to improve their vital registration systems and to strengthen other mechanisms for informing intervention strategies, such as the maternal death surveillance and response system proposed within the new accountability framework (WHO 2013). Accountability remains a central part of United Nations Secretary General Ban Ki-Moon’s updated global strategy to accelerate progress for women’s, children’s, and adolescent’s health (http://www.everywomaneverychild.org/global-strategy-2). The accountability framework, developed under the 2010 global strategy to accelerate women’s and children’s health, included recommendations for improvements in resource tracking; international and national oversight; and data monitoring, including maternal mortality (Commission on Information and Accountability for Women’s and Children’s Health 2011).

Information on maternal morbidity is frequently collected in hospital studies, which are only representative of patients who seek care. Community-based studies are rare in LICs and suffer from methodological limitations, particularly when they rely on self-reporting of obstetric complications. Self-reporting is known not to agree sufficiently with medical diagnoses to estimate prevalence. In particular, studies validating retrospective interview surveys find that women without medical diagnoses of complications during labor frequently reported symptoms of morbidity during surveys, a phenomenon that can lead to an overestimation of prevalence (Ronsmans and others 1997; Souza and others 2008). In addition, community-based studies have focused on direct obstetric complications; little is known about the nature and incidence of many indirect complications that are aggravated by pregnancy. For example, reliable population-based estimates of the occurrence of asthma during pregnancy do not exist in LICs.

This chapter addresses the extent and nature of maternal mortality and morbidity and serves as a backdrop to subsequent chapters on obstetric interventions in LICs. It introduces the determinants of maternal mortality and morbidity and their strategic implications. The next section uses the most recent estimates from the World Health Organization (WHO) to show that women face a higher risk of maternal death in Sub-Saharan Africa. It discusses the recent findings of a WHO meta-analysis that show that the most important direct causes are hemorrhage, hypertension, abortion, and sepsis; however, the proportion of deaths due to indirect causes is increasing in most parts of the world. The chapter then focuses on pregnancy-related complications, including nonfatal illnesses such as antenatal and postpartum depression, using the findings from systematic reviews conducted by the Child Health Epidemiology Reference Group. The most common contributors to maternal morbidity are probably anemia and depression at the community level, but prolonged and obstructed labor results in the highest burden of disease because of fistulas (IHME 2013). The chapter discusses the broader determinants of maternal morbidity and mortality, and then concludes by making the links with the interventions highlighted in chapter 7 in this volume (Gülmezoglu and others 2016).

**MATERNAL MORTALITY LEVELS AND TRENDS**

The WHO, in collaboration with the United Nations Children’s Fund, the United Nations Population Fund, the World Bank Group, and the United Nations Population Division, publishes global estimates of maternal mortality, which are excerpted in this chapter (WHO 2015). A complete description of the methodology and underlying data and statistical model can be found in the publication and online.\(^3\) In this chapter, the latest estimate is for 2015. Whenever an estimate includes trend data between two points, updates of those estimates typically supersede previously published figures. Readers are directed to the WHO’s Reproductive Health and Research web page on maternal mortality to access the latest published data.\(^4\)

**Maternal Mortality Ratio Levels and Trends, 1990–2015**

Globally, the total number of maternal deaths decreased by 43 percent from 532,000 in 1990 to 303,000 in 2015. The global maternal mortality ratio (MMR)
declined by 44 percent, from 385 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births in 1990 to 216 in 2015—an average annual decline of 2.3 percent (WHO 2015).

All MDG regions experienced a decline in the MMR between 1990 and 2015. The highest reduction was in Eastern Asia (72 percent), followed by Southern Asia (67 percent), South-Eastern Asia (66 percent), Northern Africa (59 percent), Oceania (52 percent), Caucasus and Central Asia (52 percent), Latin America and the Caribbean (50 percent), Sub-Saharan Africa (45 percent), and Western Asia (43 percent). Although the Caucasus and Central Asia experienced a relatively low level of decline, its already low MMR of 69 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births in 1990 suggests that a different set of more finely tuned strategies might be required to respond to the challenge of achieving the same rate of decline as other regions with higher 1990 MMRs, with possibly a stronger focus on improved fertility control (Shelburne and Trentini 2010).

Despite an initial increase in maternal mortality in regions highly affected by human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (HIV/AIDS), evidence suggests that maternal mortality due to HIV/AIDS peaked in 2005 and showed signs of decline in 2010 and 2015, most likely because of the increased availability of antiretroviral medication. Of the 183 countries included in this exercise, 9 countries that had high levels of maternal mortality in 1990 are categorized as having met the MDG goal of having reduced maternal mortality by 75 percent. They are Maldives (90 percent reduction in MMR); Bhutan (84 percent); Cambodia (84 percent); Cabo Verde (84 percent); the Islamic Republic of Iran (80 percent); Timor-Leste (80 percent); Lao People's Democratic Republic (78 percent); Rwanda (78 percent); and Mongolia (76 percent).

An additional 39 countries are characterized as having made a 50 percent reduction in maternal mortality; 21 countries have made insufficient progress; and 26 made no progress.

These estimates should be viewed in context; accurate data on maternal mortality are lacking for the majority of countries. The range of uncertainty indicates that the true total number of maternal deaths in 2015 could plausibly be as low as 291,000 and as high as 349,000. Similarly, the global MMR plausibly ranges from 207 to 249 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births.

**Disproportionate Burden in Low- and Middle-Income Countries**

Low- and middle-income countries (LMICs, as defined by the World Bank) account for 99 percent (300,000) of global maternal deaths. The MMR in these regions (242 per 100,000) is 14 times higher than that in high-income countries (HICs, as defined by the World Bank (17 per 100,000). Most maternal deaths occur in MDG regions Sub-Saharan Africa (201,000) and South Asia (66,000). Sub-Saharan Africa alone accounts for 66 percent of maternal deaths and has the highest MMR, at 546 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births. By MDG region, Eastern Asia has the lowest rate among developing regions, at 27 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births. Of the remaining developing regions, four had low MMRs: Caucasus and Central Asia (33), Northern Africa (70), Western Asia (91), and Latin America and the Caribbean (67). Three had moderate MMRs: South-Eastern Asia (110), Southern Asia (176), and Oceania (187). The adult lifetime risk of maternal mortality—the probability that a 15-year-old woman will die eventually from a maternal cause—in Sub-Saharan Africa is the highest at 1 in 36; this number is in contrast to 1 in 150 in Oceania; 1 in 210 in Southern Asia; 1 in 380 in South-Eastern Asia; and 1 in 4,900 in developed regions. The global adult lifetime risk of maternal mortality is 1 in 180.

At the country level, two countries, Nigeria and India, account for more than one-third of all global maternal deaths in 2015, with an approximate 58,000 (uncertainty interval [UI] 42,000 to 84,000) maternal deaths (19 percent) and 45,000 (UI 36,000 to 56,000) maternal deaths (15 percent), respectively. Ten countries account for nearly 59 percent of global maternal deaths. In addition to Nigeria and India, they are the Democratic Republic of Congo (22,000; UI 16,000 to 33,000), Ethiopia (11,000; UI 7,900 to 18,000), Pakistan (9,700; UI 6,100 to 15,000), Tanzania (8,200; UI 5,800 to 12,000), Kenya (8,000; UI 5,400 to 12,000), Indonesia (6,400; UI 4,700 to 9,000), Uganda (5,700; UI 4,100 to 8,200), and Bangladesh (5,500; UI 3,900 to 8,800). Of the 183 countries and territories in this analysis, Sierre Leone and Chad have the highest adult lifetime risk of maternal mortality, 1 in 17 and 1 in 18, respectively.

**MEDICAL CAUSES OF MATERNAL DEATHS**

Most maternal deaths do not have well-defined causes. Nevertheless, using the available data, nearly 73.0 percent of all maternal deaths between 2003 and 2009 were attributable to direct obstetric causes; deaths due to indirect causes accounted for 27.5 percent (95 percent confidence interval 19.7–37.5) of all deaths. The major causes of maternal mortality are as follows (Say and others 2014):

- Hemorrhage, 27.1 percent (95 percent confidence interval 19.9–36.2); more than 72.6 percent of deaths
from hemorrhage were classified as postpartum hemorrhage
• Hypertension, 14.0 percent (95 percent confidence interval 11.1–17.4)
• Sepsis, 10.7 percent (95 percent confidence interval 5.9–18.6)
• Abortive outcomes, 7.9 percent (95 percent confidence interval 4.7–13.2)
• Embolism and other direct causes, 12.8 percent.

Three causes of death—unsafe abortions, obstructed labor, and indirect causes—are of considerable programmatic interest but are particularly difficult to capture. The first case, unsafe abortions, is discussed further in chapter 2 of this volume (Ezeh and others 2016).

Deaths from Abortions
Say and others (2014) estimate that 7.9 percent (95 percent confidence interval 4.7–13.2) of all maternal deaths were due to abortive outcomes, including spontaneous or induced abortions and ectopic pregnancies. This share is lower than in previous assessments, which estimated mortality due to unsafe abortion at 13 percent (WHO 2011b).

Ectopic Pregnancy
Although ectopic pregnancy can have very serious mortality consequences, and there have been reports of increased incidence, it remains a rare event at less than 2 per 100 deliveries (Stulberg and others 2013). This condition has a high case fatality rate where urgent surgical care is not available. However, no systematic review of its global prevalence has been published since the 1980s.

Induced Abortions
In classifying maternal deaths due to abortion, and more specifically to unsafe abortion, which is defined as the termination of an unintended pregnancy “performed by persons lacking the necessary skills or in an environment not in conformity with minimal clinical standards, or both” (WHO 1993; Ganatra and others 2014, 155), there is a particular risk for misclassification that may lead to underreporting. ICD-10 does not have a specific code for unsafe abortion; accordingly, deaths attributed to unsafe abortion are often documented within special studies. Even where induced abortion is legal, the religious and cultural values in many countries can mean that women do not disclose abortion attempts, and relatives or health care professionals do not report these deaths as such. Underregistration of deaths may be the result of the stigmatization of abortion, which may result in intentional misclassification by providers where abortion is restricted.

Deaths from Obstructed Labor
Obstructed labor is commonly considered to be or diagnosed as a clinical cause of maternal death. However, as a death classification, it may be hard to capture because deaths occurring after obstructed labor and its consequences may be coded under hemorrhage or sepsis. This practice is especially an issue in settings in which verbal autopsies are used to determine cause of death, because verbal autopsy methods vary; lack of consistent case definitions and confusion regarding hierarchical assignment of causes affect the validity of the study data. In total, complications of delivery accounted for 2.8 percent (95 percent confidence interval 1.6–4.9), and obstructed labor accounted for 2.8 percent (95 percent confidence interval 1.4–5.5) of all maternal deaths globally, both reported within the “other direct” category, which totals to 9.6 percent (95 percent confidence interval 6.5–14.3).

Deaths from Indirect Causes
The review found that the indirect causes of maternal death, when combined, are the most common cause of maternal death. A breakdown of deaths due to indirect causes suggests that more than 70 percent are from preexisting medical conditions, including HIV/AIDS, exacerbated by pregnancy. Information on the number and proportion of maternal deaths related to HIV/AIDS alone is presented in box 3.2. However, these estimates should be considered with caution, given the phenomenon of misattribution of indirect maternal causes of death. Underestimation of 20 percent to 90 percent of maternal deaths has been described in a number of settings. In Austria, misclassification was significantly higher for indirect deaths (81 percent, 95 percent confidence interval 64–91 percent) than for direct deaths (28 percent, 95 percent confidence interval 21 percent to 36 percent); in the United Kingdom, indirect deaths may account for up to 74 percent of underreported maternal deaths from 2003 to 2005 (Karimian-Teherani and others 2002; Lewis 2007).

Global Distribution of Maternal Deaths
The global distribution of maternal deaths is influenced by the two regions, Sub-Saharan Africa and Southern Asia, that account for the majority of all maternal deaths (WHO 2014b). Although estimated regional cause-of-death distributions are uncertain for many
causes, point estimates show substantial differences across regions. Hemorrhage accounted for 36.9 percent (95 percent confidence interval 24.1 percent to 51.6 percent) of deaths in northern Africa, compared with 16.3 percent (95 percent confidence interval 11.1 percent to 24.6 percent) in developed regions. Hypertensive disorders were a significant cause of death in Latin American and the Caribbean, accounting for 22.1 percent (95 percent confidence interval 19.9 percent to 24.6 percent) of all maternal deaths in the region.

Almost all sepsis deaths occurred in developing regions, and the percentage of deaths was highest at 13.7 percent (95 percent confidence interval 3.3 percent to 35.9 percent) in Southern Asia. Only a small proportion of deaths are estimated to result from abortion in Eastern Asia, 0.8 percent (95 percent confidence interval 0.2 percent to 2.0 percent), where access to abortion is generally less restricted. Latin America and the Caribbean and Sub-Saharan Africa have higher proportions of deaths in this category than the global average, 9.9 percent (95 percent confidence interval 8.1 percent to 13.0 percent) and 9.6 percent (95 percent confidence interval 5.1 percent to 17.2 percent), respectively. Another direct cause, embolism, accounted for more deaths than the global average in South-Eastern Asia and Eastern Asia, 12.1 percent (95 percent confidence interval 3.2 percent to 33.4 percent) and 11.5 percent (95 percent confidence interval 1.6 percent to 40.6 percent), respectively.

The proportion of deaths due to indirect causes was highest in Southern Asia, 29.3 percent (95 percent confidence interval 12.2 percent to 55.1 percent), followed by Sub-Saharan Africa, 28.6 percent (95 percent confidence interval 19.9 percent to 40.3 percent); indirect causes also accounted for nearly 25.0 percent of the deaths in the developed regions. The overall proportion of HIV/AIDS maternal deaths is highest in Sub-Saharan Africa, 6.4 percent (95 percent confidence interval 4.6 percent to 8.8 percent).

**Trends in Maternal Death Causes**

The continued dearth of basic information in most countries of the developing region, where most of the deaths occur, impedes the ability to address the question of changes in causes of maternal deaths over time. In determining trends in causes of maternal deaths, it is reasonable to conclude that the proportion of indirect deaths is increasing in all regions. The actual indirect causes differ in that HIV/AIDS deaths are highest in Sub-Saharan Africa; other medical causes are highest in developed regions and Eastern Asia.
MEDICAL CAUSES OF MATERNAL MORBIDITY

Definition of Maternal Morbidity

The WHO Maternal Morbidity Working Group defines maternal morbidity as “any health condition attributed to and/or aggravated by pregnancy and childbirth that has a negative impact on the woman’s wellbeing” (Firoz and others 2013, 795). The working group emphasizes the wide range of indirect conditions in the morbidity that women experience during pregnancy, delivery, or postpregnancy by listing more than 180 diagnoses and dividing them into 14 organ dysfunction categories, ranging from obstetric to cardiorespiratory and rheumatology conditions.

The negative impact of pregnancy-related ill health is highlighted on the basis of subsequent disabilities, including how severely the woman’s functional status is affected and for how long. The origins of maternal morbidity occur during pregnancy, but the sequelae might take several months to manifest themselves. Capturing the negative impact of morbidities requires a longer reference period than used for the death definition.

Perceived Morbidity

Where women are not able to access services easily, surveys are conducted to measure their health status. Accurate diagnoses are difficult to make in survey conditions without confirmation from a clinical examination, laboratory reports, or medical records (Ronsmans and others 1997). However, surveys provide evidence of women’s experience of health and morbidity during pregnancy. Overall, many women complain about ill health in pregnancy and the puerperium. Studies of self-reports in low-income settings typically find that more than 70 percent of women report signs or symptoms of pregnancy-related complications (Lagro and others 2003). In a Nepal study, women reported, on average, three to four days per week with symptoms of illness during pregnancy (Christian and others 2000). The type of symptoms reported varied according to gestational age, with nausea and vomiting more common in early pregnancy, and swelling of the hands and face more common toward the end of pregnancy.

Counterintuitive changes in self-reported ill health have been described for the postpartum period, with anticipated declines in symptoms over time sometimes followed by increases (Filippi and others 2007; Saurel-Cubizolles and others 2000); self-perceived ill health is not simply a result of biological changes but also of social support and influences.

Severity of Conditions

Maternal health specialists have tried since the 1990s to distinguish between women with severe and less severe conditions in the measurement of morbidity (Stones and others 1991). Maternal deaths are relatively rare events, and these specialists believe that cases at the very severe end of the maternal morbidity spectrum have two useful characteristics: they are more frequent than maternal deaths, and they share similar characteristics to maternal deaths, including some common risk factors. Women who nearly died during pregnancy, labor, or postpregnancy, but survived, usually because of chance or good hospital care, are maternal “near-misses” (WHO 2011a). Depending on the definitions used and on the country and hospital settings, maternal near-misses occur for 0.05 percent to 15.0 percent of hospitalized women (Tuncalp and others 2012). The WHO has developed operational definitions of near-misses to facilitate comparisons between settings (WHO 2011a).

Nevertheless, it is worth noting that the cause patterns of maternal mortality, near-misses, and less severe morbidity differ, depending on the case fatality of certain conditions and the ease of halting the progression of disease (Pattinson and others 2003).

Principal Morbidity Diagnoses

The principal medical causes of mortality are also important morbidity diagnoses, but they are not the only ones to consider. To this list must be added other contributing factors, such as depression and anemia, because of their frequency or severity. We must also add the sequelae of difficult labor, such as incontinence, fistulas, and prolapse. A further consideration is the presence of comorbidities, such as obstructed labor followed by infection, that complicate management, diagnosis, and classification.

Figure 3.1 illustrates a conceptual framework of the ways in which different maternal conditions interact. Long-term health sequelae are associated with certain diagnoses in pregnancy. For example, neglected obstructed and prolonged labors are associated with obstetric fistulas. The conceptual framework also includes medical risk factors. One of these, obesity, has become a global epidemic and has been linked with increasing levels of hypertension and diabetes. The management of pregnancy and childbirth, including cesarean section, is also a risk factor for future problems, for example, placenta previa. Female genital mutilation, particularly in its most severe form, is associated with adverse maternal and perinatal outcomes, including postpartum hemorrhage and emergency cesarean (WHO 2006).
This section focuses on 11 groups of diagnoses that can lead to direct obstetric deaths or associated long-term ill health: abortion, hypertensive disease, obstetric hemorrhage, infection, prolonged and obstructed labor, anemia, postpartum depression, postpartum incontinence, fistula, postpartum prolapse, and HIV/AIDS. Other important indirect conditions that we do not consider are discussed in other DCP3 volumes, including volume 6 on HIV/AIDS, STIs, Tuberculosis, and Malaria. Figures 3.2 and 3.3 summarize the prevalence of the considered conditions.

**Abortion**

Morbidity with abortive outcomes comprises several diagnoses, including ectopic pregnancy, abortion, and miscarriage, as well as other abortive conditions (WHO 2013) (box 3.3).

Induced abortion is a safe procedure, safer than childbirth when performed in a suitable environment and with the right method. Among unsafe abortions, the morbidity burden is large. Information on the incidence of unsafe abortion and subsequent outcomes at the population level is particularly challenging to obtain because of fear of disclosure. On the basis of estimates derived from hospital data (adjusted for bias), an estimated 22 million unsafe abortions occur each year worldwide (WHO 2011b); of these, 5 million women are subsequently hospitalized (Singh 2006), most because of hemorrhage (44 percent of admitted cases) or infections (24 percent) (Adler and others 2012a). On average, 237 women experience a severe maternal morbidity associated with induced abortion for every 100,000 live births in countries where abortion is unsafe (Adler and others 2012b). Evidence indicates that the morbidity patterns associated with unsafe abortion are being transformed by the rapid growth of the medical abortion market, with the incidence of severe morbidity episodes declining more rapidly than the incidence of less severe episodes (Singh, Monteiro, and Levin 2012).

**Hypertensive Disease**

Women in pregnancy or the puerperium can suffer from preeclampsia, eclampsia, and chronic hypertension. Eclampsia and preeclampsia tend to occur more frequently in the second half of pregnancy; less commonly, they can occur up to six weeks after delivery. Information on the incidence of unsafe abortion and subsequent outcomes at the population level is particularly challenging to obtain because of fear of disclosure. On the basis of estimates derived from hospital data (adjusted for bias), an estimated 22 million unsafe abortions occur each year worldwide (WHO 2011b); of these, 5 million women are subsequently hospitalized (Singh 2006), most because of hemorrhage (44 percent of admitted cases) or infections (24 percent) (Adler and others 2012a). On average, 237 women experience a severe maternal morbidity associated with induced abortion for every 100,000 live births in countries where abortion is unsafe (Adler and others 2012b). Evidence indicates that the morbidity patterns associated with unsafe abortion are being transformed by the rapid growth of the medical abortion market, with the incidence of severe morbidity episodes declining more rapidly than the incidence of less severe episodes (Singh, Monteiro, and Levin 2012).
the prevalence of eclampsia is 1.4 percent (95 percent confidence interval 1.0 percent to 2.0 percent) (Abalos and others 2013). The review finds evidence of regional variations, with Sub-Saharan Africa having the highest incidence of both conditions. Preeclampsia and eclampsia are more common among women in their first pregnancy, women who are obese, women with preexisting hypertension, and women with diabetes. All of these characteristics are increasingly more common in pregnant populations. Preeclampsia and eclampsia are associated with perinatal deaths, placental abruption, and cardiovascular disease in later life in the mother.

**Obstetric Hemorrhage**

Women can experience anomalous or excessive bleeding because of an early pregnancy loss, a placental implantation abnormality, or an abnormality in the process of childbirth. The systematic review by Cresswell and others (2013) finds a global prevalence of 0.5 percent for placenta previa (95 percent confidence interval 0.4 percent to 0.6 percent). An equivalent systematic review for placental abruption has not been published, but most papers on this condition suggest an approximate prevalence of 1 percent (Ananth and others 1999).

Postpartum hemorrhage is a major cause of maternal morbidity worldwide. A systematic review finds a global prevalence of blood loss equal to or greater than 500 milliliters in 10.8 percent of vaginal deliveries (95 percent confidence interval 9.6 percent to 12.1 percent) (Calvert and others 2012); the prevalence of severe hemorrhage (equal to or greater than 1,000 milliliters) was 2.8 percent (95 percent confidence interval 2.4 percent to 3.2 percent). The review includes many study settings in which active management of the third stage of labor is practiced. The prevalence of postpartum hemorrhage in home deliveries is probably higher. Postpartum hemorrhage is associated with anemia, which can persist for several months after birth (Wagner and others 2012).

The incidence of hemorrhage has increased in HICs in recent years (Mehrabadi and others 2013). This trend has been linked to changes in risk factors, such as pregnancies at older ages, obesity, and previous cesarean delivery, as well as to better data capture systems (Kamara and others 2013). These risk factors are increasingly more common in LICs as well.

**Pregnancy-Related Infection**

Puerperal sepsis causes the greatest concern of all pregnancy-related infections because of its severity. No review of the prevalence of sepsis has been published since the work in the early 2000s for the Global Burden of Diseases (Dolea and Stein 2003). In this review, Dolea and Stein calculate that the incidence of sepsis ranged from 2.7 to 5.2 per 100 live births according to world region. A community-based study in India finds that the incidence of puerperal sepsis in the first week postpartum was 1.2 percent after home delivery and 1.4 percent after facility-based delivery. The incidence of fever was higher at 4 percent overall in the same Indian study (Iyengar 2012). Another study in India finds a high incidence of puerperal infections at home (10 percent) and of fever (12 percent), but the study uses broader

---

**Figure 3.2 Prevalence of Direct Obstetric Complications**

![Graph showing prevalence of various obstetric complications.]

**Figure 3.3 Prevalence of Severe Direct Obstetric Complications**

![Graph showing prevalence of severe obstetric complications.]

Sources: Based on Abalos and others 2013; Adler and others 2012a; Adler and Filippi, unpublished; Calvert and others 2012; Cresswell and others 2013; Dolea and Stein 2003.
definitions and followed women for only 28 days (Bang and others 2004). Risk factors for infections include HIV/AIDS and cesarean section.

**Prolonged and Obstructed Labor**
An unpublished systematic review by Adler and others located only 16 published population-based studies of obstructed and prolonged labor worldwide since 2000. The studies could not be combined through meta-analysis to obtain a global prevalence because of high heterogeneity, which was largely attributed to differences in case definitions. However, the median prevalence was estimated to be 1.9 per 100 deliveries for obstructed labor, and 8.7 per 100 deliveries for combined obstructed and prolonged labor. A systematic review of articles from 1997 to 2002 reporting on uterine rupture finds extremely low prevalence in the community setting (median 0.053, range 0.016 to 0.30 per hundred pregnant women), but it included a study with self-reporting, which tends to overestimate the prevalence of rare conditions (Hofmeyr, Say, and Gülmezoglu 2005).

**Anemia**
Anemia—which occurs when the number of red cells or hemoglobin (Hb) concentration has reached too low a level in the blood—is a commonly diagnosed condition during pregnancy or the postpartum period. Its main symptoms include excessive fatigue; it can contribute to or lead directly to a maternal death when Hb concentration has reached particularly low levels. Anemia has many different causes, including blood loss; infection-related blood cell destruction; and deficient red blood cell production because of sickle cell disease, parasitic diseases such as hookworm or malaria, or nutritional deficiency, including iron deficiency.

During pregnancy, anemia is diagnosed when Hb levels are below the threshold of 11 grams/deciliter. Anemia is classified as severe when the levels reach 7 grams/deciliter. Anemia is well-documented in low-income settings thanks to the ease with which lay fieldworkers can collect hemoglobin levels in survey conditions. Using 257 population-based data sets for 107 countries, Stevens and others (2013) estimate that globally 38.0 percent (95 percent confidence interval 34 percent to 43 percent) of pregnant women have anemia, and 0.9 percent (95 percent confidence interval 0.6 percent to 1.3 percent) have severe anemia. Pregnant women in Central and West Africa appear particularly affected (56.0 percent are anemic, and 1.8 percent are severely so). However, global prevalence trends have improved since 1995 (Stevens and others 2013). The review by Wagner and others (2012) demonstrates that women who suffer severe blood loss during childbirth may remain anemic for several months during the postpartum period.

---

**Box 3.3**

**Definitions of Obstetric Causes of Maternal Morbidities and Deaths**

- **Abortive outcomes** include abortion, miscarriage, ectopic pregnancy, and other abortive conditions (WHO 2013). Abortive outcomes take place before 28 weeks during pregnancy, but this time definition varies among countries, with lower cut-offs of 24 weeks also used.

- **Preeclampsia** is characterized by high blood pressure and protein in the urine; women are diagnosed with *eclampsia* when the preeclampsia syndrome is associated with convulsions.

- **Obstetric hemorrhage** refers to anomalous or excessive bleeding because of an early pregnancy loss, a placental implantation abnormality (including placent a previa or placental abruption), or because of an abnormality in the process of childbirth.

- **Pregnancy-related infections** include puerperal sepsis, infections of the genitourinary tract in pregnancy, other puerperal infections, and infections of the breast associated with childbirth (WHO 2013).

- **Prolonged labor** is labor lasting more than 12 hours, in spite of good uterine contractions and good cervix dilation. In *obstructed labor*, the fetal descent is impaired by a mechanical barrier in the birth canal, despite good contractions (WHO 2008). Causes of obstructed labor include cephalopelvic disproportion, abnormal presentation, fetal abnormality, and abnormality of the reproductive tract.

Postpartum Depression
Mental health disorders during pregnancy and the postpartum period include conditions of various severity and etiology, ranging from baby blues to postpartum depression and puerperal psychosis, as well as posttraumatic stress disorders linked, for example, to the death of a baby. The most common of these disorders is depression, which is associated with pregnancy-related deaths by suicide and with developmental delays in children.

Most studies detect depression through screening questionnaires for psychological distress; the most widely used tool is the Edinburgh Postnatal Depression Scale, which has been translated into many languages and used in many different cultures. These screening questionnaires are not equivalent to clinical diagnoses by medical providers; rather, they indicate a high probability of depression among those who have high scores.

Depression is a well-studied area, with a number of systematic reviews and meta-analyses, supported by large numbers of papers, although only a small proportion of these articles are from LMICs. Fisher and others (2012) calculate that in LMICs, the prevalence of depression and anxiety was 16 percent (95 percent confidence interval 15 percent to 17 percent) during pregnancy and 20 percent (95 percent confidence interval 19 percent to 21 percent) during the postpartum period. Halfbreich and Karkun (2006), who conducted the most comprehensive systematic review to date from a geographical perspective, find a broader range of prevalence of depression (0 percent to 60 percent). They attribute this wide range to cultural differences in the reporting and in the understanding of depression, as well as differences in tools and other methodological approaches. They also conclude, in view of the wide ranges in the estimates, that the prevalence of depression is high and that the widely cited prevalence of 10 percent to 15 percent is not representative of the actual global prevalence.

Incontinence
Incontinence is any involuntary loss of urine. The most common form of urinary incontinence during and after childbirth is stress urinary incontinence, which consists of involuntary leakages on exertion or effort.

Little information is available on the incidence of incontinence in the postpartum period in LMICs. Walker and Gunasekera (2011) find four studies of reproductive-age women published between 1985 and 2010, in which the prevalence ranged from 5 percent to 32 percent. Another systematic review calculates the mean pooled estimates for all types of incontinence during the first three months postpartum to be 33 percent for parous women and 29 percent for primiparous women (Thom and Rortveit 2010). In addition, they find that the risk was higher for vaginal birth (31 percent) than for cesarean birth (15 percent), as reported in several case control studies. Although the authors of this paper attempted to obtain information for all countries, no papers from LICs were included.

Obstetric Fistula
Obstetric fistula results in the continuous loss of urine or fecal matter, occurring both day and night (Polan and others 2015). It has been described as a condition worse than death in view of its medical manifestation, treatment difficulties, and social consequences (Lewis Wall 2006). It occurs when labor is obstructed, and contractions continue with the baby’s head stuck in the pelvis or vagina; cesarean section is usually required to deliver the baby (Lewis Wall 2012). As a result of the severe delay in delivery and continuous pressure of the fetal head on maternal tissues, blood flow is blocked, resulting in necrosis. This condition leaves abnormal gaps (or communications) between the vagina and bladder or rectum, allowing urine or stool to pass continuously through the vagina. The meta-analysis by Adler and others (2013) of the incidence of fistula in LMICs finds a pooled incidence of 0.09 (95 percent confidence interval 0.01–0.25) per 1,000 recently pregnant women. Another recent meta-analysis of Demographic and Health Survey data finds a lifetime prevalence of 3 cases per 1,000 women of reproductive age (95 percent credible intervals 1.3–5.5) in Sub-Saharan Africa (Maheu-Giroux and others 2015). The condition is extremely rare in HICs, where there are few delays in obtaining good quality maternity care.

Postpartum Vaginal or Uterine Prolapse
Pelvic organ prolapse is defined as the symptomatic “descent of one or more of: the anterior vaginal wall, the posterior vaginal wall, and the apex of the vagina or vault” (Jelovsek, Maher, and Barber 2007, 1027). Incidence increases with age, parity, and body mass index; hard physical labor is also a risk factor. Prolapse is among the Global Burden of Disease’s most common sequelae, with a prevalence of about 9.28 percent. Few population-based incidence studies measure prolapse after childbirth. There is a lack of agreement as to what constitutes a significant prolapse; a grading system exists, but it requires clinical interpretation. In Burkina Faso, 26 percent of women with uncomplicated facility-based deliveries received a diagnosis of prolapse in the postpartum period (Filippi and others 2007). In The Gambia, a population-based study with physical examinations finds that 46 percent...
of women ages 15–54 years had prolapse, and 14 percent had moderate or severe prolapse (Scherf and others 2002). Severe prolapse affects quality of life and is associated with depression (Zekele and others 2013).

**HIV/AIDS**

A positive HIV status is linked to an increased risk of death in pregnant and nonpregnant women (Zaba and others 2013). A recent systematic review suggests that HIV-infected women had eight times the risk of a pregnancy-related death, compared with uninfected women; the excess mortality attributable to HIV/AIDS among HIV-infected pregnant and postpartum women was close to 1,000 deaths per 100,000 pregnant women. The excess mortality attributable to HIV in pregnant women is much smaller than in nonpregnant women, however, probably because women who become pregnant tend to be healthier. A review that investigates the interaction between HIV/AIDS status and direct obstetric complications shows that women who are HIV-positive are 3.4 times more likely to develop sepsis (Calvert and Ronsmans 2013). The evidence of positive links for hypertensive diseases of pregnancy, dystocia, and hemorrhage was variable.

**Global Burden of Diseases**

The prevalence of conditions, as well as the prevalence, severity or disability weight, and the duration of their respective sequelae, are key factors in establishing the burden of various conditions in a population and in prioritizing them. Some conditions are noteworthy, for example, uterine rupture, because they are very severe and are associated with high risk of death in the mother or the baby. A few severe conditions, for example, fistula, despite being rare, can last a very long time and severely affect women’s quality of life.

The WHO Global Health Estimates and IHME Global Burden of Disease estimates suggest that the absolute number of disability-adjusted life years associated with maternal conditions have decreased, owing to lower maternal mortality rates, but the number of years lived with disabilities has increased (Vos and others 2012; WHO 2014a). The increase in disabilities is mostly due to obstructed labor, hypertension, and indirect conditions (Vos and others 2012); it is also due to the high population growth rate, which means that the total number of women of reproductive age is rising.

**Major Pregnancy-Related Complications**

A longitudinal study shows that women who initially survived severe complications were more likely to die within the next five years than other women (Storeng and others 2012). Many of these deaths occur in subsequent pregnancies, indicating that a small number of women, often those with chronic illnesses, accumulate pregnancy-related risks. What proportion of women suffer a major complication during pregnancy, taking into account various comorbidities? Researchers at Columbia University has suggested 15 percent prevalence as a benchmark for their indicators of met need for complications (Paxton, Maine, and Hijab 2003). This number has not been validated, except possibly by a study in India (Bang and others 2004). If all of the acute direct complications with nonabortive outcomes mentioned in this chapter (Ronsmans and others 2002) were mutually exclusive, the total prevalence could be as high as 31 percent.

**BROADER DETERMINANTS OF MATERNAL MORTALITY AND MORBIDITY**

This section presents an overview of the broader determinants of maternal mortality and morbidity and highlights the specificities of maternal health by introducing an established conceptual framework and other classification approaches. Determinants include individual risk factors, such as age and parity; characteristics of the social, legal, and economic contexts; and the physical environment, for example, water sources and geographical accessibility.

**Significant Individual Risk Factors**

Descriptive studies have demonstrated that women face the highest risk of pregnancy-related death and severe morbidity (Hurt and others 2008) when they are very young or older (Blanc, Winfrey, and Ross 2013) when they are expecting their first baby or when they have had many pregnancies, when they live far away from health facilities, or when they do not benefit from support from their families and friends (Mbizvo and others 1993). Table 3.1 illustrates some of the main determinants of maternal mortality and how they influence women’s chances of survival during pregnancy or childbirth.

We consider two additional important facets of maternal mortality when discussing determinants and interventions to reduce deaths.

- The risk of maternal deaths has two components: the risk of getting pregnant, which is a risk related to fertility and its control or lack of control; and the obstetric risk of developing a complication and dying while pregnant or in labor. The obstetric risk is highest
Table 3.1 Examples of Risk Factors and Pathways of Influence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Individual nonmedical risk factors</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age</strong></td>
<td>Women at the extreme ends of the reproductive age range (younger than age 20 years and older than age 35 years) have a higher risk of death for both physiological and sociocultural reasons; the largest number of deaths might be in the middle group, because this is when most births occur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parity</strong></td>
<td>Higher risks of complications and death are associated with first pregnancy and more than three to five pregnancies. Women in their first pregnancies have longer duration of labor; women with multiple pregnancies are more likely to suffer postpartum hemorrhage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unintended pregnancies</strong></td>
<td>Unwanted pregnancy is a risk factor for unsafe abortion, lack of social support, and domestic violence. Women who continue with their pregnancies are less likely to plan for childbirth and more likely to commit suicide (Ahmed and others 2004).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Marital status</strong></td>
<td>Single women who are pregnant often lack support from their partners or their families and are more likely to try to induce an abortion or to run into financial and other logistical difficulties when seeking care for labor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Women’s education</strong></td>
<td>Women who are educated know where to obtain effective services and are more likely to request these services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Husbands’ education</strong></td>
<td>The husband’s educational level is often a more important determinant of maternal mortality than the woman’s education (Evjen-Olsen and others 2008).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ethnicity and religion</strong></td>
<td>In high-income countries, women from black or migrant communities are more likely to die during pregnancy for cultural and medical reasons, including chronic ill health. Women from certain religious groups may seek medical advice from their religious leaders or deliver in places of worship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Poverty</strong></td>
<td>Money is often required to travel or to deliver safely. Emergency cesarean section is a very expensive procedure, which can lead to delays in seeking care and in catastrophic expenditures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Obesity and other nutritional factors</strong></td>
<td>Obese or anemic women are more likely to die in childbirth. Obese women face increased risk due to comorbid conditions, such as diabetes, hypertension, or cardiac problems; it is also technically more difficult to provide them with clinical care. Severely anemic women cannot tolerate hemorrhage to the same degree as women with higher hemoglobin levels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past obstetric history</strong></td>
<td>Past stillbirths and emergency cesarean are predictors of complications and deaths.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Social and economic context</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Women’s status</strong></td>
<td>Often measured using education as a proxy, women’s status indicators help to assess the extent to which women can make decisions on their own and the extent to which women and their decisions are valued. Many proxy variables have been used to measure women’s status, including age at marriage, financial decision-making power, and women’s opinions on domestic violence (Gabrysch and Campbell 2009).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Legality of reproductive health services</strong></td>
<td>Where abortion laws are restrictive, women are more likely to have unsafe abortions. The current focus is on delegating certain procedures to midlevel providers to ensure that more women have access to safe and effective services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Conflict</strong></td>
<td>Extremely high levels of maternal mortality have been reported where infrastructure and communication systems have been destroyed, for example, in Afghanistan and Somalia.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Physical environment and health systems characteristics</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Staff and facilities</strong></td>
<td>The number, quality, and distribution of staff members are important risk factors for mortality; it is difficult to predict which women will have complications, and women are more likely to die in home births. Skilled birth attendance is often the most significant risk factor in maternal mortality models. Women who live at a distance from facilities are much more likely to delay seeking care and to experience multiple referrals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transportation network</strong></td>
<td>Patient access to transportation and problematic topography are risk factors for long duration of the second tier of delays. (See section on “Three Delays Model.”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water and sanitation</strong></td>
<td>The availability and quality of water and sanitation (WATSAN) are key factors at the community level; they influence direct risks of diarrheal diseases and other water-borne infections in pregnant and parturient women, as does personal hygiene before and after delivery (Shordt, Smet, and Herschderfer 2012). WATSAN can indirectly pose risks to women’s health if they carry heavy water receptacles or are subjected to violence at public water collection points or latrines. In health care facilities, WATSAN affects the hygiene practices of providers during childbirth, such as hand washing and environmental cleaning, with attendant increased risks of maternal and newborn nosocomial infections (Hussein and others 2011).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Quality of care and accountability</strong></td>
<td>As more women deliver with skilled providers, the quality of care in facilities becomes increasingly important. The accountability of the health sector is a new focus of interventions to improve the quality of care. The availability of blood is one of the most important determinants of the quality of care received by women who are severely ill (Graham, McCaw-Binns, and Munjanja 2013).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: See Gabrysch and Campbell (2009) for further examples of risk factors.
at the time of delivery. The determinants of these risks share many similarities, but also have specific characteristics.

- Although the overall risks of maternal death are highest among young adolescents and older women of reproductive age, the highest number of deaths is in the middle group of women around age 25 years.

**Three Delays Model**

Conceptual models guide research and practice and help in the determination of how best to reduce adverse outcomes, by grouping determinants and highlighting their linkages with events in the pathway from health to death. The three delays model (Thaddeus and Maine 1994), attractive because of its simplicity and action-oriented presentation, is based on the following premises:

- Maternal complications are mostly emergencies.
- Maternal complications cannot be predicted with sufficient accuracy.
- Maternal deaths are largely preventable through tertiary prevention (preventing deaths among women who have been diagnosed with a complication).

At the 1987 launch of the Safe Motherhood Initiative, maternal health experts discussed how long a woman would have to have a particular complication before she would die, if untreated. They agreed that for the most frequent complications, women with postpartum hemorrhage had less than 2 hours before death; for antepartum hemorrhage, eclampsia, obstructed labor, and sepsis, the times would be 12 hours, 2 days, 3 days, and 6 days, respectively.

The model has three levels of delay:

- The first delay is the elapsed time between the onset of a complication and the recognition of the need to transport the patient to a facility.
- The second delay is the elapsed time between leaving the home and reaching the facility.
- The third delay is the elapsed time from presentation at the facility to the provision of appropriate treatment.

Each delay has a distinctive set of determinants. The determinants of the first delay are related to the individual circumstances of the women and their families, who must first recognize that care is needed and then be able to access transport or money to travel to facilities. The determinants of the second delay concern the physical environment, the type of transport, and the quality of the roads, as well as the performance of the referral system between facilities. The determinants of the third delay are related to quality of care, such as the number and training of staff members and the availability of blood supplies and essential equipment. Although the actions and characteristics of women and families can influence the length of the third delay, for example, by helping to mobilize elements of the surgical kits for cesarean delivery by purchasing missing supplies in pharmacies (Gohou and others 2004), most of the determinants of the third delay are related to service provision.

The three delays model has weaknesses. It does not include the concept of primary prevention (avoid pregnancy) and secondary prevention (avoid complications once pregnant). It ignores family planning, noncommunicable chronic diseases, antenatal care, and postpartum care. Implicitly, it also assumes that complications arise at home, whereas increasing numbers of women deliver in facilities (Filippi and others 2009). In addition, it does not consider the newly identified “fourth delay,” which arises when women are discharged unwell or chronically ill from facilities and die at home during the postpregnancy period or in the next pregnancy (Pacagnella and others 2012; Storeng and others 2012).

**Rights-Based Approach**

The rights-based approach to understanding the determinants of maternal health is primarily concerned with the legal, cultural, and social context of service accessibility and delivery; it has been gaining a higher profile with the introduction of MDG 5b in 2007. It began with the observation that most maternal deaths are avoidable, as illustrated by the wide divergence in lifetime risks of maternal death (the probability that a 15-year-old woman will die of a pregnancy related cause) between HICs (one in 3,700) and LMICs (one in 160) (WHO 2014a), and between rich and poor women; that a considerable evidence-based literature exists with respect to effective clinical interventions; and that the reduction of maternal mortality is firmly embedded in women’s ability to control the occurrence and timing of pregnancy (Freedman 2001).

Most maternal deaths are not simply biological phenomena; many are in part explained by the lack of freedom and entitlements experienced by women and service providers, as well as by the lack of accountability of providers, health systems, and countries toward women and their families (Freedman 2001; PMNCH 2013). The concept of freedom refers to the right of women to control their bodies, including their reproductive options, and to have access to acceptable and effective family
Planning services, including safe abortions. Entitlements are concerned with access to good quality services, which must be evidence based and respectful and emphasize equity in access for all women who need care, whether they are rich or poor, married or single.

The accessibility and availability of good quality family planning and legal abortion services are key determinants of maternal mortality in many LICs. Quantitative models suggest that preventing pregnancy with contraception has a bigger role to play in reducing maternal mortality than does inducing abortion when pregnant with an unintended pregnancy (Singh and Darroch 2012). However, although access to safe abortion techniques has become easier with the availability of medical abortion, including on the black market from drug sellers or the Internet in countries where abortion is illegal, many women still die because they cannot access safe abortion services (Ganatra and others 2014). The distal determinants of fertility and unwanted pregnancy are broadly similar to the distal determinants of maternal health, with their emphasis on culture, poverty, and education, but their proximate determinants are somewhat different, with a focus on fecundability and marriage patterns (Bongaarts 1978) and, in the case of unwanted pregnancies, an emphasis on the needs of younger and unattached women.

Several studies, mostly qualitative, highlight episodes of rampant disrespect and abuse of pregnant women or women in labor in some maternity units (Hassan-Bitar and Wick 2007; Silal and others 2012). Groundbreaking research is taking place with the TRAction Project in Kenya and Tanzania to delineate the different forms of disrespect and abuse, understand their origins, and quantitatively document their frequency. Lack of respectful care could mean that women do not seek care when they need it, or do not seek it as quickly as they should, and could contribute to deaths of mothers and babies.

Finally, it is important to be aware that in HICs and LMICs, violence is sometimes one of the most frequent causes of death during pregnancy and childbirth (Ganatra, Coyaji, and Rao 1998; Glazier and others 2006).

**Health System Factors**

The maternal mortality level is one of the best criteria for assessing the relative performance of health systems. One example of a coverage indicator of the continuum of care is skilled birth attendance, which is particularly inequitable. While women rely on a functioning health system to access and use professional care, this indicator has shown large differences between the richest and the poorest women (WHO and UNICEF 2012). Health system classifications are helpful in highlighting the barriers or in facilitating the factors that many women meet when they seek care during pregnancy, childbirth, or emergency situations. These classifications complement the three delays model because they go beyond emergency obstetric care. The WHO health system building blocks offer a starting point for classifying health system determinants and include the following:

- Quality of service delivery and referral system
- Number, distribution, and training of the types of providers required, including midwives and obstetrician-gynecologists
- Completeness and responsiveness of the health information system, including the adequacy of the Maternal Death Surveillance and Response (WHO 2013)
- Ease of access to essential medications, such as magnesium sulfate, misoprostol, and oxytocin, and the supplies necessary for blood transfusions
- Leadership and financing, a particularly relevant issue in several Sub-Saharan African countries that have ended user fees
- Governance, including the capacity of authorities at various levels of the health system to put policies and management systems in place so that women’s health can improve.

All of these building blocks are determinants of the coverage and quality of care that women receive across the continuum of care. Country case studies describe the relative importance of these building blocks or equivalent groupings in understanding progress in maternal health (McPake and Koblinsky 2009). The equitable distribution of staff and the adequacy of blood supplies appear to be issues in most settings in LICs. Coverage of one visit for antenatal care is very high; the median coverage level is 88 percent among the Countdown Countries for which data are available (Countdown Countries comprise 75 countries where 95 percent of the world’s maternal and child deaths occur). Progress has also been made for skilled birth attendance since 1990 (median coverage of 57 percent), emergency obstetric care (as measured, for example, by the cesarean section rate, and by the density of emergency obstetric care facilities per birth or population), and postnatal care for mothers (median coverage of 41 percent). However, large urban-rural and wealth inequities remain, particularly in countries that have made the least progress since the 1990s (Cavallaro and others 2013; WHO and UNICEF 2012).
Intersectoral Issues

The health sector does not exist in isolation; in developing and implementing effective policies, its interactions with other sectors, such as education, finance, water, and transport, must be considered. For example, the well-documented decline in maternal mortality in Bangladesh may be related to the availability of emergency obstetric care interventions and fertility decline, but it is also likely to be linked to the increased participation of women in the labor force. Several ecological studies of maternal mortality have shown the relationship between maternal mortality and skilled birth attendance, as well as to gross national product, health care expenditures, female literacy, population density, and access to clean water (Buor and Bream 2004; Montoya, Calvert, and Filippi 2014).

Observational studies have shown inadequate levels of hygiene in many maternity facilities (Benova, Cumming, and Campbell 2014), with direct health impacts on mothers, newborns, and care providers (Mehta and others 2011). The reasons are multifactorial and include poor infrastructure; inadequate equipment and supplies; and poor practices by care providers and cleaners as a result of inadequate knowledge, attitudes, motivation, and supervision (Campbell and others 2015). Interventions to address these constraints go beyond the health sector, particularly for water and sanitation (Shordt, Smet, and Herschderfer 2012). Timely access to care and the difficulties in obtaining motorized transport, as well as challenging topography and inadequate roads, are important barriers to care. Gabrysich and others (2011) demonstrate that in Zambia, the odds of women being able or choosing to deliver in a health facility decreased by 29 percent with every doubling of distance between their home and the closest facility. They conclude that if all Zambian women lived within 5 kilometers of health facilities, 16 percent of home deliveries could be averted.

A Lifecycle Perspective

Safe motherhood programs traditionally consider each pregnancy to be a separate event. Emerging evidence from cohort studies of near-miss patients suggests that women who have suffered severe obstetric complications have increased mortality risks for several years and have a higher risk of complications in subsequent pregnancies. It is important to be able to identify these women and offer them medical support for an extended postpartum period and in subsequent pregnancies (Assarag and others 2015; Storeng and others 2012).

CONCLUSIONS

This chapter summarizes available data on the levels and trends of maternal mortality and morbidity and their main determinants. Mathematical modeling indicates that maternal mortality is declining in most countries, that women face the highest risk of death in the MDG region of Oceania and Sub-Saharan Africa, and that deaths due to direct causes—such as hemorrhage and hypertension—continue to be the main causes in Latin America and the Caribbean and in Sub-Saharan Africa. The proportion of hemorrhage and hypertension deaths found globally remains high despite established interventions to prevent and treat direct causes of maternal death (see chapter 7), such as active management of the third stage of labor. With the data available, it is not possible to determine if this high proportion is the result of a failure to implement policies and therefore quality of care, if there is a shift toward antepartum hemorrhage, or if misclassifications of abortion and obstructed labor are erroneously increasing the hemorrhage category.

Role of Indirect Causes

The data presented in this chapter also suggest that the proportion of maternal deaths due to indirect causes is increasing in most parts of the world. In addition, although the proportion of women who have a serious morbidity remains a hotly debated topic by epidemiologists, we estimate that approximately 30 percent of women may have a serious condition during pregnancy, childbirth, or the postpartum period. The main strategies used to date to reduce maternal mortality are based on the understanding that most complications are emergencies and that most deaths occur during a very short period around childbirth. Accordingly, the focus has been on reducing delays for emergency care, as well as on preventive measures, such as facilitating access to skilled birth attendance and reproductive rights. Complementary strategies are needed to address the indirect causes of death and the broader burden of maternal morbidity, in particular, given that the sequelae of maternal morbidity can last a long time.

Health program managers and policy makers need to continue to encourage women to deliver in health facilities, where complications can be prevented by appropriate care and where women can receive lifesaving interventions. At the same time, the gaps in coverage of effective interventions for indirect causes of death according to their distribution in various settings have significant implications for the complexity of service delivery in light of the urgent need to accelerate the rate of decline in maternal mortality and, ultimately,
to stop all preventable deaths. Primary health care may have a greater role in the future in improving the health outcomes of pregnant and recently delivered women.

Quality of Health Care Services

In addition, if the post-2015 agenda is to emphasize universal access to essential interventions, the perceived and technical quality of the health care services provided becomes even more crucial in the fight against maternal mortality and morbidity, given their consequences for both demand for and supply of services. Thus, the international community emphasizes the development and implementation of a palette of quality-of-care interventions, including clinical audits, childbirth checklists, maternal deaths surveillance and response, and interventions to increase awareness around respectful care.

Need for Better Data

Finally, we conclude with a call for action for better data. Although the global attention to maternal mortality has engendered more studies and attempts to measure it, the quality, regularity, and ability of the results to robustly show differentials have not improved dramatically, especially routine sources of information such as vital registration. We remain largely dependent on research and mathematical modeling. The paucity of information on maternal morbidity is an even greater issue. At the community level, data on direct obstetric complications are almost nonexistent; the burden of ill health associated with some conditions, such as sepsis and ectopic pregnancies, has not been reviewed for many years. Better population-based sources for local-level decision making are essential to achieving improved outcomes.

NOTES

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:
  a) lower-middle-income = US$1,046–US$4,125
  b) upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126–US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

For consistency and ease of comparison, DCP3 is using the World Health Organization’s Global Health Estimates (GHE) for data on diseases burden, except in cases where a relevant data point is not available from GHE. In those instances, an alternative data source is noted.


REFERENCES


INTRODUCTION
This chapter reviews recent estimates of levels and distributions by cause of death of children under age five years, including stillbirths. We focus on 2000–15 and present results by World Bank region. We introduce an innovation by including information on stillbirths, defined as deaths from the 28th week of gestation. The standard convention has been to use live birth as the starting point of risk measurement, as in Millennium Development Goal 4 (MDG 4) to reduce mortality under age five years by two-thirds from 1990 to 2015 (UN 2000). However, substantial proportions of stillbirths are preventable given adequate obstetric care, and would, if prevented, increase the number of live births. We argue that including stillbirths in summary measures of child mortality provides a more inclusive assessment of health service provision than the standard convention.

Data on levels and trends of mortality before age five years are taken from the 2015 report by the United Nations Inter-Agency Group on Mortality Estimation (IGME) (You and others 2015). Data on levels and trends of causes of mortality under age five years are taken from the latest estimates produced by the World Health Organization (WHO) and UNICEF’s (United Nations Children’s Fund) Child Health Epidemiology Reference Group (Liu and others, forthcoming).

LEVELS AND TRENDS OF MORTALITY UNDER AGE FIVE YEARS, 2000–15
Mortality rates among young children are the best single indicator of child health in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs), and they are often also used as indicators of general social and economic development. The most widely used measure of child mortality in recent years has been the under-five mortality rate (U5MR), defined as the probability of dying between live birth and age five years; this measure was adopted as the primary target for MDG 4 (UN 2013). However, like all summary measures, the U5MR conceals age detail and patterns of mortality—and mortality change—in the first month and year of life that are of epidemiological and programmatic interest. In this chapter, we include stillbirths as part of the risk of dying under age five years, and the pregnancies at risk as all those that reach 28 weeks gestation (described as “viable fetuses”). We introduce a new measure, the total under-five mortality rate, or TU5MR, defined as the probability of dying between the 28th week of pregnancy and the fifth birthday.

We present estimates both as probabilities of dying and in the form of numbers of deaths and for age ranges 28 weeks to live birth, live birth to 27 days, 28 days to one year, and one year to five years. The probabilities of dying for these age ranges correspond to the conventional stillbirth, neonatal, postneonatal, and child
mortality rates. We also present estimates of the broadest measure of child mortality risk, the TU5MR.

As a result of using this new conceptualization, we have to combine information from two sources, one for stillbirths and the other for mortality following a live birth, and make some approximations along the way. However, the approximations are relatively minor and do not affect the overall picture of recent levels and trends in TU5MR.

Sources

The estimates presented in this section are based on separate estimation exercises, one for the stillbirth rate and one for mortality of live-born children to age five years. For mortality of live-born children, we use the estimates by the IGME (You and others 2015); the methodology used by the IGME to arrive at estimates is described elsewhere (Alkema and others 2014). We present the probabilities of dying from live birth and the ratio of numbers of deaths to live births for World Bank regions for 2000 and 2015.

The derivation of stillbirth rates and numbers of stillbirths is less direct. The most recent systematic analysis of stillbirth rates provides estimates for MDG regions for 1995 and 2009 (Cousens and others 2011). We use the rate of change in the stillbirth rate between 1995 and 2009 for each MDG region to interpolate to 2000 and extrapolate to 2015. We then assume that these rates for MDG regions, suitably aggregated, closely approximate those for World Bank regions for those years. Specifically, to approximate the World Bank region of East Asia and Pacific, we combine the MDG regions of East Asia, South-East Asia, and Oceania; for the World Bank region of Middle East and North Africa, we combine the MDG regions of Western Asia and North Africa; and for the World Bank region of Europe and Central Asia, we combine the Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS) Europe and CIS Asia.

To estimate numbers of stillbirths, we use the relationship between rates and numbers of events. The neonatal mortality rate (NMR) is calculated as the number of neonatal deaths (ND) divided by the number of live births, so given the number of ND and the NMR, we can calculate the number of live births. The stillbirth mortality rate (SBR) is calculated as the number of stillbirths divided by the sum of the number of stillbirths and live births. We can estimate the number of stillbirths from the NMR, ND, and SBR as follows:

\[ SB = \frac{ND \times SBR}{NMR \times (1 - SBR)} \]

These numbers are not affected by differences in numbers of live births between MDG and World Bank regions, only by possible differences in stillbirth rates, which are likely to be minor, given the close overlap of the regions.

Results

Table 4.1 shows probabilities of dying for the four age ranges and for the TU5MR. Globally, the TU5MR declined from 95.4 per 1,000 viable fetuses in 2000 to 59.1 in 2015, an annual average rate of reduction (ARR) of 3.2 percent (table 4.2). For LMICs, the TU5MR declined from 105.9 in 2000 to 65.2 in 2015, and the decline for high-income countries (HICs) was from 14.3 to 9.7. The ARR was somewhat faster in the LMICs (3.2 percent) than in the HICs (2.6 percent), so the risk ratio for LMICs to HICs declined from 7.4 to 6.7 over the period; the absolute difference narrowed much more sharply, from 92 to 56 per 1,000 viable fetuses. In both years, there is large variation across regions. HICs had the lowest risks, about one-third that of the next best region, Latin America and the Caribbean. Sub-Saharan Africa had the highest risk, with the TU5MR remaining substantially greater than 100 per 1,000 in both years, more than 10 times the risk in HICs. The region with the second-highest risk in both years was South Asia, although its TU5MR fell to less than 100 in 2015; its disadvantage relative to HICs declined only slightly, however, from 8.3 to 7.9. The remaining regions had rather similar TU5MRs, between 44 and 59 per 1,000 in 2000 and between 26 and 36 in 2015, slightly narrowing their disadvantage relative to HICs.

At the global level, the neonatal period has the highest age-specific risk in both 2000 and 2015. This is also the case for LMICs as a group and for all regions individually, except Sub-Saharan Africa in 2000 and East Asia and Pacific in 2015. For all LMICs, and particularly for Sub-Saharan Africa, the age range of lowest risk shifts from stillbirths in 2000 to ages one to five years in 2015. South Asia’s lowest risk is in the postneonatal group in 2000; for all other regions, the lowest risk in both years is from ages one to five years. The absolute difference between the highest and lowest risk among age ranges decreased by more than 90 percent from 2000 to 2015. The mortality rate estimate for Sub-Saharan Africa is 2.4 times that of the next highest region (South Asia), for both postneonatal and ages one to five years, despite similar neonatal and stillbirth rates.

Table 4.2 shows the ARR in probabilities of dying between 2000 and 2015 for the age ranges and regions shown in table 4.1. As noted, the ARR for TU5MR globally was 3.2 percent, somewhat less than the rate needed (4.4 percent) to achieve the MDG 4 target for the conventional U5MR. If we apply the MDG 4 target for U5MR to the TU5MR, the only region to
exceed the MDG 4 target ARR was East Asia and Pacific (5.0 percent), although LMIC countries of Europe and Central Asia (4.1 percent) came fairly close. All other regions, with ARRs ranging between 2.6 percent and 3.5 percent, performed well below the MDG target. Globally and in all regions, declines were slowest for stillbirths, averaging only about 1 percent per year in the aggregate, and highest for child mortality rates except for Latin America and the Caribbean; rates of decline for postneonatal mortality exceeded the TU5MR, on average, in most regions. It is interesting to note how similar the rates of decline are for postneonatal mortality risks and risks between ages one and five years on the one hand, and how different stillbirth rates of decline are from declines of risk after birth, on the other hand. The ARR of mortality risk after the neonatal period was very close to or greater than the rate of reduction required to achieve the primary MDG 4 target in all LMICs; failure

### Table 4.1  Probabilities of Dying per 1,000 Pregnancy Completions from the 28th Week of Pregnancy to Age Five Years, 2000 and 2015

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>World Bank region</th>
<th>2000</th>
<th>2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28 weeks gestation to birth</td>
<td>Birth to 27 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low- and middle-income countries</td>
<td>22.8</td>
<td>33.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East Asia and Pacific</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>21.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe and Central Asia</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>19.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin America and the Caribbean</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>15.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle East and North Africa</td>
<td>14.8</td>
<td>22.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Asia</td>
<td>28.9</td>
<td>44.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Saharan Africa</td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>39.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-income countries</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World</td>
<td>20.6</td>
<td>29.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sources: Based on Cousens and others 2011; and 2015 UN Inter-Agency Group for Child Mortality Estimation (IGME).

Note: TU5MR = total under-5 mortality rate.

### Table 4.2  Annual Rates of Reduction in Probabilities of Dying per 1,000 Pregnancy Completions from the 28th Week of Pregnancy to Age Five Years, between 2000 and 2015

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>World Bank region</th>
<th>2000–15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28 weeks gestation to birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low- and middle-income countries</td>
<td>1.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East Asia and Pacific</td>
<td>3.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe and Central Asia</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin America and the Caribbean</td>
<td>2.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle East and North Africa</td>
<td>1.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Asia</td>
<td>0.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Saharan Africa</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-income countries</td>
<td>1.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World</td>
<td>1.16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sources: Based on Cousens and others 2011; and 2015 UN Inter-Agency Group for Child Mortality Estimation (IGME).

Note: TU5MR = total under-5 mortality rate.
to achieve the target rate of decline overall was the result of relatively slower declines for stillbirths (especially) and neonatal mortality.

The numbers of deaths by age range are a product of risk (probability of dying) and numbers at risk (whether population, births, or viable fetuses). Table 4.3 shows estimated numbers of deaths by age range, region, and year. The number of deaths between 28 weeks of gestation and age five declined from 12.5 million in 2000 to 8.4 million in 2015, a decline of 2.6 percent per year (table 4.4). Globally, the numbers of deaths are highest in the neonatal period in both years, followed by the postneonatal period in 2000 but by stillbirths in 2015. The numbers of deaths declined for all regions and for all age ranges, except for stillbirths in Sub-Saharan Africa and the Middle East and North Africa, which increased at 1.21 percent and 0.19 percent per year, respectively, reflecting slowly increasing risks, especially in Sub-Saharan Africa. The numbers of deaths under age five years declined fastest in Latin America and the Caribbean and in East Asia and Pacific; the slowest rate of decline, by a substantial margin, was in Sub-Saharan Africa and the Middle East and North Africa (1.5 percent in both regions); the third-slowest were HICs (2.2 percent).
During this period, there was a marked concentration of global deaths before the fifth birthday in Sub-Saharan Africa, with the proportion increasing from 40 percent to 47 percent; the proportion of child deaths between the ages of one and five years increased from 54 percent to 62 percent. Approximately 98 percent of deaths occurred in LMICs in all age groups in both 2000 and 2015. In East Asia and Pacific and South Asia, which are the two regions with shares of global deaths under age five years of more than 10 percent, the proportion declined, from 13 percent to 10 percent and from 37 percent to 33 percent, respectively.

Estimates of stillbirth rates have not been developed by gender of the fetus, but estimates are available of the conventional U5MR by gender. For LMICs overall in 2013, the ratio of boys to girls U5MR was about 1.08, but this average conceals substantial regional variation. For Europe and Central Asia, Latin America and the Caribbean, East Asia and Pacific, and HICs, the ratio ranged from 1.19 to 1.26; for Sub-Saharan Africa and the Middle East and North Africa, the ratio was about 1.15, but was less than 1.0 in South Asia, indicating a disadvantage for girls (results not shown). The numbers of deaths by gender of child reflect both differences in risk by gender and differences in gender ratios at birth, such that the overall ratio for LMICs of deaths of boys to deaths of girls under age five years is 1.17; this rate varies from 1.08 in South Asia to about 1.30 in East Asia and Pacific (elevated by the very high sex ratio at birth in China), Europe and Central Asia, Latin America and the Caribbean, and HICs. As a general rule (Hill and Liu 2013), the ratio of boys to girls U5MR tends to rise as overall U5MR declines until it reaches values of less than about 25 per 1,000 live births, so the ratio for LMICs is likely to increase in coming decades.

Discussion and Policy Implications
A major advance in the discussion of child mortality change in this chapter is the inclusion of stillbirths in overall mortality before age five years; this change adds 2.5 million deaths before age five, many of them preventable given existing interventions, to the global total in 2015. We see this as important because some overlap exists between the infrastructure and interventions to prevent stillbirths and those to reduce neonatal deaths.

Our analysis shows that both mortality risks and numbers of deaths under age five years declined substantially from 2000 to 2015, and that all four age ranges benefited in all regions. However, the global pace of decline was still slower than that required to achieve the MDG 4 target. This disappointing rate of decline was due to slow progress in reducing stillbirth and neonatal mortality rates (annual rates of decline of 1.2 percent and 3.1 percent, respectively, at the global level) and a shift in at-risk populations away from lower mortality to higher mortality regions, particularly in Sub-Saharan Africa. Progress has been substantial in this age range, but risks remain high; in some regions, injury risks are actually increasing (Liu and others 2015) suggests that rates of decline are accelerating in some countries in the region.

Child mortality reduction benefits from some tailwinds however. An increasing proportion of births will occur in urban areas, with lower mortality risks (Fink and Hill 2013). The numbers of births are likely to stop increasing in regions other than Sub-Saharan Africa; in some regions, the numbers are already falling, which will affect the numbers of child deaths, although not the rates. Falling fertility will also somewhat reduce the risk profile of births, with smaller proportions of high parity births and births to older mothers; falling fertility does, however, increase the proportion of one high risk group, first births, and it appears to have limited impact on birth intervals (Hill and Liu 2013). One of the most widely recognized factors associated with child mortality decline is maternal education (Hill and Liu 2013), and the educational profile of women in LMICs is improving rapidly; cohorts with high proportions of women with
secondary or higher education, the levels with the strongest associations with reduced child mortality, are now approaching the peak years of reproduction.

A final positive factor is likely to be continued economic growth, which, according to some forecasts, may differentially favor Sub-Saharan Africa; much may depend, however, on how the gains in income growth are distributed among populations.

**LEVELS AND TRENDS OF CAUSES OF MORTALITY UNDER AGE FIVE YEARS, 2000–15**

Both probabilities of dying and numbers of deaths under age five years declined substantially from 2000 to 2015. At the global level, however, the declines failed to reach the MDG 4 targets, and acceleration is needed at the global, regional, and national levels beyond 2015. Progress can be accelerated by using reliable information about the distribution of deaths by cause and by scaling up cause-specific interventions (Bhutta and others 2008; Darmstadt and others 2005; Jones and others 2003; Lawn and others 2011). To guide global and national programs and research efforts, information about the distribution of causes of child deaths should be routinely updated. To assess the lasting effects of child health interventions and to develop the long-term child survival strategies, time trends of child deaths by cause that are derived using consistent methods are needed.

This chapter focuses on major child deaths from the 28th week of pregnancy to age five years, so we discuss causes of both stillbirths and deaths from live birth to age five years. Because there is only moderate overlap between the causes of death in late pregnancy and in the neonatal period, we will first discuss cause structures of stillbirths, and then the causes of death after a live birth. National data on causes of stillbirth are not available for either HICs or LMICs. As of 2011, more than 35 stillbirth classification systems had been published in the literature, the majority of them developed to describe the 2 percent of stillbirths occurring in HICs. These classification systems generally require fetal surveillance, advanced diagnostics, and post mortem examination, making their use in resource-constrained settings impractical (Lawn and others 2011). Even if data exist, unexplained stillbirths have been shown to account for 15 percent to 71 percent of stillbirths, limiting the usefulness of the data, especially for comparative purposes. Flenady and others (2009, 10) state that restricting reporting to the underlying cause of stillbirth is “challenging, (and often inappropriate), due to the complexity of the clinical situation in which the fetus dies.” For this reason, data are also needed on contributing causes and factors associated with stillbirth, two aspects of the International Classification of Diseases that are particularly weak.

With respect to deaths in childhood, the Child Health Epidemiology Reference Group has published a series of estimates of the distribution of causes of child death since 2005, during which time estimation methods and the quality and quantity of input data have improved (Black and others 2010; Bryce and others 2005; Johnson and others 2010; Lawn, Wilczynska-Ketnede, and Cousens 2006; Liu and others 2012; Liu and others 2015; Liu and others, forthcoming; Morris, Black, and Tomaskovic 2003). We report here estimates of the distribution of child deaths by cause among live births in 2015 and time trends of child deaths by cause since 2000 (Liu and others 2015).

**Data and Methods**

In LMICs, data on stillbirths by cause are sparse and generally based on classification systems that rely on maternal history and health and intrapartum events, and less frequently, on placental histopathology and other tests. Such classification systems have been judged to be suboptimal and are not recommended (Flenady and others 2009). Given that approximately 40 percent of births in LMICs are managed at home and that limited stillbirth data are recorded even at health facilities, the WHO and collaborators have developed a stillbirth verbal autopsy, validated in Ghana (Edmond and others 2008), India (Aggarwal, Jain, and Kumar 2011), and Pakistan (Nausheen and others 2013), with the goal of establishing population-based cause-of-stillbirth data. Other endeavors to expand the available data on the causes of stillbirth include a probabilistic model to predict likely causes of stillbirth based on verbal autopsy questions (Vergnano and others 2011) and the use of birth attendants as respondents for stillbirth verbal autopsy (Engmann and others 2012).

Accordingly, given the current state of cause-of-stillbirth data, for the purposes of this chapter, global estimates of the percent of stillbirths occurring after the onset of labor are presented. Where cause data are weak, categorizing stillbirths by time of death (antepartum versus intrapartum) is helpful in that many intrapartum deaths are term fetuses who should survive if born alive; these deaths are often associated with poor quality care (Lawn and others 2011). In addition, selected data are presented to illustrate common causes of stillbirth from HICs and LMICs.

A detailed description of the input data and estimation methods for the cause-of-death distribution among live-born children has been published elsewhere.
(Liu and others 2012; Liu and others 2015; Liu and others, forthcoming).

Results

Table 4.5 shows the percentage of stillbirths occurring during the intrapartum period by world region based on the results of a systematic review of the literature (Lawn and others 2011). Globally, 45 percent of stillbirths occur during labor, ranging from 14 percent in HICs, to 16 percent in the Middle East and North Africa, and 23–56 percent in LMICs (Lawn and others 2011).

Table 4.6 summarizes the distribution of single causes of stillbirth and contributing conditions from areas within six HICs using the Cause of Death and Associated Conditions classification system that was judged favorably for retention of stillbirth information in an evaluation of stillbirth classification systems (Flenady and others 2009). The six countries include Australia, Canada, the Netherlands, Norway, the United Kingdom, and the United States. Stillbirth is defined in table 4.6 as a fetal death at a gestational age of 22 weeks or more, or 500 or more grams birth weight. The leading causes of death are “unknown” (30 percent), followed by placental pathology (29 percent) and infection (12 percent). Fewer than 10 percent of stillbirths were attributed to any one of the remaining five causes. However, although only 7 percent of stillbirths were attributed to maternal conditions as the single cause, maternal causes contributed to 24 percent of stillbirths, and placental pathologies contributed to more than 50 percent of all stillbirths. Using this data-intensive classification system, intrapartum conditions, defined narrowly as extreme prematurity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>World region</th>
<th>Estimated intrapartum stillbirths (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low- and middle-income countries</td>
<td>44.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East Asia and Pacific</td>
<td>24.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe and Central Asia</td>
<td>20.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin America and the Caribbean</td>
<td>23.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle East and North Africa</td>
<td>16.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Asia</td>
<td>56.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Saharan Africa</td>
<td>46.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-income countries</td>
<td>13.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World</td>
<td>43.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Adapted from Lawn and others (2011) to reflect regions consistent with those used elsewhere in this chapter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Single cause of stillbirth</th>
<th>Contributing causes of death</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Lacking or despite documentation and autopsy results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Placental pathologies</td>
<td>Infection or inflammation, abruption or retroplacental hemorhage,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>thrombi, circulatory disorders, transfusion or feto-maternal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hemorrhage, small-for-gestation placenta, villous or vascular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>maldevelopment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection</td>
<td>Unspecified, Group B streptococci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cord</td>
<td>Knots, loops, abnormal insertion, focal anomaly, generalized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>anomaly, infection or inflammation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maternal</td>
<td>Unspecified, hypertensive disorder, cervix insufficiency,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hematology, diabetes, autoimmune disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital abnormalities</td>
<td>Unspecified, cardiovascular or lymphatic, triploidies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal</td>
<td>Unspecified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrapartum</td>
<td>Extreme prematurity, asphyxia of unknown cause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associated perinatal</td>
<td>Small for gestational age, oligohydramnios, preterm premature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rupture of the membranes, multiples, antepartum hemorrhage,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>suboptimal care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associated maternal</td>
<td>Smoking, maternal body mass index ≥ 30 kg/m², obstetric history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Flenady and others 2009.

Note: kg/m² = kilograms per square meter; n.a. = not applicable. High-income countries for this table comprise Australia, Canada, the Netherlands, Norway, the United Kingdom, and the United States.
and asphyxia from unknown cause, were responsible for only 3 percent of stillbirths in these HICs. Nine percent of stillbirths occurred during the intrapartum period (data not shown), although the cause of most of them stemmed from the antepartum period.

Table 4.7 presents the percentage distribution of causes of stillbirth occurring during the antepartum and intrapartum periods in rural Ghana (Edmond and others 2008). Data were collected via verbal autopsy among women who delivered at home and at health facilities, with stillbirth defined as fetal death at 28 or more weeks of gestation. More than 37.5 percent of stillbirths occurred during the intrapartum period. More than half of antepartum stillbirths were unexplained (57.4 percent), making interpretation of the remaining categories difficult. Among intrapartum stillbirths, 31.5 percent were unexplained and 59.3 percent were attributed to obstetric complications.

Table 4.8 presents hospital-based cause-of-stillbirth data from Chandigarh, India, based on clinical and laboratory information and following standard obstetric guidelines. Stillbirth is defined here as a birth for which no fetal heart sounds were heard during labor and the neonatologist perceived no signs of life upon physical examination after birth. Findings indicate that 30.6 percent of stillbirths occurred during the intrapartum period; 80.0 percent were attributed to the five major causes of stillbirth, with pregnancy-induced hypertension the leading cause (30.7 percent). Only 10.2 percent were classified as “unexplained” (Aggarwal, Jain, and Kumar 2011).

Among the 5.9 million deaths of live-born children younger than age five years, 30.6 percent (1.782 million) of the deaths occurred in the first five years of life, 45.1 percent (2.685 million) occurred in the neonatal period (table 4.3). The three leading causes of death are preterm birth complications (1.056 million, 17.8 percent), pneumonia (0.922 million, 15.5 percent), and intrapartum-related events or birth asphyxia (0.689 million, 11.6 percent) (table 4.9). Other important causes include diarrhea (0.526 million, 8.9 percent), congenital malformation (0.505 million, 8.5 percent), sepsis or meningitis (0.525 million, 8.8 percent), and injury (0.331 million, 5.6 percent).

The burden of mortality by cause in live-born children younger than age five years varied widely across the regions in 2015 (figure 4.1). Nearly half (49.5 percent, 2.943 million) of deaths in children younger than age five years were in Sub-Saharan Africa, which included 96.4 percent (0.294 million) of global child deaths due to malaria and 90.6 percent (0.077 million) of global child deaths due to HIV/AIDS. South Asia had the highest number of any region of neonatal deaths in live-born children (1.065 million deaths, 57.0 percent). Preterm birth complications were the leading cause in this region, responsible for 24.8 percent, or 0.265 million deaths under age five years.

The Democratic Republic of Congo, Ethiopia, India, Nigeria, and Pakistan collectively accounted for about half the total number of global under age five years deaths (48.3 percent, 2.871 million) and neonatal deaths (50.8 percent, 1.362 million) in 2015. In India, 1.2 million children younger than age five years died in 2015; more than half of them (57.9 percent, 0.696 million) died in the first 28 days of life. Major causes of death included preterm birth complications (0.321 million, 26.7 percent), pneumonia (0.180 million, 15.0 percent), and intrapartum-related

Table 4.7 Distribution of Causes of Stillbirth during the Antepartum and Intrapartum Periods in Kintampo, Ghana, 2003–04

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes of stillbirth</th>
<th>Antepartum period</th>
<th>Intrapartum period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Congenital abnormalities</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maternal disease</td>
<td>14.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstetric complications</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>59.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maternal hemorrhage</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>22.8</td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unexplained</td>
<td>57.4</td>
<td>31.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total (N)</td>
<td>100 (413)</td>
<td>100 (248)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Edmond and others 2008.

Table 4.8 Distribution of Causes of Stillbirth in a Hospital in Chandigarh, India, 2006–08

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes of stillbirth determined via clinical assessment</th>
<th>Percent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Congenital malformations</td>
<td>12.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underlying maternal illness</td>
<td>12.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy-induced hypertension</td>
<td>30.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antepartum hemorrhage</td>
<td>15.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstetric complications</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple pregnancy</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asphyxia not explained by any maternal condition</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other specific fetal problem</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unexplained stillbirth</td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unexplained small size for gestational date</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unexplained preterm birth (&lt; 37 weeks)</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total (N)</td>
<td>100 (225)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Aggarwal, Jain, and Kumar 2011.
complications (0.142 million, 11.9 percent). Angola, the Democratic Republic of Congo, India, Nigeria, and Pakistan were the top five countries with the most pneumonia deaths and the most diarrhea deaths. For intrapartum-related complications, Ethiopia replaced Angola on the list. For preterm birth complications, China replaced Angola. Burkina Faso, the Democratic Republic of Congo, Côte d’Ivoire, Mali, and Nigeria had the most malaria deaths.

Compared with 2000, approximately 4 million fewer deaths under age five years occurred in 2015. Deaths from pneumonia, diarrhea, and malaria decreased the most in absolute terms, by 680,000, 663,000 million, and 419,000 million, respectively. Collectively, the three causes were responsible for 43.9 percent of the absolute reduction in under age five years deaths in 2000–15.

In 2000–15, child mortality rates of all the causes decreased, albeit at differing rates. In neonates, the burden of preterm birth complications decreased from 1.242 million in 2000 to 0.946 million in 2015, with the associated mortality rate falling by 2.4 percent per year. Intrapartum-related deaths decreased from 1.040 to 0.635 million, with the mortality rate declining at an average ARR of 3.9 percent. Neonatal sepsis or meningitis decreased from 0.529 million in 2000 to 0.410 million in 2015, a rate of 2.3 percent per year. Neonatal tetanus decreased from 0.164 million to 0.034 million at 10.9 percent per year. For children who died between the ages of 1 and 59 months, trends in numbers and rates of death by cause were highly variable from 2000 to 2015. Pneumonia deaths in this age group decreased from 1.44 million to 0.76 million, with the pneumonia-specific mortality rate dropping an average of 4.8 percent per year. Diarrhea deaths decreased from 1.172 million to 0.509 million, a 6.1 percent decrease in the mortality rate per year during this period. Malaria deaths declined from 0.725 million in 2000 to 0.306 million in 2015, with the malaria-specific mortality rate dropping 6.3 percent per year. Measles mortality fluctuated, in part due to outbreaks, but overall it decreased from 0.481 million to 0.074 million, a rate of 13.1 percent per year.

In 2000–15, the U5MR decreased at varying rates across regions. HICs and South Asia had the slowest reductions, at an average ARR of 3.0 percent and 3.8 percent, respectively. In Sub-Saharan Africa, the pneumonia-specific mortality rate among children ages 1–59 months decreased at an annual rate of 4.2 percent. The ARR for preterm birth complications was only 1.3 percent among children ages 1–59 months (0.3 percent among children under age five). The malaria-specific mortality rate decreased 7.6 percent annually. Measles had the highest ARR at an average of 16.5 percent. In South Asia, the mortality rates for pneumonia and diarrhea among children ages 1–59 months decreased on average by 5.6 percent and 6.1 percent per year, respectively. However, the mortality rate attributable to neonatal...
Figure 4.1 Causes of Childhood Deaths among Live-Born Children Younger than Age Five Years, by World Bank Region, 2015

Source: Liu and others, forthcoming.
Note: AIDS = acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.
preterm births fell little, on average only 1.3 percent. At the country level, varying trends in cause-specific death rates were seen in 2000–15 (data are not shown).

**Discussion and Policy Implications**

Our estimate of 2.5 million stillbirths based on an extrapolation of previous estimates is very similar to a new estimate for 2015 of 2.6 million (Blencowe and others, forthcoming). The numbers have been declining by 0.6 percent annually since 2000 and showing the lowest rate of decline of the four age groups constituting TU5MR. Although cause-of-stillbirth data are sparse and lack comparability, it is clear that the percentage of intrapartum stillbirths is two to four times higher in LMICs than HICs and that continued improvements in the implementation of evidence-based obstetric care require policy prioritization to prevent the majority of these deaths. Equally important is the need for consensus on a cause-of-stillbirth classification system that can be used in high- and low-resource settings to monitor trends and assess program effectiveness. Although probabilities of stillbirth are eight or more times higher in South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa than in HICs, many stillbirths in HICs are considered potentially preventable, particularly among disadvantaged women, requiring greater outreach for antenatal care and improved living standards. Research to address antepartum stillbirths and stillbirths associated with extreme prematurity and infection are priorities in high-income settings (Flenady and others 2009).

Among the 5.9 million live-born children who died before reaching their fifth birthday in 2015, 45.1 percent died in the neonatal period. Preterm birth complications and pneumonia remained the top killers in this age group. Intrapartum-related events became the third leading cause of child deaths globally. Other important leading causes of child deaths include diarrhea, congenital malformation, neonatal sepsis or meningitis, injury, and malaria. From 2000 to 2015, substantial reductions in deaths under age five years were seen at the global level. However, the pace of reduction varied by cause. Pneumonia, diarrhea, and malaria collectively contributed nearly half of the total reduction. Other major causes, such as preterm birth complications, declined at a much slower rate globally and nearly stalled in South Asia.

Scale-up of proven interventions to prevent and treat childhood infectious diseases and leading neonatal conditions is urgently needed to maintain and accelerate the pace of improving child survival worldwide (Liu and others 2015). Improving quality care at birth, such as better implementation of neonatal resuscitation, antenatal corticosteroids, and kangaroo mother care, is a key strategy in reducing neonatal deaths due to intrapartum-related complications and preterm birth complications (Bhutta and others 2014). Scaling up new vaccines, such as *Haemophilus influenza* type B, pneumococcus, and rotavirus vaccines has the potential to further reduce pneumonia and diarrhea (Bhutta and others 2013; Walker and others 2013). Additional implementation research is urgently needed to understand how to better scale up coverage and quality of these interventions (Requejo and others 2015). Social interventions to improve child survival are as important as cause-specific interventions. Examples include improving family planning programs to help couples achieve their desired family size by minimizing unintended pregnancies and increasing women’s education (Cleland and others 2012; Gakidou and others 2010).

Causes of 3.5 percent of deaths under age five years among live-born children were directly derived based on vital registration data and 6.4 percent from a model using verbal autopsy data; causes for 90.1 percent were derived using verbal autopsy data (Liu and others, forthcoming). Verbal autopsy as a distinct scientific area has been improving substantially yet remains subject to inherent limitations (Anker 1997; Fottrell and Byass 2010; Murray and others 2011). Estimates produced by sophisticated modeling cannot and should not replace any existing and future data collection efforts to generate context-specific information, given that the strengths and limitations of the local data collection process are fully accessible and well understood. Furthermore, national civil registration and vital statistics systems need to be further strengthened and invested in more heavily to deliver on the promise of improved and reliable health statistics. Ultimately, evidence-based policy making and program planning can only be optimized if full openness and transparency can be achieved in the evidence-generating process (Sutherland 2013).

**CONCLUSION**

We present in this chapter a new concept of TU5MR, which is a composite measure of mortality occurring between 28 weeks gestation and age five years. Within this age group, child survival efforts should focus on stillbirth and neonatal mortality, as well as preterm birth complications, pneumonia, and intrapartum-related complications. More information is needed to better understand levels and causes of stillbirth. To end preventable child deaths in a generation and attain the ambitious Sustainable Development Goals, child survival needs to remain front and center on the global development agenda.
NOTES

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as unnumbered note 1 as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:
  a) lower-middle-income = US$1,046 to US$4,125
  b) upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126 to US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

1. A constant annual rate of decline was assumed when interpolating and extrapolating to derive stillbirth rates for 2000 and 2015 from 1995 and 2009 estimates, respectively. However, if the reduction of stillbirth rates has been accelerating in this period, we could have underestimated the annual rate of decline of stillbirth rates.

REFERENCES


Liu, L., H. L. Johnson, S. Cousens, J. Perin, S. Scott, and others. 2012. “Global, Regional, and National Causes
Levels and Trends in Low Height-for-Age

Gretchen A. Stevens, Mariel M. Finucane, and Christopher J. Paciorek

**INTRODUCTION**

Children’s nutritional status influences their survival, cognitive development, and lifelong health (Adair and others 2013; Black and others 2013; Grantham-McGregor and others 2007; Olofin and others 2013). Inadequate nutrition, together with infections, results in restricted linear growth. Stunting, or low height-for-age, is an indicator of overall nutritional status (Black and others 2013; WHO 2013) and an important cause of morbidity and mortality in infants and children (Black and others 2013; Olofin and others 2013).

Stunting caused an estimated 14 percent to 17 percent of mortality in children under age five years in 2011, accounting for 1.0 million to 1.2 million deaths (Black and others 2013). The World Health Assembly endorsed the target of reducing the number of children with stunting by 40 percent by 2025, compared with the 2010 baseline (World Health Assembly 2012). According to the World Health Organization (WHO), rates of stunting reduction need to be accelerated to meet this target (World Health Assembly 2012).

Country-level information on trends in child height-for-age is needed for priority setting, planning, and program evaluation. Stunting estimates are made at the regional level for all world regions by UNICEF, WHO, and World Bank (2012, 2014). This chapter presents a set of country-level estimates by the Nutrition Impact Model Study (NIMS) for 1985–2011 (Stevens and others 2012). The NIMS collaboration estimates trends in the complete distributions of child height-for-age by country, including stunting prevalence. Paciorek and others (2013) extend this body of work to separately estimate children’s height-for-age distribution in urban and rural areas, by country and year. Separate estimates for urban and rural areas allow strategies that target children in each setting to be prioritized.

**METHODS**

We present published estimates of the height-for-age distribution from the NIMS study (Paciorek and others 2013; Stevens and others 2012). We accessed population-representative data on the height of children under age five years from nationally or regionally representative household surveys, including Demographic and Health Surveys and Multiple Indicator Cluster Surveys, as follows:

- We obtained these data as anonymized individual anthropometric measurements, if accessible, or as summary statistics from the WHO’s Global Database on Child Growth and Malnutrition (de Onis and Blossner 2003), or from preliminary reports not yet included in the WHO’s database.
- For data obtained as individual observations, we extracted information on urban or rural place of residence for each observation. We calculated height-for-age z-scores (HAZ) using the 2006 WHO child...
growth standards for each individual measurement (WHO 2006).

- For data obtained as summary statistics, we extracted the summary statistic for the entire population covered by each data source, usually at the national level, and, where possible, separately for urban and rural areas.

- In cases for which only summarized statistics were calculated using the 1977 National Center for Health Statistics reference, regression equations were developed to convert these estimates to the 2006 WHO child growth standards (Stevens and others 2012). Our final data set included measured heights of more than 7.7 million children under age five years. Despite the extensive data search, there were gaps in data availability; an average of 4.5 data sources were available for each country over the 26 years in the study period. We therefore developed Bayesian hierarchical mixture models to estimate the complete distribution of childhood HAZ for each country and year, from which we calculated summary statistics such as mean HAZ and the prevalence of stunting. The inputs for our model were individual-level records and summary statistics. Two statistical analyses were conducted:

  - An analysis of HAZ distribution in 141 low- and middle-income countries (LMICs) for each year from 1985 to 2011
  - An analysis of HAZ distribution in urban and rural areas in the same 141 LMICs for each year from 1985 to 2011.

In the first model, estimates for each country-year were informed by data from that country-year itself, if available, and by data from other years in the same country and in other countries, especially those in the same region with data in similar periods. This hierarchical model shares information to a greater degree where data are nonexistent or weakly informative (for example, because they have a small sample size), and to a lesser degree in data-rich countries and regions. We modeled trends over time both as a linear trend and as a smooth nonlinear trend. The estimates were informed by time-varying covariates that help predict HAZ, including maternal education, national income (natural logarithm of per capita gross domestic product [GDP] in inflation-adjusted U.S. dollars), proportion of the population in urban areas, and an aggregate metric of access to basic health care. Finally, the model accounted for the fact that data did not cover the entire country; data that did not cover the complete age range of 0–59 months may have more variation relative to the true levels than nationally representative data and data that covered the full range of ages. Estimates by sex were not made because little difference was found between male and female stunting prevalence (Stevens and others 2012).

For the second analysis, the statistical model was extended to make separate estimates for urban and rural children. The urban-rural difference in HAZ distribution was allowed to vary by country and year. Both analyses were also carried out for children’s weight-for-age distribution, not reported here.

Public health professionals usually report the prevalence of stunting (as defined by the WHO as HAZ below −2), rather than other metrics, such as mean HAZ or the prevalence of severe stunting (HAZ below −3). In this chapter, we report mean HAZ, prevalence of stunting (HAZ below −2), and prevalence of severe stunting (HAZ below −3).

GLOBAL AND REGIONAL TRENDS

Global Trends

In LMICs the prevalence of stunting has declined and mean HAZ has improved since 1985. In 1985, 47.2 percent (95 percent uncertainty interval 44.0–50.3) of children under age five years were moderately or severely stunted; this rate improved to 29.9 percent (27.1–32.9) in 2011 (figure 5.1). Mean HAZ increased during the same period, from −1.86 (−2.01 to −1.72) to −1.16 (−1.29 to −1.04).

Despite large improvements, many children remain stunted. In 2011, 314 million (95 percent uncertainty interval 296 million to 331 million) children had HAZ below −1, a moderate improvement from 367 million (352 million to 379 million) in 1985. Of the children with HAZ below −1 in 2011, 46 percent had HAZ between −1 and −2, 31 percent had HAZ between −2 and −3, and 23 percent had HAZ below −3.

Regional Trends

Although child height improved in LMICs as a whole, progress was less consistent at the regional level (figure 5.1). East Asia and Pacific and South Asia show the largest improvements in mean HAZ, increasing by about 0.4 per decade. Mean HAZ also increased to a lesser extent in Europe and Central Asia, the Middle East and North Africa, and Latin America and the Caribbean (increases of 0.20–0.23 per decade). However, children’s height in Sub-Saharan Africa showed inconsistent progress. In Sub-Saharan Africa, stunting prevalence may
have increased from 41.4 percent (95 percent uncertainty interval 37.3–45.6) in 1985 to more than 45 from 1995 to 1999; it subsequently decreased to 37.7 percent (35.3–40.2) by 2011.

In 1985, mean HAZ was higher and the prevalence of stunting was lower in urban areas than in rural areas in all regions (figure 5.2). Urban and rural mean HAZ and prevalence of stunting largely improved at the same pace; the urban-rural gaps in mean HAZ and prevalence of stunting were, in most cases, maintained during the period. Nevertheless, some improvements were observed. In Europe and Central Asia and the Middle East and North Africa, both the absolute and relative gaps in the prevalence of stunting decreased. In Europe and Central Asia, the gap between urban and rural prevalence of stunting fell from 15 percent in 1985 to 7 percent, the narrowest gap observed, in 2011.

The most impressive improvement in children's height occurred in China, followed by Vietnam, Bangladesh, India, Bhutan, Brazil, Nepal, and Tunisia; in these countries, mean HAZ increased by 0.35–0.51 per decade. In most of these high-performing countries, the urban-rural gap in mean HAZ also declined; the exceptions are China, Vietnam, and with large uncertainty, Jamaica. HAZ may have deteriorated in 17 countries between 1985 and 2011, nearly all in Sub-Saharan Africa and the Oceania region of East Asia and Pacific; most had large uncertainties, with the exception of estimated declines in Côte d’Ivoire and Niger. Overall, the rate of improvement in mean HAZ was positively correlated with a reduction in urban-rural inequality in mean HAZ. Improvement in mean HAZ at the national level can be divided into three components:

- Improvement in mean HAZ in rural children
- Improvement in mean HAZ in urban children
- Increases in the proportion of children in urban areas.

Figure 5.3 shows each component’s contribution in each region. In East Asia and Pacific and in South Asia, both predominantly rural regions in 1985 (less than 30 percent urban) and in 2011 (less than 50 percent urban), improvements in rural HAZ contributed 68 percent or more of the overall improvement in HAZ. In contrast, in Latin America and the Caribbean, a predominantly urban region (66 percent urban in 1985, increasing to 78 percent urban by 2011), urban improvements contributed more than 70 percent of the overall improvement.

**Height-for-Age in 2011**

Despite large improvements in HAZ in most regions, only a few countries have mean HAZ and stunting prevalence that approach the ideal of a mean HAZ of at least zero and stunting prevalence of 2.3 percent (maps 5.1, 5.2, 5.3). Chile, Jamaica, and Kuwait have mean HAZ greater than 0 and a prevalence of stunting of less than 5 percent, as do urban areas of China.

The majority of stunted children still live in rural areas. These stunted children live mainly in South Asia (52 million [uncertainty interval 42 million to 62 million]) and Sub-Saharan Africa (37 million [35 million to 40 million]). In rural areas in Afghanistan,
Burundi, Guatemala, Niger, Timor-Leste, and the Republic of Yemen, more than 50 percent of the children under age five years were stunted in 2011.

Nevertheless, as urbanization increases, a rising percentage of stunted children live in urban areas—from 23 percent in 1985 to 31 percent in 2011 (figure 5.4). In 2011, 18 million (uncertainty interval 14 million to 22 million) stunted children lived in urban South Asia and 15 million (14 million to 16 million) in urban Sub-Saharan Africa.

**IMPLICATIONS FOR PRIORITY SETTING**

Stunting has received increased attention as a primary indicator of children’s nutritional status. It has been included as one of three health status indicators by the
Commission on Information and Accountability for Women’s and Children’s Health, together with maternal mortality ratios and mortality in children under age five years (WHO 2013). The Scaling-Up Nutrition initiative provides a catalyst for implementing effective nutrition interventions at the population level, and the WHO’s target to reduce the number of stunted children provides a goal (World Health Assembly 2012). Other anthropometric indicators, such as wasting and severe wasting, provide complementary information on acute nutritional situations (box 5.1).

**Figure 5.3** Contributions of Urban Improvement, Urbanization, and Rural Improvement to Overall Improvements in Mean HAZ, 1985–2011

Stunting prevalence and mean HAZ have improved globally and in most regions, although progress has been uneven in Sub-Saharan Africa. Improvements in HAZ at the national level have generally not been accompanied by reductions in the gap between urban and rural stunting or between stunting in poorer and wealthier populations (Restrepo-Méndez and others 2014). South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa, the regions with the highest rates of stunting and severe stunting, also have the highest rates of child mortality (UNICEF 2014; WHO 2013). Because children’s nutrition, as measured by linear growth, is protective (Olofin and others 2013), it is important to prioritize programs that target these areas.

Children’s linear growth is restricted when they do not receive sufficient nutrition (through nonexclusive breastfeeding or inappropriate complementary feeding) or when they lose nutrients during sickness. Both situations have a range of contributing factors. Food insufficiency, poor water and sanitation, and limited access to high-quality primary care are all associated with household and community poverty; all may lead to poor growth outcomes (WHO 2014a). However, interventions such as nutrition education and diarrhea case management can mitigate low height-for-age (Bhutta and others 2008; Bhutta and others 2013).

We previously found that reductions in stunting were consistent with a shift of the entire distribution of HAZ (Stevens and others 2012). This finding implies that, for the past two and a half decades, the primary...
mechanism for improvement has been population improvements rather than targeted interventions. These population improvements include enhanced health promotion, such as breastfeeding and complementary feeding; improved environmental and sanitary conditions; increased availability and affordability of nutritious foods; and improved income and education levels. Because the burden of stunting is still largely in rural areas, evaluating potential interventions' expected benefits for rural children is appropriate.

Although the relative importance of various population forces is uncertain, several lessons have emerged from the research:

- Growth in national income seems to have a positive effect on child nutrition but may be insufficient, perhaps because improving nutritional status requires more equitable income distribution and increased investments in health care and nutrition programs (Anand and Ravallion 1993; Haddad and

---

**Map 5.2 Prevalence of Stunting by Country: Urban Areas, 2011**

**Map 5.3 Prevalence of Stunting by Country: Rural Areas, 2011**
Macroeconomic shocks, structural adjustment, and trade policy reforms have been implicated in the worsening nutritional status in Sub-Saharan Africa in the 1980s and 1990s (Cooper Weil and others 1990; Pongou, Salomon, and Ezzati 2006). The adverse effects on nutrition were greatest in poorer households, especially in rural areas, transmitted through lower household earnings and assets, reduced food subsidies, and reduced health care use (Cooper Weil and others 1990; Pongou, Salomon, and Ezzati 2006).

Child wasting may be caused by acute illness, inappropriate feeding, or insufficient feeding. The World Health Assembly endorsed a target goal of reducing and maintaining childhood wasting to less than 5 percent by 2025 (World Health Assembly 2012). The global prevalence of wasting in 2013 was 7.7 percent (uncertainty interval 6.6 percent to 8.9 percent), and the global prevalence of severe wasting was 2.6 percent (uncertainty interval 2.1 percent to 3.2 percent) (UNICEF, WHO, and World Bank 2014). According to these estimates, the prevalence of wasting and severe wasting were highest in the World Bank regions (in decreasing order) of South Asia, Sub-Saharan Africa, and the Middle East and North Africa, with estimated regional prevalence of wasting ranging between 15 percent and 7 percent. Of the 102 countries for which data on severe wasting from 2006 to 2012 were available, 51 had at least one survey with a severe wasting prevalence of 2 percent or higher. Of the 110 countries reporting data on wasting in the same period, 64 reported prevalence of wasting greater than 5 percent in at least one survey. In nine countries—Bangladesh, Benin, Chad, Djibouti, India, Niger, Papua New Guinea, South Sudan, and Timor-Leste—the most recent survey data (excluding data before 2006) indicate a prevalence of wasting greater than 15 percent (WHO 2014b).
In contrast, programs that improve income, nutrition, and health care among the poor generally also improve growth outcomes, especially in children of lower socioeconomic status (Bhutta and others 2013; Fernald, Gertler, and Neufeld 2008; Lagarde, Haines, and Palmer 2007; Rivera and others 2004).

These findings indicate that child nutrition is best improved through equitable economic growth, poor primary care, and nutrition programs that support breastfeeding and appropriate complementary feeding. Conditional cash transfer programs, especially those linked to nutrition education and primary health care, offer the potential to help target and deliver these interventions (Bassett 2008).

CONCLUSIONS

Prioritizing improvements in HAZ in rural areas of high-burden countries is an essential component of initiatives to improve child health and nutrition. Achieving this goal may occur through policies that improve households’ economic status and food security; provide more equitable access to interventions and services, such as clean water and sanitation; encourage breastfeeding and complementary feeding using local foods; and offer case management of diarrhea and other infectious diseases (Bhutta and others 2013; Sanchez and Swaminathan 2005; WHO 2014a).

A second essential component of improvement initiatives is the development and implementation of complementary policies and programs for children in urban settings. An increasing share of undernourished children live in cities; these children are susceptible to economic shocks that affect food prices and may face different barriers to accessing adequate nutrition than rural children.

NOTES

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:
  - lower-middle-income = US$1,046 to US$4,125
  - upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126 to US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

The authors alone are responsible for the views expressed in this chapter and they do not necessarily represent the views, decisions, or policies of the institutions with which they are affiliated.

REFERENCES


INTRODUCTION

Health systems and individuals can take a number of actions to safeguard reproductive health. These actions differ from many other health interventions in that the motivation for their use is not necessarily limited to better health and involves cultural and societal norms. Irrespective of these additional considerations, these interventions have important health implications. This chapter describes four areas of intervention:

- Family planning
- Adolescent sexual and reproductive health
- Unsafe abortion
- Violence against women.

Each of these areas involves the delivery of specific health services to prevent or alleviate health risks; each also involves the complex social and cultural issues that affect the widespread implementation and use of the services.

FAMILY PLANNING

Rationales for Family Planning Programs

Family planning has been a major development success over the past half century, with global fertility rates falling from more than six children per woman during her lifetime in the 1960s to less than three children in the 1990s. Family planning offers a range of potential benefits that encompass economic development, maternal and child health, education, and women’s empowerment (Bongaarts and others 2012). Furthermore, family planning is cost-effective. The United Nations (UN) estimates that for every US$1 spent on family planning, from US$2 to US$6 can be saved from the reduced numbers of people needing other public services, such as immunizations, health care, education, and sanitation (UN Population Division 2009).

Support for voluntary family planning has been based on several rationales, including the following (Habumuremyi and Zenawi 2012):

- Population and development, the so-called demographic rationale
- Maternal and child health
- Human rights and equity
- Environment and sustainable development.

Demographic Rationale

The population and development rationale for family planning emerged in the 1960s amid a concern that rates of rapid population growth would hinder economic growth in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs) and affect the ability of these countries to improve the well-being of their citizens. This rationale has been in and out of favor (Birdsall, Kelly, and Sinding 2001; Bongaarts and others 2012; NAS 1986). Recent evidence
shows positive links between slower population growth and economic development—at least in the initial phase of the demographic transition, when countries enjoy a demographic dividend, if other economic and human capital policies are in place. The demographic dividend allows countries to take advantage of a beneficial dependency ratio between the working-age population and the groups who need support, that is, children and the elderly (Bloom, Canning, and Sevilla 2003). It is important to have supportive economic policies and labor regulations in place to reap the potential benefits of the demographic dividend; many countries in Sub-Saharan Africa need to coordinate development of their economic and reproductive health policies to fully realize this effect.

Maternal and Child Health Rationale
The improved health of mothers and children has long been a rationale for the provision of family planning (Seltzer 2002). In the 2009 round of the Family Planning Effort Index, measured periodically since 1972, women’s health was the dominant justification for family planning programs, followed by reducing unwanted fertility (Ross and Smith 2011). These reasons ranked higher than fertility reduction, economic development, and reduction of childbearing among unmarried youth. Contraception can serve as an effective primary prevention strategy in LMICs to reduce maternal mortality (Ahmed and others 2012). By one estimate, increases in contraceptive use from 1990 to 2008 contributed to 1.7 million fewer maternal deaths (Ross and Blanc 2012). Reductions in fertility rates accounted for 53 percent of the decline in maternal deaths; lower maternal mortality rates per birth accounted for 47 percent of the decline (Ross and Blanc 2012).

Family planning can have significant effects on the health of children. Analysis of data from Demographic and Health Surveys (DHS) from 52 countries showed that children born within two years of a previous birth have a 60 percent increased risk of infant death, and those within two to three years have a 10 percent increased risk of infant death, compared with children born after an interval of three or more years from the last sibling (Rutstein and others 2008). These analyses have confirmed the usefulness of program initiatives to promote healthy timing and spacing of births.

Human Rights and Equity Rationale
The right of couples and individuals to decide freely and responsibly on the number and spacing of their children was articulated at the 1968 International Conference on Human Rights (UN 1968). Subsequent international population conferences in 1974, 1984, and 1994 reaffirmed this right (Singh 2009).

The human rights rationale has focused on sexual reproductive health and rights, with family planning implicitly included. Efforts are underway to more explicitly define a rights-based approach to implementing voluntary family planning programming (Hardee and others 2014). Ensuring equity is a fundamental principal of human rights–based programming. Wealth quintiles analysis has shown that wealthier women have lower fertility rates and better access to family planning than poorer women. Gillespie and others (2007), in a study of 41 countries, find that although variations were observed among countries, the number of unwanted births in the poorest quintile was more than twice that in the wealthiest quintile, at 1.2 and 0.5, respectively.

Environment and Sustainable Development Rationale
A resurgence of interest in global population dynamics is linked to growing attention to environmental issues, climate change, and concerns about food security (Engelman 1997; Jiang and Hardee 2011; Martine and Schensul 2013; Moreland and Smith 2012; Royal Society 2012). Although global population growth is slowing, the momentum built into past population trends means that the world’s population will continue to grow. The world’s population surpassed 7 billion in 2012; the 2013 UN Population Division projection estimates that it could grow to 9.6 billion by the middle of the century and level off at about 10.9 billion by the end of the century under their low scenario, or it could grow to more than 16 billion by the end of the century under their high scenario. According to the United Nations Population Fund (UNFPA), “Whether future demographic trends work for or against sustainable development will depend on policies that are put in place today” (UNFPA 2013, 5). If the unmet need for family planning services were satisfied in all countries, world population growth would fall between the UN’s low and medium projections (Moreland, Smith, and Sharma 2010).

Health Consequences of High Fertility
High fertility affects the health of mothers and children in several ways. Unwanted pregnancies may lead to unsafe abortions, which are associated with elevated risks of maternal mortality. All births carry some risk of maternal mortality, so women with a large number of births have higher lifetime risk of dying from maternal causes. The World Health Organization’s (WHO’s) Global Health Estimates reports that there were 303,000 maternal deaths in 2015; 300,000 of these deaths occurred in LMICs (WHO 2015). The maternal mortality ratio
for couples who know that they do not want any more permanent methods, that is, female and male sterilization, to women and men (table 6.1). These include permanent sterilization of women and men (table 6.1). A wide variety of contraceptive methods are available to couples who do not want more children in the near term but may want more later; temporary methods (such as oral contraceptives and condoms) that provide short-term protection; and nonmedical methods (such as fertility awareness methods, lactational amenorrhea, and withdrawal) for couples who do not want to use a contraceptive agent or device or who do not have access to them.

Family planning also influences child survival rates. Child mortality rates are generally lower for high-risk births, typically defined as births of order four (a woman’s fourth birth) and above, births occurring less than 24 months after a previous birth, and births to mothers who are less than age 18 years or more than age 35 years. Short birth intervals, young age of mother at birth, and parity greater than three are associated with greater chances of births that are preterm, low birth weight, and small for gestational age (Kozuki, Lee, Silveira, Sania, and others 2013; Kozuki, Lee, Silveira, Victora, and others 2013). DHS data show the risk of child mortality by birth characteristic. Mortality rates are about 50 percent higher for closely spaced births and births to mothers under age 18 years. The largest effects occur when multiple risk factors are combined. Mortality increases by 150 percent to 300 percent for births with short intervals to very young mothers and those with high parity and short birth intervals. Family planning affects the distribution of births by risk factor. On average, the percentage of births with any one of these avoidable risk factors drops from about 73 percent when the national total fertility rate is greater than seven to 25 percent at a total fertility rate of less than two. As figure 6.1 shows, the greatest change from a high to a low total fertility rate is in the proportion of births that are high parity and have multiple risk factors.

Contraceptive Methods

A wide variety of contraceptive methods are available to women and men (table 6.1). These include permanent methods, that is, female and male sterilization, for couples who know that they do not want any more

(MMR) in LMICs averages about 242 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births. At that rate, a woman with seven births has a 2 percent chance of dying from maternal causes, compared with 0.5 percent for a woman with two births. In Sub-Saharan Africa, where the MMR is 546, the risk of death increases to almost 5 percent for a woman with seven births (WHO 2014a, 2014b, 2015).

The risk of maternal mortality is particularly high for older women; it is typically two to three times higher for women over age 40 years who give birth than for those ages 35–39 years (Blanc, Winfrey, and Ross 2013). High-parity births (fourth and higher births) may also carry an increased risk. Family planning can reduce maternal mortality by reducing the number of times a woman is exposed to the risk and by helping women avoid high-risk births. From 1990 to 2005, family planning may have averted more than 1.5 million maternal deaths through lower fertility rates and reductions in the MMR due to fewer high-parity births to older women (Stover and Ross 2009).

Interventions to Improve Reproductive Health
The method mix in Kenya has evolved, and injectables are now the most popular form of contraception. In Turkey and Ukraine, for example, withdrawal and condoms are used most often; high rates of abortion compensate for the lower effectiveness of these methods (UN Population Division 2013b). In countries with limited access to health clinics, community-based distribution (CBD) and social marketing are used to reach a large portion of the population, resulting in greater reliance on methods appropriate for those delivery channels, such as oral contraceptives, injectables, and condoms. In countries with higher access to medical providers, physician-supplied methods, such as IUDs, may be preferred.

More than 180 new contraceptive methods are in various stages of research and development (http://pipeline.ctiexchange.org/products/table).
Although many will never reach the market, some have the potential to address current barriers to use for some users. Several new methods that may address some limitations in current methods are becoming available. Sino-implant (II), a subdermal contraceptive implant consisting of two silicone rods with 75 milligrams of levonorgestrel, provides four years of protection. Although similar to other implants already on the market, Sino-implant (II) is considerably less expensive and could potentially expand the availability of implants. It is registered for use in about 20 countries. Sayana Press, an injectable contraceptive (Depo-Provera) with a duration of three month, is packaged in a Unject system that allows subcutaneous injection. The main advantage of this system is that field workers can easily administer it without the need for users to visit clinics. It is expected to appeal to programs that rely on community workers to reach large numbers of users. In the longer term, it may even be labeled for self-injection.

### Organization of Family Planning Programs

#### Global Initiatives

Family planning programming has been guided by global initiatives for decades, including through decennial population conferences in 1974 in Bucharest, 1984 in Mexico City, and 1994 in Cairo, as well as global frameworks, including the 2000 Millennium Development Goals (MDGs). The twentieth anniversary of the 1994 International Conference on Population and Development (ICPD) has passed, and the UN recently adopted the post-2015 development agenda. The ICPD positioned family planning within a broad context of

---

Table 6.1: Contraceptive Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Types</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Effectiveness* (percent)</th>
<th>CYP factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sterilization</td>
<td>Female sterilization</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>10–13 per sterilization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Male sterilization</td>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>10–13 per sterilization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implants</td>
<td>Implanon</td>
<td>3 years</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>2.5 per implant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sino-Implant</td>
<td>4 years</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>3.2 per implant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jadelle</td>
<td>5 years</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>3.8 per implant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrauterine devices</td>
<td>Copper-T-380A</td>
<td>10 years</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>4.6 per insertion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Levonorgestrel-releasing</td>
<td>5 years</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>3.3 per insertion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>intrauterine device</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Injectables</td>
<td>Depo-Provera</td>
<td>3 months</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>4 injections per CYP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Noristerat</td>
<td>2 months</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>6 injections per CYP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cyclofem</td>
<td>1 month</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>13 injections per CYP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptives</td>
<td>Many brands</td>
<td>One month per cycle</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>15 cycles per CYP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condoms</td>
<td>Male</td>
<td>One sex act</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>120 units per CYP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Female</td>
<td>One sex act</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>120 units per CYP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spermicides</td>
<td>Vaginal foaming tablets</td>
<td>One sex act</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>120 tablets per CYP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency contraception</td>
<td>One unprotected sex act</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>20 doses per CYP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monthly vaginal ring or patch</td>
<td></td>
<td>One month</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>15 units per CYP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diaphragm</td>
<td>One sex act</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactational amenorrhea</td>
<td></td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>4 active users per CYP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fertility-awareness methods</td>
<td>Standard days, Two Day</td>
<td>One sex act</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>1.5 CYP per trained adopter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ovulation, Symptothermal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withdrawal</td>
<td>One sex act</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Note: — = not available; CYP = couple-years of protection.

* Effectiveness estimates are drawn from Trussel (2011).
reproductive health and human rights. Both the ICPD and the SDGs now include targets and indicators related to universal access to reproductive health. Attention to shortages of contraceptives led to the 2001 Istanbul conference, “Meeting the Reproductive Health Challenge: Securing Contraceptives, and Condoms for HIV/AIDS Prevention,” which resulted in the establishment of the Reproductive Health Supplies Coalition (http://www.rhsupplies.com).

In 2010 the UN Secretary General launched Every Woman Every Child, a global effort to provide catalytic support to achieve MDGs 4, 5, and 6 by 2015 (http://www.everywomaneverychild.org/about). The Ouagadougou Declaration, to which eight West African countries agreed in 2011, called for countries to accelerate the implementation of national strategies for reproductive health and family planning and to address the unmet needs of populations (FP Ouagadougou Partnership 2014). The 2012 London Summit on Family Planning resulted in pledges of resources to reach an additional 120 million new users with voluntary family planning services by 2020 (Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation and DFID 2012).

---

**Figure 6.2** Global Distribution of Contraceptive Methods, 2012

![Pie chart showing global distribution of contraceptive methods, 2012](image)

Source: Biddlecom and Kantorova 2013.

Note: IUD = intrauterine device.

**Figure 6.3** Share of Contraceptive Users by Method, Selected Countries

![Bar chart showing share of contraceptive users by method for selected countries](image)

Source: Demographic and Health Surveys, latest available survey for each country.

Note: IUD = intrauterine device.
Services Delivery

Family planning is delivered through a variety of programs and services. In 2011, 91 percent of governments in LMICs surveyed by the UN reported that they provide direct support for family planning, an increase from 64 percent in 1976 (UN 2011). Currently, a focus on total market approaches includes all service modalities—public, private, and nongovernmental organizations—to expand the reach of family planning services and meet the needs of the diverse clientele across countries (Barnes, Vail, and Crosby 2012). Initiatives to identify the ingredients of successful family planning programs (Richey and Salem 2008) and high-impact practices in family planning (www.fphighimpactpractices.org/), and approaches to scaling up services and ensuring equitable access (Amadou and others 2013; Simmons and Shiffman 2007), are shaping service delivery programming. Scaling-up approaches include task-shifting (Janowitz, Stanback, and Boyer 2012) and innovative financing schemes.

Public, nongovernmental, and commercial providers.

Funding for public family planning programs comes from a variety of sources. Many middle-income countries fund contraceptive services, along with all other health services, out of tax revenues. Low-income countries often rely on donor funding for commodities, training, research, policy reform, evaluation, and service delivery outside the health facility. Donors that have supported family planning programs include bilateral donors such as the United States Agency for International Development and the U.K. Department for International Development; multilateral donors such as the United Nations Population Fund; and foundations such as the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation. This support usually takes the form of commodities and funding of nongovernmental organizations to provide specific services. Many LMICs have provided line items in their budgets for family planning commodities. Even in low-income countries, national governments provide most of the funds for infrastructure and personnel.

Integration with other sectors.

Family planning services are usually integrated with other health services. Activities for outreach, advocacy, the building of political commitment, and resource mobilization are often integrated with other development priorities, such as HIV prevention and treatment, child immunization, and environmental protection.

Community-based programming.

Community-based programming has been part of family planning programs since the 1970s. CBD was designed to extend the reach of clinics to serve clients who were unable to travel to clinics or who did not know about clinic services for family planning. CBD programs focused on rural areas and trained community members to provide family planning information and selected resupply methods. Under various names, including community-based distributor, community health worker, and health extension worker, this cadre of staff has delivered information and selected services to families’ doorsteps, providing access for women with limited mobility and those at a distance from clinical services. These workers, for example, the Accredited Social Health Activists in India, at times accompany clients to health facilities for clinical methods of contraception.

A review of the evidence shows that CBD has increased access to and use of contraception in Sub-Saharan Africa (Phillips, Greene, and Jackson 1999). Bongaarts and others (2012) report that CBD resulted in increases in contraceptive acceptance and use on the order of 15 percent to 25 percent. In Bangladesh, the Matlab program achieved a 25 percent reduction in fertility during an eight-year period among women who were visited every two weeks by trained community health workers (Koenig and others 1987). A study in Madagascar finds that individuals who had direct communication with community health workers were 10 times more likely to use contraceptives than individuals who did not (Stoebenau and Valente 2003). Community-based health workers have successfully reached underserved populations, including unmarried women, those with less supportive husbands, and indigenous women (Malarcher and others 2011; Prata and others 2005).

Community-based programming is considered to be a high-impact practice in family planning (HIP 2012), and interest is growing. To rapidly scale up access to a range of public health services, including family planning, Ethiopia in 2003 began to deploy more than 30,000 health extension workers at the community level. Ethiopia’s health extension workers are partially credited with achieving that country’s rapid increase in its contraceptive prevalence rate, from 13.9 percent in 2005 to 27.3 percent in 2011 (USAID/Africa Bureau and others 2013).

Social marketing.

Social marketing has been part of family planning programming since the 1960s, when it was first used to link social good with marketing approaches to raise awareness and promote condom use (Chandy and others 1965). Social marketing combines the “4Ps” of marketing—product, price, place, and promotion—to increase use by population groups. Social marketing in family planning programs makes contraceptive products accessible and affordable through private-sector outlets, most notably, pharmacies and shops,
while using commercial marketing techniques to achieve behavioral change goals (HIP 2012).

Using a variety of models, family planning social marketing has been used most widely to promote condoms and oral contraceptives, with strong evidence of impact (Chapman and Astatke 2003; Madhavan and Bishai 2010; Sweat and others 2012). It has also been used to promote injectables, emergency contraception, and the Standard Days Method (CycleBeads®). In 1990, social marketing contributed an estimated 7.4 million couple-year protection (CYP), growing to 23.4 million in 2000 and 53.4 million in 2010 (DKT International 2011), more than a sevenfold increase during the 20-year time span.

Social franchising. Social franchising has been used to increase the share of the private commercial sector in family planning. From the first social franchises for family planning that Sangini started in Nepal in 1994 and Greenstar in Pakistan in 1995, the use of this approach has grown globally and includes PROSALUD in Bolivia and Blue Star in Ghana. An extension of social marketing, social franchises use the same techniques as commercial franchises—standardized, high-quality services, offered by trained providers under a franchise name.

Social franchising for family planning supports fee-based provision of a range of clinical contraceptive methods and broader reproductive health services. Fees can be paid with cash, vouchers, or other mechanisms. An analysis of the effect of social franchising on contraceptive use in four countries finds that “franchising has a positive association with both general and family planning client volumes, and the number of family planning brands available,” with client satisfaction varying across settings (Stephenson and others 2004, 2053). A 2010 assessment of evaluations of social franchising concludes that the studies demonstrate strong evidence that social franchising increases the uptake of family planning services, and moderate evidence that it increases use by poor populations (Madhavan and Bishai 2010).

Mobile services. Mobile services have been used to extend access to long-acting and permanent contraceptive methods to remote populations using trained providers (Bakamjian 2008). A 2010 evaluation of mobile outreach services operated by Marie Stopes International in Ethiopia, Myanmar, Pakistan, Sierra Leone, and Vietnam to provide IUDs and implants finds that women were generally satisfied with the services, would use the mobile services again, and would recommend the services to others (Eva and Ngo 2010). In Nepal, mobile services are a key component of the government’s program to reach remote areas. Government-run mobile clinics provide 20 percent of voluntary female sterilization procedures and more than 33 percent of voluntary male sterilization procedures (Ministry of Health and Population [Nepal], New ERA, and Macro International Inc. 2012). For mobile services to provide optimal care, it is important that adequate follow-up care be available.

mHealth. Family planning programming has made use of a range of media, including radio and television, to raise awareness and spread messages about services (Bertrand and others 2006). These conventional uses of information and communication technologies are being supplemented by use of wireless technology, most notably cell phones. mHealth is reaching clients with information and financing mechanisms and measures to strengthen services, including providing training and support to health workers, addressing commodity logistics, and monitoring and evaluation. These mHealth initiatives are building on the rapidly growing use of wireless technology. A 2012 review of information and communication technologies for family planning and reproductive health noted that such initiatives “range from using SMS [short message service] and text messages to give information on family planning methods to women mobile users; to wireless solutions that update and connect rural health workers to web-based distance learning programs; to mobile phones and PC [personal computer] solutions that help to manage health data, drug supplies, patient medical records, and the health workforce” (AIDSTAR-Two 2012, 32). mHealth initiatives are relatively new, and few have been well evaluated; most are in pilot phases, with little current evidence of scale up.

Results-based financing. Use of results-based financing, known by many names, including performance-based financing and performance-based incentives, is a rising trend in health programming. Given the history of misuse of incentive payments in family planning (Norman 2013), careful consideration of which aspects of performance are to be rewarded is critical. Performance payments that focus on improving access to family planning services and reducing financial and other barriers are appropriate. For example, reasonable reimbursement to compensate for the costs of obtaining a voluntary sterilization are allowable. However, paying clients to accept contraception or to accept certain methods are not. Similarly, offering incentives to providers to achieve target numbers of users or specific methods is not condoned (Eichler and others 2010).

Vouchers. Performance-based financing for family planning has included vouchers for services and conditional cash transfers. Vouchers can increase access for poor and marginalized populations to specific reproductive
services and products at qualified outlets at subsidized prices (Bongaarts and others 2012). A systematic review of the evidence on vouchers in LMICs finds 13 programs that fit the systematic review criteria; of these, all evaluations reported positive findings, indicating that voucher programs increased the use of reproductive health services, improved quality of care, and improved population health outcomes (Bellows, Bellows, and Warren 2011). However, most voucher programs are small, and additional research is needed to evaluate their impact.

**Conditional cash transfers.** Conditional cash transfer (CCT) programs can include family planning, although such programs should not make contraceptive use a condition for acceptance into the program. CCTs are relatively new and require more research on their effects on family planning decision making. For example, Brazil’s Bolsa Familia CCT, which reaches 12 million families with payments going through women, resulted in significantly increased women’s decision-making power related to contraception but only in urban areas (De Brauw and others 2013). In Mexico’s Oportunidades program, contraceptive use increased more among the beneficiaries in communities with the CCT program, compared with women in communities in which the program had not been initiated (Feldman and others 2009). Nicaragua’s CCT, Red de Proteccion Social, is credited with increasing birth spacing among beneficiaries (Todd, Winters, and Stecklov 2010).

**Cost-Effectiveness of Family Planning**

A systematic literature search identified seven studies on cost-effectiveness of contraceptives published since 2000; one additional study was obtained from a supplemental search adding the term “couple-year protection” as an economic term. The literature on cost-effectiveness of family planning is well established, given that lending and aid for family planning has been available since at least the 1970s. Recent studies focus on the cost-effectiveness of extending benefits to underserved countries and on newer family planning methods. Four studies use cost per life-year saved, examining primarily the benefits to the mother’s health from pregnancies averted; the other four use cost per CYP. The four studies focusing on mother’s health (Afghanistan, India, and two from Nigeria; see Horton, Wu, and Brouwer 2013) conclude that modern contraceptives are very cost-effective in that cost per life-year saved was less than per capita gross domestic product (GDP).

The four studies using CYP as an outcome examined somewhat disparate policies. Seamans and Harner-Jay (2007) conclude that using more modern methods of vasectomy compared with older methods reduced the cost per CYP in three countries, provided that clinics do a large enough volume of procedures to maintain quality. Abbas, Khan, and Khan (2013); Nakhaee and others (2002); and Onwujekwe and others (2013) examine the expansion of modern contraceptive use in countries with limited access. Abbas, Khan, and Khan (2013) conclude that the public services in Pakistan are high cost per CYP compared with other countries; Nakhaee and others (2002) rank the cost-effectiveness of various methods for the Islamic Republic of Iran; and Onwujekwe and others (2013) conclude that willingness to pay exceeds costs for methods other than female condoms in Nigeria.

**ADOLESCENT SEXUAL AND REPRODUCTIVE HEALTH**

The public health outcomes of adolescent pregnancy are profound. Adolescents ages 15–19 years are twice as likely to die during pregnancy and childbirth than women older than age 20 years; those under age 15 years are five times more likely to die during pregnancy or childbirth (WHO 2011). Complications of pregnancy and childbirth are the leading cause of death for adolescent girls ages 15–19 years in LMICs. Adolescents undergo an estimated 3.2 million unsafe abortions every year (UNFPA 2013). The social outcomes of adolescent pregnancy are also profound, with girls’ potential remaining unfulfilled and their basic human rights denied (Hindon and Fatusi 2009; UNFPA 2013; WHO 2011).

**Programming for Adolescents**

Providing adolescents with the means to attain high standards of health, in ways that ensure equality, nondiscrimination, privacy, and confidentiality, is an integral part of respecting and protecting globally accepted human rights (Ringheim 2007; UNFPA 2012). Ensuring that adolescents have access to sexual and reproductive health services requires extending the availability, accessibility, acceptability, and quality of the information and the services (Hardee and others 2013). Helping adolescents make a healthy transition to adulthood involves programs to protect them from unintended pregnancy, sexually transmitted infections (STIs), and poor reproductive health outcomes. These programs can enable young people to delay sexual activity, to protect themselves from pregnancy and STIs once they do initiate sexual activity, and to ensure that sex is not coerced.

The range of interventions suggested include strengthening the enabling environment, and providing
information and services and support programs to build resilience and assets.

Enabling Environment

Provide legal protection. Although the need for strong legal protection for adolescents is clear, few interventions have been documented or evaluated. Still, laws protecting against child marriage and against rape and other forms of gender-based violence clearly need to be developed and implemented (Lee-Rife and others 2012; WHO 2011). Laws requiring parental consent for adolescents to access HIV testing discourage adolescents from knowing their HIV status and accessing treatment in a timely fashion.

Reduce gender-inequitable norms and violence. Norms about acceptable behavior for males and females strongly influence the socialization of children and adolescents; gender disparities become more evident as children near adolescence (UNICEF 2011). Gender norms tend to dictate that girls should be sexually submissive, while boys should be sexually adventurous; these norms promote the acceptance of gender-based violence, place girls at risk of unintended pregnancy, and put both girls and boys at risk for HIV (Gay and others 2011). Gender norms that accept gender-based violence are harmful to the lives and reproductive health of adolescents.

Keep girls and boys in school. Staying in school provides a protective effect. Girls who stay in school are less likely to become pregnant, less likely to marry at a young age (Lloyd and Young 2009; UNFPA 2013), and more likely to use contraception. Staying in school also provides a protective effect against HIV acquisition (Bradley and others 2007; Hargreaves and others 2008). Interventions to abolish school fees have enabled adolescents to attend or to stay in school (Burns, Mingat, and Rakotomalala 2003; Deininger 2003; UNICEF 2005; World Bank and UNICEF 2009).

CCTs show the potential to enable girls to stay in school (Baird and others 2012), but context is important. Recent studies in South Africa show an effect of cash transfers on herpes simplex virus type 2 (HSV-2) but no effect on HIV incidence (Karim and others 2015; Pettifor and others 2015). Community-based programming (CBP) to encourage girls to stay in school can also be effective (Erulkar and Muthengi 2009).

Information and Services

Offer age-appropriate comprehensive sex education. Ensuring that young people have the appropriate information to plan to protect themselves—before their first sexual experience—is vitally important. As the late Doug Kirby stated, young people around the world are seeking access to reliable information on reproductive health and answers for their questions and concerns about sexuality. “They need information not only about physiology and a better understanding of the norms that society has set for sexual behavior, but they also need to acquire the skills necessary to develop healthy relationships and engage in responsible decision-making about sex, especially during adolescence when their emotional development accelerates” (Kirby 2011).

Evidence shows that comprehensive sex education with specific characteristics regarding content and pedagogy, taught by trained teachers, can affect behavior, including delaying sexual debut, decreasing number of sexual partners, and increasing the use of condoms or other contraceptives (Grunseit and others 1997; Mavedzenge, Doyle, and Ross 2011; UNESCO 2009). It is important to include a discussion of gender norms that can put both male and female adolescents at risk (Barker and others 2010; Pulerwitz and others 2006).

Use mass media. Multiple mass media approaches have been used to inform adolescents about sexual and reproductive health issues, particularly AIDS and HIV (UNFPA 2013). Evaluated media approaches include entertainment-education, social marketing, and media channels (television, radio, magazines, and the Internet) (Gurman and Underwood 2008). Newer social media approaches are promising, but their effects have yet to be evaluated.

A systematic review of the effectiveness of 24 mass media interventions on HIV-related knowledge, attitudes, and behaviors finds that such programs generally produced small to moderate changes (Bertrand and others 2006). Outcomes included increased knowledge and behavioral changes, such as reduction in high-risk behavior, increased communication, and increased condom use. A similar review by Gurman and Underwood (2008), which focuses specifically on media interventions for adolescents, finds similar outcomes, although the review highlights the paucity of results in the literature pertaining to gender-specific and youth-focused interventions.

Gurman and Underwood (2008) offer four lessons from their review:

- Ensure that the intervention is appropriate for the intended audience.
- Design interventions that go beyond the individual level to include contextual factors, such as improving communication with caring adults, changing gender norms, and linking to services.
• Include a range of media, as well as interpersonal communication.
• Plan for the evaluation at the beginning of the program.

**Provide adolescent-friendly contraceptive services.**

The importance of providing adolescents and youth with services that are tailored to their special needs has long been recognized (Senderwitz 1999). Rather than stand-alone youth-friendly services or separate spaces within services for adolescents, current programming is focusing on mainstreaming adolescent-friendly contraceptive services with existing family planning services. Four components of adolescent-friendly contraceptive services are important to reducing the common barriers adolescents face in accessing services (Box 6.1).

Interventions in China, Ghana, India, Kenya, Nicaragua, Tanzania, Uganda, and Zimbabwe have shown that providing one or more of the components of adolescent-friendly contraceptive services can increase use of contraceptives or condoms (Decker and Montagu 2007; Kanesathasan and others 2008; Karim and others 2009; Kim and others 2001; Lou and others 2004; Meuwissen, Gorter, and Knottnerus 2006; Williams and others 2007).

Youth centers, however, have not been found to be an effective and efficient programming strategy for reaching youth (Zuurmond, Geary, and Ross 2012).

**Expand access to and promotion of the use of condoms and other contraceptives.** Ensuring access to and regular use of condoms and other contraceptives is an essential element in programs to protect youth from unintended pregnancies and STIs. The use of condoms to guard against STIs can provide the added benefit of safeguarding fertility (Brady 2003). Promoting condoms for pregnancy prevention, as well as for prevention of HIV and other STIs, could increase condom use for safe sex among young people (Agha 2003). An analysis of survey data from 18 Sub-Saharan African countries finds that use of condoms for pregnancy prevention rose significantly in 13 of 18 countries between 1993 and 2001. Condom use among young Sub-Saharan African women increased by an average annual rate of 1.4 percent, with 58.5 percent of the users reporting that they were motivated by a desire to prevent pregnancy (Cleland, Ali, and Shah 2006).

Evidence suggests that if condom use is established during adolescence, it is more likely to be sustained in the long term (Schutt-Aine and Maddaleno 2003). A study of sexually active youth in Ethiopia, 75 percent of whom were female, finds that once young people started to use condoms, they were more likely to continue to use them (Molla, Astrøm, and Berhane 2007).

Still, a review of 28 studies of HIV prevention in Sub-Saharan Africa finds that the effect of interventions on condom use at last sexual activity were generally greater in males than in females, suggesting that “women still experience marked difficulties in negotiating condom use or assuming full control over their sexual activity” (Michielsen and others 2010, 1201).

A gender-transformative approach could be to ensure that all adolescent girls receive fertility awareness training, for example, using CycleSmar™ or using CycleBeads® as they begin menstruation as a teaching tool to empower them to know and understand their reproductive cycles and to understand when they can get pregnant (IRH, n.d.a). A new study is underway to study the effects of fertility awareness on contraceptive use (IRH, n.d.b).

**Implement programs for out-of-school and married adolescents.** Most programming for adolescents is school- or health facility–based, yet millions of children and adolescents are not in school. UNESCO estimates that 57 million children of primary school age and 69 million children of lower-secondary school age do not attend school (UNESCO 2013; UNFPA 2013). Mass media approaches and CBP show promise in reaching out-of-school adolescents, although programming for this group is challenging (Bhuiya and others 2004).

**Building Resilience and Assets**

Programs to improve life skills and build resilience to risk factors among adolescents have shown promising results (Askew and others 2004; Erulkar and others 2004; Kanesathasan and others 2008; Kim and others 2001; Mathur, Mehta, and Malhotra 2004; Meekers, Stallworthy, and Harris 1997). These programs, which focus on building protective factors to promote success rather than eliminating factors associated with failure,
have included a mix of community awareness and engagement of community leaders; assistance to link adolescents with significant adults in their lives, most notably parents; provision of safe spaces for adolescents; and provision of information, services, and the building of skills. Cuidate, a sexual-risk-reduction program in Mexico, provides a six-hour training program for parents and adolescents. After four years, the adolescent program participants were more likely to be older at first sexual activity and to use a condom or other contraceptive at first sexual activity, compared with the control group (Villarruel and others 2010).

UNSAFE ABORTION

Interventions to Reduce Unsafe Abortion

Although the need for abortion can be reduced if the need for contraceptive options is better addressed, the need for safe abortion care will remain. Contraceptive methods do fail; women often become pregnant in circumstances in which the use of contraception may not be possible or where sex is nonconsensual. Medical or other circumstances for the woman could change even after she becomes pregnant.

Abortion in early pregnancy (less than nine weeks) performed with appropriate techniques by trained personnel is one of the safest medical procedures, with a case fatality rate of 0.6 per 100,000 procedures (Raymond and Grimes 2012); this rate is 14 times lower than the risk of death associated with childbirth. Complications increase with increasing gestation, but the termination of pregnancy remains a safe procedure.

Safe and Simple Technologies

The WHO recognizes vacuum aspiration (manual and electric) up to 12–14 weeks of gestation, and dilation and evacuation beyond that stage, as safe and appropriate surgical procedures. Medical abortion using the sequential combination of mifepristone, followed by misoprostol, is recommended as a safe and effective method that can be used at any stage of pregnancy, although doses and specific protocols change as gestation advances. Vacuum aspiration can be provided on an outpatient basis at the primary care level; medical abortion up to nine weeks is a process rather than a procedure and can be managed as an outpatient primary care service, with some of the medications taken by women at home (WHO 2012).

Access to Technologies

Although simple, safe, and effective medical interventions already exist, appropriate technology is of little benefit if it is not used by providers and is not accessible to women. Therein lies the challenge. Legal restrictions on the circumstances under which abortions are permitted or who can provide them; critical health workforce shortages, particularly in South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa; lack of training opportunities for providers; conscientious objection to care provision on the part of some providers; and the social, cultural, and political stigma around abortion all make it difficult to ensure access to safe abortion care. Despite the availability of vacuum aspiration for more than 40 years, the use of sharp curettage (dilation and curettage) is still common in many countries. The WHO no longer recommends dilation and curettage because it has more complications, often needs general anesthesia, and has higher costs for women and health facilities (WHO 2012). Similarly, although both mifepristone and misoprostol are included in the WHO’s model list of essential medicines, mifepristone is not registered or available across most of Latin America and the Caribbean and Sub-Saharan Africa (Gynuity 2013).

Promising Approaches

Services to the full extent of the law. Although laws vary, all but six countries allow legal abortion in some circumstances, most often to save the life of the woman and often when pregnancy is the result of rape or incest (UN Population Division 2013a). Whatever the legal context, the treatment of women with complications is legal, and evacuation in case of incomplete abortion is a signal function of basic emergency obstetric care. Interpreting and implementing laws to their full extent and keeping the health of women center stage can make safer care more accessible.

Expanding the pool of providers. A systematic review of the evidence shows that both vacuum aspiration and medical abortion can be safely provided by non-physician providers (Renner, Brahami, and Kapp 2013). Many countries allow clinical associates, midwives, or nurses to treat incomplete abortion using manual vacuum aspiration; several, including Vietnam, allow them to provide induced abortion as well. Bangladesh has had a mature program with auxiliary workers providing menstrual regulation for more than 40 years (Johnston and others 2011). Because medical abortion is a relatively newer technology, fewer countries have yet moved to decentralize care; it is well-suited to a wider provider base since it does not need surgical skills. Ethiopia and Ghana both allow midwives to provide medical abortions, and Nepal has incrementally progressed to allowing midwives, then nurses, and more recently,
auxiliary nurses working at lower-level facilities to provide medical abortions, demonstrating the feasibility even in low-resource settings.

In many contexts, a pharmacy is the first and sometimes only health care contact for a woman with an unintended pregnancy. Although results have not always been successful, interventions to provide pharmacy workers with accurate information, minimize harm, or develop referral linkages with other authorized providers have potential and need to be further explored (Sneeringer and others 2012). Similarly, community health workers can play a role in assessing eligibility, making appropriate referrals, and helping women determine the need for follow-up care.

Where mifepristone is not available. If mifepristone is not available, misoprostol, an inexpensive anti-ulcer medicine with other obstetric and gynecological uses, is usually more readily accessible and can be used alone to terminate a pregnancy. The failure rate is higher than when used in combination with mifepristone, but it is still safe and effective, and is a WHO-recommended option (WHO 2012). Important gains in reducing the morbidity and mortality from unsafe abortions have been made, especially in Latin America and the Caribbean, with the use of this strategy.

Innovations. The use of telemedicine to provide medical abortions can help bring needed care to women who do not have physical access (Gomperts and others 2012; Grindlay, Lane, and Grossman 2013; Grossman and others 2011). Decreasing the need for clinic visits through approaches that allow telephone follow-up or self-assessment of the abortion process using semi-quantitative pregnancy tests (Lynd and others 2013) is another promising innovation. mHealth approaches with text messaging can help support women through the abortion process, providing information and reminders about medications, side effects, and postabortion contraception. The risk-reduction model pioneered in Uruguay combines provision of information and post-abortion care; this approach can be legally implemented even in countries with restrictive legal environments (Fiol and others 2012).

Information and attitudes. Even where abortion is legal, women are often unaware of how and where to access it (Adinma and others 2011; Banerjee and others 2013; Thapa, Sharma, and Khatiwada 2014). Approaches to empowering women with knowledge using interpersonal communication, drama, theater, radio, wall signage, and mass media communication have all had some success; understanding the local context and appropriately tailoring the approach is critical (Banerjee and others 2013; Bingham and others 2011). Telephone help lines can provide confidential sources of information and support. Social networking and Internet-based information are becoming increasingly important in providing accurate information; however, empowering women to be able to detect misinformation and avoid dangers, like the sale of spurious medical abortion agents, is also needed.

Addressing the stigma and taboos around sexuality, unintended pregnancies, and abortion is important, as is providing women with the information and skills to negotiate traditional gender roles and inequities. Providers need medically accurate information and the skills to be able to clarify internal values and provide care to women in a nonjudgmental way.

Postabortion contraception. Although the evidence on its overall impact on maternal mortality has not been well studied, ensuring effective and seamless linkages among abortion care, contraceptive information, voluntary counseling, and onsite availability of contraception is an important strategy for increasing the use of post-abortion contraception and helping women prevent subsequent unintended pregnancies (Tripney, Kwan, and Bird 2013). However, ensuring that contraceptive acceptance does not become coercive or a precondition to getting abortion care is also needed.

A multifaceted approach is needed. An excellent example is seen in Nepal, where legal reform followed by proactive efforts to scale up services has yielded rich dividends and already shows some evidence of a decline in serious morbidity from unsafe abortion (Henderson and others 2013; Samandari and others 2012).

Conclusion. A combination of approaches that include sexuality education and women’s contraceptive needs to reduce the need for abortion, the provision of safe abortion services, and the availability of treatment for complications to attenuate morbidity and reduce the mortality from unsafe abortions—grounded in a framework of human rights—can collectively minimize the burden of the consequences of unsafe abortion. Safe abortion has been shown to be cost-effective (see DCP3, volume 1, Essential Surgery, chapter 18 [Prinja and others 2015]).
secondary prevention by mitigating the consequences of violence and reducing the risk of further violent episodes. Early identification and response can also contribute to primary prevention by identifying and supporting the children of women who suffer domestic violence. Evidence suggests that early intervention is likely to have a positive impact on later risk behaviors and health problems among children and adolescents. It can also contribute to reducing the social and economic costs of such violence. (Bott, Morrison, and Ellsberg 2005; Garcia Moreno and others 2014). (See DCP3 volume 7, Injury Prevention and Environmental Health, Mercy and others, forthcoming, for further discussion of interpersonal violence)

Although violence against women has been accepted as a critical public health and clinical care issue, the health care policies of many countries still do not address it. The critical role that the health system and health care providers can play in identification, assessment, treatment, crisis intervention, documentation, referral, and follow-up is poorly understood or poorly accepted within national health programs and policies (WHO 2013; WHO 2014c). Women who have been subjected to violence often seek health care for their injuries, even if they may not disclose the associated abuse or violence, and a health care provider is likely to be the first professional contact for survivors of intimate partner violence or sexual assault. Women also identify health care providers as the professionals they would most trust with the disclosure of abuse (Feder and others 2006). Reproductive health care providers are particularly well positioned given that most women will at some point consult them for contraception, antenatal care, and delivery.

Responding to Intimate Partner Violence and Sexual Violence

The WHO clinical and policy guidelines (WHO 2013) summarize the evidence for clinical interventions for intimate partner violence and for sexual violence against women. They also review the evidence for service delivery and training on these issues for health care providers and make evidence-based recommendations to improve the response of the health sector to violence against women.

Health professionals can provide assistance to women suffering from violence by facilitating disclosure, offering support and referral, gathering forensic evidence—particularly in cases of sexual violence—and providing the appropriate medical services and follow-up care. Health care providers who come into contact with women facing intimate partner violence need to be able to recognize the signs and respond appropriately and safely. Women exposed to violence require comprehensive, gender-sensitive health care services that address the physical and mental health consequences of their experience and aid their recovery. Women may also require crisis intervention services to prevent further harm. Treating cases of rape includes providing emergency contraception and prophylaxis for HIV and other STIs; psychological first-line support; and access to safe abortion and longer-term mental health care support, if needed. In addition to providing immediate medical services, the health sector is a potentially crucial gateway to providing assistance through referral to specific services for violence against women—or other aid that women may require at a later date, such as social welfare and legal aid. In all circumstances, all health care providers should be trained to provide a minimum first-line supportive response (WHO 2013, 2014b).

The WHO recommendations are addressed to health care providers because they are in a unique position to address the health and psychosocial needs of women who live with or who have experienced violence. They also seek to inform health policy makers or program managers in charge of planning and implementing health care services and those designing curricula.

The health sector can also play an advocacy role by supporting research to document the impact and extent of the problem, raise awareness, and establish links in the multisectoral response that is needed to address this serious health risk for women.

CONCLUSIONS

Significant progress in improving reproductive health has been made in some areas. Family planning has expanded worldwide through new approaches and new methods. A renewed commitment to family planning among donors and national governments has stimulated wider coverage of services accompanied by greater emphasis on quality and human rights. A new focus on adolescent sexual health has spurred interest in better ways to reach adolescents with effective messages and services. New approaches to reducing gender-based violence have been tested and the lessons learned have been distilled in clinical and policy guidelines.

However, much remains to be done. In spite of the advances in family planning, in 35 countries fewer than 30 percent of women of reproductive age use modern contraception. Choice of methods is still limited in many countries, even some with high levels of contraceptive prevalence, because of lack of access, provider biases, and other program factors. Although good options for safe abortion exist, these services remain
unavailable in many countries because of legal barriers, lack of training, and stigma. We have more information about how to reach adolescents with effective services and how to reduce gender-based violence. The major challenge is how to more widely implement those programs that have been proven to be safe, effective, and affordable.

NOTE

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICS) are subdivided:
  a) lower-middle-income = US$1,046 to US$4,125
  b) upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126 to US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

REFERENCES


DHS (Demographic and Health Surveys. Data from multiple surveys and years. http://www.statcompiler.com.


Seltzer, J. 2002. The Origins and Evolution of Family Planning Programs in Developing Countries. Santa Monica, CA: RAND.


UN, New York.


Chapter 7

Interventions to Reduce Maternal and Newborn Morbidity and Mortality

A. Metin Gülmezoglu, Theresa A. Lawrie, Natasha Hezelgrave, Olufemi T. Oladapo, João Paulo Souza, Marijke Gielen, Joy E. Lawn, Rajiv Bahl, Fernando Althabe, Daniela Colaci, and G. Justus Hofmeyr

INTRODUCTION

In 2015, an estimated 303,000 women died as a result of pregnancy and childbirth-related complications (WHO 2015a). Most of these deaths occurred in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs). Sub-Saharan Africa had the highest maternal mortality ratio (MMR) in 2015, an estimated 546 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births; the MMR for high-income countries (HICs) was an estimated 17 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births (map 7.1) (WHO 2015a). Although significant progress has been made since 1990 in achieving the Millennium Development Goals (MDGs), with a reduction in the global MMR from 385 to 216 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births, this reduction falls short of the 2015 MDG 5 target of a 75 percent reduction.

Similarly, mortality for children under age five years (MDG 4) declined by 49 percent, from 12.4 million in 1990 to 5.9 million in 2015, but still substantially short of the 2015 target of a reduction by two-thirds, and the decline is much slower for neonatal deaths per 100,000 live births, this reduction falls short of the 2015 MDG 5 target of a 75 percent reduction.

Significant proportions of these maternal, fetal, and newborn deaths are preventable. A crucial focus of recent initiatives, such as Ending Preventable Maternal Mortality, is quality of care (WHO 2015b). This chapter discusses biomedical interventions for major causes of morbidity and mortality in pregnancy and childbirth in the context of people’s right to access good quality, respectful, and timely care—wherever they may live.

Corresponding author: A. Metin Gülmezoglu, Department of Reproductive Health and Research, World Health Organization, Geneva, gulmezoglum@who.int.
INTERVENTIONS TO REDUCE MATERNAL MORTALITY AND MORBIDITY

Major obstetric causes of maternal mortality include hemorrhage (postpartum hemorrhage [PPH], and hemorrhage due to placental abruption, placenta previa, ruptured uterus, and other causes), hypertensive diseases of pregnancy (mainly preeclampsia/eclampsia), and maternal sepsis. In a study conducted across 29 countries in Asia, Latin America and the Caribbean, the Middle East and North Africa, and Sub-Saharan Africa, PPH and preeclampsia/eclampsia each accounted for more than 25 percent of maternal deaths and near-misses; maternal sepsis accounted for approximately 8 percent (Souza and others 2013). The burden of disease due to obstructed labor is difficult to estimate because these data may be coded under sepsis or hemorrhage. However, ruptured uterus, a possible consequence of obstructed labor, accounted for 4.3 percent of maternal deaths and near-miss events in the multicountry study.

Data on indirect causes of maternal deaths—those associated with conditions, such as heart disease, malaria, tuberculosis, and HIV, exacerbated by pregnancy—are also difficult to capture. However, the contribution of indirect causes of maternal deaths is estimated to be about 28 percent and seems to be increasing, particularly in Sub-Saharan Africa (Say and others 2014). In 2015, 2.0 percent of indirect maternal deaths in Sub-Saharan Africa were related to HIV, with the proportion reaching 10 percent or more in five countries (WHO 2015a). This highlights the importance of integrating service delivery during pregnancy and childbirth as recommended by the WHO Integrated Management in Pregnancy and Childcare (IMPAC) package (WHO 2010a). Interventions to reduce indirect causes of maternal mortality and morbidity are not addressed in this chapter.

Table 7.1 provides an overview of selected medical interventions to reduce poor maternal outcomes for which there is moderate to high-quality evidence.

**Postpartum Hemorrhage**

Most of the evidence for PPH comes from reviews of studies in both high-income countries (HICs) and LMICs.

**Preventing Postpartum Hemorrhage**

The most effective intervention for preventing PPH is the use of uterotonics—drugs that contract the uterus—during the third stage of labor before the placenta is delivered. An injectable uterotonic is the drug of choice; however, oral or sublingual misoprostol may be used when injectable uterotonics are not available (table 7.2).

*Oxytocin and ergot alkaloids.* A Cochrane review assessed the effect of prophylactic oxytocin given during the third stage of labor on PPH (blood loss greater than 500 milliliters) (Westhoff, Cotter, and Tolosa 2013). The review included 20 randomized controlled trials (RCTs) conducted in LMICs and HICs involving 10,806 women. Prophylactic oxytocin, compared with placebo, halved the risk of PPH; when compared with ergot alkaloids, it reduced the risk of PPH by 25 percent. There was no significant difference in the risk of PPH with the combination of oxytocin and ergometrine versus ergot alkaloids alone. Oxytocin was better tolerated than ergot alkaloids.
Table 7.1 Evidence-Based Interventions that Reduce Maternal Morbidity and Mortality

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of intervention</th>
<th>Main effects</th>
<th>Quality of evidence</th>
<th>Source of evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Postpartum hemorrhage (PPH)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxytocin</td>
<td>• Halves PPH risk when used routinely for prevention&lt;br&gt;• Recommended for prevention and treatment</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Westhoff, Cotter, and Tolosa 2013; WHO 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Misoprostol</td>
<td>• Reduces PPH risk and the need for blood transfusion&lt;br&gt;• Recommended for PPH prevention if oxytocin unavailable</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Tunçalp, Hofmeyr, and Gülmezoglu 2012; WHO 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preeclampsia and eclampsia</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium supplementation</td>
<td>• Halves preeclampsia risk in all women&lt;br&gt;• Risk reduction is greatest in high-risk women and those with low dietary calcium intake</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Hofmeyr and others 2014; WHO 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirin supplementation</td>
<td>• Reduces the risk of preeclampsia in high-risk women</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Duley and others 2007; WHO 2011b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium sulphate</td>
<td>• Reduces the risk of first seizure in women with preeclampsia and recurrent seizures in eclampsia, with a trend to reduced maternal mortality</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Altman and others 2002; Duley, Gülmezoglu, and others 2010; WHO 2011b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sepsis</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prophylactic antibiotics at cesarean section</td>
<td>• Reduces risk of wound infection, endometritis, and serious maternal infectious morbidity</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Smaill and Grivell 2014</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: This list is not comprehensive. PPH = postpartum hemorrhage.

a. Based on GRADE Working Group grades of evidence (Atkins and others 2004). The GRADE approach considers evidence from randomized trials to be high quality in the first instance, and downgrades the evidence to moderate, low, or very low if there are limitations in trial quality suggesting bias, inconsistency, imprecise or sparse data, uncertainty about directness, or high probability of publication bias. Evidence from observational studies is graded low quality in the first instance and upgraded to moderate (or high) if large effects are yielded in the absence of obvious bias.

Table 7.2 Interventions to Prevent Postpartum Hemorrhage

Evidence-based effective interventions for postpartum hemorrhage prevention

- Uterotonic used during the third stage of labor: Oxytocin (10 IU IM or IV) is the drug of choice (Westhoff, Cotter, and Tolosa 2013).
- In settings where oxytocin is unavailable, other injectable uterotonic—ergot alkaloids if appropriate, or the fixed drug combination of oxytocin and ergometrine, oral misoprostol (600 micrograms)—are recommended (WHO 2012).

Note: IM = intramuscular; IU = international unit; IV = intravenous; µg = microgram.

Misoprostol. A Cochrane review assessed the effect of prophylactic misoprostol compared with uterotonicics or no uterotonic given during the third stage of labor to women at risk of PPH (Tunçalp, Hofmeyr, and Gülmezoglu 2012). The review included 72 trials conducted in LMICs and HICs involving 52,678 women. In comparison with oxytocin, oral or sublingual misoprostol was associated with an increased risk of severe PPH (blood loss greater than 1,000 milliliters). However, misoprostol was significantly more effective than placebo in reducing PPH and blood transfusions. Misoprostol is associated with an increased risk of shivering and fever (temperature of 38°C or higher) compared with oxytocin and placebo. It does not appear to increase or decrease severe maternal morbidity or mortality (Hofmeyr and others 2013).
Misoprostol does not require refrigeration and is inexpensive and easy to administer. In settings in which skilled birth attendants are not present and oxytocin is unavailable, the World Health Organization (WHO) recommends that misoprostol (600 micrograms orally) be given to women in the third stage of labor by community health care workers and lay health workers to prevent PPH (WHO 2012). Continued vigilance for adverse effects is essential. Additional research is needed to further determine the relative effectiveness and the risks of various dosages of misoprostol and to identify the lowest effective dose.

Other Interventions

Uterine massage. Evidence on the efficacy of uterine massage for the prevention of PPH is limited and inconclusive. A Cochrane review evaluated data from two RCTs of 1,491 women that investigated the effects of uterine massage before, after, or both before and after delivery of the placenta (Hofmeyr, Abdel-Aleem, and Abdel-Aleem 2013). No significant difference was observed in uterine blood loss, irrespective of when the massage was initiated, between the intervention and control groups. The WHO does not recommend sustained uterine massage as an intervention to prevent PPH in women who have received prophylactic oxytocin. However, early postpartum identification of uterine atony—failure of the uterus to contract sufficiently—is recommended for all women.

Early versus late cord clamping. A Cochrane review assessed the effects of early cord clamping (less than one minute after birth), compared with late cord clamping after birth, on maternal and neonatal outcomes (McDonald and others 2013). The review included 15 trials conducted in LMICs and HICs involving 3,911 women and infant pairs. There was no significant difference between early versus late cord clamping groups with respect to PPH and severe PPH in the mothers. However, late cord clamping increased early hemoglobin concentrations and iron stores in infants, compared with early cord clamping, and the WHO recommends late cord clamping to improve infant outcomes (WHO 2012).

Controlled cord traction. Two large trials of controlled cord traction (CCT) have been conducted, one of 23,861 women in eight LMICs (Gülmezoglu, Lumbiganon, and others 2012) and the other of 4,013 women in France (Deneux-Tharaux and others 2013). The results of these trials suggest that CCT performed as part of the management of the third stage of labor has no clinically important effect on the incidence of PPH. The WHO weakly recommends CCT by skilled birth attendants (WHO 2012).

Treating Postpartum Hemorrhage

Evidence for the most common interventions for treating PPH due to atony is based on data extrapolated from studies of PPH prevention.

Primary interventions. Emptying the bladder and uterine massage to stimulate contractions are the first steps for the treatment of PPH. Although no high-quality evidence supports these interventions, they allow easier assessment of the uterus and its contractility. Uterine massage is strongly recommended for PPH treatment (WHO 2012). Fluid replacement is a key element in the resuscitation of women with PPH. No RCTs have assessed fluid replacement in this particular condition; the evidence in favor of crystalline fluid replacement is extrapolated from a Cochrane review of fluid replacement in critically ill patients (Perel, Roberts, and Ker 2013).

Drug interventions. The injectable uterotonic drugs oxytocin and ergometrine are both extremely effective in causing uterine contraction. Oxytocin is preferred initially, especially in women with a history of hypertension, because ergometrine can cause hypertension. The intravenous route is recommended for administration of oxytocin. Evidence suggests that administering misoprostol and injectable uterotonics together for PPH treatment does not confer additional benefits (Mousa and others 2014). However, if injectable uterotonics are not available or have been ineffective, misoprostol can be administered. Tranexamic acid may also be given (WHO 2012).

Uterine tamponade. Uterine tamponade, involving a mechanical device to exert pressure from within the uterus, has a reported success rate of between 60 percent and 100 percent (Diermer and others 2012; Georgiou 2009; Majumdar and others 2010; Porreco and Stettler 2010; Sheikh and others 2011; Thapa and others 2010; Yoong and others 2012). This evidence is indirect and comes mainly from case series. The types of devices used for uterine tamponade include urinary catheters (Sengstaken-Blakemore or Foley’s), balloon catheters (Bakri and Rusch), and condoms. Although the quality of the evidence is low, the WHO considers the benefits to outweigh the disadvantages and weakly recommends this intervention (WHO 2012).

Artery embolization. Artery embolization is used to treat PPH in facilities with appropriate equipment and expertise. There are no RCTs evaluating this procedure; the evidence from case series and case reports indicates that the success rate ranges between 82 percent and 100 percent (Ganguli and others 2011; Kirby and others 2009; Lee and Shepherd 2010; Touboul and others 2008; Wang and others 2009; Zwart, Dijk, and van Roosmalen 2010). The WHO weakly recommends this intervention (WHO 2012), depending on available resources.
Surgical interventions. Surgical interventions are generally used when other treatments have failed. Surgical interventions include compression sutures (for example, the B-Lynch technique); ligation of the uterine, ovarian, or iliac artery; and total or subtotal hysterectomy. The evidence supporting these procedures is limited because they are emergency, life-saving procedures. The B-Lynch technique has some advantages in that it is relatively simple to perform, preserves fertility, and has good success rates (89 percent to 100 percent) (Price and Lynch 2005). The WHO strongly recommends these life-saving procedures when indicated (WHO 2012).

Nonpneumatic antishock garment. A nonpneumatic antishock garment is a simple low-technology, first-aid device that may help stabilize women with hypovolemic shock, particularly during transport to facilities; however, high-quality research on the garment is lacking. The WHO weakly recommends this intervention, depending on available resources (WHO 2012).

Interventions in the Pipeline

Several lines of active research are underway in PPH prevention and treatment: A large RCT with a sample size of 20,000 is evaluating tranexamic acid compared with placebo in women with PPH (http://www.thewomantrial.lshtm.ac.uk/). An inhaled oxytocin development project has been awarded seed funding and is undergoing initial development research in Australia (http://www.monash.edu.au/pharm/research/iop/). The WHO is evaluating a room-temperature-stable synthetic oxytocin analogue, carbetocin. In addition, various forms of occlusive gels and foams are in development.

Preeclampsia and Eclampsia

Hypertensive disorders in pregnancy, particularly preeclampsia, complicate 2 percent to 8 percent of all pregnancies, accounting for the majority of the estimated 76,000 annual maternal deaths occurring in LMICs (Duley 2009). A WHO multicountry survey on maternal and newborn health estimates that preeclampsia is associated with more than 25 percent of severe maternal outcomes and is the direct cause of 20 percent of reported maternal deaths (Souza and others 2013). It is associated with 20 percent of infants born prematurely and 25 percent of stillbirths and neonatal deaths (Ngoc and others 2006).

The etiology of preeclampsia is unknown. It is thought to arise from the placenta and is associated with malfunction of the lining of blood vessels. The clinical spectrum of disease in preeclampsia varies, ranging from mild, asymptomatic disease, often occurring close to term, to severe, uncontrolled hypertension typically developing remote from term (less than 34 weeks). Generalized seizures (eclampsia) occur in up to 8 percent of women with preeclampsia in LMICs (Steegers and others 2010), a rate that is 10 times to 30 times more common than in HICs (Duley 2009).

Preventing Preeclampsia

The only interventions that have shown clear benefit in reducing preeclampsia risk in selected populations are low-dose aspirin (Duley and others 2007) and dietary supplementation with calcium (Hofmeyr and others 2014).

Calcium supplementation. A WHO synthesis of evidence from two Cochrane reviews (Buppasiri and others 2011; Hofmeyr and others 2014) involving 15 RCTs conducted in LMICs and HICs and 16,490 women found that calcium supplementation more than halves the incidence of preeclampsia in all women, compared with placebo, with greater reductions in high-risk women and populations with low dietary calcium intake. Calcium supplementation was associated with a 20 percent reduction in the risk of the composite outcome of maternal death or serious morbidity. The WHO strongly recommends that in areas with low dietary calcium intake, calcium supplementation commence in early pregnancy, particularly for women at high risk of preeclampsia, including those with multiple pregnancies, previous preeclampsia, preexisting hypertension, diabetes, renal or autoimmune disease, or obesity (WHO 2011a, 2013).

Low-dose aspirin. In a Cochrane review of 18 trials conducted in LMICs and HICs of prophylactic aspirin in 4,121 pregnant women, low-dose aspirin in women at high risk of preeclampsia was associated with a 25 percent risk reduction (Duley and others 2007). In addition, an 18 percent reduction in the risk of fetal or neonatal death was observed for a subgroup of trials that commenced treatment before 20 weeks’ gestation. The WHO recommends low-dose aspirin (75 milligrams a day) to be prescribed and initiated before 20 weeks gestation to those women at high risk of developing preeclampsia (WHO 2011b).

Screening for preeclampsia. Early detection is vital for timely intervention and prevention of progression to severe disease. Monitoring blood pressure and performing urinalysis are the cornerstones of antenatal screening, as are asking about symptoms that may suggest preeclampsia and noting if a fetus is smaller than expected. Detection of preeclampsia should prompt referral for specialist care.

Treating Preeclampsia and Eclampsia

The only definitive cure for preeclampsia is delivery of the baby, by induction of labor or by prelabor cesarean section (CS), to prevent progression of disease and related
morbidity and mortality. The mainstays of treatment are antihypertensive drugs for blood pressure control and magnesium sulphate (MgSO₄) for eclampsia.

**Antihypertensive therapy.** Antihypertensive therapy in preeclampsia aims to reduce the risk of severe hypertension and stroke, with a steady reduction in blood pressure to safe levels, avoiding sudden drops that may compromise blood supply to the fetus. No evidence is available on the comparative efficacy of commonly used antihypertensive medications, such as labetolol, calcium channel blockers (nifedipine), hydralazine, and methyldopa, for mild to moderate or severe hypertension. All of the agents listed have been used extensively, and the WHO guidelines recognize that they are all reasonable choices for controlling hypertension. The choice of drug should be based on the prescribing clinician’s experience with that particular drug, its cost, and local availability (WHO 2011b).

**Anticonvulsant prophylaxis and treatment.** Substantial evidence exists to demonstrate that MgSO₄, a low-cost intramuscular or intravenous treatment, is effective in preventing and controlling eclampsia. The Magpie study, a multicountry prospective RCT involving 33 centers and 10,141 women (two-thirds of the participating centers were in LMICs), compared MgSO₄ with placebo in women with preeclampsia. A reduction of more than 50 percent in preeclamptic seizures occurred in the treatment arm, with the number needed to treat of 100 women to prevent 1 case of eclampsia (Altman and others 2002); the number needed to treat fell to 63 for women with severe preeclampsia.

A Cochrane review and meta-analysis of six trials including Magpie confirmed a clinically significant reduction in risk of eclampsia of 59 percent, regardless of the route of administration of MgSO₄ (Duley, Gülmezoglu, and others 2010), with the risk of dying nonsignificantly reduced by 46 percent. Strong evidence indicates that MgSO₄ is also substantially more effective than phenytoin for the treatment of eclampsia (Duley, Henderson-Smart, and Chou 2010). The evidence regarding the effectiveness and safety of a low-dose MgSO₄ regimen is insufficient (Duley, Gülmezoglu, and others 2010); the WHO recommends the administration of the full intravenous or intramuscular regimen involving a loading dose followed by at least 24 hours of maintenance dosing.

**Timing of delivery.** For mild, moderate, and severe preeclampsia diagnosed at term, the WHO recommends a policy of early delivery by induction of labor, or cesarean section if induction is not appropriate (WHO 2011b). However, limited evidence suggests that induction at more than 36 weeks of gestation reduces poor maternal outcomes in mild preeclampsia (Koopmans and others 2009). For earlier gestations, the decision for delivery versus expectant management depends on the severity of disease and is influenced by the setting. A Cochrane review finds insufficient evidence for intervention versus expectant management for women with severe preeclampsia between 24 and 34 weeks gestation (Churchill and others 2013); however, the expectant approach is probably associated with less neonatal morbidity. No systematic reviews address the optimal timing of delivery for preeclampsia between 34 and 36 weeks gestation, and significant variation in practice exists. In the absence of robust evidence, the WHO recommends a policy of expectant management for women with severe preeclampsia, both before 34 weeks gestation and between 34 and 36 weeks gestation with a viable fetus, provided that the pregnancy can be monitored for increasing hypertension, maternal organ dysfunction, and fetal distress (WHO 2011b). Clearly, this management requires equitable access to facilities for safe delivery (including CS), skilled attendance at delivery, access to appropriate drugs, and maternal and fetal monitoring.

**Technologies and Interventions in the Pipeline**

**Prevention and treatment.** Early calcium supplementation during preconception and early pregnancy, possibly by means of food fortification, is being evaluated by the WHO/PRE-EMPT Calcium in Pre-eclampsia (CAP) study. Funded by the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, the trial is being conducted in centers in Argentina, South Africa, and Zimbabwe in populations with known calcium dietary deficiencies. Work is ongoing to assess whether pregnancy and pre-pregnancy supplementation with selenium, which is reduced in preeclampsia (Mistry and others 2008), will affect outcomes from preeclampsia.

The use of statins to treat early-onset preeclampsia has shown initial promise and is under investigation (Ahmed 2011).

**Screening.** Interest has increased in the development of a blood pressure monitor suitable for settings without medically trained health workers. Such monitors should be automated, validated for accuracy in pregnancy, affordable, and hardwearing, and should have a reliable power supply, for example, solar power or mobile phone charging technology.

Recent evidence from a diagnostic test accuracy study suggests that low plasma levels of placental growth factor can accurately predict delivery within two weeks in women with suspected preeclampsia before 35 weeks’ gestation (Chappell and others 2013). In this study, normal levels of placental growth factor accurately predicted which women did not need delivery for preeclampsia within two weeks. This test, which is potentially available as a rapid bedside diagnostic tool, shows...
promise as an adjunct to clinical assessment of women with preeclampsia, particularly for its apparent ability to distinguish women who require intensive surveillance and delivery from those who can be managed expectantly as outpatients.

Obstructed Labor

Labor is considered obstructed when the presenting part of the fetus cannot progress through the birth canal despite strong uterine contractions. Obstruction usually occurs at the pelvic brim, but may occur in the cavity or outlet. Causes include cephalopelvic disproportion, shoulder dystocia (fetal shoulders trapped in the pelvis during delivery), and fetal malposition and malpresentation. Obstructed labor accounts for an estimated 4 percent of maternal deaths (Lozano and others 2012), which are caused by ruptured uterus, hemorrhage and puerperal sepsis. Other outcomes, such as obstetric fistulas, lead to considerable long-term maternal morbidity. In LMICs, women with obstructed labor are more likely to have stillbirths, neonatal deaths, and neonatal infections (Harrison and others 2013). Obstructed labor can only be alleviated by means of a CS or other instrument delivery (forceps, vacuum, symphysiotomy); therefore, referral and appropriate action during labor play a crucial role in reducing the burden of disease.

Preventing Obstructed Labor

A substantial proportion of maternal deaths in LMICs due to obstructed labor occur in community settings, where women are unable to access assisted delivery at health facilities, either because they are disempowered to challenge existing social norms (for example, delivering alone or with traditional birth attendants), or because infrastructure is lacking (for example, roads, transportation, and health facilities). In addition, women may prefer to deliver in the community without skilled assistance because they are afraid of financial costs, low quality of care in health facilities, and disrespectful treatment (Stenberg and others 2013). The first priority for preventing poor outcomes related to obstructed labor is to create the demand for skilled birth assistance and to ensure that this demand can be met.

Maternity waiting homes. A maternity waiting home is a facility that is within easy reach of a hospital or health center that provides antenatal care and emergency obstetric care (van Lonkhuijzen, Stekelenburg, and van Roosmalen 2012). Women with high-risk pregnancies or those who live remotely are encouraged to stay at these facilities, if they exist, toward the end of their pregnancies. A Cochrane review conducted in 2012 sought to evaluate the role of maternity waiting homes on reducing maternal deaths and stillbirths. However, there was insufficient evidence for robust conclusions to be drawn (van Lonkhuijzen, Stekelenburg, and van Roosmalen 2012).

External cephalic version. External cephalic version (ECV) is a method of manually encouraging a breech fetus into a cephalic presentation, through the maternal abdomen. Very low quality evidence from a Cochrane review of eight trials conducted in LMICs and HICs involving 1,308 women shows that attempting ECV from 36 weeks gestation may reduce the risk of not achieving a normal vaginal (cephalic) delivery by half, and may reduce the risk of CS by approximately 43 percent (Hofmeyr, Kulier, and West 2015). The WHO currently supports ECV in women with uncomplicated singleton breech presentations at or beyond 36 weeks, but more research is needed.

Treating Obstructed Labor

Cesarean section. CS forms the backbone of the management of obstructed labor and saves many lives. Because of the availability of operative delivery in HICs, maternal deaths there due to obstructed labor are rare; however, CS rates are often disproportionately high in these settings. Overuse of CS has important negative implications for health equity within and across countries (Gibbons and others 2010). A systematic review of ecologic studies finds that maternal, neonatal, and infant mortality decreased with increasing CS rates up to a threshold between 9 percent and 16 percent (Betran and others 2015). Above this threshold, CS rates were not associated with reductions in mortality. Therefore, increasing the availability of CS in countries that show underuse could substantially reduce maternal deaths.

Vacuum and forceps delivery. Operative vaginal delivery may be used to assist women with obstructed labor at the pelvic outlet or low or mid-cavity. Operative vaginal delivery occurs at rates of about 10 percent in HICs, in contrast with the rate of 1.6 percent reported in a large, prospective, population-based study conducted in six LMICs (Harrison and others 2015). Vacuum and forceps procedures are associated with different benefits and risks: forceps are more likely than vacuum to achieve a vaginal delivery but are associated with more vaginal trauma and newborn facial injuries (O’Mahony, Hofmeyr, and Menon 2010). Metal cups may be more effective than soft cups for vacuum delivery, but may be associated with more cephalhematomas in newborns (O’Mahony, Hofmeyr, and Menon 2010). The lack of appropriate and functional equipment, as well as the lack of knowledge, experience, and skills to perform these procedures,
contributes to the low operative vaginal delivery rates in many LMICs. Operator training is vital in all facility settings to maximize benefits and reduce morbidity with vacuum and forceps deliveries.

**Symphysiotomy.** Symphysiotomy is an operation in which the fibers of the pubic symphysis are partially divided to allow separation of the joint and thus enlargement of the pelvic dimensions during childbirth (Hofmeyr and Shweni 2012). The procedure is performed with local analgesia and does not require an operating theater or advanced surgical skills; it may be a lifesaving procedure for the mother, the baby, or both in clinical situations in which CS is unavailable and there is failure to progress in labor, or in obstructed birth of the aftercoming head of a breech baby.

A Cochrane review found no RCTs evaluating symphysiotomy for fetopelvic disproportion (Hofmeyr and Shweni 2012). Criticism of the procedure because of potential subsequent pelvic instability and because it is considered a second-best option has resulted in its decline or disappearance from use in many countries. Proponents argue that many maternal and neonatal deaths from obstructed labor could be prevented in parts of the world without CS facilities if symphysiotomy was used. Research is needed to provide robust evidence of the relative effectiveness and safety of symphysiotomy compared with no symphysiotomy, or comparisons of alternative symphysiotomy techniques in clinical situations in which CS is not available (Hofmeyr and Shweni 2012).

**Maneuvers for shoulder dystocia.** A Cochrane review evaluated evidence for maneuvers to relieve shoulder dystocia by manipulating the fetal shoulders (for example, through suprapubic pressure or the corkscrew maneuver), and increasing the functional size of the maternal pelvis by utilizing an exaggerated knee-chest position (Athukorala, Middleton, and Crowther 2006). The evidence from this review of two small trials was insufficient to support or refute any benefits of these maneuvers.

**Technologies and Interventions in the Pipeline**

The Odon device has been developed to assist vaginal delivery. This technological innovation has the potential to facilitate assisted delivery for prolonged second stage of labor. It consists of a film-like polyethylene sleeve that is applied to the fetal head with the help of an inserter. Because the device is designed to minimize trauma to the mother and baby, it is potentially a safer alternative to forceps and vacuum delivery. A feasibility and safety study is in progress and a comparative trial is planned if it is shown to be safe (WHO Odon Device Research Group 2013).

**Maternal Sepsis**

Sepsis associated with pregnancy and childbirth is among the leading direct causes of maternal mortality worldwide, accounting for approximately 10 percent of the global burden of maternal deaths (Khan and others 2006). Most of these deaths occur in LMICs; in a prospective study conducted in seven LMICs, 11.6 percent of maternal deaths were due to sepsis (Saleem and others 2014). Although the reported incidence in HICs is relatively low (between 0.1 and 0.6 per 1,000 deliveries), sepsis was reported as the leading direct cause of maternal death in the United Kingdom’s Confidential Enquiry into Maternal Death (2006–08 triennium).

Maternal infections occurring before or during the birth of the baby have considerable impact on newborn mortality, and an estimated 1 million newborn deaths associated with maternal infection are recorded each year. Efforts to reduce maternal sepsis have largely focused on avoiding the risk factors, with an emphasis on reducing the frequency of unsafe abortion, intrapartum vaginal examination, and prolonged or obstructed labor; providing antibiotic cover for operative delivery; and using appropriate hospital infection control.

**Preventing Maternal Sepsis**

The most effective intervention for preventing maternal sepsis is the use of stringent infection control measures to limit the spread of microorganisms, particularly within hospital environments. General measures, such as handwashing with soap or other cleansing agents, are widely acceptable practices for preventing hospital transmissible infections.

Antibiotic prophylaxis in operative vaginal delivery. There is a general assumption that the use of vacuum and forceps–assisted vaginal deliveries increases the incidence of postpartum infections compared with spontaneous vaginal delivery. The evidence from available Cochrane reviews is insufficient to determine whether prophylactic antibiotics given with operative delivery or following third- or fourth-degree perineal tears reduces infectious postpartum morbidities (Buppasiri and others 2010; Liabsuetrakul and others 2004). However, the use of antibiotics among women with a third- or fourth-degree perineal tear is recommended by the WHO for prevention of wound complications (WHO 2014c).

Antibiotic prophylaxis at cesarean delivery. CS is the single most important risk factor for postpartum maternal infection, and routine antibiotic prophylaxis has considerable clinical benefits. In a Cochrane review that includes 95 trials from LMICs and HICs involving more than 15,000 women (Smail and Grivell 2014), the use of prophylactic antibiotics compared with placebo after CS was associated with substantially
lower risks of endometritis (infection of the lining of the womb) (62 percent reduction), wound infection (60 percent), and serious maternal infectious complications (69 percent reduction). This evidence was considered to be moderate quality.

**Preterm and term prelabor rupture of membranes.**
Rupture of the fetal membranes remote from term carries substantial risk of chorioamnionitis (infection of the fetal membranes) and severe maternal sepsis. Evidence on the benefits of prophylactic antibiotics with preterm rupture of membranes is demonstrated in a Cochrane review of 22 RCTs conducted in LMICs and HICs that involved 6,872 women (Kenyon, Boulvain, and Neilson 2013). Findings reveal that the use of prophylactic antibiotics was associated with a significant reduction in chorioamnionitis (moderate-quality evidence) and markers of neonatal morbidity.

There is no convincing evidence to support the use of prophylactic for prelabor rupture of membranes at term, and this practice should be avoided in its absence (Wojcieszek, Stock, and Flendy 2014).

**Vaginal application of antiseptics for vaginal delivery.**
A Cochrane systematic review of three RCTs involving 3,012 participants assesses the effectiveness and side effects of chlorhexidine vaginal douching during labor (Lumbiganon and others 2004). The review shows no difference in the incidence of chorioamnionitis and postpartum endometritis between women who received chlorhexidine and placebo. No benefits to neonatal infection were observed.

**Vaginal application of antiseptics for cesarean delivery.**
A Cochrane review compares the effect of vaginal cleansing with any antiseptic agent before cesarean delivery to placebo on the risk of maternal infectious morbidities (Haas, Morgan, and Contreras 2013). The review includes five trials involving 1,946 women. The risk of postoperative endometritis was reduced by 61 percent, but no clear difference was detected in postoperative fever or any wound complications. Subgroup analysis suggests that beneficial effects might be greater for women with ruptured membranes.

**Treating Maternal Sepsis**
Chorioamnionitis and postpartum endometritis. The mainstay of treating maternal sepsis is antibiotics. Although evidence from Cochrane reviews is limited, intrapartum treatment with potent antibiotics is clinically reasonable (Hopkins and Smaill 2002). A Cochrane review of 39 RCTs involving 4,221 women evaluates the comparative efficacy and side effects of different antibiotic regimens for postpartum endometritis (French and Smaill 2004). Wound infection was significantly reduced and treatment was less likely to fail with a combination of an aminoglycoside (mostly gentamicin) and clindamycin compared with other regimens.

**INTERVENTIONS TO REDUCE STILLBIRTHS AND NEWBORN MORTALITY AND MORBIDITY**
Addressing stillbirths and neonatal mortality requires interventions across the continuum of care (preconception, antenatal, intrapartum, immediate postnatal period, and after) and interventions across the health system (family and community level, outreach, and clinical care or facility level). Most of these interventions are included in the Lives Saved Tool, developed to model the impact of the interventions at different coverage levels (Walker, Tam, and Friberg 2013), and are part of existing sets of recommended intervention packages for addressing maternal and neonatal outcomes. The Lancet Every Newborn Series presents Lives Saved Tool modeling with estimates of lives saved for maternal and neonatal deaths and stillbirths, showing high gains and triple return on investment, with the potential to avert 3 million deaths per year, especially with facility-based care around birth and care of small and sick newborns (Bhutta and others 2013).

RCTs for several well-established interventions that form the cornerstones of newborn care, for example, neonatal resuscitation and thermal care for term newborns, would be impossible for ethical reasons. Important interventions initiated in the antenatal or neonatal period with evidence of health benefits later in childhood, like newborn vaccination or antiretroviral therapy (ART) in babies born to HIV-positive mothers, are not included in this chapter. In addition, we have not covered preconception or adolescent care interventions, such as family planning, for which there is good evidence of a positive impact on perinatal health (Stenberg and others 2013).

**Antenatal Interventions**
**Routine Antenatal Care Visits**
A Cochrane review of antenatal care programs reveals that reduced antenatal visits may be associated with an increase in perinatal mortality, compared with standard care (Dowswell and others 2010) (table 7.3). Indirect evidence of the effectiveness of antenatal care in reducing stillbirths is available from further analysis of data from the WHO antenatal care trial, which showed that stillbirth was reduced in the standard care group for participants who received more frequent routine antenatal visits (Vogel and others 2013). This finding is consistent with those of other trials (Hofmeyr and Hodnett 2013).
Nutritional Interventions

**Folic acid.** Several nutritional interventions may be implemented before and during pregnancy. Supplementation of diets with folic acid and fortification of staple commodities periconceptually reduces the risk of neural tube defects that account for a small proportion of stillbirths or neonatal deaths (Blencowe, Cousens, and others 2010; De-Regil and others 2010).

**Dietary advice and balanced energy supplementation.** Balanced energy and protein supplementation (BES), defined as a diet that provides up to 25 percent of total energy in the form of protein, is an important intervention for the prevention of adverse perinatal outcomes in populations with high rates of food insecurity and maternal undernutrition (Imdad and Bhutta 2012). In a Cochrane review of dietary advice interventions that includes 15 trials involving 7,410 pregnant women (Ota and others 2012), the risk of stillbirth and small-for-gestational-age babies was reduced by 38 percent for women receiving BES advice, and mean birthweight was increased. Further research on the effectiveness and implementation of BES is necessary.

**Maternal calcium supplementation.** The WHO synthesized evidence from two systematic reviews on maternal calcium supplementation (Buppasiri and others 2011; Hofmeyr and others 2014) and found moderate-quality evidence that calcium supplementation has no effect on preterm birth overall (WHO 2013). The WHO recommends maternal calcium supplementation from 20 weeks’ gestation in populations in which calcium intake is low to reduce the risk of hypertensive disorders in pregnancy (WHO 2013).

### Table 7.3 Evidence-Based Antenatal Interventions that Reduce Perinatal Morbidity and Mortality

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of intervention</th>
<th>Main effects</th>
<th>Quality of evidence</th>
<th>Source of evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutritional</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folic acid</td>
<td>• Reduces the risk of neural tube defects when given periconceptually</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>De-Regil, Fernandez-Gaxiola, and others 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infection prevention and treatment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syphilis detection and treatment</td>
<td>• Reduces stillbirths, neonatal deaths, and preterm birth</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Blencowe and others 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPT (malaria-endemic areas)</td>
<td>• Reduces neonatal mortality and low birthweight</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Radeva-Petrova and others 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insecticide-treated bednets (malaria)</td>
<td>• Reduces fetal loss and low birthweight</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Gamble, Ekwaru, and ter Kuile 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antitetanus vaccine</td>
<td>• Reduces neonatal mortality from tetanus</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Blencowe, Lawn, and others 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intrauterine growth restriction interventions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antithrombotic agents in pregnancies identified as high risk</td>
<td>• Reduces perinatal mortality, preterm birth, and low birthweight</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Dodd and others 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doppler velocimetry in high-risk pregnancies</td>
<td>• Reduces perinatal mortality</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Alfirevic, Stampalija, and Gyte 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other interventions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labor induction at 41+ weeks for postterm pregnancy</td>
<td>• Reduces perinatal deaths and meconium aspiration</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Gülmezoglu, Crowther, and others 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intensive management of gestational diabetes with optimal glucose control</td>
<td>• Reduces macrosomia, perinatal morbidity, and mortality</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Alwan, Tuffnell, and West 2009; Syed and others 2011</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: This list is not comprehensive. IPT = intermittent preventive treatment.

a. Based on GRADE Working Group grades of evidence (Atkins and others 2004). The GRADE approach considers evidence from randomized trials to be high quality in the first instance, and downgrades the evidence to moderate, low, or very low if there are limitations in trial quality suggesting bias, inconsistency, imprecise or sparse data, uncertainty about directness, or high probability of publication bias. Evidence from observational studies is graded low quality in the first instance and upgraded to moderate (or high) if large effects are yielded in the absence of obvious bias.*
Maternal zinc supplementation. Some evidence suggests that zinc supplementation may reduce the risk of preterm birth. A Cochrane review of the intervention includes 20 RCTs involving more than 15,000 women and infants (Mori and others 2012). Zinc supplementation resulted in a small but significant reduction in preterm birth of 14 percent, without any other significant benefits compared with controls. The reviewers conclude that studies of strategies to improve the overall nutrition of populations in impoverished areas, rather than studies of micronutrient supplementation in isolation, should be a priority.

Antenatal Treatment of Maternal Infections
Maternal infections frequently have adverse effects on perinatal outcomes, and striking mortality reductions can be obtained by antenatal interventions related to malaria, HIV, syphilis, and tetanus.

Tetanus. A review of tetanus toxoid immunization concludes that there is clear evidence of the high impact of two or more doses of tetanus vaccine in pregnancy on reducing neonatal tetanus mortality (Blencowe, Lawn, and others 2010). Immunizing pregnant women or women of childbearing age with at least two doses of tetanus toxoid was estimated to reduce mortality from neonatal tetanus by 94 percent.

Syphilis. Pregnant women with untreated syphilis have a 21 percent increased risk of stillbirths (Gomez and others 2013). Evidence of the effect of antenatal syphilis detection combined with treatment with penicillin suggests a significant reduction in stillbirths, preterm births, congenital syphilis, and neonatal mortality (Blencowe and others 2011).

Malaria. Effective prevention strategies for malaria include prophylactic antimalarial drugs through intermittent preventive treatment (IPT) and insecticide-treated bednets (ITNs). IPT has been shown to improve mean birthweight and reduce the incidence of low birthweight and neonatal mortality (Radeva-Petrova and others 2014). ITNs have been shown to reduce fetal loss by 33 percent (Gamble, Ekwaru, and ter Kuile 2006). The WHO recommends the use of long-lasting ITN and IPT with sulfadoxine-pyramethamine to prevent infection during pregnancy in malaria-endemic areas in Africa (WHO 2014b).

HIV. Most children with HIV acquire it from their mothers, and ART is vital in preventing vertical (mother-to-child) transmission. Triple drug regimens commenced antenatally are most effective; however, short ART courses commencing before labor, with treatment extended to newborns during the first week of life, have been shown to significantly reduce mother-to-child HIV transmission (Siegfried and others 2011). The WHO guidelines recommend that all pregnant women who are eligible for ART (CD4 ≤ 350 cells per cubic millimeter or advanced clinical disease) should receive it (WHO 2010b). For ineligible women, combination ART should be provided during pregnancy beginning in the second trimester and should be linked with postpartum prophylaxis (WHO 2010b). Findings from the Kesho-Bora trial, in which early weaning was associated with higher HIV-related infant mortality even with maternal ART prophylaxis during breastfeeding, highlight the importance of breastfeeding in low-resource settings (Cournil and others 2015). ART prophylaxis in these settings should be provided to either the mother or infant for the duration of breastfeeding.

Other infections. There is currently no conclusive evidence of the effects on perinatal outcomes of using viral influenza, pneumococcal, and *Haemophilus influenzae* type b vaccines during pregnancy (Chaithongwongwatthana and others 2012; Salam, Das, and Bhutta 2012).

Treatment of Diabetes Mellitus and Gestational Diabetes
Complications of diabetes range from variations in birthweight to fetal malformations and potentially an excess of perinatal mortality. Any specific treatment for gestational diabetes versus routine antenatal care is associated with a reduction in perinatal mortality (Alwan, Tuffnell, and West 2009). Intensified management including dietary advice, monitoring, or pharmacotherapy for women with gestational diabetes mellitus, when compared with conventional management, resulted in a 54 percent reduction of macrosomic (> 4,000 grams) babies. It was also associated with statistically nonsignificant reductions in other outcomes, including perinatal death, stillbirths, neonatal hypoglycemia, shoulder dystocia, CS, and birthweight (Lassi and Bhutta 2013). Optimal blood glucose control in pregnancy compared with suboptimal control was associated with a 60 percent reduction in the risk of perinatal mortality but a statistically insignificant impact on stillbirths (Syed and others 2011).

Intrauterine Growth Restriction
Risk factors for stillbirths and intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR) largely overlap, and growth-restricted fetuses are at increased risk of mortality and serious morbidity. Improved detection and management of IUGR using maternal body mass index, symphysial-fundal height measurements, and targeted ultrasound could be effective in reducing IUGR-related stillbirths by 20 percent (Imdad and others 2011).

**Doppler velocimetry.** A Cochrane review of RCTs in HICs shows that the use of Doppler ultrasound of
umbilical and fetal arteries in high-risk pregnancies was associated with a 29 percent reduction in perinatal mortality; however, the specific effect on stillbirths was not significant (Alfirevic, Stampalija, and Gyte 2013).

**Antithrombotic agents.** Treatment with heparin for pregnant women considered to be at high risk of complications secondary to placental insufficiency leads to a significant reduction in the risk of perinatal mortality, preterm birth, and infant birthweight below the 10th centile for gestational age when compared with no treatment (Dodd and others 2013).

**Fetal movement counting.** The lack of trials has resulted in insufficient evidence of any benefits of routine fetal movement counting (Mangesi, Hofmeyr, and Smith 2007). However, a reduction in fetal movements may be indicative of fetal compromise; when identified by the mother, awareness could trigger prompt care seeking and further assessment.

**Postterm Pregnancy**
Eelective induction of labor in low-risk pregnancies at or beyond 41 weeks gestation (late term) is recommended in settings with adequate gestational age dating and appropriate facility care. In a Cochrane review of 22 RCTs involving 9,383 women of late-term labor induction, compared with expectant management, the newborns of women who were induced were 69 percent less likely to die perinatally and 50 percent less likely to aspirate meconium (Gülmezoglu, Crowther, and Smith 2007). However, a reduction in fetal movements may be indicative of fetal compromise; when identified by the mother, awareness could trigger prompt care seeking and further assessment.

**Intrapartum Interventions**
Labor surveillance is needed for early detection, clinical management, and referral of women for complications. Basic emergency obstetric care should be available at first-level facilities providing childbirth care. This basic emergency care includes the following:

- The capacity to perform assisted vaginal delivery (including vacuum or forceps assistance for delivery, episiotomy, advanced skills for manual delivery of the infant with shoulder dystocia, and skilled vaginal delivery of the breech infant)
- Availability of parenteral antibiotics, parenteral oxytocin, and parenteral anticonvulsants for preeclampsia or eclampsia

Because stillbirths and intrapartum-related neonatal deaths are often associated with difficult and obstructed labor, assisted vaginal delivery and CS are vital to reduce perinatal morbidity and mortality.

Worldwide, an estimated 40 million births occur at home, most in LMICs and usually in the absence of skilled birth attendants. Limited evidence from two before-and-after studies of community-based skilled birth attendance shows a 23 percent significant reduction in the risk of stillbirth (Yakoob and others 2011). Although there has been an increase in the use of skilled birth attendants globally, much remains to be done for the organization and provision of services; however, this issue is beyond the scope of this chapter. An overview of selected intrapartum interventions can be found in table 7.4.

**General Interventions**

**Hygiene.** Poor hygienic conditions and poor delivery practices contribute to the burden of neonatal mortality. Pooled data from 19,754 home births at three sites in South Asia indicate that the use of clean delivery kits or clean delivery practices almost halves the risk of neonatal mortality (Seward and others 2012). The use of a plastic sheet during delivery, a boiled blade to cut the cord, a boiled thread to tie the cord, and antiseptic to clean the umbilicus were each significantly associated with reductions in mortality, independent of kit use.

**The partograph.** A partograph is usually a preprinted form that provides a pictorial overview of labor progress that can alert health professionals to any problems with the mother or baby (Lavender, Hart, and Smyth 2013). Although the partograph is widely used and accepted to detect abnormal labor, strong evidence to recommend its general use is lacking (Lavender, Hart, and Smyth 2013). Until stronger evidence is available, the WHO supports the use of a partograph with a four-hour action line for monitoring the progress of labor (WHO 2014a).

**Fetal monitoring in labor.** There is no evidence that the use of electronic fetal heart rate monitoring during labor reduces perinatal mortality. A Cochrane review of 13 RCTs involving more than 37,000 women of continuous cardiocotography compared with intermittent auscultation shows no reduction in perinatal mortality (Alfirevic, Devane, and Gyte 2013). Continuous cardiocotography halved the risk of neonatal seizures without significant reductions in cerebral palsy, infant mortality, or other standard measures of neonatal well-being and was associated with an increased risk of assisted and operative delivery.

**Active management of labor.** Active management refers to a package of care that includes strict diagnosis of labor, routine amniotomy, oxytocin for slow progress, and one-to-one support (Brown and others 2013). A Cochrane review of seven RCTs involving 5,390 women finds
no significant difference in poor neonatal outcomes; however, CS rates were nonsignificantly reduced in the active management group (Brown and others 2013).

**Preterm Labor and Preterm Prelabor Rupture of Membranes**

*Antenatal corticosteroids.* The administration of antenatal corticosteroids to women in preterm labor, or in whom preterm delivery is anticipated (for example, in severe preeclampsia), for the prevention of neonatal respiratory distress syndrome (RDS) has been shown to be very effective in preventing poor neonatal outcomes in well-resourced settings. A Cochrane review of 21 RCTs involving 4,269 neonates finds that a single course of steroids administered between 26 weeks and 35 weeks gestation reduced the risk of neonatal death by 31 percent and reduced neonatal morbidity including cerebroventricular hemorrhage, necrotizing enterocolitis, RDS, and systemic infections (Roberts and Dalziel 2006). However, a large cluster randomized trial (Antenatal Corticosteroids Trial) conducted in LMICs to test provision of antenatal corticosteroids at lower levels of the health system with mainly unskilled workers and limited assessment of gestational age finds no difference in neonatal mortality with the administration of antenatal corticosteroids (Althabe and others 2015). Neonatal mortality in the intervention clusters overall was increased, which may have been due to overtreatment, as were maternal infections. This trial has important implications for the setting, implementation, and scale up of this intervention, notably that antenatal corticosteroids should be used in the context of more accurate assessment of gestational age and assessment for maternal infection; ensuring that maternal and newborn care can be provided should also be a part of this intervention. In the Antenatal Corticosteroids Trial, half of the births were at home (Althabe and others 2015).

---

### Table 7.4 Evidence-Based Intrapartum and Neonatal Interventions that Reduce Perinatal Morbidity and Mortality

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of intervention</th>
<th>Main effects</th>
<th>Quality of evidence</th>
<th>Source of evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>General</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean delivery kits</td>
<td>• Reduces neonatal mortality</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Seward and others 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preterm birth and PPROM</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Antenatal Corticosteroids | • Reduces neonatal mortality  
                           | • Reduces the risk of RDS and other neonatal morbidities | Moderate           | Roberts and Dalziel 2006 |
| Magnesium sulphate  | • Reduces the risk of cerebral palsy in preterm infants | Moderate           | Doyle and others 2009 |
| Antibiotics (PPROM only) | • Reduces neonatal infection | High              | Kenyon, Boulvain, and Neilson 2013 |
| Surfactant           | • Reduces RDS-related mortality | Moderate           | Seger and Soll 2009; Soll and Özek 2010 |
| **Neonatal care**    |              |                     |                   |
| Kangaroo mother care | • Reduces mortality in low-birthweight infants | High              | Conde-Agudelo, Belizán, and Díaz-Rossiello 2014 |
| Cord cleansing       | • Reduces neonatal mortality and omphalitis in community settings | Low-Moderate       | Imdad and others 2013; WHO 2014c |
| **Hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy** |              |                     |                   |
| Induced hypothermia  | • Reduces mortality | High              | Jacobs and others 2013 |
| **Neonatal sepsis**  |              |                     |                   |
| Community-administered antibiotics | • Reduces all-cause neonatal mortality and pneumonia-specific mortality | Moderate           | Zaidi and others 2011 |

Note: This list is not comprehensive. PPROM = preterm premature rupture of membranes; RDS = respiratory distress syndrome.

a. Based on GRADE Working Group grades of evidence (Atkins and others 2004). The GRADE approach considers evidence from randomized trials to be high quality in the first instance, and downgrades the evidence to moderate, low, or very low if there are limitations in trial quality suggesting bias, inconsistency, imprecise or sparse data, uncertainty about directness, or high probability of publication bias. Evidence from observational studies is graded low quality in the first instance and upgraded to moderate (or high) if large effects are yielded in the absence of obvious bias.
**Antibiotics.** The evidence does not support the routine administration of antibiotics to women in preterm labor with intact membranes in the absence of overt signs of infection (Flenady and others 2013). However, antibiotics for preterm premature rupture of membranes are effective in reducing the risk of a number of early morbidities, including RDS and postnatal infection, without having a significant impact on mortality (Kenyon, Boulvain, and Neilson 2013).

**Magnesium sulphate.** A Cochrane review of five RCTs involving 6,145 babies found that MgSO\(_4\) given to women considered to be at risk of preterm birth reduced the risk of cerebral palsy by 32 percent and improved long-term outcomes into childhood (Doyle and others 2009). However, evidence is insufficient to determine the existence of neuroprotective benefits for infants of women with high-risk pregnancies at term (Nguyen and others 2013), and more research is needed.

**Newborn Resuscitation**

*Training of birth attendants.* Newborn resuscitation is not available for the majority of newborns in LMICs. Limited evidence suggests that training of birth attendants improves initial resuscitation practices and reduces inappropriate and harmful practices (Carlo and others 2010; Opiyo and English 2010) but may not have a significant impact on perinatal mortality. This finding may be because advanced resuscitation, including intubation and drugs, is appropriate only in institutions that provide ventilation. A large cluster RCT of a combined community- and facility-based approach with a package of interventions including community birth attendant training, hospital transport, and facility staff training finds the intervention package to have no detectable impact on perinatal mortality (Pasha and others 2013). This finding suggests that substantially more infrastructure may be necessary, in addition to provider training and community mobilization, to have a meaningful effect on neonatal outcomes.

**Essential Newborn Care**

The WHO defines essential newborn care as including cleaning, drying, and warming the infant; initiating exclusive breastfeeding; and cord care (WHO 2011a). Ideally, this care should be provided by a skilled attendant; however, most of these tasks can be carried out at home by alternative attendants.

High-quality evidence shows that home visits by community health workers in the first week after birth significantly reduces neonatal mortality and are strongly recommended by the WHO (WHO 2014c).

**Neonatal Interventions**

The immediate cause of many of the world’s 2.8 million annual neonatal deaths is an illness presenting as an emergency, either soon after birth (such as complications of preterm birth and intrapartum hypoxia) or later (due to neonatal tetanus or community-acquired infections). Other important but less prevalent conditions include jaundice and hemorrhagic disease of the newborn. These conditions all have high fatality rates, particularly tetanus and encephalopathy (Lawn and others 2014).

Preventive measures needed to adequately reduce this burden of disease include much of what has already been discussed. Other interventions include routine vitamin K administration in newborns for the prevention of vitamin K deficiency bleeding and early phototherapy for jaundice. Early phototherapy reduces both mortality and chronic disability subsequent to kernicterus and is feasible in facilities (Dijk and Hulzebos 2012; Maisels and others 2012).

**Postnatal Care**

*Kangaroo mother care.* Kangaroo mother care, which is part of the extra newborn care package for small and low-birthweight infants and includes continuous skin-to-skin contact between mothers and newborns, frequent and exclusive breastfeeding, and early discharge from hospital, has been evaluated in comparison with conventional care in a Cochrane review. The review includes 18 RCTs involving 2,751 infants (Conde-Agudelo, Belizán, and Diaz-Rossello 2014). In low-birthweight infants, kangaroo mother care reduced neonatal mortality by 40 percent, hypothermia by 66 percent, and nosocomial infection by 55 percent.

*Exclusive breastfeeding.* The WHO recommends exclusive breastfeeding of infants until age six months (WHO 2014c). Infants who are exclusively breastfed for six months experience less gastrointestinal morbidity (Kramer and Kakuma 2012), less respiratory morbidity, and less infection-related neonatal mortality than partially breastfed neonates (WHO 2014c). A meta-analysis shows that breastfeeding education or support (or a combination of education and support) increased exclusive breastfeeding rates (Haroon and others 2013). For small or preterm babies, extra feeding support is needed (WHO 2011a).

*Cord cleansing.* Pooled data from three community trials involving 54,624 newborns of cord care with chlorhexidine versus dry care show a reduction in omphalitis of 27 percent to 56 percent and in neonatal mortality of 23 percent (Imdad and others 2013). Chlorhexidine cord cleansing did not have these effects when used in hospital settings.
Interventions to Reduce Maternal and Newborn Morbidity and Mortality

Management of Neonatal Encephalopathy
Seizures are common following perinatal hypoxic ischemia. Induced hypothermia (cooling) in newborn infants who are encephalopathic because of intrapartum hypoxia reduces neonatal mortality, major neurodevelopmental disability, and cerebral palsy. This evidence is derived from a Cochrane review of 11 RCTs involving 1,505 term and late preterm infants with moderate or severe hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy (Jacobs and others 2013). Cooling reduced neonatal mortality by 25 percent and the authors conclude that induced hypothermia should be performed in term and late preterm infants with moderate or severe hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy (Jacobs and others 2013). Cooling reduced neonatal mortality by 25 percent and the authors conclude that induced hypothermia should be performed in term and late preterm infants with moderate or severe hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy (Jacobs and others 2013). However, most of these studies were conducted in HICs and more trials in LMICs are needed before implementing this intervention in these settings. Routine anticonvulsant prophylaxis with barbiturates for the neuroprotection of term infants with perinatal asphyxia is not recommended (Evans, Levene, and Tsakmakis 2007).

Management of Respiratory Distress Syndrome
RDS is the most important cause of mortality in preterm infants. Administration of surfactant in preterm infants significantly decreases the risk of poor neonatal outcomes, but cost is a major factor for LMICs (Seger and Soll 2009; Soll and Özek 2010). Institution of continuous positive airway pressure may bring down the requirement and cost of surfactant therapy (Rojas-Reyes, Morley, and Soll 2012).

Management of Neonatal Sepsis
Antibiotics for treatment. Over 1 million neonatal deaths annually in LMICs are attributable to infectious causes, including neonatal sepsis, meningitis, and pneumonia (Liu and others 2016). Feasible and low-cost interventions to prevent these deaths exist. Oral antibiotics administered in the community reduce all-cause mortality by 25 percent and pneumonia-specific mortality by 42 percent (Zaida and others 2011).

Presumptive antibiotics for group B streptococcus. The risk of serious infection in term newborn infants is increased if group B streptococcus (GBS) is present in the birth canal, if rupture of membranes is prolonged, and if maternal temperature is raised during labor. A Cochrane review of intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis (IAP) for mothers colonized with GBS (three trials and 500 women) finds low-quality evidence that early neonatal GBS infection was reduced with IAP compared with no prophylaxis (Ohlsson and Shah 2014). European consensus recommends IAP based on a universal intrapartum GBS screening strategy (Di Renzo and others 2014); however, data on GBS prevalence are not routinely available to inform policies in most LMICs. In the absence of GBS screening and strong evidence to guide clinical practice regarding routine prescription of antibiotics (Ungerer and others 2004), the use of presumptive antibiotic therapy for newborns at risk of GBS and other bacterial infections is recommended (WHO 2011a).

Interventions in the Pipeline
Household air pollution is recognized as a risk factor for several health outcomes, including stillbirth, preterm birth, and low birthweight, but rigorous evidence for the impact of reducing household air pollution on these birth outcomes is lacking (Bruce and others 2013). Interventions to reduce household air pollution may reduce poor perinatal outcomes.

A habitual supine sleeping position has been associated with an increase in stillbirth (Owusu and others 2013). Whether sleeping position can be changed by advice or other interventions, and whether such a change would affect stillbirth rates, remains to be established.

COST-EFFECTIVENESS OF INTERVENTIONS
Increasing the coverage of interventions demonstrated to be effective and cost-effective is essential, but reliable data remain limited (Mangham-Jefferies and others 2014). Chapter 17 of this volume (Horton and Levin 2016) summarizes the findings of a systematic search of the cost-effectiveness literature of reproductive, maternal, newborn, and child health interventions and discusses the difficulties, including methodological gaps, multiple platforms, and outcome measures.

For the 75 high-burden Countdown countries, Bhutta and others (2014) estimate that the additional funding required to scale up effective interventions to reduce preventable maternal and newborn deaths and still births is US$5.65 billion annually, which they equate to US$1.15 per person, excluding the initial investment in new facilities. They further estimate that increased coverage and quality of care would reduce maternal and newborn deaths and prevent stillbirths at a cost of US$1,928 per life saved (or US$60 per disability adjusted
life-year [DALY] averted); 82 percent of this effect would be from facility-based care.

Costs per DALY averted have been estimated for training initiatives (for example, LeFevre and others 2013), participatory women’s groups (for example, Fottrell and others 2013), and safe motherhood initiatives (for example, Erim, Resch, and Goldie 2012), and range from US$150 to US$1,000. Cost estimates for CS for obstructed labor have a wider range (US$200 to US$4,000 per DALY averted, depending on the country), with a median of slightly more than US$400 (Alkire and others 2012). Other innovations with lower costs per DALY averted, in the range of US$20–US$100—for example, clean delivery kits for home births (Sabin and others 2012)—have a modest impact on DALYs averted.

CONCLUSIONS

Although evidence of effectiveness is not available for several vital interventions, these interventions save the lives of thousands of mothers and newborns every day. For other simple interventions, research has demonstrated convincingly that, if provided in the appropriate time and with the appropriate protocol, many more lives can be saved. However, effective interventions are not consistently used or available in LMICs, and accelerated investments are needed in health system infrastructure, intervention implementation, health worker training, and patient education to improve health outcomes for mothers and newborns.

Even in the poorest settings simple approaches at the family and community levels and through outreach services can save many lives now. Well-known interventions, such as neonatal resuscitation and case management of infections, can be added to existing programs, particularly Safe Motherhood and Integrated Management of Childhood Illness programs, at low marginal cost. Although community-based options are often most feasible, if the commitment to strengthen clinical care systems is lacking, the potential improvements in health outcomes from these options is limited.

Scaling-up of skilled care for pregnancy and childbirth is still required to reach the MDGs in LMICs. However, as increasing numbers of women and babies reach first-level facilities and hospitals, the quality of care challenges in these facilities need to be addressed. A shift in focus to quality of care has the potential to unlock significant returns for every mother and every newborn beyond 2015 to end preventable maternal and newborn deaths and stillbirths by 2030.

NOTE

For consistency and ease of comparison, DCP3 is using the World Health Organization’s Global Health Estimates (GHE) for data on diseases burden, except in cases where a relevant data point is not available from GHE. In those instances, an alternative data source is noted.

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:
  - a) lower-middle-income = US$1,046 to US$4,125
  - b) upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126 to US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

REFERENCES


INTRODUCTION

Fever is one of the most common presenting symptoms of pediatric illnesses. Fever in children under age five years signifies systemic inflammation, typically in response to a viral, bacterial, parasitic, or less commonly, a noninfectious etiology. Patients’ ages and geographic settings can help direct the appropriate diagnostic approach and treatment, if local epidemiology is well understood.

The combined proportion of deaths due to AIDS, diarrheal diseases, pertussis, tetanus, measles, meningitis/encephalitis, malaria, pneumonia and sepsis was 58.5 percent for children ages 1–59 months in 2015; it was 23.4 percent for neonates (Liu and others 2016, chapter 4 of this volume). Evidence regarding fever incidence is variable, with country-specific reports from cross-sectional surveys or weekly active case detection ranging from two to nine febrile episodes per child under age five years per year, a mean of 5.88 fever episodes per child under age five years per year (Gething and others 2010). National survey data from 42 Sub-Saharan African countries (excluding Botswana, Cabo Verde, Eritrea, and South Africa) were collected and analyzed for an estimated 655.6 million under-five fever episodes in 2007; 32 percent of these episodes occurred in 11 outpatient units in the Democratic Republic of Congo, Ethiopia, and Nigeria (Gething and others 2010). At the health facility and community levels, fever is by far the most common pediatric presenting symptom.

Multiple studies summarized in table 8.1 highlight the most common presenting symptoms at the facility and community levels.

Before the availability of affordable and accurate malaria rapid diagnostic tests (RDTs), most health care providers in malaria-endemic countries presumed that malaria was the cause of fever; the proportion of fevers due to malaria was very high in the early 1990s, and the priority was to reduce malaria mortality by any means.

The 1997 World Health Organization’s (WHO’s) initial Integrated Management of Childhood Illness (IMCI) guidelines recommended the use of injectable antimalarials and antibiotics in children in malaria-endemic areas who were suspected of having severe disease with the presence of danger signs (Gove 1997; Communicable Disease Surveillance and Response Vaccines and Biologicals 1997). Until 2010, the first edition of the WHO guidelines for the treatment of malaria recommended empiric, oral, antimalarial therapy for fever without other source in children under age five years living in malaria-endemic areas (WHO 2006). The decline of malaria incidence; rise of antimicrobial resistance; and availability of accurate, low-cost, point-of-care diagnostics have challenged the effectiveness of the presumptive treatment of febrile illnesses and reopened the discussion of the most accurate and cost-effective approaches for fever diagnosis and treatment. There are settings with very high malaria transmission and limited availability of diagnostic test where presumptive treatment would
### Table 8.1 Clinical Findings and Final Classification in Studies on Integrated Management of Fevers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Year(s) of study</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Algorithm used</th>
<th>Age group (years)</th>
<th>Total number of patients</th>
<th>% with one or more danger signs</th>
<th>% who required referral</th>
<th>% with fever</th>
<th>% positive RDT results among febrile patients</th>
<th>% with cough</th>
<th>% with difficult breathing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gouws and others 2004</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Tanzania</td>
<td>Original IMCI</td>
<td>&lt; 5</td>
<td>419</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gouws and others 2004</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Uganda</td>
<td>Original IMCI</td>
<td>&lt; 5</td>
<td>516</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gouws and others 2004</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Original IMCI</td>
<td>&lt; 5</td>
<td>653</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D’Acremont and others 2011</td>
<td>2007–08</td>
<td>Tanzania</td>
<td>Usual care</td>
<td>&lt; 5</td>
<td>1,270</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D’Acremont and others 2011</td>
<td>2007–08</td>
<td>Tanzania</td>
<td>Usual care</td>
<td>&lt; 5</td>
<td>1,254</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D’Acremont and others 2011</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Tanzania</td>
<td>Modified IMCI</td>
<td>&gt; 5</td>
<td>1,005</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D’Acremont and others 2014</td>
<td>2011</td>
<td>Tanzania</td>
<td>Modified IMCI</td>
<td>&lt; 10</td>
<td>842</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shao and others 2004</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Tanzania</td>
<td>Modified IMCI</td>
<td>&lt; 5</td>
<td>7,151</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>182</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rowe and others 2001</td>
<td>1997–2002</td>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>Original IMCI</td>
<td>&lt; 5</td>
<td>525</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>584</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mukanga, Tiono, and Anyorigiya 2012</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>Uganda</td>
<td>iCCM</td>
<td>&lt; 5</td>
<td>182</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>584</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mukanga, Tiono, and Anyorigiya 2012</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>Burkina Faso</td>
<td>iCCM</td>
<td>&lt; 5</td>
<td>525</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>584</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mukanga, Tiono, and Anyorigiya 2012</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>Ghana</td>
<td>iCCM</td>
<td>&lt; 5</td>
<td>584</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>584</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% with fast breathing among those with cough</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% with chest indrawing among those with cough</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% with pneumonia</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% with diarrhea</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% with blood in stools among those with diarrhea</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% with ear pain</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% with measles</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% with skin problems</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% with more than one diagnostic classification</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Note: — = not available; iCCM = Integrated Community Case Management; IMCI = Integrated Management of Childhood Illness; RDT = rapid diagnostic test.
be most practical and cost-effective (DCP3 volume 6, Babigumira, forthcoming). In 2009, experts debated whether sufficient information was available to abandon presumptive treatment guidelines and move to an emphasis on diagnosis before treatment (D’Acremont, Lengeler, and Genton 2007; D’Acremont and others 2009; English and others 2009).

Mounting evidence demonstrated the decline of Plasmodium falciparum infections in response to intense national and multinational initiatives to control malaria. In 2012 more than US$2.5 billion was invested from global partners, including the Global Fund to Fight AIDS, Tuberculosis and Malaria; the World Bank Malaria Booster Program; the U.S. President’s Malaria Initiative; the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation’s Malaria Control and Evaluation Partnership in Africa; and the Roll Back Malaria Partnership (D’Acremont, Lengeler, and Genton 2010; Feachem and others 2010; Leslie and others 2012; WHO 2013a). Countries with previously defined high-transmission regions are reporting decreasing malaria incidence, making the management of nonmalarial fevers critically important (Feachem and others 2010; WHO 2013a; Hertz and others 2013; Ishengoma and others 2011).

In 2010, the WHO revised its fever treatment guidelines to recommend antimalarial treatment only for those with a positive malaria test result, either point-of-care or microscopy (WHO 2010a). This new strategy is being implemented in the public sector in most Sub-Saharan African countries (Bastiaens and others 2011). However, many patients first present for care in the informal private sector, and more research is needed to better understand treatment decision making in this context and how to reduce overuse of antimicrobials and ensure appropriate care. The epidemiology of pediatric febrile illness is undoubtedly shifting: understanding the etiology of nonmalarial fevers in each context is the logical next step to improve pediatric clinical outcomes of other treatable serious febrile illnesses, such as pneumonia, sepsis, bacterial meningitis, enteric fever, rickettsioses, and influenza. Given rampant and expanding antimicrobial drug resistance globally, care must be taken to use antibiotics only when indicated and to develop careful guidelines when resources are limited. Present guidelines are based on clinical features that are unfortunately poorly predictive of the diseases causing fever. Low-cost, accurate, point-of-care diagnostics are needed to determine which children can benefit from antibacterial therapies to guide the most effective use of antibiotics.

This chapter discusses the evidence that informs current etiologies of fever, stratified by regional geography. It presents the clinical presentation, diagnosis, and treatment of the most common diseases, with special considerations for certain age groups, the burden of disease for different conditions, classification and treatment strategies, and a review of available diagnostic tests. In addition, different health systems approaches to diagnosis and treatment of the febrile child at the community and health-facility levels are discussed, as is the evidence base for WHO-sponsored approaches such as IMCI and Integrated Community Case Management (iCCM). Fever in adults and RDT use for malaria are discussed further in volume 6 (Holmes, Bertozzi, Bloom, Jha, and Nugent, forthcoming).

**Etiology of Fever in Children Under Age Five Years**

Infectious etiologies of fever differ according to age and geographic region. Recent evidence from multiple health care and low- and middle-income country (LMIC) settings confirms that viral infections are predominantly responsible for fever within all age groups (Animut and others 2009; Crump and others 2013; D’Acremont and others 2014; Kasper and others 2012; Mayxay and others 2013). The studies described in table 8.2 used different study designs with significant variation in study population, case definitions, and available diagnostics. Although these studies are informative, they need to be interpreted in the context of the individual study design and context. Following are common themes across the available research:

- Predominance of acute respiratory infections (ARIs) in outpatient visits for fever
- Identification of multiple pathogens after molecular laboratory investigations, making it difficult to declare a specific diagnosis
- High proportion of fever etiologies due to viral pathogens when appropriate viral diagnostic tests are available; studies without viral diagnostics reveal a high proportion of undiagnosed febrile illnesses
- Clinically overestimated malaria, compared with RDT or microscopy-confirmed diagnosis.

Although the available evidence suggests that most viral and some specific bacterial diseases, such as rickettsiosis and leptospirosis, are likely to be underdiagnosed, data are either not available or are limited from several countries where the fever burden is highest, such as the Democratic Republic of Congo, India, and Nigeria. Ongoing surveillance of fever etiology in multiple representative geographies to establish trends in predominant pathogens and to identify emerging infections early would be ideal. Additionally, little research is available on fever etiology of young infants (age 0–2 months); a concerted research effort is underway to better understand the distribution
Table 8.2 Summary of Evidence for Etiology of Fever Studies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>World Bank region</th>
<th>Sub-Saharan Africa</th>
<th>South Asia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WHO 2013a</td>
<td>WHO 2013a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Njama-Meya and others (2007)</td>
<td>WHO 2013a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mayxay and others (2013)</td>
<td>WHO 2013a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Study setting</td>
<td></td>
<td>Animut and others (2009)</td>
<td>WHO 2013a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Crump and others (2013)</td>
<td>WHO 2013a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D’Acremont and others (2014)</td>
<td>WHO 2013a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Study design</td>
<td></td>
<td>Four outpatient clinics in Gojam zone in northwest Ethiopia</td>
<td>Lao PDR, two province-level hospitals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Uganda, study clinic within a referral third-level hospital</td>
<td>Pakistan, small peripheral clinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tanzania, hospitalized patients</td>
<td>Cambodia, setting unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tanzania, One urban and one rural outpatient clinic</td>
<td>Cambodia, nine outpatient clinics in south central region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N = 1,005 (younger than age 10 years with fever)</td>
<td></td>
<td>N = 467 (ages 2 months to 13 years)</td>
<td>N = 1,248 febrile episodes, all ages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N = 673 cases, 200 controls (ages 2–59 months)</td>
<td></td>
<td>N = 677 cases, 200 controls (ages 2–59 months)</td>
<td>N = 1,938 (ages 5 months to 49 years) with fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N = 653 (ages 3–17 years)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Diagnoses by case definitions and convalescent serum at four to six weeks post discharge</td>
<td>Case definition plus laboratory investigations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N = 1,602 (less than age 10 years with fever in last 24 hours)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Diagnoses by IMCI classifications plus laboratory investigations</td>
<td>Tested for malaria, leptospirosis, rickettsial diseases, scrub typhus, dengue, influenza, and bacteremia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N = 653 (ages 3–17 years)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Clinical diagnoses for RDT or microscopy negative for malaria per local clinical guidelines</td>
<td>Lab investigations of respiratory secretions, blood, serum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most common diagnoses</td>
<td></td>
<td>62 percent ARI (5 percent chest X-ray-confirmed pneumonia)</td>
<td>74 percent RDT-confirmed malaria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 percent malaria</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.4 percent bacteremia</td>
<td>23 percent ARI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62 percent ARI</td>
<td></td>
<td>7 percent clinical pneumonia</td>
<td>27 percent diarrhea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62 percent ARI</td>
<td></td>
<td>26 percent watery diarrhea</td>
<td>8 percent dengue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62 percent ARI</td>
<td></td>
<td>5 percent bloody diarrhea</td>
<td>7 percent scrub typhus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serologically diagnosed:</td>
<td></td>
<td>5 percent skin infections</td>
<td>6 percent Japanese encephalitis virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.8 percent typhoid</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.2 percent malaria</td>
<td>6 percent leptospirosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1 percent typhus</td>
<td></td>
<td>12 percent pharyngitis</td>
<td>2 percent bacteremia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 percent ARIs:</td>
<td></td>
<td>4 percent pneumonia</td>
<td>less than 3 percent malaria confirmed by microscopy or RDT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57 percent pneumonia</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 percent otitis media</td>
<td>8 percent ARI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 percent tonsillitis</td>
<td></td>
<td>47 percent diarrhea</td>
<td>23 percent diarrhea or dysentery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6 percent brucellosis</td>
<td></td>
<td>29 percent common cold</td>
<td>17 percent enteric fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7 percent leptospirosis</td>
<td></td>
<td>12 percent pharyngitis</td>
<td>2 percent bacteremia other than S. typhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9 percent Q fever</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.6 percent brucellosis</td>
<td>0.5 percent UTI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 percent malaria</td>
<td></td>
<td>26 percent watery diarrhea</td>
<td>0.4 percent malaria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 percent bacteremia</td>
<td></td>
<td>3 percent bloody diarrhea</td>
<td>68 percent RDT-negative:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.9 percent meningitis</td>
<td></td>
<td>5 percent skin infections</td>
<td>0.6 percent URI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.9 percent nasopharyngeal viral infection</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.2 percent malaria</td>
<td>17 percent enteric fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5 percent malaria</td>
<td></td>
<td>12 percent pharyngitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.3 percent gastroenteritis</td>
<td></td>
<td>4 percent pneumonia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.9 percent UTI</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 percent otitis media</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The table continues on the next page.
Table 8.2 Summary of Evidence for Etiology of Fever Studies (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>World Bank region</th>
<th>Sub-Saharan Africa</th>
<th>South Asia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Undiagnosed (percent)</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple diagnoses (percent)</td>
<td>22.6</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes
- Availability of extensive viral diagnostics correlated with clinical diagnoses
- Limited viral testing
- High prevalence of zoonoses; consider different empiric antibiotic regimens
- Limited viral testing
- Of the viral ARIs most common PCR results:
  - 16 percent RSV
  - 9 percent influenza (A/B)
  - 9 percent rhinovirus
- Limited testing for bacterial illnesses such as typhoid
- Role of influenza during outbreak
- High proportion of enteric disease
- Clinical presentation and lab diagnoses did not always correlate; many pathogens found in similar rates in controls

Notes: ARI = acute respiratory infection; IMCI = Integrated Management of Childhood Illness; LRI = lower respiratory tract infection; PCR = polymerase chain reaction; RDT = rapid diagnostic test; RSV = respiratory syncytial virus; URI = upper respiratory tract infection; UTI = urinary tract infection.
of infections in young infants via the Aetiology of Neonatal Infection in South Asia research group, which is building on results from the WHO Young Infants Study Group and the WHO Young Infants Clinical Signs Study Group (YICSSG) (WHO Young Infants Study Group 1999; YICSSG 2008). Infection-related neonatal deaths contributed at least 10 percent to overall mortality in children under age five years in 2013 (Liu and others 2015).

DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT OF COMMON CHILDHOOD FEBRILE ILLNESSES

Febrile Illnesses in Young Infants

Infection-related mortality and morbidity for young infants from birth to age 59 days is one of the most challenging health issues to address; signs and symptoms are often nonspecific, and illnesses can rapidly progress to severe disease. Care seeking for young infant illness often occurs too late or not at all, making community-based efforts critical to increasing access to early treatment and addressing this disproportionate morbidity and mortality. Using the CHERG estimates, sepsis (15 percent) and pneumonia (6 percent) are the highest infection-related contributors to neonatal death, with tetanus and diarrheal disease both contributing approximately 1 percent (chapter 4 in this volume, Liu and others 2016). None of the etiology studies discussed in table 8.2 captures the causes of fever in the young infant age group.

Sepsis

Sepsis in young infants presents in two varieties: early onset (fewer than seven days after birth) and late onset (seven days or more). Early-onset neonatal sepsis is thought to be the result of exposure to pathogens in the maternal birth canal; late-onset sepsis is thought to be secondary to environmental exposures. Symptoms of bacteremia and related sepsis in young infants are often vague and may include fever, hypothermia, poor tone, jaundice, or inability to suck. A decrease in urine production, poor perfusion, bulging fontanelle, excessive sleepiness, or alternatively, excessive irritability are signs of more serious disease. Without antibiotic treatment, many young infants will rapidly progress to severe bacterial sepsis, which may prove fatal.

A review by Ganatra and Zaidi (2010) of five neonatal sepsis studies reports incidences of blood culture–confirmed early-onset sepsis ranging from 2.2 to 9.8 per 1,000 live births, and clinical sepsis incidence ranging from 20.7 to 50 per 1,000 live births. Two of these studies report case fatality rates (CFRs) of 18 percent and 19 percent (Ganatra and Zaidi 2010). A systematic review that included 27 hospital-based studies of the etiology of neonatal sepsis reports CFRs in children younger than 60 days as low as 3 percent in Europe and as high as 70 percent in South-East Asia (Waters and others 2011).

Although a positive blood culture is the gold standard for diagnosing bacteremia, cultures are known to lack sensitivity, especially in children, and may take several hours to days before results are available; cultures require significant laboratory infrastructure, which is a challenge in low-resource settings. Total leukocyte count, leukocyte differential, levels of acute phase reactants (for example, C-reactive protein), and screening panels using a variety of cytokine markers may provide supportive evidence of infection when abnormal, but these measures have been shown to have limited value in diagnosing bacteremia (Remington and others 2006).

According to a systematic review of 27 studies performed by Waters and others (2011), the most common documented pathogens for early-onset sepsis (N = 282 isolates) include Escherichia coli (16.3 percent), Staphylococcus aureus (11.7 percent), nonpneumococcal streptococcal species (8.5 percent), Klebsiella species (7.8 percent), Pseudomonas species (7.8 percent), Group B streptococcus (GBS; 6.7 percent), Acinetobacter species (6.7 percent), and Streptococcus pneumoniae (4.6 percent). The distribution of pathogens for late-onset sepsis (N = 1,784) was similar to early onset but with notably less GBS (1.7 percent) and a higher proportion of Serratia species (2.2 percent), Salmonella species (1.5 percent), H. influenzae (1.7 percent), and Neisseria meningitidis (0.7 percent). Overall, there was a similar proportion of gram-positive isolates (34.4 percent early onset, 34.6 percent late onset) compared with gram-negative isolates (63.8 percent early onset, 60.5 percent late-onset) (Waters and others 2011). These results suggest that empiric antibiotic regimens for both early- and late-onset sepsis should be broad spectrum to treat both gram-positive and -negative infections.

Meningitis, Herpes Simplex Virus, and Urinary Tract Infections

In addition to bacteremia, a young infant presenting with a nonfocal fever should be evaluated for meningitis and urinary tract infections (UTIs). A lumbar puncture to check for pleocytosis (an elevated number of white blood cells in cerebral spinal fluid), elevated protein, or low glucose levels can indicate whether infection is present in the central nervous system.

Herpes simplex virus-2 (HSV-2) may cause encephalitis, an infection more common in the first three
weeks of life secondary to exposure via the birth canal. HSV-2 is responsible for genital herpes, the prevalence of which is rising globally; it is of particular concern in HIV-endemic countries where genital ulcers increase risk of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) transmission. HSV-2 seroprevalence has been measured at roughly 50 percent in many LMICs (WHO, UNAIDS, and LSHTM 2001). Many newborns are exposed to HSV-2 in asymptomatic mothers, making surveillance for neonatal HSV-2 a challenge. Further research is needed to determine whether HSV-2 is a major contributor to neonatal morbidity and mortality in LMICs.

UTIs are best evaluated by urine culture; in low-resource settings, point-of-care urinalysis can provide potentially valuable information. The presence of leukocyte esterase, blood, or nitrites may suggest a bacterial urinary infection, however, only if the urine sample is not contaminated. The difficulty of obtaining a sterile sample from a young infant has made implementation of this test less feasible in the community setting. UTIs are the most common reason for nonfocal fever in young infants; urinary vesicoureteral reflux is associated with higher risk (Byington and others 2003; Greenhow and others 2014).

**Group B Streptococcus Disease**

GBS (*Streptococcus agalactiae*) is a bacterium that can cause bacteremia, sepsis, pneumonia, and meningitis in newborns. GBS may present as early-onset disease, which is usually due to transmission from a colonized mother immediately before or during delivery, and late-onset disease (later than seven days of age), at which time infection may be acquired from the mother or environmental sources. Overall, the CFR tends to be high (9.6 percent), with a higher case fatality in early-onset infections (Edmond and others 2012).

Although GBS is a common cause of neonatal sepsis in high-income countries (HICs), the global burden in LMICs is less established. Variable incidence levels have been reported, with Sub-Saharan Africa reporting rates almost threefold higher than North and South America. In contrast, South-East Asian studies have reported a low incidence and even no cases of GBS. This disparity may be due to differences in study design, previous antibiotic use, and the severity of illness, with young infants dying before they can be fully evaluated. In HICs, the standard of care is to conduct surveillance cultures for GBS at 36 weeks gestation. Pregnant women colonized with GBS receive intrapartum antibiotics at least four hours before delivery to reduce the incidence of GBS neonatal illness. In the meta-analysis (Edmond and others 2012), studies that report intrapartum prophylaxis were associated with lower incidence of early-onset GBS (0.23 per 1,000 live births [95 percent confidence interval 0.13–0.59]) compared with those with no prophylaxis (0.75 per 1,000 live births [95 percent confidence interval 0.58–0.89]). Whether this practice would be beneficial in low-resource countries is difficult to determine because of insufficient data on the burden of GBS disease in these contexts.

**Acute Respiratory Infections**

ARIs in young infants (age 0–59 days) are particularly dangerous because immature immune systems increase vulnerability for systemic spread, and the fatigue from the increased work of breathing is a major clinical concern. Liu and others (chapter 4 in this volume, 2016) estimate that ARIs contribute 6 percent to total all-cause neonatal mortality (0–28 days), and the WHO repository suggests 4 percent of children age 0–59 days die from ARI (WHO-CHERG 2011). It is difficult to disentangle primary respiratory infections from sepsis and other pulmonary conditions related to premature lungs and congenital anomalies. Viral respiratory infections often infect the smallest of airways—bronchioles—causing inflammation, bronchospasm, and difficulty breathing.

**Febrile Illnesses in Older Infants and Young Children**

**Acute Respiratory Infections**

ARIs became the second largest killer of children under age five years. Recent WHO-CHERG data describe ARIs as responsible for approximately 15 percent of all under-five deaths and 24 percent of mortality for ages 1–59 months (chapter 4 in this volume, Liu and others 2016). Estimates vary depending on the sources and modeling approach, with ARI-related deaths among children under five years of age ranging from 890,000 (GBD 2013 Collaborators 2015) in 2013 to approximately 922,000 in 2015 (chapter 4 in this volume, Liu and others 2016). ARIs include upper respiratory tract infections, such as the common cold, otitis media, sinusitis, and pharyngitis, as well as lower respiratory tract infections (LRIs), such as laryngitis, tracheitis, bronchitis, bronchiolitis, and pneumonia. Bronchiolitis and pneumonia are the largest contributors to child ARI deaths through progressive respiratory failure or systemic infection, inflammation, or toxins spread from the lungs.

Acute lower respiratory tract infections (ALRIs) in older infants and children under age five years are the most common reason for hospitalization. An assessment of the global burden of severe pneumonia
estimated that in 2010, 11.9 million (95 percent confidence interval 10.3 million to 13.9 million) episodes of severe and 3.0 million (95 percent confidence interval 2.1 million to 4.2 million) episodes of very severe LRI resulted in hospital admissions in young children worldwide (Nair and others 2013). This analysis uses data from 37 hospital studies reporting CFRs for severe ALRI to estimate that approximately 265,000 (95 percent confidence interval 160,000–450,000) in-hospital deaths occurred in young children; 99 percent of these deaths occurred in developing countries. These data capture the inpatient CFR; however, the at-home CFR is likely higher in areas with poor access to care. Although many children with ARI are diagnosed and treated in the private sector, data on these ARI episodes and their outcome is sorely lacking; investment to better understand the role of the informal sector in disease diagnosis and treatment is paramount.

In 2009, the WHO and UNICEF released a Global Action Plan for Prevention and Control of Pneumonia (WHO and UNICEF 2009a). In 2013, this plan was updated to include diarrheal disease control and renamed the Integrated Global Action Plan for Prevention and Control of Pneumonia and Diarrhoea (WHO and UNICEF 2013). These calls to action outlined the research and programming priorities for ARIs to include the following:

- Etiology research to better direct antimicrobial therapy
- Vaccine development
- Scale-up of community-based programming to recognize and treat cases of severe ARI before disease progression.

The Pneumonia Etiology Research for Child Health project was designed in response to the call for enhanced understanding of the etiology of pneumonia. This multicountry case-control study of hospitalized pediatric patients in Bangladesh, The Gambia, Kenya, Mali, South Africa, Thailand, and Zambia will reflect the changes in severe pneumonia etiology resulting from wider vaccine availability, the HIV/AIDS epidemic and resulting opportunistic infections, and increasing antimicrobial resistance. Results are expected in 2016–17. Annex 8A provides a summary of the current understanding of pneumonia etiology.

Respiratory viruses play a major role in infants of all ages presenting with severe ALRI, clinically known as bronchiolitis. Although these viruses exist in older children with ARIs, the clinical presentation in infants is associated with higher morbidity and mortality. Common viral etiologies of bronchiolitis include respiratory syncytial virus, influenza (types A and B), parainfluenza, human metapneumovirus, rhinovirus, adenovirus, coronaviruses, and human bocavirus (García and others 2010).

In 2012, the WHO updated the technical guidelines for treatment of pneumonia, based on available evidence from studies reviewed by an expert panel. On the basis of recent studies, the 2014 version of the IMCI guidelines (table 8.3) recommends that pneumonia with fast breathing or chest indrawing but no other danger signs be managed at the outpatient level, potentially reducing the number of children needing referral (WHO 2012b, 2014a).

Pulse oximetry, which measures a patient’s oxygen saturation, can provide important triage information—peripheral oxygen saturation of less than 90 percent predicts clinical severity and need for supplemental oxygen (WHO 2013a). To reduce mortality from ARIs, clear community-based algorithms to identify and refer children with severe pneumonia are needed, and referral-level facilities need to deliver supplemental oxygen. The cost-effectiveness of an oxygen systems strategy compares favorably with other higher-profile child survival interventions, such as new vaccines (Duke and others 2008). Although most portable oxygen systems lack sufficient oxygen flow rates to provide adequate respite for increased work of breathing in infants with bronchiolitis, oxygen concentrators provide the most consistent and least expensive source of oxygen in health facilities with reliable power supplies. Future research efforts that focus on reducing the power needs of or using alternative energy sources for oxygen concentrators will facilitate their introduction to lower levels of the health care system. The capacity to perform routine maintenance and to source necessary replacement parts locally needs to be addressed if this technology is to be sustainable at the community or facility level.

Viral Exanthems
A discussion of febrile illnesses in children is incomplete without the mention of the myriad viruses that present nonlocally and ultimately declare themselves clinically with a characteristic exanthema or rash. For example, the clinical syndromes of roseola (HHV-6), varicella, measles, parvovirus B19, and coxsackie virus may initially present with fever before erupting into a rash. Of these conditions, only measles is incorporated into the IMCI algorithms, which recommend treatment with vitamin A for uncomplicated infections, or urgent referral, a first dose of an antibiotic, and vitamin A for severe complicated measles (Gove 1997). Many other classic
viral exanthema are difficult to diagnose on darker skin, are typically self-limited, and do not require treatment. Measles and, to a lesser extent, varicella are highly contagious viruses and have the potential for serious sequelae. Parvovirus B19 is an important condition to consider in patients with sickle-cell disease because infection can lead to aplastic anemia. An emphasis on identifying these syndromes and prophylactic vaccination for measles is warranted in refugee or displaced populations, and in HIV-endemic areas where outbreaks could spread rapidly.

**Enteric Fever**

Enteric fever is an all-encompassing term for the disease caused by several serovars of *Salmonella enterica* including *S. typhi* and *S. paratyphi A*. The clinical picture of typhoid is nonspecific with symptoms of severe headache, nausea, and loss of appetite associated with sustained, high fever and few other specific signs. The Institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation (IHME) reports a mortality burden of 190,000 for enteric fever in the 2010 Global Burden of Diseases (Lozano and others 2012). In 2015, the IHME released updated mortality estimates with disaggregated cause of death; they report an estimated 54,262 paratyphoid-caused deaths and 160,645 typhoid-caused deaths worldwide annually (GBD 2013 Collaborators 2015). These data come from 73 Gavi, the Vaccine Alliance, countries within which more than 70 percent of mortality burden comes from Asia and more than 50 percent comes from South Asia (Lozano and others 2012; GBD 2013 Collaborators 2015). CFRs, ranging from 10 percent to 30 percent without antibiotic treatment, drop to less than 1 percent to 4 percent in the antibiotic-treated patient. As part of Millennium Development Goal (MDG) 7, improvements in water, sanitation, and hygiene have reduced environmental contamination exposure to typhoid. However, treatment with antibiotics and prevention through vaccination are ultimately needed to reduce typhoid mortality and morbidity (United Nations 2013).

### Table 8.3  WHO IMCI Respiratory Illness Clinical Guidelines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMCI classification for children age 2–59 months</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Strength of recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nonsevere pneumonia (fast breathing&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; or chest indrawing without danger signs)</strong></td>
<td>Without chest indrawing and HIV-negative: Amoxicillin 40 mg/kg twice daily for three days</td>
<td>Weak recommendation, moderate quality of evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without chest indrawing and HIV-positive: Amoxicillin 40 mg/kg twice daily for five days</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With chest indrawing: Amoxicillin 40 mg/kg twice daily for five days</td>
<td>Strong recommendation, moderate quality of evidence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Severe pneumonia (fast breathing with danger signs, with or without chest indrawing)</strong></td>
<td>Children age 2–59 months: Ampicillin 50 mg/kg IV every six hours for five days OR Benzyl penicillin 50,000 IU/kg every six hours for five days AND gentamicin 7.5 mg/kg IV daily for five days Third-generation cephalosporin as second-line therapy&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Strong recommendation, moderate quality of evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wheezing</strong></td>
<td>Inhaled salbutamol delivered via metered dose inhaler with spacer devices for up to three times 15–20 minutes apart, to relieve bronchoconstriction and to assess the respiratory rate again and classify accordingly Oral salbutamol should not be used for treatment of acute or persistent wheezing, except where inhaled salbutamol is not available&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Strong recommendation, low quality of evidence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Note: IMCI = Integrated Management of Childhood Illness; IU = International unit; IV = Intravenous; mg/kg = milligrams per kilogram.

<sup>a</sup> Fast breathing is defined as respiratory rate ≥ 50 breaths per minute in infants age 2–12 months, and ≥ 40 breaths per minute in infants age 12–59 months.

<sup>b</sup> Expert consensus.
Malaria
Despite substantial control efforts since 2000, malaria remains responsible for substantial morbidity and mortality worldwide; in 2015, there were an estimated 214 million cases and at least 438,000 deaths (WHO 2015). Four species of Plasmodium are responsible for most human cases (P. falciparum, P. vivax, P. ovale, and P. malariae), although P. knowlesi, a cause of pri- mate malaria, has been identified as a cause of human infections in Malaysia and other parts of South-East Asia. Clinically, malaria ranges from asymptomatic parasitemia to uncomplicated malaria to severe malaria (typically manifested as cerebral malaria, severe anemia, hypoglycemia, and potentially multisystem organ failure). Further detail on etiology and control strategies for malaria can be found in volume 6 (Holmes, Bertozzi, Bloom, Jha, and Nugent, forthcoming).

A paradigm shift has occurred in recent years, away from the presumption that all fevers in endemic areas should be treated as malaria toward the recommendation that laboratory testing should occur before treatment. Although thick and thin blood smears have been the mainstay of diagnosis, since 2005 the use of antigen-based RDTs with high sensitivity and specificity has increased. This recommendation has not been implemented in all regions given lack of resources to acquire RDTs or provider preference for relying on clinical diagnosis or blood smears, despite a convincing body of research to support RDTs as reliable and cost-effective diagnostic tools. Artemisinin-based combination therapy (ACT) is the preferred treatment modality for uncomplicated and severe disease caused by P. falciparum; chloroquine remains the treatment of choice for the other three species in most regions.

Dengue and Chikungunya Virus
Dengue fever, a mosquito-borne arbovirus of the genus Flavivirus, has become one of the most common and rapidly spreading vector-borne diseases after malaria and is a major international public health concern. Dengue is responsible for an estimated 50 million to 100 million illnesses annually, including 250,000 to 500,000 cases of dengue hemorrhagic fever—a severe manifestation of dengue—and approximately 29,000 deaths (Lozano and others 2012; CDC 2012). Approximately 95 percent of cases occur in children younger than age 15 years; infants constitute 5 percent of all cases. Dengue has mainly been documented in Asia; data from Sub-Saharan Africa are lacking, although reports from Gabon and elsewhere are creating concern that it is an emerging disease or has been previously not recognized because of a lack of diagnostic testing (Caron and others 2013).

The grading of the severity of dengue can be based on a WHO classification system, updated in 2009 (WHO and Special Programme for Research and Training in Tropical Diseases 2009). No specific therapeutic agents exist for dengue fever apart from analgesics and medications to reduce fever. Treatment is supportive; steroids, antivirals, or carbazochrome, which decreases capillary permeability, have no proven role. Mild or classic dengue is treated with antipyretic agents such as acetaminophen, bed rest, and fluid replacement; most cases can be managed on an outpatient basis. The management of dengue hemorrhagic fever and dengue shock syndrome is purely supportive. Aspirin and other nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs should be avoided, owing to the increased risk for Reye’s syndrome and hemorrhage (Simmons and others 2012).

Chikungunya, an alpha virus transmitted by mosquitoes of the Aedes genus, is responsible for a clinical syndrome characterized by fever, rash, headache, myal- gias, and arthralgias (Thiboutot and others 2010). It can affect all ages, including young children; trans- plental transmission with congenital infection has been described (Gérardin and others 2008). Although past outbreaks of chikungunya have primarily occurred in Sub-Saharan Africa and regions of South Asia and East Asia and Pacific, this vector-borne viral infection has emerged in Latin America and the Caribbean, where it spread rapidly from island to island. No specific antiviral therapy is available, and treatment is largely supportive.

DIAGNOSTIC TOOLS AVAILABLE OR UNDER DEVELOPMENT
Malaria
In many endemic areas, malaria accounts for a minority of fever episodes and is clinically indistinguishable from other common illnesses, including pneumonia, meningitis, typhoid, sepsis, and viral infections such as dengue and chikungunya. The WHO recommends that malaria case management be based on parasitological diagnosis of malaria infections before treatment (WHO 2010a, 2012a); the use of antigen-detecting RDTs is supportive of this strategy, particularly in areas where good quality microscopy cannot be maintained. The number of commercially available malaria RDTs that detect one or more of the three parasite antigens—histidine rich protein-2 (HRP-2), parasite lactate dehydrogenase (pLDH), or aldolase—have increased substantially since their introduction in the late 1990s (table 8.4). RDTs can play a key role in febrile illness management, providing they are sensitive enough to detect nearly all clinically significant cases of malaria and have a high specificity to rule out nonmalarial causes of febrile illness. Multiple rounds of laboratory-based evaluations have identified those RDTs that consistently detect malaria at low parasite densities (WHO 2012c).
However, the declining malaria burden in many endemic regions and an increasing programmatic focus on malaria elimination mean that novel target antigens, use of gold nanoparticles, or other diagnostic approaches may be needed to create point-of-care tests with increased sensitivity. Several diagnostic approaches are based on selective microscopic detection of infected blood cells by methods such as third-harmonic generation imaging (Bélisle and others 2008), photoacoustic flowmetry (Samson and others 2012), and more recently, magneto-optical detection of the malaria pigment (Mens and others 2010) hemozoin using hand-held devices with polarized light and laser pulse detection of vapor nanobubbles generated by the parasite (Lukianova-Hleb and others 2014).

**Respiratory and Other Bacterial Illnesses**

A detailed discussion of diagnostic tools available and under development for ARI or other serious bacterial illnesses can be found in annex 8B (available online).

### HEALTH SYSTEMS APPROACHES TO CHILDREN WITH FEBRILE ILLNESSES

Children with fever present to all levels and sectors of the health system. Trials of algorithmic approaches have been undertaken at the community and facility levels to identify seriously ill children to indicate referral to a higher level of care. Two WHO-supported platforms to identify and treat children with fever and common pediatric illnesses are IMCI for the facility level and iCCM for the community level. Further research is needed to identify best practice models for the formal and informal private sector to create a synergistic approach to providing appropriate treatment and referral to more advanced care, when needed.

### Integrated Management of Childhood Illness

The WHO developed the IMCI strategy in the 1990s to improve the quality of disease management and to reduce mortality of children under age five years (Gove 1997). Using a series of algorithms and flow charts, IMCI gives health care providers a systematic way to assess children for danger signs that trigger immediate referral or hospitalization; to classify the illness based on the level of severity for pneumonia, diarrhea, measles, fever, otitis media, and malnutrition (Tulloch 1999); and to identify those requiring antibiotic treatment. The classifications are color coded, with pink calling for hospital referral or admission, yellow for treatment at home, and green for children with mild illness who require only supportive care at home and can be counseled with return precautions (figure 8.1). IMCI has been adapted at the national level with increasing attention to HIV screening and management of illness in infants under age two months.

Several assessments of the quality of care delivered by IMCI have been performed since the early 2000s. In Bangladesh, a systematic evaluation of 669 sick children age 2–59 months, using a gold-standard physician diagnosis and treatment decision, found a sensitivity of 78 percent and specificity of 47 percent for identifying children with probable bacterial infections requiring antibiotics (Factor and others 2001). In this low malaria prevalence site, the majority of children with meningitis, pneumonia, otitis media, and UTIs fulfilled IMCI criteria for at least one classification that would have resulted in antibiotic initiation. However, many children with bacteremia, skin infections, and dysentery would not have received antibiotics. This evaluation was based on a comparison with an expert diagnosis that is subject to clinical subjectivity and the limited accuracy of available diagnostic tools. A study assessing the safety of using a slightly modified version of IMCI showed that the rate

---

**Table 8.4 Average Sensitivity and Specificity of Malarial Tests**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test type</th>
<th>Species detected</th>
<th>Sensitivity (95% CI)</th>
<th>Specificity (95% CI)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type 1</td>
<td>Plasmodium falciparum only</td>
<td>94.8% (93.1%–96.1%)</td>
<td>95.2% (93.2%–96.7%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 2</td>
<td>Plasmodium falciparum, Plasmodium vivax, Plasmodium malariae and Plasmodium ovale</td>
<td>96.0% (94.0%–97.3%)</td>
<td>95.3% (87.3%–98.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 3</td>
<td>Plasmodium falciparum, Plasmodium vivax, Plasmodium malariae and Plasmodium ovale</td>
<td>99.5% (71.0%–100%)</td>
<td>90.6% (80.5%–95.7%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sources: Baiden and others 2012; Abba and others 2011.

Note: CI = confidence interval; Pf HRP2 = histidine rich protein-2; pLDH = parasite lactate dehydrogenase.
of clinical failure at day seven was very low (2.7 percent), and lower than in the control group (8.0 percent) in which routine care was used; only 15 percent received an antibiotic compared with 84 percent in the control group (Shao and others 2015). A multicountry evaluation of IMCI effectiveness, cost, and impact was conducted in Bangladesh, Brazil, Peru, Tanzania, and Uganda (Bryce and others 2005). In Tanzania, the survey results demonstrate that children in IMCI districts received higher-quality care, including more thorough evaluations, a greater likelihood of being properly diagnosed and correctly treated, and better counseling and knowledge of caretakers of children in IMCI districts relative to comparison districts (Armstrong Schellenberg and others 2004). Several other studies also show that IMCI case management training resulted in improved quality of care, especially when there were minimum standards of training quality and sufficient coverage of trained health workers (Arifeen and others 2005; Gouws and others 2004; Pariyo and others 2005; Nguyen and others 2013). The multicountry evaluation also reveals that the IMCI approach provided many benefits in addition to improved quality of care, including better record keeping and strengthened supervision. However, four of the five countries encountered challenges in expanding the IMCI strategy at the national level (Bryce and others 2005).

Figure 8.1 Sample Fever Algorithm from 2014 IMCI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Does the child have fever?</th>
<th>(by history or feels hot or temperature 37.5°C or above)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fever:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>High or Low Malaria Risk</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Fever:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>High or Low Malaria Risk</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Classify FEVER</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>No Malaria Risk and No Travel to Malaria Risk Area</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Fever:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>High or Low Malaria Risk</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Classify FEVER</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>No Malaria Risk and No Travel to Malaria Risk Area</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Fever:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>High or Low Malaria Risk</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Classify FEVER</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>No Malaria Risk and No Travel to Malaria Risk Area</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fever:**
- **High or Low Malaria Risk**
- **Classify FEVER**
- **No Malaria Risk and No Travel to Malaria Risk Area**

**High or Low Malaria Risk**

**Classify FEVER**

**No Malaria Risk and No Travel to Malaria Risk Area**

**Fever:**
- **High or Low Malaria Risk**
- **Classify FEVER**
- **No Malaria Risk and No Travel to Malaria Risk Area**

the duration and level of preservice training did not appear to influence the quality of care (Huicho and others 2008). A cluster randomized controlled trial in Bangladesh demonstrates that IMCI implementation resulted in improved health worker skills, increased oral rehydration solution (ORS) utilization, and exclusive breastfeeding, and it reduced stunting prevalence in intervention areas relative to comparison areas (Arifeen and others 2009). IMCI implementation was also associated with a nonsignificant 13 percent reduction in mortality in children under age five years. Mortality impact is examined in two other studies. In the first, a cluster randomized controlled trial in India that used Integrated Management of Neonatal and Childhood Illness (IMNCI) and community workers to conduct postnatal home visits, the infant mortality rate was 15 percent lower (adjusted hazard ratio 0.85, 95 percent confidence interval 0.77–0.94), and the neonatal mortality rate after the first 24 hours was 14 percent lower (adjusted hazard ratio 0.86, 95 percent confidence interval 0.79–0.95) in intervention, relative to control clusters (Bhandari and others 2012). In the second, a retrospective pre/post analysis of IMCI implementation in the Arab Republic of Egypt found a nearly twofold reduction in under-five mortality (3.3 percent versus 6.3 percent) in one year (Rakha and others 2013). These three studies provide evidence to suggest that effective scale-up and implementation of IMCI can help reduce infant and under-five all-cause mortality.

In HIV-endemic countries such as South Africa, local adaptations of the IMCI algorithm have been created to identify and manage HIV-infected children using a set of common signs and symptoms that are predictive of HIV infection, for example, recurrent or persistent diarrhea, persistent fever, or history of tuberculosis (Horwood and others 2003). The presence of three signs or a maternal report of HIV infection prompts testing for HIV in children. An evaluation of the IMCI HIV guidelines in South Africa finds that the algorithm correctly classified 71 percent of 76 HIV-infected children as suspected symptomatic HIV; approximately 20 percent were identified as HIV-exposed (Horwood and others 2009). This approach missed only 9 percent of HIV-infected children. Unfortunately, the study also finds that this approach is not being used consistently in routine clinical practice.

Although the IMCI strategy has the potential to increase the quality of care in health facilities, absolute levels of performance often are low, and adherence to the guidelines has been unsatisfactory. An assessment of health worker practices in Benin in 2000 revealed multiple problems with local adaptation of the IMCI guidelines. Problems included the failure to treat children in accordance with the guideline (incorrect choice of drug, dosage, and duration); missed opportunities for vaccination; treatment with unnecessary and occasionally dangerous medications; prescription of a large number of drugs for some children; and failure to perform counseling tasks, including how to administer medications (Rowe and others 2001). In Uganda, even after IMCI training, only about 50 percent of the children classified as having malaria or pneumonia received complete and appropriate treatment (Pariyo and others 2005). New training strategies are necessary, especially for respiratory rate measurement and identification of danger signs.

In addition, the IMCI clinical algorithms have the advantage of being highly sensitive but the drawback of having inadequate specificity. A prospective hospital-based study in Mozambique finds substantial symptom overlap between malaria and severe pneumonia among hospitalized children (Bassat and others 2011). Some 24 percent of children were classified using IMCI as having both malaria and severe pneumonia; however, when using stricter criteria based on radiological confirmation of pneumonia and P. falciparum parasitemia, the authors find that fewer than 1 percent had both malaria and severe pneumonia. Similar to other studies, there was a significant association between underlying HIV infection and prevalence of severe pneumonia, duration of hospitalization, and CFRs (Lanata 2004).

For implementation of the IMCI guidelines, the WHO recommends an 11-day in-service training course for first-level (that is, primary care) health facilities, job aids, and a follow-up visit to the facility at four to six weeks to reinforce IMCI practices. As of 2009, 76 countries had scaled up IMCI beyond a few pilot districts; many countries have adapted the IMCI algorithm to their local contexts. Some countries have started to use an electronic version of IMCI called ICATT that allows easy and rapid country adaptation of the algorithm and computer-based self training (http://www.icatt-impact.org). Distance learning for IMCI has been developed as a strategy to increase IMCI training coverage (WHO 2014b). Other research into IMCI implementation highlights challenges related to care seeking, resources and supply chain, training, and supervision requirements to ensure implementation at large scale. Frequent staff rotation and attrition require that countries revise preservice curricula to include training on the WHO algorithms (WHO 2001, 2010b).

Management of Sick Young Infants: IMNCI and Beyond

Given the need to strengthen the capacity of health workers to identify young infants age 0–59 days with
possible serious bacterial infections, two multicountry studies were performed to provide evidence to strengthen the IMCI algorithm to include newborns and young infants. To obtain information on clinical signs of sepsis in young infants age 0–59 days, the WHO conducted a large study of the clinical features and etiologies of serious bacterial disease from 1990 to 1992 in the Philippines (Gatchalian and others 1999), The Gambia (Mulholland and others 1999), Ethiopia (Muhe and others 1999), and Papua New Guinea (Lehmann and others 1999). This information contributed to the development of the IMCI algorithms during the mid-1990s, which standardized the management of sick young infants at first-level health facilities (Gove 1997; Tulloch 1999; Weber and others 2003).

Neonates in the first week of life were still not included. Accordingly, the YICSSG designed a multicenter study to analyze recognition of young infants, including neonates younger than seven days, requiring referral to higher levels of the health system. The YICSSG found that 12 symptoms or signs showed statistical evidence of independent predictive value for severe illness requiring hospital admission in the first week of life. A decision rule requiring the presence of any of these 12 signs had high sensitivity (87 percent) and specificity (74 percent). However, a simplified algorithm that required only seven signs—history of difficulty feeding, history of convulsions, movement only when stimulated, respiratory rate ≥ 60 breaths per minute, temperature ≥ 37.5°C or < 35.5°C, and severe chest indrawing—had a similar sensitivity (85 percent) and specificity (75 percent). This seven-sign algorithm also performed well in infants age 7–59 days (sensitivity 74 percent, specificity 79 percent) (WHO Young Infants Study Group 1999; Weber and others 2003). This clinical algorithm was validated at the community level during routine household visits in rural Bangladesh (Darmstadt and others 2011). A simplified six-sign algorithm had a sensitivity of 81 percent and specificity of 96 percent for screening neonates requiring referral, and sensitivity of 58 percent and specificity of 94 percent for identifying newborns at risk of dying.

The WHO IMCI guidelines recommend that any young infant presenting with danger signs should be referred to an appropriate level facility and treated with injectable gentamicin and ampicillin. Although data are limited, multiple reviews cite widespread resistance to ampicillin and gentamicin among sepsis-causing common pathogens E. coli, S. aureus, and Klebsiella species (Thaver, Ali, and Zaidi 2009; Waters and others 2011). Similarly, data from the YICSSG, which represent community-acquired bacteremia in young infants, reveals the wide distribution of multi-drug-resistant gram-negative rods, and 11 percent of S. aureus isolates were methicillin resistant (Hamer and others 2015). Although broad-spectrum cephalosporins show better sensitivities to most pathogens, they are expensive and their use will increase drug pressure. Recommended antimicrobial therapies need to be regionally specific, and considerations to empirically cover for HSV-2 infections must be considered in the youngest infants. The Aetiology of Neonatal Infection in South Asia study will provide even more current data for LMICs that reflect current epidemiology and antimicrobial susceptibilities (WHO Young Infants Study Group 1999; YICSSG 2008).

A seminal study in India demonstrates a 16 percent reduction in neonatal sepsis case fatality and a 62 percent reduction in overall neonatal mortality by instituting a package of home-based newborn care services by trained community health workers (CHWs); the services included an assessment for sepsis and prereferral administration of injectable gentamicin if indicated (Bang and others 1999). A more detailed discussion of this study is provided in chapter 18 in this volume (Ashok, Nandi, and Laxminarayan 2016). In Zambia, a cluster randomized controlled trial assessed the impact of training birth attendants to perform a modified neonatal resuscitation protocol for newborns with respiratory distress and to recognize a set of cardinal symptoms and signs of possible neonatal infection. If any signs of possible serious bacterial infection were observed in the first four weeks of life, intervention-trained birth assistants were to administer a 500 milligram dose of oral amoxicillin and facilitate referral to the nearest rural health center. This combination of interventions resulted in a 45 percent reduction in neonatal mortality for all live births in intervention as compared with controls (Gill and others 2011).

Several studies from India, Nepal, and Pakistan evaluate a variety of community-based perinatal packages that deploy newborn home visitation; each trial has shown significant impact on neonatal mortality (Baqui and others 2008; Bhutta and others 2008; Kumar and others 2008). As a result of this growing body of evidence, the WHO and UNICEF released a joint statement on home visits in 2009 (WHO and UNICEF 2009b). Several countries have developed adaptations of IMNCI. The Indian IMNCI program, which integrates home visits for newborn care with improved treatment of illness, evaluated the effectiveness of this strategy in a cluster randomized controlled trial. This study demonstrated more optimal newborn care practices in intervention clusters and a significant reduction of neonatal mortality only among babies born at home receiving intervention (hazard ratio intervention/control 0.80 for home births [95 percent confidence interval 0.68–0.93]).
Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health

versus 1.06 for facility births [95 percent confidence interval 0.91–1.23]) (Bhandari and others 2012).

Integrated Community Case Management

In many resource-limited countries, access to health facilities for prompt, appropriate management of common childhood illnesses is limited and often complicated by shortages of essential medicines and insufficient human resources. Children in the lowest wealth quintile are less likely to receive early and appropriate treatment for malaria, pneumonia, and diarrhea (Young and Wolfheim 2012). To address this access gap and provide early access to treatment, many countries have been testing and scaling up community-based programs for the treatment of common childhood infectious diseases. iCCM provides an integrated algorithmic approach to identifying and treating ill children with limited access to health facilities. These algorithms alert CHWs to signs and symptoms of severe disease to indicate referral into the formal health system while treating minor illness in the community, serving as an extension of the formal health care system. This approach has several potential benefits, including improving the rational use of drugs by deploying diagnostics-guided, evidence-based pediatric treatment algorithms and improving early access to effective treatment, thereby decreasing the risk that a child’s illness will progress to severe disease. The WHO and UNICEF released a joint statement justifying the need for iCCM and making recommendations on its implementation in 2012 (WHO and UNICEF 2012).

The effectiveness and feasibility of community-based management of individual disease conditions have been demonstrated for pneumonia, diarrheal disease, and malaria (Mubi and others 2011; Mukanga, Tiono, and Anyorigiya 2012; Theodoratou 2010; Yeboah-Antwi and others 2010). Home-based management of diarrhea has been practiced for decades; the WHO’s Special Programme for Research and Training in Tropical Diseases and others have extensively tested approaches to community-level management of malaria (Ajayi and others 2008; Pagnoni 2009). Studies have been conducted to assess effectiveness of the full iCCM package for management of malaria, pneumonia, and diarrhea, which is often coupled with screening for acute malnutrition. This package generally consists of training either volunteer or paid cadres of community-based health workers to follow a simple algorithm (figure 8.2) to classify and treat childhood illnesses.

![Figure 8.2 Sample Integrated Community Case Management Algorithm](image)

**Figure 8.2 Sample Integrated Community Case Management Algorithm**

- **Danger signs**
  - Yes: Antimalarials and antibiotics → Refer immediately
  - No:
    - Persisting symptoms or signs of malnutrition → Refer for further assessment
    - No:
      - Fever
        - Malaria RDT
          - Positive: ACT → No antimicrobial
          - Negative: Unspecific fever → Antibiotics → No antimicrobial
      - Cough
        - Fast breathing → Pneumonia
          - Yes: Antibiotics → No antimicrobial
          - No: Cold
        - Dysesthy → Watery diarrhea
      - Diarrhea
        - Blood in stool → Dysesthy
          - Yes: ORS and zinc
          - No: ORS and zinc

Source: WHO 2009.

Note: ACT = artemisinin-based combination therapy; ORS = oral rehydration solution; RDT = rapid diagnostic test.
treat children under age five years who present with fever, cough, difficulty breathing, or diarrhea. Necessary equipment includes a timer for counting respiratory rates and a tape for measuring mid-upper arm circumference if screening for acute malnutrition is performed; supplies include malaria RDTs, weight- and age-appropriate dose packs of an ACT, dispersible amoxicillin tablets (or cotrimoxazole because supply of amoxicillin is a frequent challenge), zinc, and low osmolarity ORS.

**Quality and Safety of iCCM delivery**

Several studies show that CHWs can appropriately classify and treat malaria, pneumonia, and diarrhea in children. Studies in Cambodia, Sudan, and Zambia show that with minimal training and job aids, CHWs can perform and interpret RDTs (Elmardi and others 2009; Harvey and others 2008; Mayxay and others 2004). In contrast with some studies of health workers in first-level health centers that demonstrate a tendency to ignore malaria diagnostic test results and to overprescribe ACT, several other studies clearly highlight the ability of CHWs to correctly perform RDTs and appropriately not prescribe antimalarials for RDT-negative patients (Bisoffi and others 2009; Hamer and others 2007; Harvey and others 2008; Reyburn and others 2007; Yasuoka and others 2010). Exceptions have been noted: Sudanese community volunteers have prescribed ACT in 30 percent of subjects with fever but a negative RDT result (Elmardi and others 2009), indicating that the inappropriate prescription of ACT may be an issue in some settings at the community level; lack of or inappropriate CHW training and supervision is one of several possible reasons.

A study in Zambia that evaluated two models of integrated delivery of treatment for malaria and pneumonia demonstrates that CHWs correctly classified 1,017 children who presented with fever or fast or difficult breathing as having malaria and pneumonia 94 percent to 100 percent of the time. Appropriate treatment based on disease classification was correct in 94 percent to 100 percent of episodes (Hamer and others 2012). In Uganda, a study that compared CHWs trained in integrated malaria and pneumonia management to those only trained in malaria case management demonstrated that CHWs with high illness knowledge scores used correct doses of medications for malaria and pneumonia, and correctly classified 75 percent of children with pneumonia (Kalyango, Rutebemberwa, and Alfven 2012). However, the CHWs did not count respiratory rate accurately—only 49 percent measured respiratory rates within the bounds of the gold-standard criteria of five breaths per minute of the physician. This study and an earlier evaluation in Kenya (Kelly and others 2001) suggest problems with pneumonia evaluation, emphasizing the need for ongoing supervision, training, and quality measurement of CHWs. This issue is further discussed in a systematic review of pneumonia community case management (CCM), which suggests that evidence on the efficacy and effectiveness of this approach in Sub-Saharan Africa is still lacking (Druetz and others 2013).

Several studies conducted in Benin, Tanzania, Uganda, and Zambia demonstrate that febrile RDT-negative children can be managed safely without antimalarial therapy (D’Acremont and others 2010; Faucher and others 2010; Msellem and others 2009; Njama-Meya and others 2007; Yeboah-Antwi and others 2010). In the Zambian study, children were evaluated five to seven days after their visit to the CHW; treatment failure at this point occurred in 9.3 percent of children (N = 1,017) in the study arm that implemented an iCCM package of malaria RDTs, ACTs, and amoxicillin. Notably, only 0.4 percent of children were hospitalized and 0.2 percent died. These findings provide additional confirmation that the WHO’s guidelines for malaria treatment (WHO 2010a), which recommend treatment based on a positive diagnostic test for all patients, including children under age five years, can also be safely implemented at the community level in malaria-endemic areas of Sub-Saharan Africa.

All of the studies discussed focus on the management of children with nonsevere pneumonia at the community level. However, substantial evidence indicates that children with the former WHO-defined severe pneumonia (pneumonia with chest indrawing but no danger signs) can be managed with oral amoxicillin at the community level. In Pakistan, a five-day course of high-dose amoxicillin was shown to be equivalent to parenteral ampicillin for 48 hours, followed by a three-day course of oral amoxicillin for children with severe pneumonia (Hazir and others 2008). Subsequently, a multicountry observational study conducted in Bangladesh, Egypt, Ghana, and Vietnam demonstrated the safety and efficacy of home-based management of severe pneumonia with oral high-dose amoxicillin (Addo-Yobo and others 2011). An average of 9.2 percent of children met a rigorous definition of treatment failure at day 6 and 2.7 percent relapsed by day 14, but all children survived; only one adverse drug reaction (among 823 children) was documented. Two parallel community-based studies in rural Pakistan provide further evidence of the effectiveness and safety of the home-based management of chest indrawing pneumonia with oral amoxicillin by female health workers (Bari and others 2011; Soofi and others 2012).
Impact of iCCM

iCCM has several benefits, including early care seeking for illness; early access to appropriate treatment for children; reduced use of expensive antimalarial drugs when RDTs are used; reductions in health center attendance, which helps reduce the workload at primary health care centers; and probably decreased all-cause mortality for children under age five years.

Given the substantial workload at rural health centers, which are often understaffed, iCCM offers a potential opportunity to increase access to effective therapy at the community level (Guenther and others 2012) while decreasing the volume of health facility visits. In the Zambian study (Yeboah-Antwi and others 2010), cross-sectional household surveys on health care-seeking practices were performed before and immediately after the 12-month integrated malaria and pneumonia intervention period. A significant increase was observed in the proportion of mothers who sought care from CHWs between baseline and poststudy in both groups (empiric ACT for fever plus referral of children with pneumonia versus RDT-based ACT for malaria and amoxicillin for nonsevere pneumonia). Care seeking from CHWs increased for all types of illness, and use of health facilities and traditional healers decreased (Seidenberg and others 2012). This pattern was noted in both groups for children presenting with fever, cough, and diarrhea; however, there was a trend toward greater use of the CHWs that could provide amoxicillin for children with fast breathing or difficulty breathing relative to those CHWs who were trained to refer children with signs of pneumonia.

Limited data are available on the impact of iCCM on child mortality under age five years. Some earlier studies of the home management of malaria, based on maternal recall of a history of fever, found that home management of malaria is associated with a reduction in the development of severe malaria by more than 50 percent and all-cause mortality by 40 percent (Kidane and Morrow 2000; Sirima and others 2003). More recently, a study in Ghana that used a stepped-wedge cluster-randomized design evaluated the impact of adding amoxicillin to an antimalarial (artesunate-amodiaquine) for treating fever among children age 2–59 months on all-cause mortality. In clusters in which artesunate-amodiaquine alone was used for fever treatment, mortality decreased by 30 percent (rate ratio = 0.70, 95 percent confidence interval 0.53–0.92, P = 0.011) and in clusters that used both an ACT and amoxicillin, mortality was reduced by 44 percent (rate ratio = 0.56, 95 percent confidence interval 0.41–0.76, P = 0.011) when compared with control clusters. A 21 percent mortality reduction was observed with the addition of amoxicillin to the ACT; however, this difference was not statistically significant (rate ratio = 0.79, 95 percent confidence interval 0.56–1.12, P = 0.195). This study also showed reductions in anemia, severe anemia, and severe disease among children in both study arms (Chinbuah and others 2013). Although this trial suggests a mortality benefit of both an ACT alone and the combination of an ACT with an antibiotic, its design has several limitations, including the lack of use of malaria RDTs and the empiric use of antibiotics for all children with fever, regardless of the respiratory rate in the combined arm (Chinbuah and others 2012).

A limited number of studies have evaluated the cost-effectiveness of iCCM. An economic analysis of the study in Ghana that compared an ACT to ACT plus amoxicillin (Chinbuah and others 2012) finds that the cost per DALY averted was US$90.25 for artesunate-amodiaquine and US$114.21 for this ACT plus amoxicillin (Nonvignon and others 2012). The authors conclude that both approaches were cost-effective. However, the diagnosis of malaria did not involve the use of RDTs; all children in the ACT plus amoxicillin arm with fever were given antibiotics, an approach that carries a high risk of antimicrobial resistance and potential adverse events among children who do not require antibiotics. A cost-effectiveness analysis of malaria case management using RDTs and artemether-lumefantrine in Zambia reveals that home-based management was more cost-effective than facility-based management (US$4.22 per case at the home versus US$6.12 at the facility) (Chanda and others 2011). A cost analysis from Pakistan that focuses on household costs of illness finds that home management of pneumonia by women health workers was associated with a substantially lower cost to the household than for children who were referred for treatment (Sadriddin and others 2012).

CHALLENGES AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The Catalytic Initiative, an evaluation in six Sub-Saharan African countries—Ethiopia, Ghana, Malawi, Mali, Mozambique, and Niger—provides a useful summary of challenges and lessons learned during the scale-up of iCCM. Some of the major challenges to delivery of iCCM include the deployment, supervision, motivation, and retention of CHWs; maintenance of reliable supply chains; demand-side barriers to utilization; inadequate monitoring and evaluation systems; and a need for supportive government policies and engagement to achieve sustainable progress (UNICEF 2012).

In 2009–10, a survey of 68 countries in the Countdown to 2015 initiative was conducted to assess CCM of childhood illnesses (de Sousa and others 2012).
Most (81 percent) of the 59 countries that responded had policies for CCM of diarrhea and malaria (75 percent); only 54 percent had CCM policies for pneumonia. Only 17 (32 percent) of the 53 malaria-endemic countries providing responses had policies for all three of these conditions. According to the survey, CHWs administered the recommended treatments for diarrhea, malaria, or pneumonia in 34 percent (17 of 50), 100 percent (41 of 41), and 100 percent (34 of 34) of the countries implementing CCM of these conditions, respectively. Many programs identified similar implementation-related concerns, including problems with drug supplies; quality of care; and CHW incentives, training, and supervision. Implementation issues around supervision, quality control, supply chain, and remuneration of CHWs are important areas of research for iCCM because best practices will inform approaches to the scale-up of iCCM.

Economic studies confirm that international guidelines for treatment of fever in children are also cost-effective. Community use of rectal artesunate for children with severe malaria during their referral to higher-level care has been shown to be cost-effective. Similarly, RDTs for malaria are cost-effective if used appropriately (where \( P. \) \textit{falciparum} is dominant and ACTs are the appropriate therapy, and where care providers abide by test results in their prescribing behavior). Finally, IMCI was shown in one study to be cost-effective (Armstrong Schellenberg and others 2004); however, precisely because it is effective, it can increase costs to the health service as patients shift from using private clinics (needs Prinja and others 2013).

Future research needs for diagnosis and treatment approaches for the febrile child are plentiful. Box 8.1 highlights considerations for future research, policy, and programming.

**Box 8.1**

**Future Research Needs**

**Epidemiology**
- Ongoing surveillance of febrile illness etiology, with particular emphasis on high burden countries, such as the Democratic Republic of Congo, Ethiopia, India, and Nigeria; on regions at high risk of zoonotic illness; on regions in conflict; and on neonatal infections
- Role of HSV-2 and GBS in neonatal illness, as well as impact of HSV-2 and GBS prophylaxis on neonatal outcomes
- Patterns of antimicrobial resistance to direct empiric therapies for pediatric serious bacterial infections

**Implementation**
- Field evaluation of commercially available diagnostic point-of-care tools to determine feasibility, cost-effectiveness, and level of health system; various tools should be introduced
- Creation and evaluation of innovative solutions to reduce power needs or use of alternative energy sources (for example, solar power, battery operated) for oxygen concentrators, pulse oximeters, and other tools that require power
- Operational research to determine best practices for supply chain management, training, and supervision for IMCI and iCCM when scaled up
- Qualitative and quantitative research to better understand the role of the private sector in influencing care-seeking behaviors, diagnosis, and treatment

**Economics**
- Cost analysis of diagnostic tools versus empiric therapy for common pediatric illnesses in newborn period, and for pneumonia, diarrheal disease, and nonfocal fevers
- Cost comparisons of investments in preventive interventions (for example, vaccines, malnutrition treatment, exclusive breastfeeding) compared with diagnosis and treatment for common pediatric illnesses

*Note: GBS = Group B streptococcus; HSV-2 = herpes simplex virus-2; iCCM = integrated community case management; IMCI = Integrated Management of Childhood Illness.*
CONCLUSIONS

Ample evidence suggests a shift in the etiology of pediatric febrile illnesses, especially in countries with declining rates of malaria transmission. More etiology studies are needed in LMICs with high disease burdens (for example, Democratic Republic of Congo, Ethiopia, India, Nigeria, Pakistan), particularly for young infants. Ongoing surveillance is required to track epidemiological shifts given that drug pressure and policies influence which diseases are prominent in each region. The research evidence is concentrated in a few regions of the world; thus, advocacy for research in high burden countries, regions at high risk of zoonotic illness, regions in conflict, and neonatal infections is paramount to shaping global, national, and region-specific policy. Many diagnostic tools are commercially available or are in the development pipeline, tools that could aid in narrowing differential diagnoses and that could help providers determine whether antimicrobials are indicated. However, these tools need to be evaluated in the field to assess the cost-effectiveness and utility in the clinical context.

Finally, although both WHO-sponsored IMCI and iCCM offer promising health facility and community platforms for integrated service delivery, challenges including adherence to guidelines, supply chain, supervision, and scale up while maintaining quality are barriers to successful implementation. Adaptation of these models to reflect local epidemiology and available resources is paramount. In areas without CHWs or regions with prominent informal private sectors, work needs to be done to determine how to align approaches to children with fever to ensure appropriate treatment and decrease antibiotic overuse. The role of the private informal sector has been underestimated, and careful thought is needed about how to motivate and partner with private sector drug providers.

Because febrile illnesses are still the predominant disease presentation of most pediatric illnesses, high-quality impact and process research that can inform which models work best in which contexts is needed. This research, along with expanded fever etiology surveillance and innovative technologies for low-resource diagnostics and treatment delivery, is critical for further reductions in child mortality and morbidity. A unified call for an organized agenda and framework that unites the pneumonia, malaria, measles, other febrile illnesses, and neonatal illness agendas would benefit the global child survival agenda. MDG 4 has motivated numerous national-level planning efforts and now there is substantial country-specific programming. A forum to discuss evidence for best practices would further benefit this unmet need.

ANNEXES

The annexes to this chapter are as follows. They are available at http://www.dcp-3.org/RMNCH.

- Annex 8A. Common Etiologies of Childhood Pneumonia in Low- and Middle-Income Countries
- Annex 8B. Diagnostic Tools Available and Under Development for ARI or Other Serious Bacterial Illnesses

NOTE

For consistency and ease of comparison, DCP3 is using the World Health Organization’s Global Health Estimates (GHE) for data on diseases burden, except in cases where a relevant data point is not available from GHE. In those instances, an alternative data source is noted.

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:
  a) lower-middle-income = US$1,046–US$4,125
  b) upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126–US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

REFERENCES


Sooﬁ, S., S. Ahmed, M. P. Fox, W. B. MacLeod, D. M. Thea, and others. 2012. “Effectiveness of Community Case Management of Severe Pneumonia with Oral Amoxicillin in Children Aged 2–59 Months in Matiari District, Rural...


INTRODUCTION

The annual number of deaths from diarrheal diseases among the 0–4 year age group in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs) has dropped by 89 percent, from 4.6 million in 1980 to 526,000 in 2015 (Liu, Hill and others 2016). This striking improvement occurred without vaccines against the major pathogens, except for rotavirus, which is now being scaled-up in LMICs. The incidence of diarrhea has not significantly diminished, especially in young infants (Fischer Walker and others 2012). Therefore, success in reducing mortality appears to be driven largely by improved management rather than prevention (box 9.1). Each day, 4.7 million episodes of diarrheal disease occur, including 100,000 cases of severe diarrhea, along with nearly 1,600 deaths, approximately 9 percent of the mortality in children under age five years (chapter 4 in this volume, Liu, Oza, and others 2016).

Increasing awareness of the adverse effects of nonfatal episodes of diarrhea on infant and childhood growth and development, particularly the role of repeated illness and the potential impact of frequent subclinical infections with the same pathogens, presents a new challenge. Interventions will depend on enhanced understanding of causal pathways, pathogenesis, and sequelae of these infections, with or without symptomatic diarrhea.

Diarrheal diseases are good indicators of the stage of development of communities in LMICs because of the impact of proximal and distal determinants of diarrheal morbidity and mortality, including the availability of safe drinking water; sanitation; level of education, particularly of mothers; income; food security; nutrition; and access to health care, both preventive and therapeutic. Continued progress depends on recognition that intersectoral interventions are integral to required measures to reduce or eliminate diarrheal diseases as a public health concern.

This chapter explores the still-limited evidence on subclinical infections due to known microbial causes of diarrhea, and impacts on intestinal physiology, nutrient absorption, and nutritional status as plausible mechanisms underlying growth stunting and developmental delays. The potential interventions for clinical and subclinical intestinal infections are not necessarily identical, although they undoubtedly overlap. Accordingly, we consider epidemiology, transmission, and mechanisms of disease, as well as social and cultural factors instrumental in determining outcomes. Nutritional needs of infants and young children, breastfeeding practices, use of complementary foods, and management of nutritional rehabilitation of acute malnutrition are covered in greater depth in Das and others (2016, chapter 12 of this volume).

DIARRHEAL DISEASES

Definitions and Classification

Diarrheal diseases are most prevalent in and cause greater morbidity and mortality in children younger than age five years in low-income countries (LICs). The term covers a
multitude of infectious causes, ranging from viruses and bacteria to protozoa and occasionally worms, each with distinctive effects. There are three discernable epidemiological and clinical presentations with vastly different consequences for the individuals affected:

- Acute dehydrating watery diarrhea
- Acute inflammatory (bloody) diarrhea and dysentery
- Persistent diarrhea lasting 14 days or more.

Burden of Infection
Children younger than age five years in LMICs in South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa experience an average of 2.7 (uncertainty range: 2.1–3.2) episodes of diarrhea per year (Fischer Walker and others 2012). Most are mild and self-limited, lasting an average of 4.3 days. From 0.5 percent to 2 percent are severe, and last an average of 8.4 days (Lamberti, Fischer Walker, and Black 2012). Incidence rates vary but are higher in children in LICs and lower-middle-income countries, and highest in Sub-Saharan Africa (3.3 episodes per child per year) (Fischer Walker and others 2013) (figure 9.1).

Incidence
Despite targeted investments, estimated global diarrhea incidence rates have not changed significantly since 1980 (Bern and others 1992; Fischer Walker and others 2013; Kosek, Bern, and Guerrant 2003; Snyder and Merson 1982). Incidence consistently varies by age, peaking between 6 and 11 months, as immunity transferred from the mother in utero and via breastfeeding wanes; potentially contaminated complementary foods are introduced; and infant mobility increases, allowing for greater contact with sources of pathogens (Fischer Walker and others 2012). The consequences are also determined by disease severity, although few studies separately analyze severe episodes or identify bloody diarrhea or dysentery or episodes that become persistent. One systematic review of the limited data available suggests that 5 percent to 15 percent of watery diarrhea cases progress to persistent diarrhea (Lamberti, Fischer Walker, and Black 2012). More than 50 percent of severe episodes occur in Sub-Saharan Africa and South-East Asia (figure 9.2).

Mortality
The 2015 estimated number of deaths due to diarrhea—526,000 under age five years—represents an 89 percent decline from 1980 and a striking 58 percent reduction from 2000 to 2015 (Liu, Oza, and others 2016, chapter 4 in this volume), even though the total population in this age group increased by approximately 11 percent (figure 9.3). Because 72 percent of diarrhea deaths occur in the first two years of life, targeting this age group will yield the greatest future impact on mortality (Fischer Walker and others 2013). A thorough discussion of the cause-of-death structure and mortality decline is presented in Liu, Hill, and others (2016, chapter 4 in this volume); Sub-Saharan Africa and South Asia account for 90 percent of the total.

Etiologies
Although many agents cause diarrheal disease, a few account for a major portion of the burden. In one study, almost 40 percent of cause-specific attributable

Box 9.1

**Major Interventions in Diarrheal Disease**

- Early use of oral rehydration solutions
- Appropriate use of antibiotics for bloody diarrhea and dysentery
- Continued breastfeeding
- Nutritional interventions for persistent diarrhea
- Rapid restoration of nutritional status in all diarrhea patients

Source: Fischer Walker and others 2013.
Diarrheal Diseases

Diarrhea mortality was due to two organisms: rotavirus (27.8 percent) and enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli* (11.1 percent) (Lanata and others 2013). Another large, multisite, clinic-based prospective case-control study of children under age five years with moderate to severe illness identified four pathogens—rotavirus, *Cryptosporidium*, enterotoxigenic *E. coli*, and *Shigella*—responsible for most attributable episodes of moderate to severe diarrhea (Kotloff and others 2013).

Rotavirus was the leading cause during the first year of life, followed by *Cryptosporidium*. Rotavirus remained first in the age 12–23 month cohort, followed by *Shigella*; among children ages 24–59 months, that ranking reversed. The odds of dying for children with moderate to severe diarrhea were 8.5 times higher (95 percent confidence interval 5.8–12.5, *p* < 0.0001) than for control subjects, with 33 percent of deaths occurring 21 days to 90 days following enrollment in the study. Most deaths were in infants (56 percent) and toddlers (32 percent); 55 percent of the deaths occurred at home or outside a medical facility. Certain pathogens, such as rotavirus, *Shigella*, *Vibrio cholerae*, and adenovirus serotypes 40/41, were more commonly isolated in children with moderate to severe illness. Almost three-quarters (72 percent) of controls without diarrhea also harbored one or more putative pathogens, and 31 percent had two or more, reflecting the fecally contaminated environment in which they live (Kotloff and others 2013). Future studies that include diagnostic capacity for noroviruses and other emerging pathogens may change these rankings.

Transmission and Epidemiology

Understanding transmission routes and epidemiology is critical for effective prevention and mitigation. Although transmission is fundamentally the same for all agents (fecal-oral transmission), there are diverse pathways and routes involved, including direct person-to-person transmission mediated through feces-contaminated fingers or inanimate objects (fomites); and indirect transmission via contaminated food or water in or outside the home, including agricultural fields or seafood sources irrigated or contaminated with pathogen-laden sewage. Microbial characteristics determine the number of organisms required to cause illness (the inoculum size); small inoculum pathogens are readily transmitted directly from person to person, whereas high inoculum pathogens first need to multiply in food or water. Host characteristics, such as immunity, often interplay with microbial characteristics. Pathogens also must survive diverse nonspecific host defenses, such as stomach acid. Some pathogens, for example, *Shigella*, are inherently acid resistant, so small inocula survive into the duodenum; others, like *V. cholerae*, are acid sensitive, and large inocula are essential to survive passage through the stomach.

Reduced gastric acidity significantly reduces the required inoculum size for acid-sensitive pathogens, for example, in individuals with peptic ulcer disease treated...
by gastric surgery or drugs to reduce acid secretion. Infants, including preterm, produce acid, but the amounts and response to stimuli are diminished compared with older children, potentially increasing their susceptibility. Malnutrition (Gilman and others 1988) and Helicobacter pylori infection of the stomach (Windle, Kelleher, and Crabtree 2007) also impair gastric acid production in young children. Sustained early infection with H. pylori in Gambian infants under age one year was associated with subsequent growth faltering, even though they had access to good primary health care, treatment of acute childhood illness, and nutritional supplements (Thomas and others 2004).

Other factors include lack of refrigeration for food, or flies that can transfer pathogens from feces in the environment to unprotected food or water in households (Farag and others 2013; Lindsay and others 2012). A risk factor study for Shigella infection in Thailand identified poor breastfeeding practices; poor water supply; unsafe sanitation; lack of fly control; and inadequate personal hygiene, in particular handwashing, as major targets for interventions (Chompook and others 2006). Multiple routes of transmission exist; hence any single intervention may have limited impact.

Natural History
Exposure to pathogens does not necessarily lead to infection, and infection does not necessarily result in clinical illness. Several factors explain the differences:

- The inoculum size and the biology of the pathogen, in particular, its virulence attributes
- The susceptibility of the host, including previous exposure and preexisting immunity, including passively acquired immunity in utero or from breast milk consumption
- The health and nutritional status of the individual at the time of exposure.

As a result, natural history following infection can vary from no symptoms, to mild-moderate self-limited illness, to severe life-threatening disease. Individuals who are healthier and better nourished at exposure are less likely to develop severe illness after a given inoculum of a specific pathogen. Early and appropriate management of clinical manifestations improves outcomes and can be effectively promoted at the community level.

Watery Diarrhea
Watery diarrhea is classified according to stool volume: mild when less than 5 percent of body weight, moderate between 5 percent and 10 percent, and severe and potentially life-threatening when in excess of 10 percent. With increasing fluid losses, intravascular volume diminishes and blood pressure drops. Without replacement of fluids (rehydration), hypotension can progress to circulatory failure, dysfunction of critical organs, and death. Early initiation of rehydration, for example, using oral rehydration solutions (ORS), can mitigate or prevent progression to more severe dehydration. Such interventions are not only life saving; they can also reduce duration of illness and extent of nutrient losses.

Inflammatory Diarrhea and Dysentery
Some pathogens cause inflammation of the bowel wall, with leukocyte (white blood cell) infiltration and damage resulting in mucosal ulcers; bleeding; leukocyte exudates; production of peptide cytokines that mediate dramatic, often prolonged, changes in appetite and metabolism; and direct nutrient losses. Bacterial pathogens causing inflammatory diarrhea and dysentery (a clinical syndrome of frequent small-volume bloody mucoid stools, abdominal cramps, and tenesmus [the urgency to pass stool]) generally require antibiotics to treat the infection, resolve inflammation, allow the mucosa to heal, and reverse nutritional deterioration. Early effective antibiotic treatment shortens duration of these illnesses, limits acute complications, and reduces longer-term impacts.

Persistent Diarrhea
Diarrhea episodes lasting from 7 days to 13 days, termed prolonged, impair growth and increase the risk of progression to persistent diarrhea (Moore and others 2010). Moore and others (2010) find that prolonged diarrhea accounted for only 11.7 percent of episodes but 25.2 percent of all days of diarrhea; persistent diarrhea accounted for only 4.7 percent of episodes but 24.5 percent of days with diarrhea. Progression from acute to prolonged diarrhea increased the overall risk of persistent diarrhea from 4.8 percent to 29.0 percent (relative risk 6.09, 95 percent confidence interval 4.96–7.45). Once diarrhea is persistent, mortality rates increase sharply (Grimwood and Forbes 2009), in some settings accounting for as much as 50 percent of overall diarrhea mortality. Continuing reductions in acute diarrhea deaths has increased attention to mortality associated with persistent diarrhea, which is relatively heightened as a consequence.

A few pathogens have been particularly associated with persistence or are preferentially identified when an episode becomes persistent, including a subgroup of diarrhea-causing E. coli designated enteroaggregative, Cryptosporidium parvum, S. flexneri, S. dysenteriae type 1, and Giardia intestinalis (lambia). Serial exposure to these
or other pathogens may also be involved. As the duration of illness extends, malnutrition becomes increasingly prominent because of ongoing mucosal injury, anorexia, malabsorption, and nutrient losses (Newman and others 2000). *Shigella* infection, characterized by intense tissue catabolism and nutrient losses, almost doubles the risk of persistent diarrhea (Ahmed and others 2001). As the frequency of *Shigella* infection dropped from 1991 to 2010 in Bangladesh, the frequency of persistent diarrhea diminished as well (Das and others 2012). Mucosal injury also explains why the manifestations of persistent diarrhea are primarily those of malabsorption and malnutrition, and why careful dietary and nutritional management is needed until mucosal damage is reversed and new, normally functioning epithelial cells are regenerated.

**NEW FRONTIERS: SUBCLINICAL INFECTIONS AND ENVIRONMENTAL ENTERIC DYSFUNCTION**

**Subclinical Infections**

Mounting and diverse evidence suggests that subclinical infections with diarrhea pathogens can cause physiological and structural alterations of the gut with adverse consequences on child nutrition and growth. For example, a handwashing intervention not only reduced the number of diarrhea episodes by 31 percent (4.3 versus 3.0 episodes, \( p < 0.05 \)) and days of diarrhea by 41 percent (9.67 versus 16.33, \( p = 0.023 \)) (Langford, Lunn, and Panter-Brick 2011) but also showed that, independent of clinical diarrhea, infants with the highest values of a biomarker of mucosal damage (lactase-to-creatinine ratio) indicative of abnormal mucosal permeability had significantly lower height-for-age \( z \)-scores (\( p = 0.01 \)), weight-for-age \( z \)-scores (\( p < 0.001 \)), and weight-for-height \( z \)-scores (\( p = 0.034 \)) (Langford, Lunn, and Panter-Brick 2011). This finding suggests that subclinical infections may reduce nutrient absorption and impair growth by many of the same mechanisms present during clinical episodes. Although the malabsorption may be limited, chronicity may be sufficient to produce overt malnutrition over time, especially when dietary nutrient intake is marginal.

Subclinical infections with intestinal pathogens have been shown to underlie growth faltering (Guerrant and others 1999). *Giardia intestinalis*, which causes diarrhea associated with growth retardation in infants (Newman and others 2001), is often identified in the stools of asymptomatic children in endemic areas, and a correlation between asymptomatic *Giardia* infection and growth faltering has been reported (Prado and others 2005). Asymptomatic first *Cryptosporidium* infections in Peruvian infants are also associated with slower weight gain compared with uninfected infants, albeit to a lesser extent than infants with symptomatic infections (Checkley and others 1997). However, because asymptomatic infections were twice as common as diarrhea, their ultimate effects might exceed those of clinical diarrhea. Moreover, infants infected with *Cryptosporidium* during the first six months of life remained stunted at age one year, despite some interval catch-up growth (Bushen and others 2007; Checkley and others 1998). Early colonization with *H. pylori* has also been identified as a precursor of growth faltering in children under age five years in The Gambia (Thomas and others 2004).

**Environmental Enteric Dysfunction**

Intestinal biopsy studies of the upper small intestine from asymptomatic adults in tropical countries reported 30 years to 40 years ago documented structural differences compared with healthy adults from temperate countries, including shorter blunted villi, which reduced the surface area covered by epithelial cells, and increased inflammatory cells, accompanied by diminished ability to absorb test sugars, fat, or vitamin B12 (Baker 1976). Limited biopsies from infants and young children revealed normal, slender finger-like villi at birth, but jejunum of older infants and children resembled the adult gut, suggesting these changes were acquired after birth (Baker 1976). Similar changes occurred over one to two years in healthy young adult expatriates living in Bangladesh (Lindenbaum, Kent, and Sprinz 1966) and Thailand (Keusch, Plaut, and Troncale 1972), with few or no symptoms other than soft stools and mild weight loss. This constellation of findings was called tropical or subclinical enteropathy/jejunitis/malabsorption, and normalized after the subjects returned home (Lindenbaum, Gerson, and Kent 1971). The same resolution was observed in healthy South Asians living in the United States or the United Kingdom the longer they resided outside their home countries (Gerson and others 1971; Wood, Gearty, and Cooper 1991). However, the significance of enteropathy remained unclear, and interest waned because no relationship to pathogenesis of tropical sprue, a real disease, was apparent.

In retrospect, the extent of the weight loss associated with enteropathy in adults was dismissed too quickly; the same decrement occurring in young infants would raise concerns about incipient malnutrition. Recently, investigators in Sub-Saharan Africa, using newer assessments of intestinal permeability, identified alterations in young infants associated with altered gut histology and poor growth in early childhood (Campbell, Lunn, and Elia 2002; Campbell and others 2004). Inflammatory
cells present in the intestinal mucosa were identified as immunoreactive T cells (Veitch and others 1991), linked to strong pro-inflammatory local cytokine responses (Campbell and others 2003). These findings have rekindled interest in their physiological significance, analogous to inflammatory bowel disease. Although the mechanisms have remained uncertain, a nexus of microbial exposure, mucosal pathology, increased permeability and malabsorption, immune activation leading to poor response to mucosal vaccines, and growth stunting has been postulated (Prendergast and Kelly 2012). Inadequacy of dietary intake, especially when diet quality is also marginal, would likely exacerbate the impact of any level of malabsorption.

In parallel, growth stunting, a marker of chronic undernutrition that is common among infants and children living in poverty in LMICs, is associated with increased childhood morbidity and mortality and poor longer-term functional outcomes, including cognitive development; reduced years of schooling; and diminished productivity in adulthood, measured by income attained and other economic productivity markers (Dewey and Begum 2011). If changes in intestinal structure and function develop in young infants in impoverished communities early in life, presumably due to environmental exposure to still-unknown inciting factors, the consequence may be initial malabsorption leading to early malnutrition, growth faltering, and increased susceptibility to diarrheal disease (Keusch and others 2013). This has been termed environmental enteric dysfunction (EED) to stress the importance of the functional alterations.

Although systematic serial observations of intestinal structure in these young infants remains limited, a number of surrogate biomarkers of gut inflammation or immune activation have been identified (Kosek and others 2013). A composite activity score of three stool biomarkers of intestinal inflammation (neopterin, alpha1-antitrypsin, and myeloperoxidase) during periods without diarrhea is inversely correlated with linear growth. Children with the highest score grew 1.08 centimeters less than children with the lowest score during the subsequent six months, even controlling for the incidence of diarrheal disease. Similarly, fecal levels of REG1B protein, which plays a role in cell differentiation and proliferation in the intestinal tract and is reported to be increased in other gut inflammatory conditions, was predictive of linear growth in three-month-old birth cohorts in Bangladesh and Peru, independent of their length-for-age z-score at the time the sample was taken (Peterson and others 2013). If confirmed, such assessments of intestinal health may become important biomarkers of EED and a predictor of growth (box 9.2).

If EED leads to malnutrition, impaired immune function, and increased susceptibility to and severity of subsequent diarrheal episodes in early infancy, it may be a major force for stunting, particularly when recurrent episodes restrict the capacity for catch-up growth (Salomon, Mata, and Gordon 1968). The effects of diarrheal diseases can be both short term and long term. In the short term, patients experience adverse systemic impacts on appetite, metabolism, and nutrition due to the infection. In the longer term, mucosal changes can alter digestion, absorption, and assimilation of nutrients from food. In bloody diarrhea and dysentery, structural mucosal damage leads to protein-losing enteropathy as blood proteins leak into the gut lumen (Bennish, Salam, and Wahed 1993). These effects can continue for weeks after shigellosis (Alam and others 1994; Raqib and others 1995), resulting

## Box 9.2

### Biomarkers to Assess Environmental Enteric Dysfunction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Potential biomarkers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intestinal absorption and mucosal permeability</td>
<td>D-Xylose, mannitol, or rhamnose absorption; lactulose paracellular uptake; α1-antitrypsin leakage into gut lumen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterocyte mass and function border</td>
<td>Plasma citrulline, conversion of alanyl-glutamine to citrulline, or both; lactose tolerance test (as a marker of microvillus damage)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflammation</td>
<td>Plasma cytokines, stool calprotectin, myeloperoxidase, or lactoferrin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microbial translocation and immune activation</td>
<td>Stool neopterin; plasma lipopolysaccharide (LPS) core antibody, LPS binding protein, or both; circulating soluble CD14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
in progressive malnutrition rather than convalescence and repair. As a consequence, mortality over the three months following successful discharge from an expert treatment center in Bangladesh almost doubled (2.8 percent versus 4.9 percent) in children with documented shigellosis compared with watery diarrhea without evidence of *Shigella* (Bennish and Wojtyniak 1991).

The early effects of EED can lead to repeated infection because of similar risk factors, including increased exposure to enteric pathogens, limited and poor quality water, lack of sanitary facilities, poor household hygiene, and poor diets. Understanding the pathogenesis of EED is a prerequisite to the selection of optimal interventions.

**INTERVENTIONS FOR DIARRHEAL DISEASES**

Interventions for diarrheal diseases can be divided into therapeutic and preventive (Box 9.3). Some interventions, such as nutritional support and zinc supplementation, can be beneficial for both purposes. Interventions can also be classified by scale: individuals, households, or communities. Some depend on infrastructure; others are behavioral, determined by understanding and compliance at the level of the household, community, or health care system. Although most interventions are not new, innovations to make them more accessible or effective can have adverse unintended consequences, such as increased and inappropriate use of antibiotics.

**Therapeutic Interventions**

Treatment with therapeutic interventions focuses on reversing dehydration, providing antibiotics for inflammatory bacterial diarrhea and dysentery, and special nutritional interventions to overcome malabsorption associated with persistent diarrhea, although general dietary interventions to mitigate nutritional deterioration during and after diarrhea are relevant to all diarrheal diseases. Two analyses of a package of interventions individually shown to have an impact on mortality (ORS; zinc; antibiotics for dysentery; rotavirus vaccination; vitamin A supplementation; improved access to safe water, sanitation, and hygiene; and breastfeeding) estimate a reduction in mortality of 54 percent to 78 percent if implemented to a feasible level, and by 92 percent to 95 percent if universally applied (Bhutta and others 2013; Fischer Walker and others 2011).

Other strategies, including pre- and probiotics to counter adverse changes in intestinal microecology, or fecal transplants to reconstitute a healthy microbiota after illness or antibiotic treatment, are not discussed further because available efficacy data are limited, often contradictory, of poor reliability, or difficult to interpret. Similarly, the use of drugs to restore physiological functions of the intestine is not considered because of limited reliable data in target human populations.

**Oral Rehydration Solutions**

ORS may prevent as many as 93 percent of diarrheal deaths (Munos, Fischer Walker, and Black 2010). The therapy works because the co-absorption of glucose and sodium is preserved during watery diarrheas; hence, ORS containing optimal concentrations of glucose and salt results in net uptake of sodium and chloride, effectively expanding the intravascular compartment regardless of age, and significantly reduces the need for intravenous fluids for all but the most severely dehydrated patients or those with intractable vomiting. New formulations with lower concentrations of glucose and sodium reduce the likelihood of hypernatremia during treatment of noncholera dehydration, reduce total stool output and vomiting, and reduce the need for supplementary intravenous fluids (Hahn, Kim, and Garner 2002); the World Health Organization (WHO) now recommends such formulations (WHO and UNICEF 2004).

Further modifications have been proposed, for example, rice-based formulations or the addition of certain amino acids (glycine, alanine, or glutamine) to further increase sodium absorption and hasten intestinal repair (Atia and Buchman 2009), or supplementation with zinc to improve outcomes (Awasthi and IC-ZED Group 2006;
Lazzerini and Ronfani 2013). However, the primary goal of ORS remains enhancing salt and water absorption. Although simple home-prepared ORS may be sufficient in mild diarrhea, the WHO formulation is preferred for more severely dehydrated patients.

Cholera and cholera-like enterotoxigenic *E. coli* infections raise additional issues because of prodigious volume losses; vomiting; and comorbidities, such as pneumonia, that affect outcomes. When intravenous rehydration is required because of shock, switching to maintenance ORS when clinical status improves is effective. Interest in antiemetic drugs, for example, ondansetron, is limited because safety and efficacy data in poorly nourished children under age five years are not available, and because of the added cost (Ciccarelli, Stolfi, and Caramia 2013).

Unfortunately, use of ORS for clinic- and home-based treatment has stagnated in most countries reaching, on average, 30 percent to 38 percent of the children who should receive it (Santosham and others 2010; WHO and UNICEF 2009). This absence of use is due in part to a lack of parental understanding of the benefit of ORS, because stool volumes may remain high even as hydration improves. Parental expectations of treatment are also influenced by previous experience. For example, Brazilian physicians recommend intravenous fluids for most children with moderate dehydration, which sends the wrong message to caregivers about professionals’ trust in the efficacy of ORS (Costa and Silva 2011). Community-based initiatives, such as home visits by community health workers, and community-based delivery mechanisms have increased the use of ORS by an average of 160 percent, with an 80 percent increase in the use of zinc-ORS, as well as a 75 percent reduction in antibiotic use (Das, Lassi, and others 2013). Limited information precludes rigorous assessment of the impact of community case management on mortality, but trends suggest a decrease of 63 percent among children ages 0–4 years (95 percent confidence interval 7–85 percent) and 92 percent (95 percent confidence interval 13–100 percent) among children age 0–1 year.

**Antibiotics**

The pervasive, indiscriminate overuse of antibiotics is dangerous because it promotes emergence of drug resistance. Overuse is fostered by multiple causes: caregiver expectations; lack of knowledge; prescriber behavior; lack of etiology-specific point-of-care diagnostics; failure of regulation and its enforcement to control quality of and access to medicines; and availability without prescription in pharmacies, shops, and markets even when prescriptions are required (Adriaenssens and others 2011). Improved practitioner and parent knowledge and attitudes reduce inappropriate use (Clavenna and Bonati 2011).

Despite repeated pleas for more evidence-based use of antibiotics, better education of practitioners and the public, and systematic surveillance of antibiotic use and resistance, more than 50 percent of all medicines are still inappropriately prescribed, dispensed, or sold, and 50 percent of patients use them incorrectly (WHO 2010). Examples abound. Government health centers in The Gambia ordered antibiotics for 45 percent of young children with simple diarrhea without dehydration (Risk and others 2013). In the Democratic Republic of Congo, more practitioners relied on pharmaceutical companies for prescribing recommendations (73.9 percent) than on professional guidelines (66.3 percent) or university training (63.6 percent), and more practitioners used the Internet for guidance (45.7 percent) than used WHO publications (26.6 percent) (Thriemer and others 2013). Although 85 percent of caregivers in a peri-urban slum in Lima, Peru, expressed confidence in decisions made by physicians, even withholding antibiotics when advised, 65 percent of caregivers still believed antibiotics were necessary for acute diarrhea, and nearly 25 percent reporting leftover antibiotics at home said they would use them for a future illness (Ecker and others 2013).

In Nigeria, 47 percent of young children with diarrhea were necessary for acute diarrhea, and nearly 25 percent reporting leftover antibiotics at home said they would use them for a future illness (Ecker and others 2013). Caregivers in India and Kenya ranked antibiotics higher than ORS for diarrhea by more than two to one, partially explaining the low use of ORS and the high use of antibiotics (Zwisler, Simpson, and Moodley 2013).

**Inappropriate use of antibiotics.** Experts agree that antibiotics are usually unnecessary for acute watery diarrhea; most episodes are mild and self-limited, and many are due to viruses, especially among young children (Kotloff and others 2013). It is time to abandon routine use of antibiotics to shorten duration of illness in moderate to severe dehydration. Although *V. cholerae* strains (Ghosh and Ramamurthy 2011) and is potentially transferable to other enteric pathogens as well (Kruse and others 1995). The emergence of resistance in *V. cholerae* to quinolone (Kim and others 2010), the most useful antibiotic for grossly bloody diarrhea and dysentery, further raises the level of concern about routine inclusion of antibiotics for cholera. Routine use of quinolone may be inappropriate in certain circumstances. These include treatment of the most severely purging
cases (Harris and others 2012), during epidemics that overwhelm clinical capacity (Ernst and others 2011), or when elimination of viable *V. cholerae* in stool would diminish the potential for spread within or between countries (MacPherson and others 2009; Tatem, Rogers, and Hay 2006).

**Appropriate use of antibiotics.** Morbidity and mortality due to inflammatory diarrheas, most often caused by *Shigella* invading the intestinal mucosa, are not caused by dehydration but rather by tissue damage. Large numbers of leukocytes are recruited to the invasion site, leading to epithelial cell death and ulceration, with release of cytokine mediators of metabolism that result in nutritional deterioration. These metabolic responses persist for weeks after acute infection, and drive continuing malnutrition (Raqib and others 1995), a major reason why post-shigellosis mortality remains high for months after bloody diarrhea or dysentery ceases. The clinical hallmarks of inflammatory diarrhea for which antibiotics are indicated include grossly bloody stools or dysentery, usually with accompanying fever. Most episodes are bacterial in etiology, and *Shigella* or sometimes-related enteroinvasive *E. coli* serotypes are most common.

Without point-of-care diagnostics to identify specific causes, the pragmatic assumption is that bloody diarrhea is bacterial in origin and antibiotics appropriate for shigellosis should be initiated. This regimen will likely be adequate for other possible bacterial etiologies. However, resistance of *Shigella* species to some, or multiple, antibiotics is increasing (Bhattacharya and others 2011; Mota and others 2010), but the pattern is locale specific and dynamic (Das, Ahmed, and others 2013). Ongoing drug sensitivity surveillance is essential to guide therapeutic decisions (O’Ryan, Prado, and Pickering 2005). Because such surveillance is not yet feasible in most LMICs, empiric treatment decisions remain the norm. Ciprofloxacin, azithromycin, or pivmecillinam, where available, are reasonable initial choices, reserving ceftriaxone for treatment failures, defined as lack of clinical improvement within 48 hours to 72 hours (Erdman, Buckner, and Hindler 2008; Traa and others 2010).

ORS may be useful but insufficient, because dehydration is minor and, unlike inflammation, does not drive severity or mortality. Mild shigellosis, typically associated with *S. sonnei* infection, without grossly bloody stools is generally self-limited and can be treated like other watery diarrheas with ORS alone, even if stool microscopy reveals some red or white blood cells. The challenge is to increase adherence to current principles and guidelines to limit the use of antibiotics unless clinical criteria are met.

**Preventive Interventions**

Preventive measures to reduce exposure to enteric pathogens involve improving the quality of water for drinking and cooking; the quantity of water available for personal and household hygiene; safe storage of food; handwashing; and sanitary disposal of fecal waste, including treatment of sewage to inactivate microbial pathogens. Vaccines to improve immunity are presently limited to rotavirus, the only vaccine approved and increasingly available to prevent moderate to severe rotavirus diarrhea. Improving health and immune function by improving nutritional status is another effective measure.

**Vaccines**

For public health, prevention is always preferable to treatment, but effective treatment is necessary when prevention fails. Immunization is among the more cost-effective public health tools when deployed at scale (WHO, UNICEF, and World Bank 2009). The complexity for diarrheal disease is that vaccines are pathogen specific and often serotype or serogroup specific. For example, different formulations would be necessary for *V. cholerae* O1 and O139; even if combined in the final product, a vaccine for each would be required. Unfortunately, vaccines for diarrheal diseases have met with developmental challenges, in part because the basis of effective immunity is poorly understood, and because diarrheal disease is most problematic in LICs where resources to purchase vaccines is limited, thereby reducing incentives for research and development.

**Rotavirus.** Two vaccines produced by Merck and GlaxoSmithKline are widely used in high-income countries and many middle-income countries but are only beginning to be introduced in LICs. Other rotavirus vaccines have been licensed in China or Vietnam for local use only. A less expensive Indian-manufactured vaccine named ROTAVAC® (Bharat Biotech) has been prequalified by the WHO and is approved for use in India. In efficacy trials, it reduced severe episodes by more than 56 percent in the first year of life, by nearly 49 percent in the second year of life, and overall by 55 percent (Bhandari and others 2014). It was also safe. The most important adverse event associated with rotavirus vaccines, intussusception, was assessed through active surveillance. Eight events occurred in India between 112 days and 587 days after vaccination, well beyond the known timing of vaccine-related intussusception, and so were unlikely to be vaccine related. Continued monitoring subsequent to introduction is necessary and is planned (Bhandari and others 2014).
Delayed introduction of rotavirus vaccines in LICs, where the vast majority of severe rotavirus infection and most mortality occurs, is a consequence of several factors:

- Price
- Lower reported efficacy than in high-income countries
- Uncertainty about the risk of complications, such as intussusception
- National policy failures to prioritize national childhood vaccine programs.

Gavi, the Vaccine Alliance has added rotavirus to its support program, and 19 of the 35 Gavi-eligible countries now include rotavirus vaccine in their routine immunization programs; this number is expected to increase to 30 during 2015 (Gavi Alliance 2014). ROTAVAC may ultimately be marketed outside of India in LICs. Universal implementation of rotavirus vaccine could prevent many episodes of severe diarrhea (Fischer Walker and Black 2011) and reduce the number of diarrhea deaths under age five years by 70,000–85,000 per year, and reduce hospitalizations and associated costs by an average of 94 percent (Munos, Fischer Walker, and Black 2010). The cost of hospital admission for rotavirus diarrhea in India may be as much as 5.8 percent of annual household income (Mendelsohn and others 2008), or about US$66 per hospitalization (Sowmyanarayanan and others 2012).

**Cholera.** The global burden of morbidity and mortality of cholera is high; an estimated 2.8 million cases and 91,000 deaths occur annually in endemic countries (Ali and others 2012). Incidence is highest in children under age five years, who may account for as much as 50 percent of cholera mortality. It is notable that 67 percent of inpatient cholera deaths in Bangladesh were actually associated with pneumonia rather than dehydration (Ryan and others 2000), increasing to 80 percent in children under age one year. Identification and appropriate treatment of these patients will reduce mortality.

Inexpensive oral killed whole bacteria cholera vaccines developed in India and Vietnam are effective (Clemens 2011); the former is WHO prequalified. Production and use of these vaccines remains limited, even for domestic needs, although widespread introduction could reduce incidence by as much as 52 percent (Das, Tripathi, and others 2013). Modeling based on clinical trials in Bangladesh suggests a herd immunity effect with as high as a 93 percent reduction in incidence if only 50 percent of the population is immunized (Longini and others 2007). Reduced incidence would also reduce the use of antibiotics (Okeke 2009).

In contrast to endemic cholera, the experience in Haiti following the introduction of cholera in 2010 is enlightening. In the first two years, 604,634 cases—with 329,697 hospitalizations and 7,436 deaths—were reported to the Ministry of Health (Barzilay and others 2013). With international support to improve case management, the case fatality rate rapidly decreased; within three months it was approximately 1 percent, a threshold indicator of effective case management for cholera (WHO 2012).

Mass immunization was under consideration as a way to prevent cholera from becoming endemic in Haiti. However, analyses concluded it should not be deployed because of serious obstacles, including limited vaccine availability, complex logistics, operational challenges of a multidose regimen, and population displacement and potential civil unrest (Kashmira and others 2011). Cholera has indeed become endemic in Haiti and is the leading etiology of diarrhea in hospitalized patients (Steenland and others 2013). A subsequent vaccine demonstration trial in Haiti showed that high coverage with two doses of vaccine was, in fact, feasible (Rouzier and others 2013). This paved the way for an ambitious immunization program, justified by the dreadful state of water and sanitation facilities in the country. The potential of vaccines to mitigate the extent of epidemic cholera and improve the impact of effective case management for dehydration has led to a proposal for an oral cholera vaccine stockpile that would be available for use in future emergency and humanitarian disaster settings (Waldor, Hotez, and Clemens 2010); this plan is being implemented through the WHO and the International Coordinating Group (WHO 2013).

**Other pathogens.** Vaccines for other enteric pathogens remain under research and development; no licensed products are available, particularly for agents highly associated with moderate to severe diarrhea, including enterotoxigenic *E. coli*, *Shigella*, and *Cryptosporidium*. More recently, norovirus has been identified as a potential significant cause of global diarrhea morbidity and mortality and a target for vaccine development (Patel and others 2008). Vaccines for these infections are a high priority, but it will be many years before licensed products become available for scale up in LICs.

It has long been recognized that measles immunization also reduces incidence and mortality from diarrheal disease (Feachem and Koblinsky 1983), presumably because measles is immunosuppressive and exacerbates malnutrition. The current campaign for measles elimination through universal immunization not only addresses measles, but has additional beneficial effects on diarrheal disease mortality and morbidity.
Nutrition

General Nutritional Support
Nutritional support is both a therapeutic and a preventive intervention. Malnutrition is a consequence of and a risk factor for diarrheal disease (Mondal and others 2012). Nutritional support during diarrhea and nutritional rehabilitation during convalescence reduce the severity of associated nutritional deficits and improves resistance to and recovery from future diarrheal episodes. Improving nutrition enhances the ability to respond to future exposure to diarrhea pathogens and mitigates the severity of nutritional losses when diarrhea occurs. Dietary management of acute diarrhea with locally available age-appropriate foods is effective for the majority of acute diarrhea episodes, even in the presence of lactose malabsorption; commercial preparations or specialized diets are not necessary (Gaffey and others 2013). Recent studies of community management of severe or moderate acute malnutrition using commercial ready-to-use therapeutic foods (RUTFs), which are energy dense, solid or semisolid, low-moisture-content preparations of peanut butter enriched with dried skimmed milk, sugar, vegetable oil, vitamins, and minerals that can be eaten direct from the package, have had positive effects (Santini and others 2013). Such products can also be locally made and will facilitate community management of malnutrition (Choudhury and others 2014; Schoonées and others 2013). Local production has certain benefits over imported commercially produced RUTF, which are more costly, can exert adverse impacts on breastfeeding, may medicalize and commercialize malnutrition treatment, and may be difficult to scale up to meet global needs (Latham and others 2010).

Exclusive breastfeeding is another fundamental nutritional support modality for very young infants, with many health impacts beyond improved nutrition and reduced susceptibility to diarrheal disease and other infections (Bhatta and others 2013; Dey and others 2013; Strand and others 2012). Alternating breastfeeding and ORS during acute watery diarrhea in infants combines the nutrient and resistance factors in breast milk with the impact of ORS on dehydration, but faces common cultural biases against feeding during diarrhea (Chouraqui and Michard-Lenoir 2007; King and others 2003). Strand and others (2012) conclude that breastfeeding is the most important modifiable risk factor to reduce the frequency of prolonged diarrhea.

Zinc Supplementation
Zinc deficiency is associated with increased risk of diarrhea, adversely affects intestinal structure and function, and impairs immune function (Bhan and Bhandari 1998; Gebhard and others 1983). Zinc administration may curtail the severity of diarrheal episodes (Haider and Bhatta 2009) and prevent future episodes because it is vital for protein synthesis, cell growth and differentiation, and immune function, and promotes intestinal transport of water and electrolytes (Castillo-Duran and others 1987; Shankar and Prasad 1998). A systematic review of 13 studies from LMICs of zinc supplementation in diarrhea finds a significant 46 percent (relative risk 0.64, 95 percent confidence interval 0.32–0.88) reduction in all-cause mortality and 23 percent (relative risk 0.77, 95 percent confidence interval 0.69–0.85) reduction in diarrhea-related hospital admissions (Fischer Walker and Black 2010). No statistically significant impact on diarrhea-related mortality and subsequent prevalence was found; however, it was not possible to completely separate the effect of zinc from that of ORS in large-scale effectiveness trials, because introduction of zinc also increased ORS use rates. Zinc supplementation for more than three months was associated with a 13 percent (relative risk 0.87, 95 percent confidence interval 0.81–0.94) reduction in incidence of diarrhea in children under age five years in LMICs (Yakoob and others 2011). Efficacy has also been documented in children younger than age six months (Mazumder and others 2010). There have been no reports of severe adverse reactions from any form of zinc supplementation used in the treatment of diarrhea, and the WHO recommends therapeutic zinc supplementation for children with acute diarrhea for 10 days to 14 days.

Zinc supplementation may also be useful in the treatment of persistent diarrhea. A randomized controlled trial in children ages 6–18 months showed that persistent diarrhea led to depletion of zinc whereas oral zinc administration improved zinc status (Sachdev, Mittal, and Yadav 1990). A pooled analysis of the effect of supplementary oral zinc in children under age five years with persistent diarrhea reduced the probability of continuing diarrhea by 24 percent (relative risk 0.76, 95 percent confidence interval 0.63–0.91) and decreased the rate of treatment failure or death by 42 percent (relative risk 0.58, 95 percent confidence interval 0.37–0.90) (Bhatta and others 2000). Zinc also plays a vital role in normal growth and development of children, with or without diarrhea. Preventive zinc supplementation at a dose of 10 milligrams per day for 24 weeks leads to a net gain of 0.19 (±0.08) centimeters in height in children under age five years (Imdad and Bhatta 2011). Zinc sulfate is low cost, safe, and efficacious, and tablets can be crushed and fed to children or dispersed in breast milk, ORS, or water. Baby zinc sulfate tablets and formulations in syrup form are also available.
Although many countries have changed diarrhea management policies by adding zinc to ORS, a gap remains between policy change and effective program implementation (Bhutta and others 2013). Bottlenecks include limited knowledge among care providers and parents, price, and availability. Scaling-up use of zinc, including promotion and distribution through community programs, can increase use by 80 percent (Das, Lassi, and others 2013). Free distribution, social marketing, education of caregivers, and provision of zinc through both government and private providers at the community level, and copackaging of zinc and ORS are additional strategies to increase coverage.

**Water, Sanitation, and Hygiene**

Because diarrhea is ultimately transmitted from infected stools, clean water and safe disposal of feces have major impacts on diarrhea incidence. If, as suspected, EED is also a consequence of continuing ingestion of fecal microorganisms, water and sanitation improvements should also reduce EED as a cause of early malnutrition. Reductions in diarrhea risk of 17 percent and 36 percent have been shown for improved water quality and excreta disposal, respectively (Cairncross and others 2010). Demographic and Health Surveys between 1986 and 2007 also suggest that access to improved water reduces risk of diarrhea (odds ratio 0.91, 95 percent confidence interval 0.88–0.94) and mild or severe stunting (odds ratio 0.92, 95 percent confidence interval 0.89–0.94), while improved sanitation reduces diarrhea mortality (odds ratio 0.77, 95 percent confidence interval 0.68–0.86), incidence (odds ratio 0.87, 95 percent confidence interval 0.85–0.90), and risk of mild to moderate stunting (odds ratio 0.73, 95 percent confidence interval 0.71–0.75) (Fink, Günther, and Hill 2011).

Water, sanitation, and hygiene interventions are collectively known as WASH. Somewhat surprisingly, a 2005 meta-analysis of WASH interventions failed to document greater effectiveness of combinations over single interventions (Fewtrell and others 2005). Current assessments are not sufficiently robust to influence investment decisions in one strategy over another, although all make sense and improve quality of life (Arnold and others 2013).

As infrastructure projects, water and sanitation improvements can be built at the community, neighborhood, or individual household levels; may be more or less technically complex; and may be more or less expensive. Unfortunately, the majority of sanitation systems fail to treat sewage to render it safe; as a result, irrigation water or seafood sources may become contaminated (Hutton and Chase, forthcoming, volume 7). In 2008, the World Bank and the WHO estimated that the global cost of water and sanitation projects to meet Millennium Development Goal (MDG) targets would be US$42 billion and US$142 billion in 2005 dollars through 2014 for water and sanitation, respectively, exclusive of programmatic costs beyond the intervention delivery point (Hutton and Bartram 2008). This investment equates to US$4 billion and US$14 billion per year for water and sanitation projects, respectively, or US$8 and US$28 per capita, respectively. When maintenance, the cost of replacing existing infrastructure and facilities, and the extension of coverage to include future population growth are added, expenditures increase to US$360 billion for each intervention. Once built, however, water and sanitation infrastructure need to be maintained; this ongoing requirement leads to substantial additional financial as well as human capacity investments, without which infrastructure deteriorates and the initial investment can be lost. Further economic analysis of WASH interventions is provided in Hutton and Chase (forthcoming).

Limited evidence suggests that combining development and health interventions results in facilities that are better built and maintained, and used more effectively. Six years after completion of a project in Bolivia, the use of facilities in intervention communities was 44 percent higher than in control communities; from 66 percent to 86 percent of intervention households continued to practice four promoted maternal and child health behaviors compared with 14 percent to 30 percent of households in control communities (Eder and others 2012). Unfortunately, current assessments indicate that the 2015 MDG 7 for water and sanitation targets will not be met in five of nine regions (WHO and UNICEF 2013).

**Behavioral Interventions**

Many actions or decisions by caregivers, health care providers, and public health officials require behavior changes and the decision to act. If improved practices became the norm, risk of diarrhea and morbidity and mortality rates would diminish. Each of these behaviors may be difficult to sustain, but each would have a major impact.

**Handwashing**

The transfer of infectious agents via the hands directly between individuals or indirectly through contamination of inanimate objects (fomites), such as dishes, utensils, and other objects (Abad and others 2001), is a common route for the transmission of low inoculum diarrhea pathogens (as well as respiratory infections). Contaminated hands readily inoculate food or water, allowing high inoculum pathogens to multiply. Simple handwashing procedures...
significantly reduce transmission rates in health care facilities (Bolon 2011); households (Bloomfield 2003); schools (Lee and Greig 2010); and even day care and preschool settings, which are notoriously difficult environments in which to enforce good hygiene (Churchill and Pickering 1997). Handwashing has an additional benefit in also reducing transmission of respiratory infections (Luby and others 2005).

 Provision of soap to an urban squatter community in Karachi, Pakistan, supported by weekly meetings with trained health care workers from the same communities to reinforce the behavior, reduced days with diarrhea by 39 percent (95 percent confidence interval −61 percent to −16 percent) among infants compared with controls over one year (Luby and others 2004). Even severely malnourished children (weight-for-age z-score < −3.0) had 42 percent (95 percent confidence interval −69 percent to −16 percent) fewer days of diarrhea, compared with equally malnourished children in the control group. An additional benefit was a 50 percent reduction in the incidence of pneumonia (95 percent confidence interval −65 percent to −34 percent).

Handwashing with water alone is also worthwhile. In Bangladesh, the risk of diarrhea diminished when caregivers washed both hands with water before preparing food (odds ratio 0.67, 95 percent confidence interval 0.51–0.89); the effect was greater if one or both hands were washed with soap (odds ratio 0.30, 95 percent confidence interval 0.19–0.47) (Luby and others 2011). Risk was also reduced when caregivers washed hands with soap after defecation, but not with water alone (odds ratio 0.45, 95 percent confidence interval 0.26–0.77). Five key times for handwashing were identified: after defecation, after handling children’s feces or cleaning the anus, before preparing food, before feeding children, and before eating. Direct observations identified more than 20 opportunities per day for handwashing, a frequency considered impossible to achieve, especially when the added cost of soap is considered. Handwashing after contact with feces is poorly practiced globally (Freeman and others 2014), and Luby and others (2011) recommended prioritizing handwashing before food preparation because it was the single most effective opportunity to reduce diarrhea risk.

How feasible is it to embed handwashing in daily behavior? A randomized intervention in Pakistan compared provision of soap for handwashing with a method to disinfect water or no intervention, including weekly visits over nine months to encourage either practice (Luby and others 2006). The study documented a 55 percent reduction in diarrhea (95 percent confidence interval 17 percent to 80 percent) compared with control neighborhoods, but no difference between the soap or water disinfection groups. When reenrolled in a follow-up surveillance 18 months later, handwashing intervention households were still 1.5 times more likely to wash with soap and water (79 percent versus 53 percent, \( p = 0.001 \)) and 2.2 times (50 percent versus 23 percent, \( p = 0.002 \)) more likely to rub their hands together compared with controls (Bowen and others 2013). During weekly follow-up throughout the 14 months without active educational intervention there was no difference between the groups in the proportion of person-days with diarrhea (1.59 percent versus 1.88 percent, \( p = 0.66 \)) or the amount of soap purchased. Three years later, however, the investigators reengaged 461 original households (69 percent) and found the original intervention households were 3.4 times more likely than controls to have soap available (97 percent versus 28 percent, \( p < 0.0001 \)), more commonly reported handwashing before cooking (relative risk 1.2, 95 percent confidence interval 1.0–1.4) and before meals (relative risk 1.7, 95 percent confidence interval 1.3–2.1), and purchased more soap per person per month (0.91–1.1 bars versus 0.65 for controls, \( p < 0.0001 \)).

The critical question is not whether improving handwashing practices is effective, but rather how to best promote consistent behavior. The behavior requires availability of water and household handwashing stations designed and located to facilitate rather than inhibit the practice (Hulland and others 2013). Educational support from health care workers is useful, but how much is feasible and affordable remains in question. Increasingly, integrated behavioral models will be needed to improve the outcome of WASH interventions (Dreibelbis and others 2013).

**Health Care Seeking**

To ensure optimal care of infants and children with diarrheal disease, caregivers must recognize there is a problem, know what to do and do it, be alert to signs of clinical deterioration needing professional care, and know how to access such care without delay. Knowledge and experience are necessary but not sufficient; caregivers must also have the authority to act promptly. Initiatives to scale up prompt decision making and action generally focus on technical details and acquisition of practical skills, but frequently overlook social and cultural dimensions. These factors may influence whether a caregiver recognizes that fluid losses are beyond normal limits, are becoming dangerous, and require professional intervention (Larrea-Killinger and Muñoz 2013).

Higher levels of education promote quicker care-seeking action; however, cultural influences, for example, gender discrimination, can delay action for female infants (Malhotra and Upadhyay 2013). In rural Burkina Faso
caregivers failed to recognize mild diarrhea, especially among infants, and made intervention choices that were not clinically based and recommended (Wilson and others 2012). Only 55 percent of caregivers sought care outside of the household, and 22 percent of these were with traditional healers or drug vendors, only 12 percent of whom recommended ORS. In rural Kenya, where caregivers understood the significance of diarrhea and dehydration, their primary concern was stopping the diarrhea, preferring antibiotics or anti-diarrheals over ORS (Blum and others 2011). Cost of treatment is the major pragmatic impediment to care seeking outside of the home (Nasrin and others 2013). Anthropological and ethnographic approaches may help improve educational messaging and responses, but cost, travel and access to facilities, and wait times are likely to be critical determinants of behavior, and these require very different inputs to address.

**Community-Based Interventions**

Limited access to health facilities with trained primary care workers means that many children fail to receive simple but effective early interventions when diarrhea develops. However, a systematic review (Das, Lassi, and others 2013) concludes that community-based interventions improve care seeking by 9 percent (relative risk 1.09, 95 percent confidence interval 1.06–1.11), increase ORS use by 160 percent (relative risk 2.6, 95 percent confidence interval 1.59–4.27), produce a 29-fold increase in use of zinc supplements (relative risk 29.8, 95 percent confidence interval 12.33–71.97), and reduce antibiotic use by 75 percent (relative risk 0.25, 95 percent confidence interval 0.12–0.51).

Because diarrheal disease risk not only depends on the behavior of individuals and households but also on the practices of neighbors and communities, a systems approach to increase “attention to multiple transmission pathways, and highlight the need to widen the causal lens and pay more conceptual attention to socioeconomic status, gender, remoteness, and ecosystem changes” (Eisenberg and others 2012, 242) can improve outcomes. However, measuring these effects will require innovative study designs that reveal social patterns of interaction and the movement of pathogens through the environment.

**Community-Led Total Sanitation**

Interventions to improve the safe disposal of human excreta can be difficult to implement and maintain, and documenting a positive result is challenging, especially in rural settings in LMICs (Clasen and others 2010). For full impact, children and adults must learn to consistently use improved sanitation, and stools from infants and toddlers must be handled safely as well. Because water and sanitation improvements are often implemented together, separating the influence of each, and under which circumstances, can be difficult. Community-Led Total Sanitation (CLTS) is a participatory approach to improving sanitation in communities, in which communities mobilize to achieve total abandonment of open defection and replace it with subsidized construction of facilities, household by household. The goal is to generate social pressure on all members of a community to understand the health implications of open defecation, and convince the community to join together, without external resources except guidance and facilitation, to agree on and act to completely eliminate open defecation and build a community sanitary infrastructure (Kar 2003). Its relevance is suggested by an analysis of Demographic and Health Survey data indicating that open defecation explains almost twice as much (54 versus 29 percent) of the international variation in child height compared with gross domestic product (Spears 2013). A 20 percent reduction in open defecation predicted a 0.1 standard deviation increase in child height.

CLTS begins with a facilitator engaging a community or village to promote understanding of the link between open defecation and illness. Initial engagement is followed by a survey and mapping of actual practices, often led by motivated school-age children. Finally, community deliberations lead to communal decisions to make the necessary changes. In the process, the facilitator may “provoke people through… tactics that trigger powerful emotional responses such as disgust, shame and fear… to enable local people to confront an unpleasant reality, and in doing this deliberately shocks, provokes, jokes and teases. Sparking these emotions and affects is key to triggering CLTS” (Deak 2008, 11). Although some have criticized the use of shame or social stigma to promote compliance (Bartram and others 2012), others have noted that shame, social pressure, and peer monitoring with government subsidies to build latrines markedly increases the adoption of improved sanitation (Pattanayak and others 2009).

Many tensions continue to surround the CLTS movement because organizations, government ministries, and development funders may be committed to different models of improving sanitation infrastructure; yet many examples of success and the spread of CLTS exist. This juxtaposition of tensions and successes indicates the need for careful analysis of the role of CLTS and how and where to introduce it most effectively. A number of issues must be considered, such as how to promote learning by doing; careful training of facilitators; cultural changes in institutional environments to a more participatory, responsive, transparent,
and downward-accountability approach; and changing from a top-down to a bottom-up development model that is sensitive to local context and the longer time horizon required (Deak 2008).

**COST AND COST-EFFECTIVENESS OF INTERVENTIONS**

Several cost-effective and low-cost interventions are available to help prevent and treat diarrhea (table 9.1). Since the analysis of cost-effectiveness of interventions for diarrhea in LMICs in the second edition of *Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries* (Keusch and others 2006), the ranking of various modalities has changed because of new evidence on the benefits of zinc as adjunct therapy for diarrhea (optimally in combination with ORS), substantial decreases in the cost of rotavirus vaccine, and additional research separating the cost-effectiveness of water supply from that of sanitation. The large gains in measles immunization have stopped additional work on its cost-effectiveness for diarrhea because it has become standard care. Although it is self-evident that breastfeeding promotion reduces diarrhea, this practice has not been as high on the research and policy agenda.

The following is a brief discussion of the cost-effectiveness of selected diarrhea interventions. Details are presented in table 10.1 (Feikin and others 2016, chapter 10 in this volume). Das and others (2016, chapters 10 and 12 in this volume), and Stenberg and others (2016, chapter 16 in this volume) provide relevant information on vaccines and nutrition.

The most cost-effective interventions currently available for diarrhea (as measured in 2012 U.S. dollars per disability adjusted life year [DALY] averted) are prophylactic zinc supplementation (alone and as an adjunct to ORS), ORS, rotavirus vaccine, and household-level water treatment (primarily in rural areas using chlorination or solar disinfection) (see table 10.1). The second most cost-effective group includes rural sanitation, piped water, and in selected countries, cholera vaccine. Nutrition interventions are the least cost-effective for diarrhea; however, they have other major benefits, and cost-effectiveness of community management of severe acute malnutrition is addressed in Lelters, Wazny, and Bhutta (2016, chapter 11 in this volume).

Table 9.1 includes just one study of behavior change, identified through a focused search in PubMed. Such interventions tend to have very heterogeneous results; the one reviewed here (see table 10.1 for further details), a handwashing education intervention in Burkina Faso

![Table 9.1 Cost-Effectiveness and Unit Cost of Interventions for Diarrheal Diseases](table9_1.png)

Source: See Horton and Levin 2016, chapter 17, on cost-effectiveness in this volume.

Note: AFR-E = high-mortality Africa (WHO subregion); DALY = disability adjusted life year; Gavi, the Vaccine Alliance; ORS = oral rehydration solution; RUTF = ready-to-use therapeutic foods; SEA-D = high-mortality South-East Asia (WHO subregion). Costs and cost per DALY averted are higher in other regions. Interventions costing less than US$240 per DALY in 2012 would be very cost-effective even in the poorest low-income country; those costing less than US$720 would be cost-effective even in the poorest low-income country (Burundi’s per capita gross national income was US$240 in 2012) (World Bank 2014). All costs converted to 2012 U.S. dollars (except as noted otherwise).
Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health

decrease diarrhea, intestinal parasites, and stunting, the supply and sanitation are essential in the long term to require behavior change. Although improved water infection of water (using chlorine or solar disinfection) and Bartram 2007). Household point-of-use disin-

US$52 per household for a pit latrine (Haller, Hutton, and Bartram 2007). Household point-of-use disinfection of water (using chlorine or solar disinfection) costs pennies per capita per year in recurrent costs, but requires behavior change. Although improved water supply and sanitation are essential in the long term to decrease diarrhea, intestinal parasites, and stunting, the investment costs mean the transition is likely to be slow.

Most of the results in tables 9.1 and 10.1 describe the cost-effectiveness of implementing a single intervention. If interventions are combined, the incremental cost-effectiveness of each additional intervention can decline. Fischer Walker and others (2011) estimate the combined effect of 10 interventions designed to reduce diarrhea in 68 countries with high child mortality, using the Lives Saved Tool. Two scenarios were modeled: an ambitious strategy designed to reach MDG 4 goals (to reduce child mortality) in a realizable way; and a universal strategy designed to bring coverage of many interventions to 90 percent or more of the target population, and water, sanitation, and handwashing interventions to 55 percent or more. Both strategies were scaled up from current coverage to the target over five years. The ambitious strategy saved 3.8 million lives during a five-year period, at a cost of US$52.5 billion, or US$13,700 per death averted, approximately US$432/DALY averted assuming one life saved in infancy or early childhood is about 32 DALYs averted. The universal strategy saved 5 million lives at a cost of US$20,752 per death averted, or US$648 per DALY averted. Although these rates would be considered cost-effective or very cost-effective for most countries, affordability is still an obstacle. The main issue is the water and sanitation components, which account for 84 percent of the cost of the ambitious package and 87 percent of the universal strategy.

Extended cost-effectiveness analysis provides further insight. Chapters 18 and 19 in this volume (Ashok, Nandi, and Laxminarayan 2016; Verguet and others 2016) present extended cost-effectiveness analyses of the introduction of rotavirus vaccine in India and water and sanitation improvements in Ethiopia. These interventions are pro-poor—the poor benefit disproportionately from reduced child mortality and from out-of-pocket savings on treatment costs, because they bear a disproportionately higher burden of ill health from diarrhea. They have less access to clean water and improved sanitation, and therefore their children have poorer nutritional status and are at higher risk of mortality from diarrhea-related illness.

CONCLUSIONS

The burden of diarrheal diseases in children under age five years in LMICs has been reduced dramatically. These reductions are the result of focused attention and resources applied, originally through vertical programs and advocacy through the WHO and international donor agencies, and more recently through more integrated programs for primary care and community-based programming. Although there are no magic bullets to control the incidence of diarrheal diseases, the following are highly effective: improved nutrition

(48x38)178
of young children to increase their ability to respond to infection; water and sanitation improvements to reduce the number of microorganisms in the environment; handwashing; and implementation of simple but highly effective interventions, such as ORS, that have enabled early treatment and mitigation of dehydration due to watery diarrhea.

When antibiotics are used appropriately for inflammatory diarrheas, survival is enhanced; however, targeting only those individuals who truly need antibiotic treatment remains problematic. Most uses of antibiotics are not only ineffective, for example, in the treatment of viral infections, but counterproductive, due to selective pressure for drug resistance. Indeed, many important diarrheal disease agents now exhibit serious resistance to multiple medications. Improved understanding of the pathogenesis of persistent diarrhea has helped the development of nutritional interventions to address the malabsorption and malnutrition that characterize persistent diarrhea and lead to serious morbidity and increased mortality.

This chapter reviews interventions and policy strategies that are effective, can often be packaged together, and can be delivered at the community level. Many of these interventions have impacts far beyond diarrheal disease, and these additional rationales for implementation enhance their cost-effectiveness. Some are both effective and highly inexpensive, for example, the early use of ORS, so there is no reason not to promote them. Continued attention to delivering an appropriate package of interventions, coupled with monitoring and continuous quality improvement of health care delivery services, can be expected to continue to drive down the mortality and sequelae of diarrheal diseases in the coming decade. In addition to the development of point-of-care diagnostics, medications, and vaccines, many issues need continuing study, including better water and safe sanitation methods, food and water safety behavior within households and along the food chain, and the cause and role of EED and asymptomatic infection on intestinal function and nutrition.

NOTE

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:
  - a) lower-middle-income = US$1,046–US$4,125
  - b) upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126–US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

REFERENCES


INTRODUCTION

Vaccination is the centerpiece of preventive care of the well child. Vaccination has been one of the singular public health successes of the past half century, and its full potential remains unrealized. Pneumonia and diarrhea, two of the leading causes of child mortality, account for approximately 1.4 million deaths annually (Liu and others 2016); vaccination with currently available vaccines has the potential to prevent 59 percent of pneumonia-related deaths and 29 percent of diarrhea-related deaths (Fischer Walker, Munos, and Black 2013). Other leading causes of childhood deaths are already preventable through available and effective vaccines, such as measles and meningitis, and other diseases, such as malaria, may become vaccine preventable in the near future (Agnandji and others 2011; Liu and others 2012). Forecasts for vaccine use in the 73 countries supported by Gavi, the Vaccine Alliance, project that 17.7 million deaths will be averted in children under age five years as a result of vaccinations administered from 2011 to 2020 (Lee and others 2013). Childhood vaccination contributed greatly to progress toward achieving the fourth United Nations Millennium Development Goal, a two-thirds reduction in childhood mortality between 1990 and 2015 (UN 2015), and the centerpiece of several other major global initiatives (PHR 2014; WHO 2012a). Vaccination is central to the health goal included in the post-2015 Sustainable Development Goals, which is on a critical pathway to delivering on its targets.

In addition to the clear health benefits, vaccination has been one of the most cost-effective public health interventions (Brenzel and others 2006; WHO, UNICEF, and World Bank 2002). Based on 2001 data, the cost per death averted through routine vaccination with the six original antigens in the Expanded Program on Immunization (EPI) was US$205 in South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa; estimated cost per disability-adjusted life year (DALY) averted was US$7 to US$16 (Brenzel and others 2006). New vaccines, although more expensive, have also been determined to be cost-effective in Gavi-eligible countries (Atherly and others 2012; Sinha and others 2007) (see box 10.1).

This chapter describes the epidemiology and burden of vaccine-preventable diseases and provides estimates of the value of vaccines in health impact as well as broader economic benefits. The focus is on vaccination of infants during routine well-child visits and not on other important vaccines for older children and young adults, such as human papillomavirus vaccine, typhoid vaccine, and dengue vaccines.
Disparities exist in vaccination status between countries and within the same country, where some regions or sectors of society remain substantially undervaccinated. For example, in Nigeria’s 2008 Demographic and Health Survey, the coverage of the third dose of the diphtheria-tetanus-pertussis vaccine varied from 67 percent in the southeast to 9 percent in the northwest (NPC and ICF Macro 2009). Disparities are largely driven by socioeconomic status; the poorest children, with the highest disease burden, are the least vaccinated (Cutts, Izurieta, and Rhoda 2013).

To address low coverage and inequitable access to life-saving vaccines, Gavi, the Vaccine Alliance was launched in 2000 to increase access to immunization in poor countries. Gavi is a public-private partnership involving the World Health Organization (WHO), the United Nations Children’s Fund, and the World Bank; civil society organizations; public health institutes; donors and implementing country governments; major private philanthropists, such as the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation; vaccine manufacturers; and the financial community (Gavi 2013). Gavi’s support for 2011–15 has focused on 73 countries based on eligibility criteria determined through per capita gross national income.

Gavi has expanded its initial support for hepatitis B, pentavalent, and yellow fever vaccines to include measles vaccine second dose and those against pneumococcus, rotavirus, meningococcus serogroup A, measles-rubella, human papillomavirus, Japanese encephalitis, and inactivated polio vaccine. Gavi has approved a contribution to the global cholera stockpile for use in epidemic and endemic settings. From its inception through 2014, Gavi has committed US$8.8 billion in program support to eligible countries; 75 percent of the total commitment is for the purchase of vaccines. From 2000 through early 2015, Gavi-supported vaccines have helped countries vaccinate approximately 500 million children through routine programs. Annex table 10A.3 shows the vaccine introduction status in 73 Gavi-eligible countries.

Advanced Market Commitment
An innovative financing mechanism called the Advanced Market Commitment was established to accelerate the introduction of and scale up the pneumococcal conjugate vaccine through Gavi (Cernuschi and others 2011). The Advanced Market Commitment secured US$1.5 billion from six donor countries and the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, which provided a financial commitment to purchase pneumococcal conjugate vaccine for introduction and scale-up in Gavi-supported countries at predetermined terms.

Eligibility and Transition to Self-Financing
As of January 2014, per capita gross national income in 17 of 73 Gavi-supported countries had risen above the eligibility threshold, resulting in a five-year transition period during which such countries finance an increasingly larger share of their vaccines each year. These countries need to mobilize domestic resources to sustainably finance their vaccines when they complete the transition to self-financing.

Vaccine Investment Strategy
Gavi uses a vaccine investment strategy to determine which vaccines to add to its portfolio of support to countries every five years, taking into account the selection criteria and the date when different vaccines will be available. The Gavi Board decided in 2014 that Gavi will undertake the following:

- **Yellow fever.** Increase support for additional yellow fever campaigns.
- **Cholera.** Contribute to a global vaccine stockpile from 2014 to 2018 to increase access in outbreak situations and further a learning agenda on its use in endemic settings.
- **Malaria.** Consider supporting the vaccine that is now in development when it is licensed, WHO-prequalified, and recommended for use by the joint meeting of the WHO Strategic Advisory Group of Experts on Immunization and the Malaria Policy Advisory Committee.
**METHODS**

We describe vaccines in three categories:

- Vaccines among the six original EPI antigens: Bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG); diphtheria, tetanus, and pertussis (DTP); and measles and polio
- Vaccines classified as new or underutilized and supported by Gavi since its inception in 2000
- New vaccines that might be introduced into routine immunization for infants at the well-child visit in the next decade.

For the epidemiology and vaccine characteristics, we used a nonsystematic review of the published literature, recommendations of the World Health Organization (WHO), and a search of relevant updated websites on vaccines. For the impact of vaccination using the original EPI vaccines, we referenced existing models. For the new vaccines, we used a methodology adopted through an expert process, with leading modeling groups co-convened by Gavi and the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, to estimate the number of future deaths and DALYs averted attributable to vaccinations administered in the 73 Gavi-supported countries (annex 10A and table 10A.1).

**EXPANDED PROGRAM ON IMMUNIZATIONS**

The EPI program was created in 1974 to improve vaccine availability globally (WHO 1974). Global policies and recommended schedules based on immunologic data were codified in 1984, with the goal of reaching every child with vaccines against six diseases: diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus, measles, poliomyelitis, and tuberculosis (Hadler and others 2004; Mitchell and others 2013). The fulcrum of the EPI program is the fixed health facility, where parents bring their children to be immunized.

The immunization visit has been expanded into the well-child visit, where the contact with the health system is used to add other preventive interventions (for example, vitamin A and growth monitoring). Vaccination is also delivered in many low- and middle-income countries (LMICs) through modes and mechanisms outside the well-child visit, such as mobile outreach clinics, supplemental immunization activities as part of eradication and elimination campaigns, and mass vaccination for control of outbreaks.

**Box 10.1 (continued)**

- Rabies and influenza. Recommend further assessment of the impact and operational feasibility of supporting rabies and influenza vaccines for pregnant women, fund an observational study to address critical knowledge gaps around access to rabies vaccine, and monitor the evolving evidence base for maternal influenza vaccination.

By forecasting and pooling demand from eligible countries and purchasing large volumes of vaccines, Gavi has created a reliable market for vaccines in these settings. Gavi’s market-shaping strategy aims to ensure adequate supply to meet demand, minimize the cost of vaccines, and ensure the availability of quality and innovative products.

Improved vaccine delivery strategies are needed to ensure that immunization programs and health systems are able to implement programs of increasing size and complexity at high levels of coverage and equity. It will be necessary to build on the unprecedented momentum achieved in new vaccine introduction and market shaping to take to scale innovative approaches to generating demand for immunization; upgrading country supply chain management systems; strengthening country health information systems; and enhancing political will and country capacity related to leadership, management, and coordination.

**VACCINE-PREVENTABLE DISEASES: EPIDEMIOLOGY, BURDEN, AND VACCINES**

This section describes the epidemiology, burden, and vaccines available for vaccine-preventable diseases among children in LMICs. The section is divided into the six original EPI vaccines, new and underutilized vaccines introduced since 2000, and vaccines that might become more widely used in young children during the next decade (summarized in annex table 10A.2).

**Original EPI Vaccines**

**Bacille Calmette-Guérin Vaccine**

Tuberculosis is caused by the bacterium *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and is spread from person to person through
the air; it primarily causes disease in the lung, although it can spread to many parts of the body. Infection with *M. tuberculosis* may lie dormant for years. In 2012, the WHO estimated a global burden of 8.6 million cases and 1.3 million deaths due to tuberculosis; 55,000 of these were in children under age five years, 95 percent of which occurred in LMICs. Co-infection with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) greatly increases the risk of developing active tuberculosis. The treatment of tuberculosis worldwide is becoming more complicated because of the rise of multidrug-resistant strains (Bloom and others, forthcoming; Connelly Smith, Orme, and Starke 2013; WHO 2015a).

BCG vaccine is a live-attenuated strain of a related mycobacterium, *Mycobacterium bovis*, originally isolated from an infected cow and attenuated through repeated passage. BCG is most effective against tuberculous meningitis and disseminated (miliary) tuberculosis. However, BCG vaccination does not prevent *M. tuberculosis* infection in childhood, when most infections occur, or reactivation of latent infection and pulmonary tuberculosis later in life, which is the principal source of community transmission (WHO 2004). In 2012, BCG was included in routine infant immunization schedules in 159 of 194 WHO member states; worldwide coverage was estimated to be 90 percent in 2012 (WHO, UNICEF, and World Bank 2002). Approximately 100 million infants receive BCG annually; more than 4 billion people have been vaccinated (Connelly Smith, Orme, and Starke 2013). The 100 million BCG vaccinations given worldwide to infants in 2002 prevented approximately 30,000 cases of tuberculous meningitis and 11,000 cases of miliary tuberculosis (Trunz, Fine, and Dye 2006).

Vaccination is recommended for all infants in countries with high tuberculosis disease burden and infants at high risk of exposure in low-burden countries. Because it is a live-attenuated vaccine, BCG is not recommended for immunocompromised children, including those with congenital severe combined immunodeficiency syndrome and those with symptomatic HIV infection.

Tuberculosis will not be eliminated without new, more effective tuberculosis vaccines (Connelly Smith, Orme, and Starke 2013). For the prevention of severe childhood diseases, a single BCG dose is recommended as soon as possible after birth (WHO 2004). BCG is the only vaccine in the EPI program routinely administered by intradermal injection, which requires specific injection supplies and health care worker training. BCG is produced by a large number of countries using different vaccine seed strains, which may contribute to the variability in effectiveness observed in different studies.

**Diphtheria, Tetanus, and Pertussis Vaccine**

Despite progress, these three bacterial diseases of infancy and early childhood remain endemic in some countries. Diphtheria is a respiratory illness characterized by membranous inflammation of the upper respiratory tract caused by toxin-producing *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* and is transmitted through respiratory droplets and coughing. Before vaccination, an estimated 1 million cases and 50,000–60,000 deaths occurred annually (Walsh and Warren 1979). In 2008, only 7,000 cases of diphtheria were reported; more than 85 percent of these occurred in India (WHO and UNICEF 2014). Tetanus is caused by a toxin produced by *Clostridium tetani*, a ubiquitous organism found in the soil and transmitted through contamination of wounds or unsterile procedures, including care of the umbilical cord. Neonatal tetanus is mostly present in LMICs, resulting in an estimated 34,481 deaths in 2015 in children in LMICs, which account for 99 percent of all under-five tetanus deaths worldwide (Liu and others 2016). Pertussis, or whooping cough, is a highly communicable respiratory illness caused by *Bordetella pertussis* and characterized by paroxysmal cough that may last for many weeks. Estimates from the WHO suggest that about 63,000 children died from this disease in 2008, 95 percent of them in LMICs (Black and others 2010).

DTP vaccines are composed of inactivated diphtheria and tetanus toxins (referred to as toxoids) and pertussis antigens, either killed, whole-cell *Bordetella pertussis* or purified antigens (acellular pertussis [aP] vaccine). Whole-cell pertussis acts as a potent adjuvant that improves the immune response to diphtheria and tetanus toxoids, but periodic boosting is required because of waning immune responses; waning may occur more quickly with aP vaccines (Edwards and Decker 2013). DTP vaccines combined with hepatitis B and *Haemophilus influenzae* type b (Hib) antigens are widely used in LMICs, while combination vaccines with aP are common in upper-middle- and high-income countries. Because the risk of pertussis complications is highest in infants too young to be vaccinated, maternal vaccination is a strategy that could protect young infants (CDC 2011).

DTP vaccine coverage is an important indicator of immunization program performance. Initiatives to strengthen routine immunization services often monitor progress as measured by coverage with the third DTP dose (DTP3) in infancy, which requires multiple immunization visits in the first year of life. The difference between coverage with the first versus the third DTP dose, often called *dropout*, measures loss to follow-up and challenges to completion of infant vaccinations. Many newer vaccines, including pneumococcal, meningococcal, and rotavirus vaccines, have adapted to DTP...
immunization schedules to reach the maximum number of children during scheduled immunization visits.

DTP vaccines are included in routine childhood immunization programs in all 194 WHO member states. Global DTP3 coverage rose from 20 percent in 1980 to 84 percent in 2013 (WHO and UNICEF 2014), preventing 76,000 deaths from diphtheria and 1.6 million deaths from pertussis annually. In conjunction with improved maternal immunization against tetanus, the vaccines prevented approximately 408,000 deaths from tetanus (WHO 2013a). Despite increased coverage, more than 20 million infants remained unvaccinated in 2013 (WHO and UNICEF 2014). More than 80 percent of these children live in Gavi-eligible countries. If these countries achieved and maintained their DTP3 coverage at 90 percent between 2015 and 2020, 439,000 deaths and 16 million cases of pertussis could be averted during the 10 years from the scale-up (Stack and others 2011).

**Polio Vaccine**

The goal of universal polio vaccination is eradication. In 1988, when the Global Polio Eradication Initiative was established, poliomyelitis crippled more than 350,000 children each year, with transmission of wild poliovirus serotypes (1, 2, and 3) reported from 125 countries (WHO 2014c). From January to December 2015, only 66 cases of wild poliovirus type 1 were reported worldwide, compared with 359 cases in January to December 2014, and no cases of wild poliovirus had been reported on the African continent for 12 months; wild type 2 polioviruses have not been identified since 1999; and the last case of wild type 3 poliovirus occurred in 2012 (Global Polio Eradication Initiative 2013; WHO 2014b).

Implementation of routine childhood immunization and supplemental immunization activities with oral polio vaccine (OPV) containing attenuated polioviruses of all three types substantially decreased cases in LMICs and eliminated poliovirus circulation in the WHO regions of the Americas, Europe, Western Pacific, and South-East Asia. Clinical trials showed that three doses of OPV were needed for greater than 90 percent protection against paralytic poliomyelitis. However, the immune response was lower among children in LMICs, requiring more vaccine doses to achieve the high levels of population immunity necessary for elimination (Estivariz and others 2012; Grassly and others 2007). In 2014, the WHO recommended that all countries using OPV include at least one dose of inactivated polio vaccine (IPV) in their routine immunization schedule (WHO 2014c). Most immunization schedules in LMICs include a three-dose primary polio immunization schedule, and many include booster doses in the second year of life. For high-risk countries, the WHO recommends four doses beginning as soon as possible after birth, with at least one dose of IPV at age 14 weeks if only one IPV dose is given.

There are several steps to the Polio Eradication and Endgame Strategic Plan 2013–2018, and this transition in polio vaccination strategy has several phases. First, all OPV-using countries should introduce at least one dose of IPV (containing inactivated polioviruses of all three types) to boost immunity to poliovirus type 2 (WHO 2014b). Then, trivalent OPV will be replaced with more immunogenic bivalent OPV containing type 1 and 3 viruses. IPV introduction will pave the way for future total cessation of all OPV use after eradication has been achieved. Most high-income countries adopted routine childhood immunization with IPV to prevent rare cases of paralytic polio caused by OPV. However, achieving high coverage with IPV will require strengthening of routine immunization services.

**Measles Vaccine**

Measles is one of the most contagious diseases of humans (Fine and Mulholland 2013). It is caused by a paramyxovirus, manifesting as a febrile rash illness, which can result in multiple life-threatening complications, including pneumonia, diarrhea, and encephalitis. In 2000, measles was the leading vaccine-preventable cause of childhood deaths and the fifth leading cause of under-five mortality; that year, measles alone accounted for 5 percent of the estimated 10.9 million deaths among children under age five years (Strebel and others 2012). By 2010, measles-related deaths had declined by 75 percent following accelerated measles control activities in Sub-Saharan Africa and other regions (Simons and others 2012); declines in measles-related deaths accounted for almost 10.1 percent of overall declines in childhood mortality from 2000 to 2015 (Liu and others 2016). Further progress is expected as countries implement measles elimination strategies; as of 2014, all six WHO regions had established target dates for measles elimination.

Measles vaccination can prevent illness and death directly among vaccinated persons and indirectly among unvaccinated persons as a result of decreased transmission. In countries with ongoing transmission of measles and high risk of measles among infants, the WHO recommends vaccination at age nine months when protection provided by maternal antibody wanes and seroconversion rates improve among infants. In countries with low rates of measles transmission, the WHO recommends the first dose of vaccine at age 12 months to take advantage of higher seroconversion rates achieved at this age (Strebel and others 2012).

Between 1980 and 2011, global measles vaccination coverage rose from 18 percent to 84 percent globally (WHO 2013d; WHO, UNICEF, and World Bank 2002).
In one analysis, a projected 624 million children in Gavi-eligible countries would be vaccinated with one dose of measles-containing vaccine between 2011 and 2020, averting 10.3 million deaths relative to a hypothetical scenario in which countries were not administering measles vaccine (Lee and others 2013).

Because of its high risk of contagion, high levels of immunity are needed to interrupt measles transmission. A two-dose strategy is deemed essential for measles elimination, to immunize children who missed the first dose and protect up to 15 percent of children who do not seroconvert after primary immunization (WHO 2013d). Childhood immunization schedules in many countries include two doses. In countries with poor access to preventive services, the second opportunity for measles vaccination is most often provided through nationwide supplementary immunization activities or mass campaigns.

**New and Underutilized Vaccines or Vaccine Strategies Supported by Gavi**

Table 10.1 summarizes the large impact of vaccination for averting death and reducing disease burden in 73 countries receiving support from Gavi, with a focus on 10 new and previously underutilized vaccines. Expected impact is shown separately for vaccinations administered from 2001 to 2012 and vaccinations forecasted to be administered from 2013 to 2020. The total expected impact is shown as estimated numbers of persons immunized, as well as future deaths and DALYs averted. Estimates of future deaths and DALYs averted are based on a comparison of the number of deaths and DALYs expected over the lifetime of vaccinated cohorts relative to a hypothetical scenario in which the cohorts do not receive the vaccinations in question.

**Hepatitis B Vaccine**

Hepatitis B vaccine is included in routine infant immunization schedules to prevent serious disease and death later in life caused by chronic infection with hepatitis B virus, a member of the hepadnavirus family. Hepatitis B virus is a blood-borne pathogen that may also be transmitted sexually. Hepatitis B, one of five viruses known to cause hepatitis in humans, is responsible for most of the worldwide hepatitis burden: more than 2 billion people have been infected with hepatitis B virus, and 360 million have become chronically infected (WHO 2010b).

**Table 10.1 Impact of Vaccination: Children Immunized and Deaths Averted in 73 Gavi-Supported Countries, Based on Strategic Demand Forecast Version 9**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vaccine Type</th>
<th>Estimates for 2001–12</th>
<th>Projections for 2013–20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Children immunized</td>
<td>Deaths averted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatitis B</td>
<td>377,000,000</td>
<td>3,400,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemophilus influenzae type B</td>
<td>160,000,000</td>
<td>830,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese encephalitis (campaign)</td>
<td>83,000,000</td>
<td>19,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese encephalitis (routine)</td>
<td>21,000,000</td>
<td>6,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measles (routine 2nd dose)</td>
<td>71,000,000</td>
<td>90,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measles (campaign)</td>
<td>1,000,000,000</td>
<td>2,800,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningitis A (campaign)</td>
<td>103,000,000</td>
<td>140,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningitis A (routine)</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumococcus</td>
<td>11,000,000</td>
<td>70,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotavirus</td>
<td>4,000,000</td>
<td>4,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubella (campaign)</td>
<td>105,000,000</td>
<td>20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubella (routine)</td>
<td>21,000,000</td>
<td>5,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow fever (campaign)</td>
<td>70,000,000</td>
<td>280,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow fever (routine)</td>
<td>84,000,000</td>
<td>540,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sources: Children immunized derived from the World Health Organization–United Nations Children’s Fund Estimates of National Immunization Coverage and United Nations Population Division; vaccine introduction and scale-up scenario based on Gavi Strategic Demand Forecast Version 9; future deaths averted derived from Lee and others (2013); future DALYs averted derived from personal communication with S. Ozawa.

Note: Gavi = Gavi, the Vaccine Alliance; n.a. = not applicable; DALY = disability-adjusted life year.
Chronic hepatitis B virus infection is the leading cause of cirrhosis and cancer of the liver, which result in approximately 600,000 deaths annually (Goldstein and others 2005). Hepatitis B virus transmission may occur perinatally and during early childhood, adolescence, and adulthood. Vaccination is more than 95 percent effective in infants and more than 72 percent effective in preventing perinatal transmission. Vaccination must be part of a comprehensive prevention strategy. Humans are the only reservoir of hepatitis B virus, making disease elimination possible (WHO 2010b).

Modern hepatitis B vaccines containing recombinant hepatitis B virus surface antigen (HBsAg) were introduced in 1986 (Van Damme and others 2013). The WHO has recommended routine infant vaccination against hepatitis B since 1992. In 2013, hepatitis B vaccine was included in routine infant immunization schedules in 94 percent of 194 WHO member states. Infant immunization schedules include at least three doses of hepatitis B vaccine, which may be combined with other antigens, such as DTP and Haemophilus influenzae type b. In 2013, worldwide coverage with three doses of hepatitis B vaccine was estimated to be 81 percent. In countries with a high prevalence of hepatitis B virus infection, the WHO recommends administering the first dose within 24 hours of birth to prevent perinatal transmission. In 2013, 93 countries included hepatitis B birth dose in their routine immunization schedules, with global coverage estimated to be 38 percent. Better birth dose coverage and monitoring are needed; timely delivery of birth dose should be a performance measure of immunization programs (WHO 2013h).

**Haemophilus influenzae Type b Vaccine**

*Haemophilus influenzae* is a Gram-negative bacterium surrounded by a polysaccharide capsule, which is a major virulence factor. While six serotypes (a, b, c, d, e, f) and unencapsulated strains cause disease—including meningitis, pneumonia, septicemia, epiglottitis, cellulitis, septic arthritis, osteomyelitis, and otitis media (mainly due to unencapsulated *H. influenzae*)—Hib was the leading cause of meningitis in children under age five years in most countries before widespread vaccination (Bennett and others 2002). The mean case fatality rate (CFR) of Hib meningitis was 67 percent (44 percent to 75 percent) in Sub-Saharan Africa and 43 percent (23 percent to 55 percent) globally. In 2000, before widespread Hib vaccination, Hib caused an estimated 371,000 deaths (Watt and others 2009). By 2008, Hib vaccines were used in 136 countries, and estimated deaths had fallen to 203,000 (Black and others 2010; WHO 2013b).

Evidence from several clinical trials of Hib conjugate vaccine demonstrated the importance of Hib in causing severe pneumonia; Hib accounted for 25 percent of severe pneumonia in The Gambia and 22 percent in Chile (Levine and others 1999; Mulholland and others 1997). Hib pneumonia rates are higher than Hib meningitis rates; consequently, pneumonia accounted for the majority (79 percent) of the approximately 200,000 Hib-related deaths worldwide in children ages 1–59 months in 2010 (WHO 2013h).

The multiple formulations of Hib conjugate vaccines include several different conjugated proteins and combination vaccines, such as the most widely used pentavalent vaccine (DTP–Hepatitis B–Hib). Hib conjugate vaccines are more than 80 percent effective against Hib meningitis, sepsis, and bacteremic pneumonia; in most Sub-Saharan African countries that have introduced Hib vaccine into the national program, Hib disease has virtually disappeared (Adegbola and others 2005; Cowgill and others 2006; WHO 2006b). However, Hib vaccines likely have reduced efficacy in HIV-infected children, and evidence from South Africa suggests a booster dose might be required (Mangtani and others 2010). In many settings, three doses of Hib vaccine in infancy may control the disease and do not appear to increase rates of *H. influenzae* disease caused by serotypes other than type b (Ribeiro and others 2007; Zanella and others 2011). By 2013, 186 countries had introduced Hib vaccines, and as of 2014, all 73 Gavi countries vaccinated against Hib along sides hepatitis B, diphtheria, tetanus, and pertussis through the pentavalent vaccine as part of their routine infant immunization programs.

Future needs include introduction of Hib vaccine into countries that have not yet introduced it, particularly in Asia.

**Pneumococcal Conjugate Vaccine**

*Streptococcus pneumoniae*, the pneumococcus, is a Gram-positive encapsulated bacterium commonly found in the respiratory tract. Pneumococci are surrounded by polysaccharide capsules that confer serotype; more than 90 pneumococcal serotypes have been identified, although a limited number cause most disease. Pneumococcal disease is the leading bacterial cause of pneumonia in children and also causes meningitis and septicemia. The CFR of pneumococcal disease worldwide is approximately 5 percent (range 4 percent to 9 percent), but it is more than double that rate in Sub-Saharan Africa (CFR 11 percent; range 7 percent to 18 percent) (O’Brien and others 2009). About 90 percent of pneumococcal deaths are due to pneumonia. Pneumococcal meningitis, though rare, has a higher CFR of 59 percent (range 27 percent to 80 percent); it can be as high as 73 percent in Sub-Saharan Africa. Before widespread pneumococcal conjugate vaccination, pneumococcus caused an
estimated 826,000 deaths (O’Brien and others 2009) in 2000, and 541,000 deaths among children younger than age five years worldwide in 2008 (WHO 2013b).

Pneumococcal conjugate vaccines are at least 80 percent effective against meningitis, septicemia, and bacteremic pneumonia (Lucero and others 2009); like Hib vaccines, pneumococcal conjugates likely have reduced efficacy in HIV-infected children (Klugman and others 2003). Two pneumococcal conjugate vaccines are currently commercially available; one contains the conjugated polysaccharides of 10 serotypes, and the other contains 13 serotypes. Evidence suggests that declines in disease caused by vaccine serotypes with pneumococcal conjugate vaccine use may be partially offset by increased disease due to nonvaccine serotypes (referred to as serotype replacement); however, according to one meta-analysis of invasive pneumococcal disease in high-income countries, childhood vaccination resulted in 50 percent reductions in pneumococcal disease overall, despite some serotype replacement (Feikin and others 2013). Introduction of pneumococcal conjugate vaccine into Asian countries has lagged Gavi-supported introduction into Africa.

**Rotavirus Vaccine**

Rotavirus, a member of the reovirus family, causes watery diarrhea that can lead to dehydration and death. It is the leading cause of childhood diarrhea-related mortality worldwide (Parashar and others 2003), responsible for an estimated 453,000 deaths in 2008 (Tate and others 2012). Rotavirus accounts for 35 percent to 50 percent of acute severe diarrhea in children, varying by region (Mwenda and others 2010), with the highest proportions in children younger than age one year (Kotloff and others 2013). Unlike bacterial and parasitic causes of diarrhea, the occurrence of rotavirus diarrhea is not higher in settings with poor water, sanitation, and hygiene. A recent study of moderate-to-severe diarrhea in seven low-income settings found a CFR from rotavirus presenting to a health facility of 2.5 percent (Kotloff and others 2013). This figure is higher in areas without good access to health care (Feikin and others 2012) (see Keusch and others 2016, chapter 9 in this volume).

Two rotavirus vaccines are commercially available (WHO 2009). Both have been efficacious in randomized controlled trials in low-income settings, with efficacies generally ranging from 50 percent to 80 percent against rotavirus diarrhea; the lowest efficacy was seen in lower-socioeconomic, higher-mortality countries (Armah and others 2010; Madhi and others 2010). Nonetheless, because of higher rates of disease in these countries, the number of serious rotavirus infections prevented is likely to be higher, and the WHO strongly recommends rotavirus vaccine use in these countries (WHO 2009). Lower-cost rotavirus vaccines are still needed (Bharat Biotech 2011). Infants who receive rotavirus vaccines have a slightly elevated risk of a rare but serious condition called intussusception, which can result in potentially fatal bowel obstruction, although increased incidence of intussusception is small relative to the overall impact of the vaccine (Patel and others 2012; Patel and others 2011). Future needs include development of vaccines with improved efficacy in high-burden countries and introduction of rotavirus vaccine into high-burden Asian countries.

**Rubella Vaccine**

The rubella virus, a member of the togavirus family, is one of the most teratogenic viruses known. In the absence of vaccination, rubella is a common cause of febrile rash illness in children, often misdiagnosed as measles. Infection of susceptible women early in pregnancy can result in miscarriage, fetal death, or a constellation of congenital defects known as congenital rubella syndrome (CRS) in up to 90 percent of infected infants. The incidence of rubella and CRS has been reduced in many high-burden countries following implementation of rubella vaccination strategies.

The goal of rubella vaccination in high-burden countries is to prevent the substantial disease burden associated with CRS. It is estimated that more than 100,000 CRS cases occur worldwide each year (Vynnycky, Gay, and Cutts 2003). Through 2013, 137 countries have included rubella-containing vaccines in national immunization schedules; the introduction of rubella vaccination in Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa lags other regions (WHO 2011b). Live-attenuated rubella virus vaccines were first licensed in 1970, but they were not included in EPI programs because of concerns that suboptimal vaccine coverage could delay age at natural rubella virus infection and result in higher incidence among women of childbearing age, paradoxically increasing the risk of CRS. Since 2011, the WHO has recommended introduction of rubella vaccination strategies as part of measles control and elimination activities, taking advantage of the availability of combined measles-rubella (MR) and measles-mumps-rubella (MMR) vaccines (WHO 2011b).

The preferred strategy for the introduction of rubella vaccination is to begin with MR/MMR vaccine in a campaign targeting a wide range of ages, in combination with universal childhood vaccination (Reef and Plotkin 2013). The first dose of combined MR vaccine can be delivered at age 9 months or 12 months, depending on the level of measles virus transmission (WHO 2011b). The effectiveness is at least 95 percent, even at age 9 months; only
one dose of rubella vaccine is required to achieve rubella elimination if high coverage is achieved (WHO 2011b).

**Meningococcal Meningitis Serogroup A Conjugate Vaccine**

*Neisseria meningitidis*, also referred to as the meningococcus, is a Gram-negative encapsulated bacterium transmitted by respiratory droplets that can cause severe bloodstream infections and meningitis; it is the leading cause of bacterial meningitis in many LMICs. Explosive outbreaks of meningococcal meningitis occur with high attack rates and case fatality across broad age ranges. Six *N. meningitidis* serogroups (A, B, C, W, X, Y) cause almost all cases, although prevalence varies temporally and geographically. Sub-Saharan African countries from Senegal to Ethiopia in a zone referred to as *the meningitis belt* have experienced frequent and devastating epidemics of meningococcal meningitis, most often caused by serogroup A meningococcal strains. From 1993 to 2012, countries in the meningitis belt reported nearly 1 million meningitis cases, including 100,000 deaths (WHO 2013f).

Meningococcal vaccines prevent diseases caused by specific serogroups: vaccines against serogroups A, C, W, and Y contain purified polysaccharide alone or conjugated to carrier proteins (based on diphtheria or tetanus toxoids), while serogroup B vaccines contain outer membrane vesicles extracted from outbreak strains with the addition of recombinant proteins. Conjugate vaccines provide better long-lasting immunity, particularly in children younger than age two years, and indirect protection of unvaccinated groups through the reduction of disease transmission. Meningococcal conjugate vaccines have been introduced into routine immunization programs in many high-burden countries. In 2010, a serogroup A meningococcal conjugate vaccine developed by the Meningitis Vaccine Project, with funding from the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, was licensed for use in countries in the meningitis belt (LaForce and Okwo-Bele 2011). In the Sub-Saharan African meningitis belt, the WHO recommends mass vaccination of the population ages 1–29 years (WHO 2011a), a highly effective strategy for prevention of serogroup A meningococcal disease (Novak and others 2012), followed by routine childhood vaccination with a single dose at age 9–18 months (WHO 2015b).

**Yellow Fever Vaccine**

Yellow fever is a viral hemorrhagic fever that was one of the most feared epidemic diseases in the world before vaccination. Despite the availability of an effective vaccine, yellow fever continues to cause an estimated 84,000 to 170,000 severe cases annually, with 29,000 to 60,000 deaths (WHO 2013e). Most reported cases and deaths occur in 31 endemic Sub-Saharan African countries with a total population of 610 million, more than 33 percent of whom live in urban settings. Since the 1980s, yellow fever has reemerged in some areas or appeared for the first time in others.

Yellow fever vaccines contain live-attenuated virus and have been used since the 1930s (Monath and others 2013). Routine infant immunization against yellow fever is only recommended in 44 at-risk countries and territories, of which 35 included yellow fever vaccine in their routine infant immunization schedules in 2013. A single dose of yellow fever vaccine at age nine months or later is assumed to provide lifelong immunity.

**Japanese Encephalitis Vaccine**

Japanese encephalitis (JE) is the most common cause of viral encephalitis in Asia (WHO 2013c). JE virus, a flavivirus, is transmitted by mosquitoes in natural cycles involving domestic pigs or water birds; human disease is common in areas with rice cultivation and pig farming. Of the estimated 67,900 annual cases in the 24 endemic countries, 51,000 (75 percent) occur in children ages 0–14 years, resulting in about 10,000 deaths and 15,000 cases of long-term neuropsychiatric sequelae (Campbell and others 2011). Reported cases underestimate geographic distribution of risk because of underreporting and occurrence of disease in less than 1 percent of human infections (Halstead, Jacobson, and Dubischar-Kastner 2013). In recent decades, outbreaks have occurred in several previously nonendemic areas.

The WHO recommends the introduction of JE immunization through EPI programs in areas where JE constitutes a public health problem (WHO 2006a). In 2012, JE vaccines were used in immunization programs in 11 (46 percent) of 24 at-risk countries (WHO 2013c). The most effective strategy for controlling JE has been to conduct wide age-range (catch-up) vaccination followed by routine infant immunization. In upper-middle- and high-income economies—including Japan; the Republic of Korea; and Taiwan, China—routine immunization since 1965 using inactivated, mouse-brain-derived vaccine has successfully controlled the disease (Halstead, Jacobson, and Dubischar-Kastner 2013). However, disadvantages of the mouse-brain vaccine include the need for multiple doses, frequent boosting, and high prices (WHO 2006a). In 2013, the WHO and the United Nations Children's Fund approved a live-attenuated JE vaccine from a Chinese manufacturer based on the SA 14-14-2 strain, which induces protection for several years after one or two doses (WHO 2013g). Approval of the live-attenuated JE vaccine should increase access in endemic countries.
Additional and Future Vaccines with Potential Public Health Impacts in Young Children

Malaria Vaccine
Approximately 198 million malaria cases and 584,000 malaria deaths occurred globally in 2013; most deaths were in young children living in Sub-Saharan Africa (WHO 2015c). *Plasmodium falciparum* is the most virulent of the five *Plasmodium* species that cause human malaria. The RTS,S/AS01 candidate malaria vaccine is a partially effective vaccine that targets the pre-erythrocytic stage of the *P. falciparum* parasite resulting in a reduction in the number of clinical malaria episodes experienced. RTS,S/AS01 recently underwent testing in a large phase 3 clinical trial, the final stage before licensure. In total, 15,460 children and young infants participated in the trial, which was conducted at 11 sites in seven Sub-Saharan African countries across a wide range of malaria transmission levels (RTS,S Clinical Trials Partnership 2015). Among children ages 5–17 months at first vaccination followed for a median of 48 months, RTS,S/AS01 vaccine efficacy against clinical malaria was 37 percent (95 percent confidence interval 32–41) when the primary vaccination series of three doses administered monthly was followed by a booster given 18 months after the primary vaccination series, and 28 percent (95 percent confidence interval 23–33) when no booster was given. Vaccine efficacy was lower in young infants who received the primary vaccination series coadministered with EPI vaccines beginning at ages 6–12 weeks: 26 percent (95 percent confidence interval 20–32) with a booster and 18 percent (95 percent confidence interval 12–24) without. Despite modest efficacy estimates, the impact was substantial: 1,774 cases of clinical malaria were averted per 1,000 children vaccinated when a booster was administered; 1,363 cases were averted without a booster. The number of cases averted per 1,000 young infants was 983 in those who received a booster and 558 in those who did not. Meningitis and febrile seizures were reported more frequently in those who received a booster. The number of cases averted per 1,000 children vaccinated when a booster was administered; 1,363 cases were averted with- out a booster. The number of cases averted per 1,000 young infants was 983 in those who received a booster and 558 in those who did not. Meningitis and febrile seizures were reported more frequently in those who received the RTS,S/AS01 primary vaccination series than in those in the comparator group.

In July 2015, the European Medicines Agency issued a positive scientific opinion on RTS,S/AS01 for the prevention of malaria in children in Sub-Saharan Africa. Subsequently, the WHO’s Strategic Advisory Group of Experts on Immunization and the Malaria Policy Advisory Committee reviewed the evidence on RTS,S/AS01 efficacy and safety as well as other relevant information surrounding vaccine implementation. In October 2015, the WHO advisory groups recommended the implementation of the vaccine through pilot projects designed to better understand how well the vaccine can be implemented and to further assess the relationship of safety signals to the vaccine (WHO 2015d). The WHO is considering these recommendations and was expected to provide guidance in early 2016. RTS,S/AS01 may become the first malaria vaccine licensed for use in children in Sub-Saharan African countries (RTS,S Clinical Trials Partnership 2015).

Influenza Vaccine
Influenza viruses are orthomyxoviruses that cause respiratory illness, ranging from mild febrile illness to severe pneumonia. Because influenza viruses change rapidly, vaccines are reformulated and delivered annually through routine immunization or seasonal campaigns. Influenza viruses infecting humans are transmitted person to person, mostly by droplets and aerosols from the respiratory secretions of infected people. Influenza viruses cause seasonal influenza epidemics, mostly in the winter months in temperate climates, with less distinct seasonality in the tropics. Influenza has an annual attack rate of 5 percent to 10 percent in adults and 20 percent to 30 percent in children. When complicated by subsequent bacterial pneumonia, influenza infections can have high mortality rates. In general, the role of influenza in LMICs has been underestimated. A review suggests that 6.5 percent of hospital admissions for respiratory illness among Sub-Saharan African children were due to influenza (Gessner, Shindo, and Briand 2011). Another meta-analysis estimates that 28,000 to 111,500 influenza-associated deaths occur annually in children, with 99 percent occurring in LMICs (Nair and others 2013).

Licensed influenza vaccines include inactivated or live-attenuated influenza type A and B viruses. Inactivated influenza vaccines (IIVs) are administered by injection; live-attenuated virus vaccines are delivered as nasal spray. Only IIV is licensed for children younger than age two years. Two doses of influenza vaccine given four weeks apart are recommended during the first season a child is vaccinated. Vaccine effectiveness varies annually according to protection provided against circulating influenza viruses, but in general, vaccination has provided significant protection in children (Jefferson and others 2012), although few studies of vaccine effectiveness have been conducted among children in LMICs (WHO 2012b). Maternal influenza immunization has gained support as a way of protecting infants too young to be vaccinated against influenza disease. A study in Bangladesh shows that giving influenza vaccine to pregnant women led to an efficacy of 63 percent against lab-confirmed influenza and 29 percent against febrile respiratory illness in their infants’ first six months of life (Zaman and others 2008). Maternal influenza vaccination with IIV is now recommended in some countries and is being studied in LMICs as a method for preventing influenza in young infants (CDC 2013;
WHO 2012a). No cost-effectiveness data on the use of influenza vaccine in LMICs are available. The WHO suggests that countries make their respective decisions on influenza vaccines based on local disease burden, resources, capacity, and other health priorities (WHO 2012a).

**Oral Cholera Vaccine**

Cholera is caused by ingestion of toxigenic serogroups (O1 and O139) of *Vibrio cholerae* bacteria, leading to diarrhea, dehydration, and rapid death. Periodically, new strains of *V. cholerae* emerge to cause pandemics. In 1970, the seventh pandemic strain appeared in Sub-Saharan Africa, where it is now endemic and accounts for the majority of cholera mortality (Mintz and Guerrant 2009). Cholera incidence and mortality is greatest in children (Ali and others 2012; Deen and others 2008), who account for 50 percent of all cholera deaths. Globally, cholera kills at least 45,000 children under five years annually; this number is likely to be twice as high when considering out-of-hospital mortality (Ali and others 2012; Sack 2014). In 2010, cholera was introduced into Haiti following a massive earthquake, causing more than 500,000 cases (Barzilay and others 2013). Although the cholera CFR can be less than 1 percent in settings with good access to health care and proper treatment, these conditions rarely exist in most LMICs, where CFRs often exceed 5 percent and can be as high as 50 percent during outbreaks (Gaffga, Tauxe, and Mintz 2007; WHO 2010a). Non-vaccine delivery costs can account for nearly half of the total costs of vaccination (Brenzel 2015; Gandhi and others 2013). An updated estimate in Gavi-eligible countries was estimated to be spent in India, Nigeria, and Pakistan (Gandhi and others 2013; Lydon and others 2008). There was substantial variability by WHO region, with Europe having the highest costs and South-East Asia and the Western Pacific regions the lowest; more than one-third of the total projected cost of vaccination from 2011 to 2020 (US$57.5 billion) is expected to be spent in India, Nigeria, and Pakistan (Gandhi and others 2013). Non-vaccine delivery costs can account for nearly half of the total costs of vaccination (Brenzel 2015; Gandhi and others 2013; Lydon and others 2008).

As highly effective yet more expensive vaccines become available, many countries with already-strained resources will have to find the right balance between increasing coverage with available vaccines in often hard-to-reach areas or introducing new vaccines into the national immunization schedule.

A systematic review of cost-effectiveness analyses from 44 published articles of 23 vaccines in 51 countries finds that vaccines cost less than US$100 per DALY averted in more than half of the articles, and less than...
Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health

US$1,000 per DALY averted in nearly 90 percent of the articles (Horton, Wu, and Brouwer 2015).

Table 10.2 shows the relative cost-effectiveness of different vaccines using the accepted metric of cost per DALY averted. For comparison, if the cost per DALY averted for an intervention is less than per capita gross national income (GNI), it is very cost-effective; if less than three times per capita GNI, it is cost-effective (WHO 2001). Those vaccines in the third column are very cost-effective in upper-middle-income countries, as long as cost per DALY does not exceed US$4,087, the cutoff in 2012 between lower-middle- and upper-middle-income countries, per the World Bank. A more detailed analysis of cost-effectiveness of vaccines is presented in chapter 17 in this volume (Horton and Levin 2016).

**Direct Social and Economic Benefits**

Immunization coverage has traditionally been monitored using DTP3 coverage or measles vaccine coverage as indicators. Most countries now deliver DTP through newer combination vaccines—for example, as of 2014, all 73 Gavi countries were using the pentavalent vaccine that combines Hib and hepatitis B with DTP. However, even though DTP3 coverage in 2013 was high—84 percent globally and 76 percent in the 73 Gavi countries—fewer than 5 percent of children received all 11 WHO-recommended immunizations. Clearly, immunization platforms are effective in reaching many children with some vaccines, but large gaps in protection remain.

The timeliness of vaccination is critical, particularly for diseases for which most mortality occurs in the first six months of life, for example, pertussis and Hib. Additionally, timely vaccination ensures maximal herd immunity and protects those who are too young to be fully vaccinated (Akmatov and others 2008; Clark and Sanderson 2009; Patel and others 2011). A review of immunization timeliness in 45 countries found a median delay of six weeks for receipt of DTP3; in countries with the greatest delays, 25 percent of children received DTP3 at least 19 weeks late (Clark and Sanderson 2009).

Fully immunized children who receive on-time vaccinations obtain the greatest protection and greatest reduction of the risk of mortality in the first six months of life from preventable childhood diseases. Such immunization also conveys broader direct social and economic benefits, leading to greater adult productivity and contributing to economic development. Directly averting illness through immunization can lead to lower medical costs and missed wages by caretakers. Vaccines that prevent diseases that cause disabilities have improved school enrollment and attainment rates (Simmerman and others 2006) and cognitive ability linked to test scores (Bloom, Canning, and Seiguer 2011), thereby increasing a population’s human capital in the long term (Bloom, Canning, and Jamison 2004). Ozawa and others (2012) quantify the impact of vaccination on health care cost saving, care-related productivity gains, and outcome-related productivity gains.

Most of the evidence on the economic benefit of vaccines has been for health care savings and care-related productivity gains that directly affect the finances of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 10.2</th>
<th>Approximate Range of Cost-Effectiveness of Various Childhood Vaccines, Various Contexts (2012 U.S. dollars per DALY averted)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt; US$100/DALY&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>US$100 to &lt;US$1,036/DALY&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Original EPI-6: BCG, DTP, measles, polio</td>
<td>Haemophilus influenzae type B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatitis B</td>
<td>Yellow fever, where endemic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumococcus, high-child-mortality countries</td>
<td>Japanese encephalitis, where endemic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotavirus, high-child-mortality countries</td>
<td>Pneumococcus, medium-child-mortality countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotavirus, medium-child-mortality countries</td>
<td>Rotavirus, medium-child-mortality countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningitis A, where endemic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: For details on sources and references, see table 17.1 of chapter 17 of this volume (Horton and Levin 2016).

Note: EPI = Expanded Program on Immunization; BCG = Bacille Calmette-Guérin; DALY = disability-adjusted life year; DTP = diphtheria, tetanus, and pertussis. For vaccines, cost-effectiveness is sensitive to vaccine price as well as variability in underlying disease burden by country.

a. Vaccines in the first column are very cost-effective in all low-income countries because cost per DALY averted is less than per capita gross national income (GNI) of even the poorest low-income country (World Bank definition of “low-income country” is per capita GNI of less than US$1,035 in 2012 and in 2012 the per capita income of the poorest low-income country was approximately US$250).

b. Vaccines in the second column are very cost-effective in all lower-middle-income countries (World Bank definition of “lower-middle-income country” is per capita GNI in 2012 ranging between US$1,036 and US$4,086).

c. Vaccines in the third column may be very cost-effective in upper-middle-income countries (World Bank definition of “upper-middle-income country” is per capita GNI in 2012 ranging between US$4,086 and $12,615).
the vaccinated child’s household. These savings can greatly affect household economies and health system expenditures in resource-strained settings. Scaling up coverage with vaccines against pneumococcal disease, Hib, rotavirus, pertussis, measles, and malaria to 90 percent over 10 years could save US$62 billion in treatment costs and avert US$1.2 million in caretaker lost wages in 73 Gavi-supported countries (Stack and others 2011).

**Indirect Social and Economic Benefits**

The wider indirect economic impact of vaccines on societies lies beyond vaccinated households. Many childhood vaccines have proven to have additional value by protecting persons who are still susceptible to infection, including those who are too young and too old to be vaccinated, through a mechanism referred to as herd protection, herd immunity, or community immunity. This indirect impact of vaccination has been shown for many vaccines, including those against measles, Hib, influenza, meningococcus, and pneumococcus (Fine, Eames, and Heymann 2011; Fine and Mulholland 2013). When the disease burden is large in adults, more disease is possibly prevented among unvaccinated adults than among vaccinated children, as has been shown in the United States with pneumococcal conjugate vaccine (CDC 2005).

- Between 1995 and 2001, the seven routine vaccines in the United States resulted in an estimated savings of US$10 billion in direct costs and US$43 billion in societal costs (Zhou and others 2005).
- Averting morbidity and mortality by scaling up the six original EPI vaccines to 90 percent over 10 years could increase productivity in 73 Gavi-eligible countries by US$145 billion over the lifetime of vaccinated children (Stack and others 2011).
- Behavior-related productivity gains due to vaccination include the effects of longer life expectancies (Bloom, Canning, and Weston 2005; Meij and others 2009) and alleviated poverty (Bawah and others 2010) on societal productivity. By 2020, the investments by Gavi could result in internal rates of return of 18 percent (Bloom, Canning, and Weston 2005).
- Finally, preventing outbreaks through immunization saves societies the opportunity cost of reacting to outbreaks after they have occurred. For example, modeling (Khan 2008) shows that introducing IPV in the 148 countries using OPV would save US$163 million in poliomyelitis outbreak containment costs per year over 10 years.

**CONCLUSION**

Vaccines have been one of the most important forces in reducing childhood mortality during the past 40 years. With the advent of new vaccines and the promise of others, immunizations have the potential to further drive down childhood mortality and deliver broader health and economic benefits. Remaining challenges need to be addressed in the coming decade:

- Progress in controlling and eliminating many diseases—including polio, measles, rubella, meningococcal meningitis, yellow fever, and JE—will increasingly depend on coordination between routine immunization services and supplementary immunization activities, including mass vaccination. It is important to ensure that supplementary immunization activities are planned and implemented in such a manner that they strengthen routine immunization programs, wherever possible.
- Immunization programs need to reduce disparities in levels of effective vaccination coverage and to monitor progress in fully immunizing children.
- Additional resources are required for immunization programs as new vaccines become available and national governments assume greater shares of program costs.
- The number of immunization visits required to ensure full immunization coverage of all recommended vaccines has increased relative to the original EPI schedule, which served as the foundation for delivering many interventions. These schedule changes lead to logistical and programmatic challenges and require enhancements to health workforce and program capacities. They also present opportunities to strengthen the delivery of other services in coordination with vaccination.
- Innovations are needed to make vaccine delivery easier, such as heat-stable vaccines that do not require cold chain, and to provide alternate delivery mechanisms, such as microneedle patches.
- Programs need to work to improve immunization timeliness and take advantage of opportunities to provide multiple interventions.
- Newer vaccines (for example, rotavirus vaccine and malaria vaccine) may be less effective than traditional EPI vaccines but may prevent a substantial burden of disease, given the high incidence of these diseases (Gessner and Feikin 2014). The evaluation process for vaccines will likely need to shift from an exclusive focus on vaccine efficacy to a focus on the vaccine-preventable disease burden.
Despite these challenges, immunization will remain central to childhood disease prevention, and the well-child visit will continue to serve as the axis upon which preventive activities evolve. The unprecedented momentum in global immunizations during the past decade must be sustained. To maximize the health and economic well-being of populations, it is especially important to fully immunize children with all recommended vaccines and to effectively use immunization as a platform to deliver other cost-effective and lifesaving services as part of a comprehensive well-child approach.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors recognize and thank the following individuals for their contributions to the impact estimates described in this chapter: Andrew Clark, Matthew Ferrari, Heather Franklin, Ingrid K. Friberg, Tini Garske, Sue Goldie, Gavin Grant, Hope Johnson, Lisa Lee, Michelle Li, Andrew Mirelman, Susan Reef, Sachiko Ozawa, Anushua Sinha, Chutima Suraratdecha, Steven Sweet, Yvonne Tam, Emilia Vynnycky, Damian Walker, and Neff Walker.

REFERENCES


CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention). 2005. "Direct and Indirect Effects of Routine Vaccination of


Jefferson, T., A. Rivetti, C. Di Pietrantoni, V. Demicheli, and H. Horton. 2015. “Methods and


INTRODUCTION

Each year, approximately 5.9 million children around the world die before their fifth birthday (You and others 2015). The leading killers are prematurity and pneumonia, responsible for 17.8 percent and 15.5 percent of all deaths in this age group, respectively (Liu and others 2014, 2016). Degrees of malnutrition are associated with increased risk of all-cause mortality and increased risk of death due to diarrhea, pneumonia, and measles (Black and others 2013).

Defining Malnutrition

The term malnutrition is multifaceted. It encompasses both overnutrition, associated with overweight and obesity, and undernutrition, referring to multiple conditions including acute and chronic malnutrition and micronutrient deficiencies.

Chronic malnutrition results from insufficient intake or absorption of essential nutrients over a protracted period. Stunting (short stature for age), the most commonly used indicator of chronic malnutrition, is associated with developmental impairments and reduced economic potential later in life (Black and others 2008; Grantham-McGregor and others 2007). Micronutrient deficiencies are a form of chronic malnutrition that can have marked impacts on health, development, and productivity over the lifespan. Because visible signs are not always present, micronutrient deficiencies are often referred to as hidden hunger (see Das and others [2015], chapter 12 in this volume). The impacts of chronic malnutrition are particularly pronounced when they occur in the first years of life, a period of rapid growth and development.

Acute malnutrition results from sudden reductions in food intake or diet quality and is often combined with pathological causes. Acute malnutrition has been defined in various ways and has been referred to by various names with partially overlapping definitions, including protein-energy malnutrition, wasting, kwashiorkor, and marasmus. In this chapter, we use acute malnutrition and wasting interchangeably. Acute malnutrition, or wasting, is defined using anthropometric cutoffs and clinical signs. The currently accepted definitions, set out by the WHO, are as follows:

- **Moderate acute malnutrition (MAM)**, defined as weight-for-height\(^1\) z-score (WHZ) between −2 and −3 or mid-upper arm circumference (MUAC) between 115 millimeters and <125 millimeters (WHO 2012)
- **Severe acute malnutrition (SAM)**, defined as WHZ < −3 or MUAC < 115 millimeters, or the presence of bilateral pitting edema, or both (WHO 2013)
• **Global acute malnutrition (GAM)** refers to MAM and SAM together; it is used as a measurement of nutritional status at a population level and as an indicator of the severity of an emergency situation (GNC 2014).

Marasmus and kwashiorkor are common terms historically used to differentiate between types of SAM. Marasmus refers to children who are very thin for their height (that is, they meet the WHZ or MUAC cutoff) but do not have bilateral pitting edema; kwashiorkor refers to edematous malnutrition. The most recent WHO terminology for SAM has replaced these terms.

**Risk Factors and Causes of Undernutrition**

Undernutrition results from the complex interplay of a range of distal and proximal factors, as illustrated by the United Nations Children’s Fund’s (UNICEF) conceptual framework for undernutrition (figure 11.1) (UNICEF 2013). The framework defines basic, underlying, and immediate causes of undernutrition and demonstrates how these causes are interconnected. This general framework also aids in conceptualizing the reasons why children might develop acute malnutrition.

Based on scientific literature investigating the relationships among specific individual, household, and environmental factors and the development of acute malnutrition in children, the following are significant risk factors for MAM and SAM:

- Inadequate dietary intake
- Inappropriate feeding
- Fetal growth restriction
- Inadequate sanitation
- Lack of parental education
- Family size
- Incomplete vaccination
- Poverty
- Economic, political, and environmental instability and emergency situations.

![Figure 11.1 Conceptual Framework of Determinants of Undernutrition](Source: UNICEF 2013.)
A study in India demonstrates the impact of infant and young child feeding as well as water, sanitation, and hygiene (WASH) on wasting (Menon and others 2013). The authors found that improved dietary diversity and improved WASH were associated with better nutritional outcomes in children in India; they concluded that integrated interventions targeted to both these risk factors would have a greater impact than single interventions (Menon and others 2013).

Poverty is another risk factor for wasting (Islam and others 2013; Meshram and others 2012), as are unsafe drinking water sources and lack of latrines (Islam and others 2013). Economically disadvantaged families are less likely to have access to improved sources of drinking water, such as water from pipes or tubewells, and are less likely to have access to latrines. One study finds these to be risk factors independent of the wealth index (Islam and others 2013). Another study, which does not assess WASH indicators, finds that the family wealth index to be significantly associated with wasting (Meshram and others 2012). Both studies also find larger family sizes to be associated with an increased risk of wasting (Islam and others 2013; Meshram and others 2012), as does a study in Pakistan (Laghari and others 2013).

Several studies in Bangladesh, India, and Pakistan demonstrate a correlation between low parental education and increased risk of wasting in children (Islam and others 2013; Laghari and others 2013; Long and others 2013; Menon and others 2013; Meshram and others 2012).

A study in Burkina Faso finds incomplete vaccinations and maternal literacy status to be risk factors for wasting relapse (Somasse and others 2013).

Finally, investigators studying the correlation between fetal growth restriction and child wasting find that infants born small for gestational age or those with low birth weight were at a significantly increased risk of being wasted at 24 months (Cao, Wang, and Zeng 2013). Additionally, low birth weight was found to be a risk factor for SAM in children under age five years in Pakistan (Laghari and others 2013).

Incidence of SAM is exacerbated during emergencies, such as drought, famine, or conflict (Hall, Blankson, and Shoham 2011). Indicators such as household food consumption, harvest yield, and staple food prices are early warning signs of imminent food insecurity, followed by increases in the incidence of SAM or GAM (Hall, Blankson, and Shoham 2011).

**Consequences of Acute Malnutrition**

SAM and MAM are significant public health concerns and disproportionately affect populations in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs). MAM affects 32.8 million children worldwide, 31.8 million of whom reside in LMICs (Black and others 2013). SAM affects 18.7 million children worldwide; 18.5 million of those children reside in LMICs (Black and others 2013).

Map 11.1 shows the prevalence of wasting in children under age five years worldwide. The rates

---

**Map 11.1 Percentage of Children under Age Five Years Who Are Moderately or Severely Wasted, 2007–11**


Note: Data for India are not for the same period as the other countries.
of SAM and MAM are highest in the South-East Asia region and parts of the Africa region; indeed, 70 percent of all wasted children reside in Asia (Black and others 2013).

National wasting statistics can be accessed online through the Joint Malnutrition data set published by UNICEF, the WHO, and the World Bank (UNICEF 2014b; UNICEF, WHO, and World Bank 2012). Rates of SAM and MAM vary widely at subnational levels, particularly where large disparities in income and food security exist; the availability of subnational statistics on wasting also varies widely.

The degree of wasting is positively correlated with an increase in the risk of death (Black and others 2013). Table 11.1 shows all-cause and cause-specific hazard ratios for mortality by degree of wasting. Of the deaths under age five years, 11.5 percent, or approximately 800,000, can be attributed to acute malnutrition (Black and others 2013); SAM is responsible for 540,000 of these deaths (Black and others 2013). Children with acute malnutrition have severely disturbed physiology and metabolism and need to be treated with caution. Simple refeeding can lead to high rates of mortality, and cases can be especially difficult to manage if additional medical complications are present (discussed further under “Treatment of Severe Acute Malnutrition”). Specific guidelines, supported by available evidence and expertise, have been developed for managing these cases and are discussed later in this chapter.

In addition to increasing the risk of death due to infectious illness, wasting increases a child’s susceptibility to infections and the severity of illnesses (Laghari and others 2013; Long and others 2013; Meshram and others 2012; UNICEF 2013). Malnutrition has serious physiological consequences, including reductive adaptation, marked immunosuppression, and concurrent infection (Collins, Dent, and others 2006). The relationship between malnutrition and infection is often described as a vicious cycle that begins with infections, especially diarrhea, and progresses to undernourishment. The undernourishment, in turn, increases the risk of prolonged illness and the susceptibility to additional infection. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection exacerbates the risk of wasting as well as mortality due to wasting (Sadler and others 2006).

### PREVENTION OF ACUTE MALNUTRITION

**Providing Adequate Nutrition and Disease Prevention Strategies**

Key interventions to prevent the development of acute malnutrition include appropriate breastfeeding and complementary feeding practices (Bhutta, Das, Rizvi, and others 2013). Disease prevention strategies are important in breaking the infection–malnutrition cycle, particularly related to diarrhea and repeated respiratory infections (Bhutta, Das, Walker and others 2013). The evidence on effective approaches to preventing malnutrition focuses on stunting and underweight as outcomes and may not be completely transferrable to prevention of wasting. However, an integrated approach to optimizing healthy growth in infants and children can have an important impact on reducing rates of wasting.

**Therapeutic Foods for Preventing andTreating Acute Malnutrition**

Treatment approaches are discussed in detail in subsequent sections; here we introduce some of the commonly used specially formulated therapeutic foods.

F75 and F100 are specially formulated milks used in inpatient settings to treat SAM. F75 is given in the stabilization phase of inpatient treatment; children are provided with approximately 80–100 kilocalories per kilogram per day (kcal/kg/d) spread over 8–12 meals per day for three to seven days. F75 is not designed for weight gain (personal communication, Nutriset; UNICEF 2014a). F100 is given during the rehabilitation phase of inpatient treatment (Bhutta, Das, Walker and others 2013). F100 is given in the rehabilitation phase of inpatient treatment (Bhutta, Das, Walker and others 2013). F100 is given in the rehabilitation phase of inpatient treatment (Bhutta, Das, Walker and others 2013). F100 is given in the rehabilitation phase of inpatient treatment (Bhutta, Das, Walker and others 2013). F100 is given in the rehabilitation phase of inpatient treatment (Bhutta, Das, Walker and others 2013). F100 is given in the rehabilitation phase of inpatient treatment (Bhutta, Das, Walker and others 2013).

### Table 11.1 Hazard Ratios of All-Cause and Cause-Specific Deaths, by Degree of Wasting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight-for-height z-score</th>
<th>All deaths HR (95% CI)</th>
<th>Pneumonia deaths HR (95% CI)</th>
<th>Diarrhea deaths HR (95% CI)</th>
<th>Measles deaths HR (95% CI)</th>
<th>Other infectious deaths HR (95% CI)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-3 to -2</td>
<td>3.4 [2.9, 4.0]</td>
<td>4.7 [3.1, 7.1]</td>
<td>3.4 [2.5, 4.6]</td>
<td>2.6 [1.3, 5.1]</td>
<td>2.7 [1.4, 5.5]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-2 to &lt;-1</td>
<td>1.6 [1.4, 1.9]</td>
<td>1.9 [1.3, 2.8]</td>
<td>1.6 [1.2, 2.1]</td>
<td>1.0 [0.6, 1.9]</td>
<td>1.7 [1.0, 2.8]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;= -1</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sources: Black and others 2013; Olofin and others 2013.

Note: CI = confidence interval; HR = hazard ratio.
phase of inpatient treatment of SAM, providing children with approximately 100–200 kcal/kg/d for three to four weeks (personal communication, Nutriset; UNICEF 2014a). Because F75 and F100 require preparation and have high moisture content, they cannot be stored for long at room temperature for food safety reasons, and are not given to caretakers to prepare at home (UNICEF 2014a).

Ready-to-use-foods (RUFs) are specially formulated bars, pastes, or biscuits that provide varying ranges of high-quality protein, energy, and micronutrients. These products are more nutrient dense than available home foods and do not require preparation; they typically have very low moisture content and are resistant to microbes. With use of each of these products, continued breastfeeding is recommended.

- Ready-to-use therapeutic foods (RUTFs), such as Plumpy’Nut are designed for the treatment of uncomplicated SAM.
- Ready-to-use supplementary foods (RUSFs), such as Plumpy’Sup, are designed as a supplement to treat MAM.
- Medium-quantity lipid-based nutrient supplements (LNSs), such as Plumpy’Doz, are designed as a supplement to prevent MAM.

Fortified blended flours (FBFs) are an additional class of specially formulated foods. The most commonly used product is Supercereal Plus, formerly called Corn Soy Blend Plus (CSB++). FBFs require some preparation before consumption and are typically distributed in larger quantities as family rations for treating or preventing MAM.

The nutrient composition of some common formulated foods for treatment and prevention of acute malnutrition are shown in table 11.2. Annan, Webb, and Brown (2014) provide a more comprehensive product list of specially formulated foods for MAM management.

### Locally Produced Therapeutic Foods
The bulk of RUFs are commercially prepared by a select number of companies and are then distributed to program sites. Decentralizing production could be beneficial for several reasons. Therapeutic foods are often a significant program cost and could be less expensive to produce in-country. Decentralized production could create valuable local economic opportunities.

RUFs can be safely and easily produced in most settings; however, feasibility of production is limited because of the unavailability of necessary ingredients in some settings (Manary 2005). Lenters and others (2013)

---

**Table 11.2 Nutritional Composition of Commonly Used, Specially Formulated Foods for the Prevention and Treatment of Acute Malnutrition**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>F75</th>
<th>F100</th>
<th>Plumpy’Sup</th>
<th>Plumpy’Doz</th>
<th>Plumpy’Nut</th>
<th>Supercereal Plus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100 g milk powder</td>
<td>100 g milk powder</td>
<td>100 g</td>
<td>100 g</td>
<td>100 g</td>
<td>100 g dry matter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Used for
- SAM
- SAM
- MAM
- MAM
- MAM or SAM
- Prevention of MAM

#### Recommended serving size (kcal/kg/d)
- 80–100
- 200
- 75
- 46.3 g/day
- SAM: 200
- MAM: 75

#### Macronutrients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Energy (kcal)</th>
<th>446</th>
<th>520</th>
<th>520–550</th>
<th>534–587</th>
<th>520–550</th>
<th>410</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Protein (g)</td>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>&gt;13</td>
<td>12.6–15.4</td>
<td>13.4–17.7</td>
<td>13–16</td>
<td>&gt;16.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipid (g)</td>
<td>15.6</td>
<td>&gt;26</td>
<td>31.5–38.6</td>
<td>26.7–39.1</td>
<td>26–36</td>
<td>&gt;4.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Minerals

| Potassium (mg) | 775 | 1,100 | 980–1,210 | 660–870 | 1,100–1,400 | 140 |
| Calcium (mg)   | 560 | 300 | 300–350 | 800–980 | 300–500 | 452 |
| Phosphorus (mg) | 330 | 300 | 300–350 | 530–660 | 300–600 | 232 |
| Magnesium (mg) | 50 | 80 | 80–100 | 115–140 | 80–100 | — |
| Zinc (mg)      | 12.2 | 11 | 12–15 | 8.7 | 11–14 | 5 |

Sources: Nutriset catalogs; Supercereal Plus from USAID specifications.

Note: — = not available; d = day; g = gram; kcal = kilocalorie; kg = kilogram; MAM = moderate acute malnutrition; mg = milligram; SAM = severe acute malnutrition.
find no difference in the effectiveness for promoting weight gain from a pooled analysis of data from two studies (Diop and others 2004; Sandige and others 2004) comparing locally produced and imported RUTF that met the same product specifications.

There is interest among academic, donor, and non-profit communities in developing new formulations of RUFs that make use of locally available ingredients while targeting taste preferences of different populations. For example, RUFs could substitute other legumes for the standard peanut base, or reduce or substitute the milk powder component in areas in which dairy is not commonly consumed (Matilsky and others 2009; Oakley and others 2010; Sandige and others 2004). Research is ongoing with respect to the treatment effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of alternate formulations.

**MANAGEMENT OF MODERATE ACUTE MALNUTRITION**

Although the typology of interventions for MAM and their indicated uses in different contexts have been topics of considerable discussion, substantial ambiguity remains in practice in the classification of interventions, and evidence gaps persist regarding the effectiveness of interventions. One example of guidelines recently developed is the Global Nutrition Cluster decision-making tool that guides the selection of appropriate programming approaches in emergency situations (GNC 2014).

The management of MAM can be broadly categorized into prevention and treatment strategies. In general, because wasting results in a loss of body mass relative to height, the standard practice has been to provide the child with additional energy and nutrient-dense foods to promote weight gain. The selection of the particular management approach is context specific; different approaches are warranted for populations that are more stable and food secure than for populations experiencing significant food insecurity or humanitarian emergencies.

**Strategies for Prevention**

Strategies for the prevention of MAM dovetail with public health interventions promoting optimal child growth and development. These strategies include the promotion of appropriate breastfeeding and complementary feeding practices, access to appropriate health care for the prevention and treatment of disease, and improved sanitation and hygiene practices. Additionally, although micronutrient deficiencies are most commonly linked to stunted linear growth, these deficiencies can also contribute to wasting, for example, through the malnutrition-infection cycle. Undernourished children tend to be more susceptible to infection, which can contribute to weight loss through increased metabolism, as well as reduced nutrient intake and absorption (Guerrant and others 2008; Petri and others 2008). Multiple-micronutrient powders, small-quantity LNSs, and single-nutrient supplements are used to augment the nutritional content of the home diet.

**Strategies for Treatment**

Research is ongoing with respect to optimal treatment approaches. In 2008, the WHO established a working group on dietary management of MAM; since then, the emphasis on exploring optimal food-based treatments for MAM has increased (GNC 2014). The 2012 WHO technical note on supplementary foods for managing MAM in children ages 6–59 months calls for providing locally available, nutrient-dense foods to improve nutritional status and prevent SAM (WHO 2012). In situations of food shortage, supplementary foods have been supplied with suboptimal effectiveness. WHO (2012) suggests that an energy intake of 25 kcal/kg/d in addition to the standard nutrient requirements of a nonmalnourished child would support a reasonable rate of weight gain without promoting obesity. However, there is no evidence-informed recommendation for the composition of specially formulated foods for treatment (WHO 2012).

The Community-Based Management of Acute Malnutrition (CMAM) Forum published a technical brief in 2014 that echoed the WHO guidelines and discussed recommendations for diets suitable for children with MAM, approaches to counseling caregivers, and a decision-making framework for selecting appropriate supplementary feeding program (SFP) approaches (Annan, Webb, and Brown 2014).

**Food-Secure Populations**

In food-secure populations, caregivers can be counseled and supported in using high-quality, home-available foods to promote recovery in acutely malnourished children (Bhutta, Das, Rizvi, and others 2013). This intervention can be coupled with general health-promotion approaches to mitigate the underlying factors contributing to acute malnutrition, for example, WASH and health-seeking behaviors.

Two systematic reviews (Lazzerini, Rupert, and Pani 2013; Lenters and others 2013) find no significant differences in mortality between the provision of any type of specially formulated food and standard care, which consists of medical care and counseling without food provision. Children provided with food were significantly more likely to recover, based on two studies in the meta-analysis.
(Lazzerini, Rupert, and Pani 2013). This systematic review could not identify any trials investigating the effect of improving the adequacy of local diets.

The literature search conducted by Lenters and others (2013) identifies very few rigorous trials that compare the provision of RUTFs or RUSFs with other types of interventions to modify household- and community-level factors that contribute to the development of wasting. In one study, the mean weight gain was significantly higher in the group provided with RUTFs than in the standard care group in which mothers were taught to prepare a high-calorie cereal milk (Singh and others 2010). However, because this study assessed nutritional status using weight-for-age, children who were not wasted may have been included in the study.

Ashworth and Ferguson (2009) review dietary counseling for treatment of MAM and use programmatic data from United Nations agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and national programs to assess whether the counseling and recommendations given were likely to meet children’s dietary needs. The authors conclude that messages tended to be vague and were unlikely to be effective. Their review also aims to assess the effectiveness of dietary counseling in the management of MAM; based on an analysis of 10 studies, they suggest that counseling families on the consumption of family foods can have a positive effect on weight gain. However, this review does not contain a meta-analysis; the studies included are a mix of quasi-experimental and observational data and employ a variety of indices to measure malnutrition.

Food-Insecure Populations
In food-insecure populations, including humanitarian emergency contexts, SFPs are used to reduce mortality and prevent further deterioration of children’s nutritional status. These SFPs are classified as targeted SFPs or blanket SFPs, depending on the recipients. A blanket approach provides supplemental food to everyone within a defined population, regardless of whether children are acutely malnourished; a targeted approach provides supplemental rations only for malnourished children meeting program cut-off criteria.

The standard practice for SFPs is to provide a ration of staple food, such as FBF, commonly Supercereal Plus (GNC 2014). However, a growing range of RUFs have been developed specifically for treating MAM. A Cochrane review (Lazzerini, Rupert, and Pani 2013) compares the effectiveness of LNSs with FBFs for the treatment of MAM. This review concludes that both products appear to be effective; there is insufficient evidence to recommend the use of LNS over corn-soy blend (CSB), despite the growing interest from the policy and programming community in these new specially formulated foods. No reduction in mortality, differences in numbers of children progressing to SAM, or dropping out of the study were found when comparing LNS with CSB for the five studies included in the meta-analysis. Yet, treatment with LNS led to a 10 percent increase in recovery compared with CSB, and slightly improved nutritional status among those recovered. No significant differences were seen when Supercereal Plus was compared with LNS. These findings are echoed in the systematic review conducted by Lenters and others (2013) as part of The Lancet series on maternal and child nutrition, as well as in a review conducted by the Food Aid Quality Review group (Webb and others 2011).

In situations that warrant the provision of supplemental foods, there is growing recognition of the need to use integrated approaches to address the immediate need for an improved diet to treat MAM and prevent the progression to SAM, while simultaneously addressing the underlying factors. Livelihood diversification, social protection schemes, and conditional cash transfers are some of the approaches being explored in these contexts (Bhatta, Das, Rizvi, and others 2013).

Seasonal Supplementation
Seasonal blanket feeding programs are an emerging approach aimed at suppressing predictable increases in the rates of SAM and MAM. In chronically food-insecure settings, a spike in the incidence of MAM and SAM is seen in the period before the harvest, known as the “lean season.” Seasonal SFPs, which may be targeted by geographic region or age group, tend to include all children who either have, or are at risk for, MAM. The evidence remains limited on the effectiveness or cost-effectiveness of such approaches for prevention; however, several studies investigate the use of RUF supplementation for nonwasted children to reduce seasonal increases in population-wide prevalence rates of wasting (Defourny and others 2009; Grellety and others 2012; Hall and others 2011; Huybregts and others 2012; Isanaka and others 2009; Karakochuk, Stephens, and Zlotkin 2012).

A blanket SFP in Niger provided children ages 6–26 months (MUAC < 110 millimeters millimeters) with roughly 50 grams per day of RUSFs (Defourny and others 2009). Fewer children in the target locality presented in need of therapeutic care than in previous years; however, it was not possible to rule out overall improvements in food security in the absence of a comparison group in the study.

Another study in Niger randomized villages to receive the intervention (one packet of RUTF per day for children) versus no intervention. The intervention led to
an estimated 36 percent difference in the incidence of wasting and a 58 percent difference in the incidence of severe wasting (Isanaka and others 2009). Although the authors claim that the difference represented a reduction in wasting, some reviewers argue that the statistically significant difference could be ascribed to increased incidence of wasting in the control villages coupled with no change in the intervention sites (Hall and others 2011).

Where markets are viable, interventions that aim to stimulate the local economy through cash transfers, voucher schemes, or the provision of locally available food rations may be more sustainable and acceptable than the provision of imported RUFs.

**TREATMENT OF SEVERE ACUTE MALNUTRITION**

Approaches to identifying, referring, and treating SAM cases have been evolving, and a mix of programmatic approaches can be found globally. The WHO endorses community-based management of uncomplicated SAM and recommends that children with poor appetite, severe edema (Grade III), and any of the Integrated Management of Childhood Illness danger signs or medical complications (table 11.3) be treated in inpatient facilities in accordance with their 10-step model (figure 11.2) (WHO 2013).

This section focuses on the WHO-endorsed treatment approaches. Although these approaches are evidence informed, many of the recommendations are rooted in imperfect evidence and supplemented by best practices and expert opinion.

From the 1950s through the 1990s, case fatality rates (CFRs) for the treatment of SAM in health facilities remained static and were typically 20 percent to 30 percent (Ashworth and others 2003; Collins, Dent, and others 2006); specialized treatment centers were able to achieve CFRs of less than 5 percent (Collins, Dent, and others 2006). As a response to the high CFRs and high opportunity costs of inpatient treatment, a community-based approach to treating acute malnutrition has received growing attention from the academic and humanitarian sectors. Community-based treatment of malnutrition was initially referred to as the community therapeutic care model, but it may also be called community management of acute malnutrition (CMAM) and integrated management of acute malnutrition. For clarity, this chapter refers to community-based management as CMAM.

### Table 11.3 Common Medical Complications in Severe Acute Malnutrition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medical complication</th>
<th>Case definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anorexia, poor appetite&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Child is unable to drink or breastfeed; failed RUTF appetite test.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intractable vomiting&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Child vomits after every oral intake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High fever</td>
<td>Child has high body temperature, or axillary temperature &gt; 38.5°C, rectal temperature &gt; 39°C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothermia</td>
<td>Child has low body temperature, or axillary temperature &lt; 35.0°C, rectal temperature &lt; 35.5°C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower respiratory tract infection</td>
<td>Child has a cough with difficult breathing, fast breathing (if child is age 2–12 months: 50 breaths per minute or more; if child is age 12 months to 5 years: 40 breaths per minute or more), or chest indrawing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe anemia</td>
<td>Child has palmar pallor or unusual paleness of the skin (compare the color of the child's palm with your own palm and with the palms of other children).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin lesion</td>
<td>Child has broken skin, fissures, flaking of skin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unconsciousness&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Child does not respond to painful stimuli (for example, injection).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lethargy, not alert&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Child is difficult to wake. Ask the mother if the child is drowsy, shows no interest in what is happening around him or her, does not look at the mother or watch your face when talking, is unusually sleepy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoglycemia</td>
<td>There are often no clinical signs of hypoglycemia. One sign that does occur in a child with SAM is eyelid retraction: child sleeps with eyes slightly open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convulsions&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>During a convolution, child's arms and legs stiffen because the muscles are contracting. Ask the mother if the child had convulsions during this current illness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe dehydration</td>
<td>Child with SAM has a recent history of diarrhea, vomiting, high fever or sweating, and recent appearance of clinical signs of dehydration as reported by the caregiver.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Saboya, Khara, and Irena 2011.

Note: °C = degrees centigrade; RUTF = ready-to-use therapeutic food; SAM = severe acute malnutrition.

<sup>a</sup> Integrated Management of Childhood Illness danger signs.
Community-Based Treatment

The first CMAM programs, developed under the community therapeutic care model and implemented in the early 2000s, achieved recovery rates of almost 80 percent and CFRs of less than 5 percent (Collins, Sadler, and others 2006). More than 75 percent of children treated for malnutrition in these programs were treated on an outpatient basis, reducing opportunity costs to caregivers (less time away from income-generating activities and responsibilities as caregiver to additional children).

The community therapeutic care model of treatment rests on the four following principles:

• Maximum coverage and access
• Timeliness
• Appropriate care
• Care for as long as it is needed (Collins, Sadler, and others 2006).

This model strives to reach all severely malnourished children before the development of medical complications and to provide appropriate care until recovery. The model uses community health workers or volunteers (CHWs or CHVs) to actively find cases of wasting within the community. Children are screened to assess their nutritional status, typically using MUAC cutoffs and simple algorithms to assess the presence of medical complications, which would necessitate referral to a facility-based treatment program.

The most commonly seen medical complications in SAM are outlined in table 11.3. Only about 15 percent of children with SAM have medical complications that require inpatient treatment (Collins, Sadler, and others 2006). Substantial programmatic evidence has demonstrated that the community-based model can achieve low mortality rates and decrease opportunity costs to caregivers, resulting in lower default rates (Collins, Sadler, and others 2006; Guerrero and Rogers 2013). Defaulters are children who are lost to follow-up (Sphere Project 2011).

In the CMAM model, mothers administer the RUTFs to their children. The rapid changes in the children’s condition provide positive feedback to those associated with the recovery process and strengthens community motivation for case-finding, foreseeably increasing coverage (Collins, Sadler, and others 2006).

The 2013 WHO guidelines (WHO 2013) recommend that children should be enrolled and discharged from treatment using the same mode of classification. Children who were admitted based on MUAC should be discharged once their MUAC is ≥ 125 millimeters for at least two weeks or their WHZ is ≥ −2 for at least two weeks. Children who were admitted based on their edema should be discharged based on the measurement routinely used in the program. Once discharged, the children should be followed up periodically to avoid relapse.

The 2013 WHO guidelines (WHO 2013) include several additional updates:

• Children who are not treated with fortified therapeutic foods should receive a high dose of vitamin A on admission; children who receive therapeutic food do not need the high dose of vitamin A.
• RUTFs should be given to children regardless of whether they have diarrhea (WHO 2013).
The CMAM model is endorsed in the Sphere Project guidelines, an evidence-based, sector-wide consensus on minimum standards for humanitarian relief. The guidelines state that treatment programs for SAM should achieve a CFR of less than 10 percent, a recovery rate greater than 75 percent, and a defaulter rate of less than 15 percent (Sphere Project 2011).

The WHO’s 10-Step Program for Inpatient Treatment

The WHO published a 10-step guide for inpatient management of complicated SAM to combat the poor CFRs in some health facilities (WHO 2003) and subsequently undertook a series of systematic reviews to update the guidelines on the management of severe malnutrition (WHO 2013). These systematic reviews collated evidence related to treatment of SAM, including criteria for identifying SAM, discharge, follow-up, treatment of HIV-positive children with SAM, appropriate hydration, and treatment of infants younger than age six months. Overall, the reviews found low or very low quality evidence to support their recommendations as a result of limited availability of randomized controlled trials (RCTs) investigating the treatment options.

The 10-step plan for inpatient management of SAM is shown in figure 11.2. The 10 steps are divided into three phases; children’s emotional and sensorial development should be stimulated throughout all phases:

- **Initial treatment**: Hypoglycemia, hypothermia, dehydration, infections, and electrolyte imbalances are corrected, as are micronutrient deficiencies with the exception of iron deficiency.
- **Rehabilitation**: Electrolyte imbalances and micronutrient deficiencies continue to be corrected, and iron is added. Feeding is increased to stimulate catch-up growth, and children are prepared for discharge.
- **Follow-up**: Increased feeding is continued to recover lost weight (Picot and others 2012; WHO 2003).

Initial Treatment Phase

During the initial treatment phase, frequent feeding is important to prevent both hypoglycemia and hypothermia. Feeding during the initial treatment phase should be approached cautiously because of the fragility of the child’s physiological state. F75 should be given every 30 minutes for two hours, followed by F75 every two hours, day and night. Breastfed children should be encouraged to continue breastfeeding. Children with hypothermia should be rewarmed by being clothed, covered with a warmed blanket, placed near a heater or lamp, or placed on the mother’s chest (skin-to-skin) and covered. Specific protocols for assessing and treating hypothermia and hypoglycemia can be found in the WHO guidelines (WHO 2003, 2013).

Dehydration should be treated following the WHO’s 2013 guidelines; several key updates have been included. For example, dehydrated children who are not in shock should be rehydrated orally or by nasogastric tube using ReSoMal or half-strength WHO low-osmolarity oral rehydration solution with added potassium and glucose. If the child has profuse watery diarrhea or suspected cholera he or she should be rehydrated with full-strength WHO low-osmolarity oral rehydration solution. Children who are severely dehydrated or with signs of shock should be rehydrated intravenously, using half-strength Darrow’s solution with 5 percent dextrose, Ringer’s lactate solution with 5 percent dextrose, or, if neither is available, 0.45 percent saline with 5 percent dextrose (WHO 2013).

Infections should be treated routinely upon admission by provision of a broad-spectrum antibiotic, and measles vaccination should be given for unimmunized children older than age six months.

Micronutrient deficiencies should be treated by giving vitamin A (200,000 international units [IU] for children older than age 12 months, 100,000 IU for children ages 6–12 months, and 50,000 IU for children ages 0–5 months), coupled with daily multivitamin, folic acid, zinc, and copper supplementation for at least two weeks. Iron supplementation should only be given once children have begun gaining weight.

Rehabilitation Phase

During the rehabilitation phase, F75 should be replaced with F100 in the same amounts for 48 hours before increasing successive feeds by 10 milliliters until some remains unconsumed. If available, children could be transitioned from F75 to RUTF according to the updated WHO guidelines (WHO 2013). Children’s respiratory and pulse rates should be monitored closely. After transition to F100, children should receive feedings consisting of 100–200 kcal/kg/d and 4–6 g protein/kg/d at least every four hours. Breastfeeding should continue to be encouraged.

Follow-Up Phase

After recovery, parents should be taught to feed children frequently with energy- and nutrient-dense foods and to continue to stimulate their children’s sensorial and emotional development. Parents should be requested to bring children back for regular follow-up checks. Vitamin A supplementation and booster immunizations should be provided.
Managing Infections in Children with SAM

In addition to increased susceptibility to infections, children with SAM are more likely to have more severe illnesses and higher mortality rates than nonwasted children (Jones and Berkley 2014; Laghari and others 2013; Long and others 2013; Meshram and others 2012; UNICEF 2013). Common infections include diarrhea, acute respiratory infection, HIV, tuberculosis, meningitis, anemia, bacteremia, and sepsis (Chisti and others 2014; Irena, Mwambazi, and Mulenga 2011; Jones and Berkley 2014; Kumar and others 2013; Nhampossa and others 2013; Page and others 2013; Schlaudecker, Steinhoff, and Moore 2011). The proportion of children with SAM who have comorbidities varies. For example, 31 percent and 33.6 percent, respectively, of children with SAM in two studies in Mozambique and India had acute diarrhea, compared with 67.1 percent of children with SAM in a study in Zambia (Irena, Mwambazi, and Mulenga 2011; Kumar and others 2013; Nhampossa and others 2013).

Determining the etiology of infections can be difficult because of limited resources and because clinical signs of infection may not be apparent (Jones and Berkley 2014; Page and others 2013). Diagnosis of malaria can be challenging because its symptoms can be indistinguishable from other febrile illnesses; rapid diagnostic tests or microscopic blood examination are recommended for malaria diagnosis. Children with SAM who have radiologic-confirmed pneumonia may not exhibit any typical signs or symptoms (Jones and Berkley 2014). The diagnosis of tuberculosis can be especially challenging (Chisti and others 2014; Jones and Berkley 2014). Laboratory-confirmed tuberculosis through Mycobacterium tuberculosis culture is the gold standard, but children with SAM often do not produce suitable sputum samples, and culturing the bacteria is a lengthy procedure. Skin tests have high false negative rates, and scoring systems have been developed. Jones and Berkley (2014) recommend the consideration of clinical response to nutritional rehabilitation, such as weight gain and fever, in the diagnosis of tuberculosis.

Treatment for malnourished children with concurrent infections should follow the WHO guidelines. Severely malnourished children diagnosed with tuberculosis should be treated with a single dose of 5–10 milligrams per day of vitamin B6 along with isoniazid. Antiretroviral therapy (ART) should be initiated in the rehabilitation phase of treatment in HIV-positive children with SAM, and they should be given co-trimoxazole daily. HIV-positive mothers should receive ART or infants should receive prophylaxis, and mothers should be encouraged to breastfeed exclusively for six months and continue for up to two years (Jones and Berkley 2014; WHO 2010). Severely malnourished children infected with malaria should be treated with artesunate; those with diarrhea who are dehydrated or in shock should be managed as described in the WHO 10-step plan for inpatient management of SAM.

The provision of broad-spectrum antibiotics to all outpatient children with SAM would mirror WHO recommendations for treatment of nonmalnourished children with pneumonia (Jones and Berkley 2014), although blanket provision of antibiotics is controversial. Because of the differences in the presentation of infection in malnourished versus well-nourished children, Jones and Berkley (2014) recommend that children who do show abnormal radiology be carefully evaluated for tuberculosis.

Considering Antibiotic Treatment

New evidence is emerging on the importance of managing SAM, including uncomplicated SAM, using a package of care that includes antibiotic treatment. The use of broad-spectrum antibiotics has been conditionally recommended for treatment of uncomplicated SAM in community-based treatment programs (WHO 2007). Local governments and policy makers are asked to make this determination in light of local contexts. Although routine antibiotic treatment at the enrollment stage in CMAM programs is part of the protocols of many organizations, this practice remains controversial.

One systematic review of antibiotics as part of SAM management concludes that the evidence for the addition of antibiotics to therapeutic regimens for uncomplicated SAM is weak and urges further efficacy trials (Alcoba and others 2013). Another review concludes that the evidence was insufficient to recommend antibiotic use (Picot and others 2012). An RCT in Malawi looked at children with uncomplicated SAM treated in a community setting, comparing RUTFs to RUTFs plus antibiotics (either amoxicillin or cefdinir). The trial found a significantly higher mortality rate in children receiving placebo than in either antibiotic arm (amoxicillin: relative risk = 1.55, 95 percent confidence interval 1.07–2.24; cefdinir: relative risk = 1.80, 95 percent confidence interval 1.22–2.64) (Trehan and others 2013). Criticisms have been raised, however, because HIV-infection rates are high in this region and could be a major cause of immunodeficiency; 68 percent of the children enrolled were not tested for HIV (Koumans, Routh, and Davis 2013). Additional questions have been raised about the approach to the analysis (Okeke, Cruz, and Keusch 2013).
Because of the small number of studies with limited generalizability, as well as the costs and resistance risks associated with broad use of antibiotics, this topic requires immediate further investigation.

**Treatment of Edematous Acute Malnutrition**

Edematous acute malnutrition, referred to as kwashiorkor, is a form of acute malnutrition characterized by stunted growth, generalized edema, dermatologic manifestations, and hepatic steatosis (Garrett 2013). Its etiology is not well understood; it has been attributed to a range of factors, including insufficient dietary protein, excessive oxidative stress, a compromised intestinal wall, and intestinal inflammation (Garrett 2013; Smith and others 2013). The prevailing theory implicates the intestinal microbiota. Certain microflora appear to play a role in the development of kwashiorkor, as indicated by a longitudinal comparative study of Malawian twins by Smith and others (2013), as well as a mouse study (Garrett 2013; Smith and others 2013).

Given that children with severe edema have a higher risk of mortality even in the absence of other medical complications, the recommendation is to treat these children in an inpatient setting (WHO 2013). The treatment protocol for children with edematous malnutrition is largely the same but with several important caveats outlined in the WHO guidelines (WHO 2013). For example, initial refeeding should occur at a rate of 100 milliliters per kilogram per day (ml/kg/d) as opposed to the general recommendation of 130 ml/kg/d, with a tailored schedule for progression after initial refeeding (Ashworth and others 2003).

The optimal setting for managing children with SAM who have mild to moderate edema remains unclear; these children may be treated in outpatient settings or referred to inpatient facilities, depending on the protocol of particular programs. No RCTs have compared inpatient treatment to community-based treatment for this group. An evidence review found eight reports describing outcomes for single cohorts of children with edema treated in the community for SAM (WHO 2013). These reports found an average recovery rate of 88 percent and CFR of less than 4 percent. However, the authors graded the quality of this evidence as very low, stating that it is difficult to make any firm recommendations about the effectiveness and safety of outpatient treatment for children with mild to moderate edema (WHO 2013).

At country and sub-country levels, the prevalence and incidence rates of edematous SAM are not well characterized; experts have called for more data on prevalence to establish the burden as an initial step to shed light on its public health importance (personal communication, CMAM Forum). The proportion of edematous SAM ranges from 0 percent in Albania and Indonesia to greater than 70 percent in the former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia and Nicaragua (personal communication, CMAM Forum).

**COSTS AND COST-EFFECTIVENESS OF TREATMENT OF SEVERE ACUTE MALNUTRITION**

The published literature on the cost-effectiveness of SAM is limited; the authors of this chapter were unable to find published cost-effectiveness studies for MAM. Accordingly, the following cost-effectiveness section focuses on SAM.

The maternal and child nutrition series in *The Lancet* (Bhutta, Das, Rizvi, and others 2013) estimated the cost of increasing coverage of SAM treatment to 90 percent in 34 high-burden countries. The overall cost of scaling up SAM treatment to 90 percent in these target countries was US$2.6 billion. Of this amount, approximately 35 percent of the costs were for consumables, which is in line with the costs of other estimates for RUTFs in the treatment of SAM (Bhutta, Das, Rizvi, and others 2013).

**Inpatient Treatment Programs**

Inpatient treatment programs have several disadvantages for treating children who may not require it. Resource constraints can limit the number of children who can be treated. The centralized nature of the facilities means that the difficulties patients face in transport can result in delayed presentation of cases and lower coverage rates. An evaluation of 21 community-based treatment programs in Ethiopia, Malawi, and Sudan found an average coverage rate of 72.5 percent, compared with less than 10 percent coverage in inpatient programs; coverage is defined as the proportion of children needing treatment who receive it for inpatient programs (Collins, Dent, and others 2006). Moreover, because mothers often need to stay with children for longer than three weeks, inpatient treatment can cost families lost labor and economic productivity, as well as pose challenges for families with other children at home. Finally, hospitalization puts children at risk of cross infection (Bachmann 2010; Collins, Dent, and others 2006; Tekeste and others 2012).

Facility-based treatment, however, is required for complicated cases; approximately 15 percent to 20 percent of SAM cases require such treatment (Bachmann 2010; Collins, Dent, and others 2006). We were unable to find any recent studies reporting the costs of inpatient treatment of SAM other than the assumptions of costs.
made in the 2013 *Lancet* series on maternal and child nutrition. Costs for inpatient treatment of SAM would be highly context-dependent.

**Community-Based Programs**

Approximately 75 percent to 80 percent of all SAM cases can be effectively treated in the community (Bachmann 2010). A review of cost of treatment found that community-based treatment of SAM was consistently less expensive and had similar or better outcomes, compared to inpatient treatment; however, because many studies were nonrandomized, this finding could have occurred because more severely ill children were admitted to inpatient care (Bachmann 2010).

According to Horton and colleagues (see Ashok and others [2015], chapter 18 in this volume), CMAM is an attractive strategy from a cost-effectiveness perspective. The high risk of death, coupled with reductions in programming costs, lead to a cost-effective strategy. Of the three studies identified and reviewed by Horton, the cost-effectiveness ranged between US$26 and US$39 per disability-adjusted life year (DALY) averted.

Several studies have examined the costs and cost-effectiveness of CMAM programs. Puett and others (2012) compare the cost-effectiveness of a CMAM program delivered by CHWs in Bangladesh with standard inpatient treatment. The authors find that the CMAM program cost US$26 per DALY averted and US$869 per life saved. The costs of SAM treatment in the control group were US$1,344 per DALY averted and US$45,688 per life saved, respectively.

A study in Ethiopia that retrospectively examined the costs of CMAM versus treatment in a therapeutic feeding center (TFC) finds that costs were substantially lower in the CMAM program, with a cost per recovered child for the CMAM and TFC of US$145.50 and US$320.00, respectively (Tekeste and others 2012). Studies in Malawi (Wilford, Golden, and Walker 2012) and Zambia (Bachmann 2009) examining the costs of CMAM compared with hypothetical simulations of no care both find CMAM to be cost-effective and on par with other child health interventions, including universal salt iodization, iron fortification, immunization, and micronutrient fortification. The study in Zambia also finds CMAM to be cost-effective according to the WHO standards, given that the cost per DALY averted was less than the national per capita gross domestic product (GDP). The study in Malawi finds CMAM to cost US$42 per DALY averted; the study in Zambia finds CMAM to cost US$53 per DALY averted. The authors estimated the cost per child to be US$203 and per life saved to be US$1,760 (Wilford, Golden, and Walker 2012).

Overall, CMAM programs are both less expensive and as effective as inpatient care or TFCs, and accordingly are highly cost-effective for treating children with uncomplicated SAM. Community-based programs have higher coverage rates and the potential to catch cases earlier because CHWs and CHVs actively find cases; these programs present lower opportunity costs for families and caregivers of children with SAM. In many CMAM programs, RUTFs are a major contributor to the cost of treatment, constituting 24 percent to 43 percent of the total cost of treatment per child (Puett and others 2012; Tekeste and others 2012). Exploring the use of local rather than imported constituents could lower their relatively high cost.

**LOOKING FORWARD**

**Addressing Evidence Gaps for Effective Management**

Approaches to managing SAM have shifted dramatically since the early 2000s, leading to improvements in coverage rates and treatment outcomes (Collins, Dent, and others 2006; Hall, Blankson, and Shoham 2011; Lenters and others 2013). Greater attention is turning to the need for effective strategies to manage MAM. A remarkable range of specially formulated foods for the management of acute malnutrition has been developed and the need for integrated packages of care that include SAM and MAM management has been increasingly appreciated.

Despite these advances, questions remain with respect to etiology, effective treatment approaches, long-term outcomes, and the most effective modes for implementing and sustaining high-quality programs. Furthermore, interpretations of the existing body of literature are limited by study design issues, as well as by a lack of standardization in measurement and reporting. Box 11.1 highlights key research priorities for the effective management of SAM and MAM.

**Enhancing Study Design and Standardizing Reporting**

It is also imperative to discuss study design issues in the existing body of literature, as well as issues related to reporting of results. A more coordinated, standardized approach to study design and reporting will enhance the interpretability of individual studies and increase the feasibility of conducting pooled analyses, resulting in a stronger evidence base.

The majority of SAM and MAM trials follow children for a short period and only report on changes during the intervention, providing little insight into what happens after treatment. Studies with a short
Box 11.1

Key Priorities for Enhancing Effectiveness of Severe Acute Malnutrition (SAM) and Moderate Acute Malnutrition (MAM) Management

Research Priorities for Effective Management of SAM

- Develop mid-upper arm circumference cut-offs specific to age: 6–11 months, 12–23 months, and 24–59 months (WHO 2013).
- Understand specialized needs of subgroups (Picot and others 2012; WHO 2013):
  - Identification and management of infants younger than age six months with SAM
  - Treatment and long-term support for children with SAM and human immunodeficiency virus, tuberculosis, or other comorbidities.
- Characterize relapse rates and morbidity later in life through follow-up studies (Hall, Blankson, and Shoham 2011; Lenters and others 2013).
- Understand the etiology of nutritional edema and effective strategies for the management of SAM plus edema (WHO 2013).
- Investigate the role of the microbiome and environmental enteropathy in the development of, and recovery from, acute malnutrition (Petri, Naylor, and Haque 2014).
- Clarify the appropriateness of antibiotics for treatment of uncomplicated SAM (Picot and others 2012; WHO 2013).
- Investigate the efficacy of daily low-dose versus single high-dose vitamin A supplementation in children with SAM who have edema or diarrhea (WHO 2013).
- Establish efficacy and effectiveness of local formulations of therapeutic foods that meet WHO specifications (WHO 2013).
- Determine effective fluid management strategies for children with SAM and dehydration or diarrhea (WHO 2013), as well as effective approaches for managing shock in children with SAM (Picot and others 2012).

Research Priorities for Effective Management of MAM

- Expand understanding of specialized nutrient needs for children with MAM (GNC 2014).
- Investigate effective strategies for improving the home diet using locally available ingredients, where feasible (Lazzerini, Rubert, and Pani 2013), and effective nutrition counseling for the prevention and management of MAM (GNC 2014).
- Investigate effective approaches for management of MAM with diarrhea (Annan, Webb, and Brown 2014).
- Understand specialized needs of subgroups, including identification and management of MAM in infants younger than age six months (Annan, Webb, and Brown 2014).
- Clarify the appropriateness of different specially formulated foods and management strategies for different contexts (GNC 2014).

General Priorities for SAM and MAM Research and Programming

- Improve national and subnational capacity for accurately and consistently measuring coverage rates of SAM and MAM programs (GNC 2014).
- Enhance active case finding in communities and screening at health centers (WHO 2013).
- Explore whether children experience issues when they make the transition to standard family foods from a therapeutic diet (Hall, Blankson, and Shoham 2011).
- Investigate relative effectiveness and costs of different packages of care that include SAM and MAM management (Lenters and others 2013).
- Investigate effectiveness of seasonal blanket supplementation and other strategies (voucher schemes, cash transfers) for the prevention of SAM and MAM.
- Explore patterns of sharing of specially formulated foods (GNC 2014).
- Conduct research in more locations and contexts to be able to assess regional differences in effectiveness and acceptability of treatment and management approaches (Annan, Webb, and Brown 2014).
- Understand how products are used within community interventions, including rates and patterns of sharing (Annan, Webb, and Brown 2014; GNC 2014).
follow-up time are not able to adequately measure time to recovery, and children who have not recovered by the end of the intervention are simply labeled “nonresponders.” This practice fails to give an accurate picture of how long it would have taken for the children to recover—a key element in assessing cost-effectiveness or whether another underlying issue, such as HIV infection, is hindering recovery. Furthermore, most SAM and MAM trials rely on passive recruitment: caregivers bring affected children to a health facility, where they may be recruited into a trial. Thus, study results may not be generalizable and can result in selection bias if the characteristics of caregivers who seek help differ systematically from those who do not bring their children for treatment.

Given the wide range of specially formulated foods for managing SAM and MAM, greater care is needed in trial design to ensure that accurate conclusions are drawn. Intervention arms should be comparable in caloric content and nutrient density, with similar packaging, programming, and promotion associated with the interventions (GNC 2014).

In addition to addressing study design challenges, reporting metrics need to be standardized. The pooling of data in meta-analyses is hindered by variability in the definition of acute malnutrition used across studies as well as the lack of consistent outcome definitions (for example, relapse, nonresponse, and default rates are measured differently across studies). If studies choose to include a mix of children with wasting, stunting, and underweight, disaggregated data should be presented according to type of undernutrition.

The need for standardized metrics extends beyond research and into the programming sphere. There is also a need for programs to standardize enrollment and discharge criteria, and to measure and report program outcomes consistently so that program impacts can be tracked over time and compared between sites (GNC 2014; Hall, Blankson, and Shoham 2011; Lenters and colleagues 2013).

**Considering Implementation Research and Integrated Programming**

Research has trended toward studying the effectiveness of one specially formulated food versus another through RCTs. Although the relative effectiveness of products is an appropriate field of study, it is important to remember that the products are delivered within the context of a program and that the effectiveness of the treatment depends significantly on the quality of care (Puone and others 2008). Further implementation research is needed to understand how to effectively deliver high-quality programs to consistently achieve optimal outcomes over a sustained time frame.

Experimental designs are not always feasible given constraints within the context as well as the complexity of the intervention. In such cases, high-quality quasi-experimental studies are an important approach for generating evidence. Additionally, RCTs are not always best suited to answering implementation questions. High-quality studies using quality-improvement methods and observational designs, as well as qualitative research and program reports, are all important investigative approaches.

Additionally, with respect to MAM, it is essential not to lose sight of the need for upstream, integrated approaches in the face of growing interest in specially formulated foods for the treatment of MAM. Lenters and colleagues (2013) conducted a rapid Delphi exercise in tandem with a systematic review and meta-analysis of approaches to managing MAM and found a striking discordance. Intervention trials identified through the systematic literature review all focused on comparing specially formulated food, but a thematic analysis of what experts believe to be the optimal management of MAM demonstrated that a more comprehensive approach is needed. The effectiveness of disease prevention and treatment, WASH interventions, community empowerment, livelihood diversification, and other upstream interventions need to be studied in order to prevent the development of MAM and its progression to SAM.

The current scientific evidence base and programmatic expertise provide a foundation for making substantial strides toward reducing the prevalence of SAM. However, crucial gaps remain in our understanding of the causes of acute malnutrition; the cost-effectiveness of various treatment approaches, particularly for MAM; and the requirements of particular subpopulations, such as young infants and children with HIV or other serious infections. These gaps and challenges can readily be explored through trials and programmatic research using standardized definitions and metrics. While building the best practices and evidence base for SAM and MAM, it is imperative that effective treatment approaches be considered within context: thus, implementation research on how to deliver and sustain high-quality programs must be given high priority. In addition, research, programs, and policies aimed at addressing the social determinants of health and distal factors that ultimately lead to SAM and MAM must be prioritized.

The global burden of acute malnutrition remains unacceptably high; progress toward reducing the prevalence of SAM and MAM has lagged behind reductions in stunting (Black and others 2013). Programs to reduce SAM are a cost-effective investment that should be given high priority by national governments. Finding the
balance of preventive and therapeutic strategies for MAM and SAM in varying contexts is a major global priority and a clear focus of attention on the post-2015 agenda.

NOTES

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:  
  a) lower-middle-income = US$1,046 to US$4,125  
  b) upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126 to US$12,745  
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

This chapter uses the six World Health Organization (WHO) regions: Africa, the Americas, South-East Asia, Europe, Eastern Mediterranean, and Western Pacific.

1. This chapter refers to weight-for-height for simplicity; however note that weight-for-height is used in children 2 to 5 years of age and weight-for-length used in children under age two years.

2. The WHO defines appropriate breastfeeding as early initiation (within the first hour of life) and exclusive breastfeeding on demand for the first six months of life. http://www.who.int/nutrition/topics/exclusive_breastfeeding/en.

3. Appropriate complementary feeding practices, or infant and young child feeding are outlined by the WHO. http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs342/en.

4. LNS may also be formulated as "small-quantity LNS"—these products deliver micronutrients and essential fatty acids in a lipid matrix. The primary intention is to prevent stunting and micronutrient deficiencies.

5. The severity of edema is graded as + (mild: both feet), ++ (moderate: both feet, plus lower legs, hands, or lower arms), or +++ (severe/generalized: both feet, legs, hands, arms, and face) (WHO 2013).

REFERENCES


INTRODUCTION

Each year, undernutrition—including fetal growth restriction, stunting, wasting, and micronutrient deficiencies—and suboptimum breastfeeding (BF) underlie nearly 3.1 million deaths of children younger than age five years worldwide, accounting for 45 percent of all deaths in this age group (Liu and others 2012). Fetal growth restriction and suboptimum BF together are responsible for more than 1.3 million deaths, or 19.4 percent of all deaths among children younger than age five years.

Although the prevalence of stunted children has decreased from 40 percent in 1990 to 26 percent in 2011, an estimated 165 million children younger than age five years globally are stunted, based on the World Health Organization’s (WHO’s) Child Growth Standards (map 12.1). South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa have the highest estimated prevalence; 68.0 million and 55.8 million stunted children live in South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa, respectively (UNICEF, WHO, and World Bank 2012). Stunting prevalence among children younger than age five years is substantially higher in the poorest population quintiles and in rural areas, compared with the richest quintiles and urban areas, respectively (Black and others 2013). The complex interplay of social, economic, and political determinants of undernutrition results in substantial inequalities among population subgroups (Black and others 2013).

Optimum nutrition during the crucial periods of pregnancy and the first two years of life, known as the 1,000 days window of opportunity, is essential to health and growth, and its benefits can extend throughout life. A major component of infant and young child feeding (IYCF) in the early years of life is the provision of breast milk and appropriate, nutrient-dense complementary foods (PAHO and WHO 2003). In 2003, the WHO and the United Nations Children’s Fund (UNICEF) published a jointly developed global strategy for IYCF to refocus attention on the impact that feeding practices have on infant nutrition and health (WHO and UNICEF 2003). In 2008, the WHO published a set of population-level IYCF indicators developed in response to the need for simple, practical indicators of appropriate feeding practices in children ages 6–23 months (WHO 2002; WHO and UNICEF 2008). A core set of eight indicators (three for BF and five for complementary feeding [CF]) includes measures of dietary diversity, feeding frequency, and consumption of iron-rich or iron-fortified foods, as well as indicators of appropriate BF practices (table 12.1) (Jones and others 2014).

This chapter discusses key concepts in nutrition and growth during this early phase of life, intrauterine growth and maternal interventions (balanced energy and micronutrient supplementation), nutrition interventions to improve infant and child feeding
**Map 12.1** Global Stunting Prevalence Estimates among Children Younger than Age Five Years


**Table 12.1** World Health Organization’s Infant and Young Child Feeding Core Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Breastfeeding indicators</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Early initiation of breastfeeding</td>
<td>Proportion of children born in the past 24 months who were breastfed within one hour of birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exclusive breastfeeding under age six months</td>
<td>Proportion of infants from birth to age five months who were exclusively breastfed during the previous day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continued breastfeeding at age one year</td>
<td>Proportion of children ages 12–15 months who were fed any breast milk during the previous day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complementary feeding indicators</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction of solid, semisolid, or soft foods</td>
<td>Proportion of infants ages six months to eight months who received solid, semisolid, or soft foods during the previous day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum dietary diversity</td>
<td>Proportion of children ages 6–23 months who received foods from four or more food groups during the previous day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum meal frequency</td>
<td>Proportion of breastfed and nonbreastfed children ages 6–23 months who received solid, semisolid, or soft foods (including milk feeds for nonbreastfed children) the minimum number of times or more during the previous day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum acceptable diet</td>
<td>Proportion of children ages 6–23 months who had at least the minimum dietary diversity and minimum meal frequency (apart from breast milk) during the previous day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumption of iron-rich or iron-fortified foods</td>
<td>Proportion of children ages 6–23 months who received iron-rich food or iron-fortified food specially designed for infants and young children, or fortified in the home, during the previous day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Jones and others 2014.
(BF, CF, and micronutrient supplementation), other nutrition-related interventions, and challenges in infant and child feeding.

CONSEQUENCES OF UNDERNUTRITION

Good nutrition early in life is essential for children to be able to attain their full developmental potential. Malnutrition leads to early physical growth failure; delayed motor, cognitive, and behavioral development; diminished immunity; and increased morbidity and mortality (Black and others 2013). Deficiencies of essential vitamins and minerals are widespread and have substantial adverse effects on child survival and development. Deficiencies of vitamin A and zinc adversely affect child health and survival; deficiencies of iodine and iron can, together with causing stunting, limit the ability of children to realize their developmental potential.

Mortality and Morbidity

Black and others (2013) demonstrate that all degrees of stunting, wasting, and underweight are associated with increased hazards of death from diarrhea, pneumonia, measles, and other infectious diseases, with the exception of malaria; this analysis confirms the complex interplay between undernutrition and infection. In addition to anthropometric measures, the association between micronutrient deficiencies, such as vitamin A deficiency, and the increased risk of childhood infections and mortality is well established (Black and others 2013). Vitamin A deficiency increases the risk of severe diarrhea and diarrhea mortality, but it is not an important risk factor for the incidence of diarrhea or pneumonia or for pneumonia-related mortality. Other micronutrient deficiencies, such as zinc and iron deficiencies, are widespread in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs). Zinc is associated with increased risk of morbidity and mortality (Black 2003).

Growth and Development

Undernutrition has important consequences for physical and cognitive growth and development. Malnutrition leads to early physical growth failure; delayed motor, cognitive, and behavioral development; diminished immunity; and increased morbidity and mortality. Those who survive the initial and direct consequences of malnutrition in early childhood grow to adulthood, but with disadvantages compared with those who have had adequate nutrition and enjoyed a healthy environment in the initial crucial years of life. Undernutrition is strongly associated with shorter adult height, less schooling, and reduced economic productivity; in women, it is associated with offspring with lower birth weights. Fetal growth restriction, lower birth weight, and undernutrition in childhood have also been associated with long-term consequences, including increased risk of developing metabolic syndrome and cardiovascular disease, systolic hypertension, obesity, insulin resistance, and diabetes type II in adulthood (Greer, Sicherer, and Burks 2008; Salam, Das, and Bhutta 2014). The later consequences of childhood malnutrition also include diminished intellectual performance, low work capacity, and increased risk of delivery complications (Waddington and others 2009).

MATERNAL NUTRITION AND FETAL GROWTH

The determination of child nutrition status starts before birth; maternal nutritional status and fetal growth restriction have been found to be closely associated with child health. Maternal stunting and underweight lead to small for gestational age (SGA) and prematurity. Fetal growth restriction, in turn, is an important contributor to stunting and wasting in children; approximately 20 percent of childhood stunting could have its origins in the fetal period (Black and others 2013). Undernutrition can only be tackled through a multipronged approach with involvement of relevant sectors other than health. This approach was highlighted in the undernutrition series in The Lancet (Black and others 2013). The series underscores that nutrition-specific interventions can only reduce the current burden of undernutrition by a fraction; a more holistic approach is required that involves relevant sectors, including agriculture and food security, social safety nets, early child development, maternal mental health, women’s empowerment, child protection, classroom education, water and sanitation, and health and family planning services. The conceptual framework in figure 12.1 highlights the risk factors and the nutrition-specific interventions for childhood stunting and wasting.

Definitions

Intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR) describes the pathological inhibition of fetal growth. Although there is no standard definition of IUGR, two terms have been used to describe it: SGA and low birth weight (LBW):

- SGA, the most commonly used term for IUGR, is defined as babies born with weight of less than the 10th percentile of recommended gender-specific weight for gestational age for that population (WHO 1995; Yakoob and Bhutta 2011).
- LBW is defined as birth weight less than 2,500 grams, irrespective of gestational age.
Because birth size depends on both gestational age and growth velocity, the term SGA is preferred to LBW. A baby born with LBW but appropriate for gestational age is expected to have better outcomes compared with a baby born SGA. However, LBW has been the most commonly used indicator to describe fetal growth because it can be difficult to determine true gestational age in LMICs (WHO 1995). In this chapter, SGA is used as a proxy indicator for IUGR.

**Causes of Intrauterine Growth Restriction**

IUGR can have multiple causes. Some of the known risk factors include maternal malnutrition, congenital malformations, congenital infections, maternal smoking, and maternal medical comorbidities such as primary hypertension and diabetes mellitus (Romo, Carceller, and Tobajas 2009). In LMICs, maternal malnutrition is an important risk factor for SGA babies; however, in high-income countries (HICs), cigarette smoking is the most important single factor implicated in IUGR, followed by poor gestational nutrition (Bhutta and others 2013; Salam, Das, and Bhutta 2014). The major nongenetic factor determining the size of the fetus at term is maternal constraint, which is a set of maternal and uteroplacental factors that act to limit the growth of the fetus by limiting nutrient availability or the metabolic-hormonal drive to grow; these factors are more pronounced in pregnancies involving young mothers, small maternal size, nulliparous, and multiple pregnancies (Gluckman and Hanson 2004). Maternal nutrition influences the availability of nutrients for transfer to the fetus; during starvation, it is likely that low food intake results in a reduced nutrient stream from mother to fetus, giving rise to fetal growth restriction. Maternal undernutrition (body mass index of less than 18.5 kilograms/square meter) has decreased overall since 1980 but remains greater than 10 percent in South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa (Black and others 2013).

**Consequences of Intrauterine Growth Restriction**

IUGR is associated with a higher risk of preterm delivery and higher rates of fetal and neonatal morbidity and mortality (Arcangeli and others 2012; Baschat 2011). This higher rate of neonatal mortality in IUGR infants is due to conditions that include birth asphyxia and infections (such as sepsis, pneumonia, and diarrhea), which lead to mortality and together account for about 60 percent of all neonatal deaths (Salam, Das, and Bhutta 2014).

The short-term consequences of IUGR involve metabolic and hematological disturbances, as well as disrupted thermoregulation, which lead to morbidities such as respiratory distress syndrome, necrotizing enterocolitis, and retinopathy of prematurity (Salam,
Das, and Bhutta 2014). The adverse consequences of IUGR are not limited to infancy and childhood; they extend throughout the lifespan. IUGR leads to stunting and wasting, and an estimated 20 percent of stunted children in LMICs were born SGA (Black and others 2013). Evidence indicates that adverse changes in the fetal nutritional environment are associated with increased risk of developing metabolic syndrome and cardiovascular disease, systolic hypertension, obesity, insulin resistance, diabetes type II, and neuropsychological and cognitive deficiencies, as well as with impairments in renal and lung development in adulthood (Bjarnegard and others 2013; Salam, Das, and Bhutta 2014). It has also been shown that early developmental conditions affect all children and their predispositions to long-term consequences, including noncommunicable diseases (Hanson and Gluckman 2011).

Prevention of Intrauterine Growth Restriction

No effective therapies exist to reverse IUGR. Accordingly, initiatives focus on prevention through optimizing the nutritional status of women at the time of conception to establish the foundation for healthy fetal growth and development. Pregnancy is a state of higher metabolic requirements, and both macronutrients and micronutrients play important roles. Multiple nutrition interventions to address maternal nutritional requirements have been studied. These include nutritional counseling; isocaloric (maternal nutrition supplement given during pregnancy in which protein provides 25 percent of total energy content), high (protein provides more than 25 percent of total energy content), and balanced protein energy (BEP) (protein provides less than 25 percent of total energy content) supplementation; micronutrient supplementation; and low-energy supplementation for obese women.

Of these interventions, only BEP supplementation has been shown to affect the incidence of SGA (Bhutta and others 2013). A meta-analysis of 16 studies shows that BEP supplementation increased birth weight (mean difference [MD]: 73 grams; 95 percent confidence interval [CI]: 30–117) and decreased the incidence of SGA (relative risk [RR]: 0.66; 95 percent CI: 0.49–0.89); these effects were more pronounced in malnourished women compared with adequately nourished women. BEP supplementation also decreased the risk of stillbirth; however, the number of patients included in the meta-analysis was small (Imdad and Bhutta 2012).

Micronutrient supplementation during pregnancy has been studied with regard to individual and multiple micronutrients and their beneficial effects for mothers and the developing fetuses. Calcium supplementation has been shown to reduce the incidence of preclampsia in populations with low calcium intake. Folic acid supplementation during and before pregnancy reduces the incidence of neural tube defects (Bhutta and others 2013). Among micronutrient interventions, iron or iron and folate supplementation has been shown to reduce the incidence of LBW and improve birth weight but has no impact on SGA or IUGR (Peña-Rosas and others 2012; Peña-Rosas and Viteri 2009). Multiple micronutrient supplementation, when compared with iron and folate supplementation, has reduced the incidence of SGA babies by 13 percent (Haider and Bhutta 2012). The effects of supplementation in reducing the incidence of IUGR are clear; moreover, these benefits may extend into early childhood and affect growth and development. The effects of supplementation are not only apparent in reduced IUGR but also in its possible translation into early childhood development (Vaidya and others 2008).

BREASTFEEDING

Timing

The exact scientific basis for the absolute early time window of feeding within the first hour after birth is weak (Edmond and others 2006; Mullany and others 2008). A systematic review suggests that BF initiation within 24 hours of birth is associated with a 44 percent to 45 percent reduction in all-cause and infection-related neonatal mortality and is thought to primarily operate through the effects of exclusive breastfeeding (EBF) (Debes and others 2013).

Interventions to promote BF are a key component of expanding its use. A review of the effects of promotion interventions on occurrence of BF concludes that counseling or educational interventions increased EBF by 43 percent at day one, by 30 percent until age one month, and by 90 percent from age one month to age five months. Significant reductions in the occurrence of mothers not BF were also noted; 32 percent reduction at day one, 30 percent until one month, and 18 percent for one month to five months (Haroon and others 2013). Combined individual and group counseling seemed to be better than individual or group counseling alone.

Prevalence of Breastfeeding

BF provides numerous immunologic, psychological, social, economic, and environmental benefits. It results in improved infant and maternal health outcomes in both LMICs and HICs (Eidelman and others 2012). The WHO recommends EBF for infants until age six months
to achieve optimum growth (Kramer and Kikuma 2001). In LMICs, one out of every three children is exclusively breastfed for the first six months of life, although considerable variations exist across regions (UNICEF 2006). Recent data show that the prevalence of EBF in LMICs has increased from 33 percent in 1995 to 39 percent in 2010 (Cai, Wardlaw, and Brown 2012). The prevalence of EBF increased in almost all regions in LMICs, with a major improvement seen in central and west Africa, where the prevalence more than doubled from 12 percent to 28 percent. More modest improvements were observed in South Asia, where the prevalence increased from 40 percent in 1995 to 45 percent in 2010. The median coverage of EBF has increased from 26 percent in 2000–05 to 40 percent in 2006–11 in the 48 Countdown countries (countries with the highest burden of maternal and child deaths) (WHO and UNICEF 2012).

EBF reduces the risk of hospitalization for lower respiratory tract infections in the first year by 72 percent (Ip and others 2007; Ip and others 2009). Any BF compared with exclusive commercial infant formula feeding can reduce the incidence of otitis media by 23 percent, and EBF for more than three months reduces the risk of otitis media by 50 percent (Ip and others 2007). Any BF is associated with a 64 percent reduction in the incidence of nonspecific gastrointestinal tract infections; this effect lasts for two months after cessation of BF (Ip and others 2007; Duijts and others 2010; Ip and others 2009; Quigley, Kelly, and Sacker 2007). BF is also beneficial for preterm infants; it is associated with a 58 percent reduction in the incidence of necrotizing enterocolitis (Ip and others 2007). EBF offers a protective effect for three to four months against the incidence of clinical asthma, atopic dermatitis, and eczema by 27 percent in a low-risk population and up to 42 percent in infants with positive family history (Ip and others 2007; Greer, Sicherer, and Burks 2008). BF can improve nutrition status directly or by reducing infections and morbidity. Promoting EBF is reported to be important in preventing both stunting and overweight among children (Keino and others 2014). A systematic review shows that breastfeeding up to two years of age or beyond had no significant impact on child growth; however, further research is needed (Delgado and Matijasevich 2013).

### Supportive Strategies

Although these results show the potential for scaling up BF, none of these trials addresses the issues of barriers in work environments and supportive strategies to overcome them, such as provisions for maternity leave. A Cochrane review of interventions in the workplace to support BF for women found no trials (Abdulwadud and Snow 2012), so much more needs to be done to assess innovations and strategies to promote BF in working women, especially in low-income communities.

### COMPLEMENTARY FEEDING

CF for infants refers to the timely introduction of safe and nutritional foods in addition to BF, specifically, clean and nutrient-dense additional foods introduced at age six months and typically provided until age 24 months (Imdad, Yakoob, and Bhutta 2011; WHO 2002). It has been suggested that in addition to disease-prevention strategies, CF interventions targeting this critical window are most efficient in reducing malnutrition and promoting adequate growth and development (WHO 2002).

According to the WHO, CF should be timely, adequate, appropriate, and given in sufficient quantity (WHO 2002). Several strategies have been used to improve CF practices (Dewey and Adu-Afarwuah 2008). These include providing nutritional counseling for mothers to promote healthy feeding practices; providing complementary foods offering extra energy, with or without micronutrient fortification; and increasing the nutrient density of complementary foods through simple technology (Dewey and Adu-Afarwuah 2008).

Inadequacy and insufficiency of complementary foods, poor feeding practices, and high rates of infections have unfavorable impacts on health and growth among children. Sufficient quantities of adequate, safe, and appropriate CF after age six months are essential to meet nutritional requirements when breast milk alone is no longer sufficient. However, estimates indicate that in LMICs, only 39 percent of children younger than age six months were exclusively breastfed in 2010 (Cai, Wardlaw, and Brown 2012); only 58 percent of babies ages six months to nine months were breastfed and given complementary foods; and only 50 percent of babies ages 10 months to 23 months were provided with complementary food and continued BF (UNICEF 2013).

Several strategies have been used to improve CF practices. However, the diversity in types of food, duration, and interventions used makes it difficult to conclude that one particular type of CF intervention is the most effective (Dewey and Adu-Afarwuah 2008). A review (Lassi and others 2013) of two CF strategies—nutritional education and CF with or without nutritional education—shows a significant impact of CF education on height-for-age z-score (HAZ) (MD: 0.23; 95 percent CI: 0.09–0.36), weight-for-age z-score (WAZ)
(MD: 0.16; 95 percent CI: 0.05–0.27), and rates of stunting (RR: 0.71; 95 percent CI: 0.56–0.91). Impacts were even more dramatic when education on CF was provided in combination with actual complementary food in food-insecure populations (HAZ scores: RR: 0.39; 95 percent CI: 0.05–0.73).

Education for improved feeding practices is essential to improve maternal knowledge and to prepare culturally acceptable enriched complementary foods that can lead to increased dietary intake and growth of infants. Maternal counseling in health system and community settings is critical to safeguarding optimal CF practices. Educational messages should be clear and should include the promotion of nutrient-rich animal products. However, in food-insecure populations, these messages need to be combined with food provision or use of protein-rich plant food sources (Lassi and others 2013). Financial constraints may limit the possibility of including adequate amounts of animal products in children's diets, particularly among food-insecure populations (Lassi and others 2013). Measures should be taken at the community level to support activities involving community health workers, lay counselors, and mothers to build community or mother support groups. Communication and advocacy activities on CF could lay the foundation for improved growth and health.

MICRONUTRIENT SUPPLEMENTATION

Micronutrient Deficiencies

According to WHO global estimates, 190 million preschool children and 19.1 million pregnant women have vitamin A deficiencies, defined as serum retinol of less than 0.70 micromoles per liter (Bjarnegard and others 2013). Globally, an estimated 5.17 million preschool-age children (0.9 percent) have night blindness, and 90 million (33.3 percent) have subclinical vitamin A deficiencies (WHO 2009). Approximately 100 million women of reproductive age have iodine deficiencies, and an estimated 82 percent of pregnant women worldwide have inadequate zinc intakes to meet the normal needs of pregnancy (WHO and UNICEF 2003). Iron deficiencies are widespread; about 1.62 billion people have anemia (de Benoist and others 2008); 18.1 percent and 1.5 percent of children have anemia and severe anemia, respectively (Salam, Das, and others 2013). South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa have the highest prevalence of all iron deficiency anemia, and Sub-Saharan Africa has the highest prevalence of severe iron deficiency anemia (Black and others 2013). Suboptimal vitamin B6 and B12 statuses have also been observed in many LMICs (McLean, de Benoist, and Allen 2008).

Zinc

Zinc deficiency has been associated with growth failure and increased risk of morbidity and mortality due to diarrheal and respiratory illness (Black and others 2013). Multiple randomized trials have studied the role of preventive zinc supplementation to promote linear growth; the findings vary across the study populations (Brown and others 2009; Ramakrishnan, Nguyen, and Martorell 2009). Meta-analyses have shown an overall beneficial effect of zinc supplementation to promote linear growth (Brown and others 2009; Imdad and Bhutta 2011). This effect is more pronounced when zinc is supplemented alone compared with when it is administered in combination with iron (Imdad and Bhutta 2011). The effect is also more pronounced for children with baseline stunting (Umeta and others 2000). No standard dose and duration of zinc supplementation has been recommended to promote linear growth; however, combined data from multiple trials in one of the meta-analyses show that a dose of 10 milligrams per day for 24 weeks led to net gains of 0.37 centimeters (standard deviation ± 0.25) in the intervention group compared with the control (Imdad and Bhutta 2011). Therapeutic zinc given to children with diarrhea has also been shown to reduce the duration and severity of illness (Walker and Black 2010).

Vitamin A

Vitamin A deficiency, a risk factor for increased incidence of infections, is the most common nutritional cause of blindness in the world. It is well established that vitamin A supplementation during childhood decreases all-cause mortality and mortality due to diarrhea and measles (Imdad and others 2010). Studies have also evaluated its role in promotion of linear growth; results have shown that vitamin A supplementation does not have any significant role in this respect. A meta-analysis by Ramakrishnan, Nguyen, and Martorell (2009) analyzes data from 17 studies and finds no statistically significant effect of vitamin A on growth. A large randomized trial conducted in India also does not show any positive effect of vitamin A supplementation on height gain (Awasthi and others 2013).

Iron

The proportion of all childhood anemia corrected by iron supplementation ranges from 63 percent in Europe to 34 percent in Sub-Saharan Africa. A review of 33 studies shows that intermittent iron supplementation in children younger than age two years reduced the risk of anemia by 49 percent and iron deficiency by
76 percent (De-Regil and others 2011). The findings also suggest that intermittent iron supplementation could be a viable public health intervention in settings in which daily supplementation has not been implemented or is not feasible.

A review of the effect of iron supplementation in children on mental and motor development shows only small gains in the mental development and intelligence scores in supplemented school-age children who were initially anemic or iron deficient (Sachdev, Gera, and Nestel 2005). There is no convincing evidence that iron treatment has an effect on the mental development of children younger than age 27 months. Because it has been demonstrated that there is an increased risk of admission to hospital and serious illnesses with iron supplementation in malaria-endemic areas (Sazawal and others 2006), the WHO recommends administration of routine prophylactic iron supplements in malaria-endemic areas on the stipulation that malaria prevention and treatment are made available (WHO 2011, 2014).

Multiple Micronutrient Supplementation

In many LMICs, micronutrient deficiencies coexist, suggesting the need for simple approaches that evaluate and address multiple micronutrient supplementation. These approaches include education, dietary modification, food provision, agricultural interventions, supplementation, and fortification, either alone or in combination. Food fortification can be a potentially cost-effective public health intervention and target a larger population through a single strategy. A meta-analysis of multiple micronutrient fortification in children shows an increase in hemoglobin levels by 0.87 grams per deciliter (95 percent CI: 0.57–1.16) and 57 percent reduced risk of anemia (RR: 0.43; 95 percent CI: 0.26–0.71). Multiple micronutrient food fortification also increased vitamin A serum levels (retinol increase of 3.7 milligrams per deciliter; 95 percent CI: 1.3–6.1) (Eichler and others 2012).

In the past decade, point-of-use or home fortification of child diets has emerged to address widespread micronutrient deficiencies. Multiple micronutrient powders (MNPs) or sprinkles are powdered encapsulated vitamins and minerals that can be added to prepared foods with little change to the food’s taste or texture. MNPs are designed to provide the recommended daily nutrient intake of two or more vitamins and minerals to their target populations. A review has established that MNPs appear to be effective for reducing anemia and iron deficiency in children younger than age two years (De-Regil and others 2013). Another review of MNPs suggests benefit in improving anemia and hemoglobin among children; however, it shows no impact on growth and evidence of increased diarrhea, suggesting further consideration is needed before large-scale implementation (Salam and others 2013).

NUTRITION-SENSITIVE INTERVENTIONS

Complementing the nutrition-specific interventions are nutrition-sensitive interventions to aid the implementation of these primary interventions. Although the direct impact of nutrition-sensitive interventions is limited, they have huge potential. These programs include the following:

• Water, sanitation, and hygiene (WASH) strategies
• Financial incentives at multiple levels
• Community-based nutrition education and mobilization programs.

These strategies can be delivered through health systems, agriculture-based programs, market-based approaches, or other community-based platforms.

WASH Strategies

Consensus has emerged on the importance of improved water supply and excreta disposal for prevention of diseases, especially diarrheal diseases. Provision of safe and clean water, as well as enhanced facilities for excreta disposal and promotion of hygiene, not only aim to improve the quality of life, but also help reduce the incidence of infectious diseases, particularly in children. In 2011, 89 percent of the world’s population used improved drinking-water sources, and 55 percent had a piped supply on the premises. In the same year, 1 billion people still defecated in the open (WHO 2013). Although geographic disparities exist, rural and urban disparities within countries are also striking: 83 percent of the rural population has no access to safe water and 71 percent lives without sanitation (WHO 2013). Despite the declining open defecation rates globally, some countries, such as Cambodia and Benin, still have open defecation rates as high as 58 percent and 54 percent, respectively (WHO 2013). Ensuring safe WASH practices is urgently needed at household and community levels.

A review (Dangour and others 2013) of the effect of WASH interventions on the nutritional status of children younger than age 18 years finds no impact on WAZ scores (MD 0.05; 95 percent CI: −0.01–0.12) and weight-for-height z-score scores (MD: 0.02; 95 percent CI: −0.07–0.11), but a small impact on HAZ scores (MD 0.08; 95 percent CI 0.00–0.16). Another review (Cairncross and
others 2010) highlights promising impacts of handwashing on reducing diarrhea morbidity by 47 percent (RR: 0.53; 95 percent CI: 0.37–0.67). Water quality improvement also showed significant impacts on reducing the incidence of diarrhea by 42 percent (RR 0.58; 95 percent CI: 0.46–0.72). Another review (Waddington and others 2009) of the effectiveness of these interventions concludes that interventions for water quality (protection or treatment of water at source or point of use) were more effective than interventions to improve water supply (improved source of water, improved distribution, or both). Interventions for water quality were associated with a 42 percent relative reduction in diarrhea morbidity in children younger than age five years, whereas those for water supply had no significant effects.

Overall, sanitation interventions led to a 37 percent reduction in childhood diarrhea morbidity, and hygiene interventions led to a 31 percent reduction. Subgroup analysis suggests that provision of soap with education was more effective than education only. The results suggest that interventions to improve the microbial quality of water, adequate excreta disposal, and behavior change interventions for promotion of hand washing and hygiene play their parts very efficiently in reducing the occurrence of infectious diseases and improving nutrition. Disease prevention and management interventions also have a role in improving nutrition, especially interventions targeting diarrhea and pneumonia (Bhutta and others 2013; Hutton and Chase, forthcoming).

Financial Incentives
Financial incentives are increasingly used as policy strategies to counter poverty, reduce financial barriers, and improve population health. A review of the effect of financial incentives on the coverage of health and nutrition interventions and behaviors targeting children younger than age five years (Bassani and others 2013) concludes that financial incentives have the potential to promote increased coverage of several important child health interventions. More pronounced effects seemed to be achieved by programs that directly removed user fees for access to health services. Some indication of effect was noted for programs that conditioned financial incentives on participation in health education and attendance at health care visits.

Community-Based Programs
A full spectrum of promotive, preventive, and curative interventions to improve child nutrition can be delivered via community platforms. A review (GHWA 2010) of community-based packages of care suggests that these interventions can double the rate of initiation of BF within one hour of birth (RR: 2.25; 95 percent CI: 1.70–2.97). Lewin and others (2010) review 82 studies with lay health workers and show moderate-quality evidence of the effect on the initiation of BF (RR: 1.36; 95 percent CI: 1.14–1.61), any BF (RR: 1.24; 95 percent CI: 1.10–1.39), and EBF (RR: 2.78; 95 percent CI: 1.74–4.44), compared with usual care.

Although much of the evidence from large-scale programs using community health workers is of poor quality, process indicators and assessments do suggest that community health workers are able to implement many of these projects at scale, and they have substantial potential to improve the uptake of child health and nutrition outcomes in difficult-to-reach populations (GHWA 2010). It is important to underscore the crucial importance of community engagement and buy-in to ensure effective community outreach programs, behavior change, and access (chapter 14 in this volume, [Lassi, Kumar, and Bhutta 2016]).

CHALLENGES AND THE WAY FORWARD

Existing Evidence
The nutrition series in The Lancet highlights the existing promising nutrition-specific interventions to reduce fetal growth restriction and SGA births and improve nutrition among children younger than age five years in LMICs (table 12.2) (Bhutta and others 2013). These interventions include the following:

- Periconceptional folic acid supplementation or fortification
- Maternal BEP
- Iron-folate supplementation
- Multiple micronutrient supplementation
- Calcium supplementation for preeclampsia
- BF promotion
- Appropriate CF
- Preventive zinc and vitamin A supplementation
- Management of malnutrition in children.

Scaling up these identified interventions to 90 percent coverage could reduce deaths among children younger than age five years by nearly 15 percent and could reduce stunting by 20 percent and severe wasting by 61 percent (figure 12.2) (Bhutta and others 2013).

Geographic Disparities
Despite the existence of proven interventions and relative improvements in nutrition indicators overall,
### Table 12.2 Interventions to Improve Nutrition in Mothers and Children Younger than Age Five Years

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intervention</th>
<th>Estimates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maternal interventions</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron or iron-folate supplementation</td>
<td>• LBW (RR: 0.80; 95 percent CI: 0.68–0.97)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Birth weight (MD: 30.81 g; 95 percent CI: 5.94–55.68)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Serum hemoglobin concentration at term (MD: 8.88 g/l; 95 percent CI: 6.96–10.80)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Anemia at term (RR: 0.31; 95 percent CI: 0.19–0.46)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Iron deficiency (RR: 0.43; 95 percent CI: 0.27–0.66)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Iron deficiency anemia (RR: 0.34; 95 percent CI: 0.16–0.69)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Side effects (RR: 2.36; 95 percent CI: 0.96–5.82)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Nonsignificant impacts on premature delivery, neonatal death, congenital anomalies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maternal multiple micronutrient supplementation</td>
<td>• LBW (RR: 0.89; 95 percent CI: 0.83–0.94)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SGA (RR: 0.87; 95 percent CI: 0.81–0.95)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Nonsignificant impacts on preterm birth, miscarriage, maternal mortality, perinatal mortality, stillbirths, and neonatal mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maternal balanced energy protein supplementation</td>
<td>• Risk of SGA reduced by 34 percent (RR: 0.66; 95 percent CI: 0.49–0.89)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Stillbirths reduced by 38 percent (RR: 0.62; 95 percent CI: 0.40–0.98)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Birth weight increased (MD: 73 g; 95 percent CI: 30–117)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child interventions</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breastfeeding</td>
<td>• Exclusive breastfeeding rates increased by 43 percent at four to six weeks, with 89 percent and 20 percent significant increases in LMICs and HICs, respectively. Exclusive breastfeeding improved at age six months by 137 percent, with a sixfold increase in LMICs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complementary and supplementary feeding</td>
<td>• Statistically significant difference of effect for length during the intervention in children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron supplementation</td>
<td>• Anemia (RR: 0.51; 95 percent CI: 0.37–0.72)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Iron deficiency (RR: 0.24; 95 percent CI: 0.06–0.91), hemoglobin (MD: 5.20 g/l; 95 percent CI: 2.51–7.88), ferritin (MD: 14.17 mcg/l; 95 percent CI: 3.53–24.81)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A supplementation</td>
<td>• All-cause mortality reduced by 24 percent (RR: 0.76; 95 percent CI: 0.69–0.83)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Diarrhea-related mortality reduced by 28 percent (RR: 0.72; 95 percent CI: 0.57–0.91)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Incidence of diarrhea reduced by 15 percent (RR: 0.85; 95 percent CI: 0.82–0.87)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Incidence of measles reduced by 50 percent (RR = 0.50; 95 percent CI: 0.37–0.67)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Nonsignificant impacts on measles and ARI-related mortality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc supplementation</td>
<td>• Height improved by 0.37 centimeters (SD 0.25) in children supplemented for 24 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Diarrhea reduced by 13 percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pneumonia reduced by 19 percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Nonsignificant impacts on mortality</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disease prevention and management**

| WASH interventions                        | • Diarrhea reduced by 48 percent (RR: 0.52; 95 percent CI: 0.34–0.65) with handwashing with soap, 17 percent with improved water quality, and 36 percent with excreta disposal |
| Deworming                                 | • Prophylactic single and multiple dose deworming had a nonsignificant effect on hemoglobin and weight gain. |
|                                            | • Treating children with proven infection showed that single dose of deworming drugs increases weight (0.58 kg; 95 percent CI: 0.40–0.76) and hemoglobin (0.37 g/dl; 95 percent CI: 0.1–0.64) |
nutrition data indicate considerable disparities among geographic regions, with South Asia bearing the highest burden (Stevens and others 2012). Almost 75 percent of all the world’s LBW infants are born in South Asia. In the 75 Countdown countries, more than one child in three is stunted, and the median prevalence of wasting is 7.1 percent. Within countries, wide disparities exist between the richest and poorest wealth quintiles; in 20 percent of the Countdown countries, more than 50 percent of the children in the poorest 20 percent of all families is stunted. With these existing disparities, another challenge is the human immunodeficiency virus epidemic in the Countdown countries, especially those in Sub-Saharan Africa, which threatens to reverse all the nutrition gains achieved through large-scale programs.

Way Forward

Optimal IYCF means that mothers receive optimal antenatal care, are empowered to initiate BF within one hour of birth, BF exclusively for the first six months, and continue BF for two years or more, complemented by nutritionally adequate, nutrient-dense, safe and age-appropriate feeding of solid, semisolid, and soft foods starting in the sixth month (UNICEF 2014). Despite the existing guidelines, early cessation of BF and untimely introduction and poor-quality CF prevail. Strategies to protect, promote, and support EBF are needed at the national, health systems and community levels.

- At the national level, creating appropriate structures that ensure the adoption and implementation of the proper policies and legislation is vital (UNICEF 2014). This approach includes the development and implementation of national IYCF policies and strategy frameworks, as well as the development and enforcement of legislation that relates to the International Code of Marketing of Breast-milk Substitutes and maternity protection.
  - At the health systems level, strategies include implementation of the Baby-Friendly Hospital Initiative, the education of health staff about adherence to the International Code of Marketing of Breast-milk Substitutes, as well as capacity building for health workers in areas such as BF counseling (UNICEF 2014).
  - At the community level, maternal support activities involving community health workers, lay counselors, and mother-to-mother support groups
are crucial. Promoting the importance of BF possibilities at the workplace is vital. Implementation of an evidence-based communication strategy using multiple channels, connecting and coordinating the efforts at the three levels, is also vital for the successful protection, promotion, and support of BF.

Appropriate CF is a proven intervention that can significantly reduce stunting during the first two years of life. An important issue is that the quality of the food received is often inadequate, failing to provide sufficient protein, fat, or micronutrients for optimal growth and development. Meeting the minimum required dietary quality is a challenge in many countries and has not been emphasized enough. Children may not receive complementary foods at the right age, may not be fed frequently enough during the day, or may receive poor-quality food. A comprehensive approach includes both counseling for caregivers on the best use of available foods (both local and commercially available) and feeding and care practices, and the provision of micronutrient and food supplements, when needed.

The ability to measure and monitor BF and CF practices might help raise awareness of their importance and facilitate progress in achieving improvements in BF practices worldwide (UNICEF 2006). Understanding the extent to which indicators of dietary quality predict anthropometric outcomes is important for interpreting the meaning of the measurements arising from these indicators (Jones and others 2014). Relatively simple indicators for assessing BF practices have been in wide use since the early 1990s (WHO 1991). However, defining simple CF indicators has proved to be challenging because of its multiple dimensions, the variation in these practices across contexts, and the changes in recommended practices that occur from ages 6 months to 23 months (Arimond, Daelmans, and Dewey 2008; WHO 2008). The WHO IYCF indicators are designed not only for describing trends in IYCF practices over time but also for identifying populations at risk and for evaluating the impacts of interventions. A literature review examining the eight core WHO IYCF indicators (table 12.1) and their relationships with child anthropometry using country-level data suggests that these indicators are especially well suited for monitoring trends in diet quality in large-scale data sets where detailed dietary data cannot be collected; however, they may not be highly sensitive or specific measures of dietary quality in the analysis of the causal pathways to child growth (Jones and others 2014).

The importance of maternal nutrition and its impact on child nutrition and health cannot be sufficiently underscored. To tackle the existing burden of child nutrition, strong emphasis should be focused on improving maternal nutrition even before pregnancy so that women enter pregnancy in the optimal state of health and nutrition. The current global emphasis on adolescence can address a multitude of problems and be the impetus for better women and child health and nutrition.

CONCLUSIONS

Infant and young child nutrition is dependent on the direct determinants of nutrition and growth, including diet, behavior, and health. It is also greatly affected by indirect determinants such as food security, education, environment, economic and social conditions, resources, and governance. Hence, the agenda for combating malnutrition requires a multifaceted approach involving both the interventions directed at the more immediate causes of suboptimum growth and development (nutrition specific) and the large-scale nutrition-sensitive programs that broadly address the underlying determinants of malnutrition.

NOTE

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:
  a) lower-middle-income = US$1,046 to US$4,125
  b) upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126 to US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

REFERENCES


Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health


INTRODUCTION

Developmental potential is the ability to think, learn, remember, relate, and articulate ideas appropriate to age and level of maturity, and an estimated 39 percent of the world’s children under age five years do not attain this potential (Grantham-McGregor and others 2007).

The main reason for giving prominent attention to mental development from conception through the first 24 months of life is that early unfavorable conditions can impair the normal development of the brain. The impairment is often incremental and unnoticed until schooling begins. The most striking example of impairment is the gradual deletion of unused brain synapses. The lack of use may be due to the absence of stimulation in the family environment or lack of available energy for brain activity. Regenerating those lost synapses may occur at an older age but with additional costs. For example, children who do not acquire a good vocabulary in the early years will have difficulty learning how to read; children who do not acquire simple problem-solving strategies in the first 24 months will have difficulty understanding math concepts; children who do not develop secure emotional attachments to adults will have difficulty coping with stresses and challenges throughout life. The plasticity of the brain diminishes with age, but greater plasticity in the very early years suggests that brain development has a greater chance of being modified by protective interventions than by interventions later in life (Werker and Hensch 2015).

A second reason for attending to early mental development is that individuals, communities, and societies are healthier and more productive if they have mature mental skills. More educated adults are healthier and wealthier than less educated adults. Educated mothers have healthier children and are more likely to recognize symptoms of illness, follow medical advice, feed their children nutritious foods, and keep their homes clean (Boyle and others 2006; Cleland and van Ginneken 1988). Educated husbands are less likely to condone or use violence to resolve domestic conflicts (Abraham and others 2006). Follow-up data of adults who participated in early psychosocial stimulation programs demonstrate some of these long-term benefits (Gertler and others 2014).

This chapter discusses mental development from birth to age 24 months in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs). We include recent literature published since the 2011 child development series in The Lancet. Although we focus on cognitive and language domains, we touch on socioemotional, fine motor, and gross motor development. First, a description of how these domains are measured provides an operational definition of the term mental development. Second, conditions that derail early child development are examined. These conditions arise during the prenatal period and continue throughout the next 24 months; they include psychosocial stimulation, prenatal and postnatal nutrition, the physical environment, and
maternal mental health. Finally, the results of several systematic reviews and meta-analyses are presented to show the effects of stimulation and nutrition, along with disease-related interventions to promote mental development. Maternal interventions related to nutrition and mental health are also reviewed. A framework of critical components to include in programs is outlined.

PREVALENCE AND MEASUREMENT: WHAT DOES MENTAL DEVELOPMENT ENTAIL AT THIS AGE?

In the absence of well-validated international indicators, the Ten Questions Survey was used in 18 countries as part of the Multiple Indicator Cluster Survey 2005–06. Included were countries in the Caribbean, west Asia, southeast Asia, and Sub-Saharan Africa. The survey screens for disabilities by asking mothers of children ages 2–9 years two cognitive questions (for example, does your child learn to do things like other children his or her age?) and four language questions (for example, can your child name at least one object?). Results indicate that 7 percent of children had a cognitive disability, and 21 percent had a language disability. Overall, 27 percent of children screened positive for one of the sensory-motor-mental-social disabilities (Gottlieb and others 2009). However, because the answers depend on the ability of the mothers to notice disabilities, screening is likely to reveal only the tip of the iceberg (Yousafzai, Lynch, and Gladstone 2014). Also, because the items address disabilities rather than expected development, measurement experts are working to create a list of 30 or so mental milestones specific to the under-24-month age group to be asked of mothers (see, for example, Prado and others 2014).

The mental competencies of children during the first 24 months can now be directly assessed with behavioral tests and brain recordings. Both tools show that by the end of the first month, newborns respond to language more than to other sounds; they like looking at bright contrasts, movement, and color. The Brazelton Neonatal Behavioral Assessment Scale (Brazelton and Nugent 1995) assesses these competencies through observations of newborns interacting with others. Healthier newborns show better regulation of physiological states by self-soothing; better habituation to repeated sensory inputs, such as ringing bells; and greater response to social speech. The measured competencies are expected to facilitate engagement with physical and social environments in ways that will promote mental development. Impairments during the neonatal period due to fetal lead contamination and deficits in iodine can be detected with this early assessment (Kooistra and others 2006; Patel and others 2006).

The most common measures of mental development after the newborn period are standardized behavioral tests, such as the Bayley Scales of Infant and Toddler Development, Third Edition (Bayley 2006) and the Griffiths Mental Development Scales (Griffiths and Huntley 1996). Both measure cognitive, receptive language, expressive language, fine motor, and gross motor development from birth to age 3.5 years using a number of items of increasing difficulty. The cognitive items mainly concern the ability to solve small problems. Receptive language items test the ability to understand the meaning of words, sentences, and abstract categories. Expressive language items assess the ability to use sounds, gestures, and the spoken word to communicate. Fine motor items include eye-hand coordination tasks. Gross motor development, such as sitting and walking, is not strongly related to mental development (Hamadani and others 2013) and so is not addressed here.

Social and emotional skills are an important domain of mental development, but measures for this age are not commonly applied in research, and determinants are not widely known. The Griffiths Scales include items that address personal-social skills, such as recognition of one’s mother, enjoying playmates, and feeding and dressing oneself. The Bayley Scales also include a social-emotional subscale, with questions for parents that reveal the purposeful and social expression of emotions and interactive behaviors. However, secure attachment is the most important capability acquired in the first two years (Sroufe 2005). It is measured by the Strange Situation, in which observers note how much emotional security children derive from parents when under some stress due to the presence of strange people and objects. Malnourished children and those who receive less responsive warmth appear to be less emotionally secure than well-nourished and supported children (Cooper and others 2009; Isabella 1993; Valenzuela 1990).

CONDITIONS THAT AFFECT CHILD DEVELOPMENT

Many of the conditions that affect the health and growth of children in the first 1,000 days could affect mental development. These factors include the preconception and pregnancy nutritional status of the mother, birth weight and linear growth of the infant, and conditions of labor and delivery; maternal mental health; and
environmental conditions. However, we start with the condition most specific to mental development, namely, psychosocial stimulation. Many of these conditions co-occur, as will the impairments they cause.

**Psychosocial Stimulation**

Psychosocial stimulation refers to an external object or event that elicits a physiological and psychological response in the child. A specific measure of psychosocial stimulation is the Home Observation for Measurement of the Environment (HOME) Inventory (Bradley and Corwyn 2005). The infant and toddler version for children younger than age 24 months includes 45 items that are assessed through observation and interview. The essence of stimulation is observed in mother-child interaction that is verbal and responsive to the child’s state, and in play materials that can be manipulated in different ways by the child. The caregiver is also questioned about activities that expose the child to places, people, and conversation. The focus is on opportunities to play and converse in ways that stretch thinking and understanding of speech. Scores on the HOME Inventory from around the world have ranged from a low of 20 (Boivin and others 2013) to a high of 31 (Lozoff and others 2010); in other words, the scores satisfied less than half to two-thirds of the items (figure 13.1). All studies showed very strong correlations between HOME scores and children’s mental development, with low HOME scores associated with poor mental development.

A brief version of the inventory called the Family Care Indicators is available for use in national surveys. Consisting of 10 interview questions for the caregiver, it has been validated in South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa (Hamadani, Tofail, and others 2010; Kariger and others 2012) and used to evaluate responsive and stimulating caregiving practices out of six performed in the past three days with a child under age five years was 3.03. Although no threshold score is available to identify inadequate levels of stimulation, low levels such as these are unlikely to support expected levels of mental development (Bradley and Corwyn 2005).

Both the HOME Inventory and its briefer version are highly correlated with children’s mental development, ranging from \( r = 0.20 \) to \( r = 0.46 \) (Aboud and others 2013; Boivin and others 2013; Hamadani, Tofail, and others 2010; Tofail and others 2012). These correlations and the theoretical framework presented here (figure 13.2) support the design of stimulation interventions to enhance mental development. One hypothesized pathway proposes that an adult’s child-directed conversation stimulates speech perception sites in the brain, thereby maintaining neural connections throughout language sites in the brain. Also, if the conversation is directly related to children’s current state, it is expected to expand the children’s receptive language and grammar. This interaction helps children translate their own thoughts and actions into speech and later into writing and reading. Play materials that children enjoy manipulating and combining in multiple ways help them learn about mass...
Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health

and weight, as well as problem solving. The material must be challenging so that children have opportunities to construct the material in new ways.

Child Nutrition

One of the strongest risk factors for poor mental development is short length- or height-for-age (for cross-sectional studies, see Olney and others 2009; Servili and others 2010; for longitudinal studies, see Grantham-McGregor and others 2007). Stunting is a commonly used indicator of chronic undernutrition, defined as more than two standard deviations below the age- and gender-specific norm, that increases rapidly after age six months; by 24 months, 50 percent of children in LMICs are stunted (Victora, de Onis, and Hallal 2010). Children rarely catch up after this age.

It is not clear why length and height are so strongly related to cognitive and language development, except that linear growth may be a proxy for other critical nutrition processes related to brain and behavioral development. A model of how nutrition contributes to mental development is presented in figure 13.3 (Brown and Pollitt 1996; Prado and Dewey 2014). One pathway is direct in the sense that nutrients support the structure and activity of brain sites responsible for mental development. Other pathways are indirect in that nutrition enhances health and engagement with the environment, which promote mental development. Evidence from nutrition interventions showing effects on growth and health are described here. The next section presents intervention effects on mental development.

Macronutrients

Sufficient macronutrients, such as carbohydrates, proteins, and fats, are important to linear growth and mental development. In the first six months, exclusive breastfeeding provides sufficient nutrients to support healthy rates of growth and immunity (Kramer and others 2001) (see chapter 5 in this volume, Stevens, Finucane, and Paciorek 2016). After age six months, the quality of diet is captured by the term dietary diversity and measured as the number of seven different food categories in a daily diet (Daelmans, Dewey, and Arimond 2009). Dietary diversity was positively related to linear growth in five of the nine countries for which these data were analyzed (Jones and others 2014). Improving dietary diversity, especially with animal-source foods, is a critical message in nutrition education interventions (Neumann and others 2007). In eight studies, nutrition education alone for mothers of children ages 6–24 months, usually about foods to feed and number of meals, led to gains in length, with an effect size of $d = 0.21$, where effect size $d$ refers to the number of standard deviations by which intervention children’s length exceeded that of control children (Dewey and Adu-Afarwuah 2008; Imdad, Yakoob, and Bhutta 2011). Agricultural improvements at the household level are also being implemented and evaluated (Iannotti and others 2014).

Micronutrients

Micronutrients such as iron and iodine are considered to be important for mental development in the first 24 months (see chapter 11 in this volume, Lenters, Wazny, and Bhutta 2016; and chapter 12, Das and others 2016). Numerous studies have demonstrated high levels of anemia in young children, especially in South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa, where 20 percent of children younger than age five years are anemic (Black and others 2013). Both an iron-deficient diet and hookworm in contaminated soil are responsible for low

---

**Figure 13.2 Framework Illustrating Pathways from Psychosocial Stimulation to Mental Development**

Source: Larson and Yousafzai 2014.

**Figure 13.3 Framework Illustrating Pathways from Nutritional Status to Mental Development**

levels of hemoglobin. Anemic children are consistently found to have lower levels of mental development than non-anemic children in case-control studies, and differences persist over the long term (Lozoff and others 2006). Anemic children also show a number of socially isolating behaviors, such as wariness and lethargy. However, the nutritional and mental consequences of providing young children with iron are mixed and generally weak (Pasricha and others 2013). In many cases, iron therapy has not sufficiently raised their hemoglobin levels; even when it has, children's mental development scores frequently have not improved. Alternative explanations are being sought for the longitudinal findings, such as low levels of stimulation in the home environment, where the mother may be anemic. Brain functioning, such as speed of processing auditory and visual information, may be a more sensitive measure of the mental effects, especially if iron is an important element in the myelin sheath around neuronal axons (Lozoff and others 2006).

Iodine deficiency is consistently associated with poor school achievement, but much less is known about its effect on the mental development of children younger than age 24 months (Zimmermann 2012; Zimmermann, Jooste, and Pandav 2008). Many countries lack naturally occurring iodine in the soil and water and therefore must fortify a product such as salt. Most of the data on prevalence has been collected from children ages 6–12 years whose urinary iodine levels tend to match that of their parents. Based on these data, an estimated 40 percent of the Sub-Saharan African population and 31.6 percent of the population of East Asia and Pacific and South Asia are iodine deficient (Black and others 2013). Four prospective studies find that mental development scores of children with inadequate iodine levels at birth were half a standard deviation less than those with healthy levels (Bougma and others 2013); this finding translates into a development quotient difference of 8 points on a standard mental test—a meaningful difference.

Multiple Vitamin and Mineral Supplements
Multiple micronutrients constitute the common nutritional supplement provided to young children. Children are often deficient in many minerals, such as iron and zinc, as well as vitamins. All are critical for health and growth, and their effects on mental development are becoming clear. The rationale for studying multiple micronutrients is that they work together to improve health, they appear to be necessary for linear growth, and they are found in many sites in the brain. Most of what is known about the effects of combining multiple micronutrients comes from evaluations of trials in which various combinations are provided in a powder sprinkled on the food daily at mealtime. Alternatively, researchers weigh meal foods and calculate quantities of different nutrients in each food item.

Linear growth is still the strongest correlate of mental development, so it is important to evaluate the effects of macro- and micronutrient interventions on children's height. The section on Interventions for Mental Development reports effects on cognitive and language outcomes. Systematic reviews have consistently shown that the effect sizes of nutrition interventions on linear growth gains were lowest for micronutrient fortification (about 0.12), and better for energy alone (about 0.25) and the provision of food with extra proteins and nutrients (about 0.28) (Bhutta and others 2013; Dewey and Adu-Afarwuah 2008). The effect sizes for nutrition education were 0.20, especially those programs emphasizing dietary diversity and animal-source foods. Although nutrition education is insufficient on its own, especially in food-insecure sites, it is necessary if benefits from short-term supplementation and fortification are to be sustained, and in some cases leads to better mental development (Vazir and others 2013).

Environmental Conditions
Environmental conditions encompass a broad array of vectors, including contaminated razors used to cut the umbilical cord and leading to tetanus, viruses and bacteria that follow a fecal-oral transmission route starting from poor home sanitation and leading to diarrhea, parasites carried by the female Anopheles mosquito leading to malaria, and Chlamydia trachomatis brought by moisture-seeking flies to children's eyes that can lead to blindness. Despite a resurgence in some places, deaths due to neonatal tetanus, and sensory-motor disabilities due to polio and measles, are being reduced with the help of vaccines. However, trachoma, diarrhea, and cerebral malaria continue to have major impacts on early mental development.

Trachoma
Trachoma, active in 40.6 million people worldwide, is responsible for blindness in 8.2 million people (Mariotti, Pascolini, and Rose-Nussbaumer 2009). It is endemic in 57 countries, but 80 percent of the cases are in 15 countries, most in Sub-Saharan Africa. One study of southern Sudan found that 64 percent of children ages 1–9 years had active trachoma; 46.2 percent of infants had signs of active trachoma (Ngondi and others 2005). The condition begins in early childhood when the Chlamydia trachomatis, passed by hand or flies, leads to inflammation of the conjunctiva of the upper eyelid. The infection may disappear, but repeated reinfection leads to blindness. Although surgery is needed for cases of blindness...
among adults, the more common approach has been mass azithromycin antibiotic treatment as a primary and secondary prevention (Ogden and Emerson 2012).

Diarrhea
Diarrhea becomes most prevalent between 6 and 24 months of age; children have on average four to five episodes a year (Kosek, Bern, and Guerrant 2003). The most common cause of severe diarrhea is rotavirus, for which vaccines are being given to infants in many countries in East Asia and Pacific and South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa (Armah and others 2010). Other common causes are bacteria, such as salmonella, shigella, and pathogenic E. coli. The main route of transmission is fecal-oral, so the risk is high if families do not use a latrine or improved sources of water. Children become exposed to contaminated soil and water, typically after age six months when they start to crawl and share family meals. Hookworm, one of the geohelminths found in contaminated soil, is responsible for half of the anemia in children, and diarrhea is a common cause of malnutrition and stunting (Checkley and others 2008). Although there is little evidence that worms and diarrhea directly impede mental development, they may diminish important determinants, such as growth and activity (Fischer Walker and others 2012; Taylor-Robinson, Jones, and Garner 2007) (see chapter 9 in this volume, Keusch and others 2016).

Enteropathy
Recent attention has focused on tropical or environmental enteropathy, which results from constantly ingested fecal bacteria, as a subclinical condition. In several studies, fecal bacteria contamination was very high in children’s food and in soil and chicken feces found around the home where children play (Ngure and others 2014); these levels are correlated with microbiological data from the children and high levels of inflammation. Constantly high levels of pathogenic bacteria lead to chronic changes in the villi of the small intestines (Humphrey 2009; McKay and others 2010; Weisz and others 2012). The effect of enteropathy is to increase absorption of bacterial products, such as endotoxins, into the system and allow for leakage of nutrients, such as proteins. Consequently, young children experience recurrent infections, with associated loss of appetite and diversion of nutrients to fight infections and inflammation, resulting in inactivity and growth faltering. Jiang and others (2014) find a direct association between mental development scores and the number of days during which an infant experienced fever and elevated levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines. Although preliminary, the work suggests a connection between inflammation and mental development. If enteropathy is as prevalent and severe as feared, how to eliminate sources of contamination in the environment without restricting children’s access to psychosocial stimulation around the home must be seriously reconsidered.

Cerebral Malaria
Cerebral malaria has clear but variable consequences for early childhood mental development. There are 104 malaria-endemic countries in the world; most are in Sub-Saharan Africa. The parasite Plasmodium falciparum, in particular, is most strongly associated with cerebral malaria leading to high fever, coma, and organ failure. Contracted by pregnant women or young children, malaria is a serious cause of death and disability among children. In one Ugandan study, approximately 10 percent of survivors had severe neurological deficits; the majority had moderate problems that were detected only with psychological testing when the children were older (Bangirana and others 2006). Disabilities are evident in auditory or visual processing, as well as in memory and attention; language problems were not as severely affected. Because impairments vary, many researchers report the number of subtests on which cerebral malaria survivors show deficits compared with controls. For example, a prospective study with children ages 5–9 years in Kampala, Uganda, finds that on several tests of attention, working memory, and learning, 36.4 percent showed deficits on at least one measure at hospital discharge; 21.4 percent maintained deficits at six-month and two-year follow-ups, compared with 5.7 percent of healthy controls (Boivin and others 2007; John and others 2008). Deficits in attention and memory were most common and were related to the number of seizures and duration of coma.

Most of this research has been conducted in urban hospitals, although the larger burden of malaria is likely found in rural sites. Consequently, the evidence is strong that a large proportion of children with cerebral malaria and its associated brain complications will show long-term cognitive and perceptual problems.

Maternal Nutrition
The optimum body mass index (BMI) for women at the start of pregnancy is 18.5 to 24 kilograms per meter squared. In LMICs, more than 10 percent of women are less than 18.5, with the highest levels of low BMI found in South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa (Black and others 2013). BMI is an important benchmark because it highlights the undernutrition of many women before they become pregnant. The failure to meet the benchmark indicates increased risk of difficult deliveries for mothers and children; short maternal stature, defined as less than
145 centimeters, is also problematic. Although the rate of low BMI is declining, the prevalence of unattended home deliveries remains high. Consequently, birth injuries, such as asphyxia, are untreated and leave lasting effects on mental development.

Mothers with low BMI, short stature, or both put their children at risk of being small-for-gestational-age (SGA). SGA, defined as having birth weight less than the 10th percentile for gestational age, includes newborns who are at term (37–40 weeks) but small—less than 2,500 grams at 37 weeks and less than 2,900 grams at 40 weeks, as well as those who are preterm and small. In 2010, an estimated 32.4 million newborns in LMICs, or 27 percent of the 120 million births, were SGA; of these, 30 million were born at term with intrauterine growth restriction (Lee and others 2013). South Asia makes the highest contribution to this figure; 42 percent of its births are SGA. Prematurity tends to be consistent at 18 percent for Sub-Saharan Africa and 12 percent for South Asia (Lawn and others 2014), although very few born younger than 32 weeks survive in LMICs. The group most at risk for neurological and developmental disabilities is the combined group of premature infants and term SGA infants, who together make up 43.3 million or 36 percent of live births (Lee and others 2013). Some experts identify only SGA infants (preterm and term) as high risk.

Increased Risk of Neurodevelopmental Disabilities
Although the first hurdle for SGA and premature newborns is surviving respiratory distress, hypothermia, and infections during the first month, the second hurdle is early neurodevelopmental disabilities (Blencowe and others 2013). These issues include cognitive impairment, hearing and vision problems, and motor and behavioral problems. A systematic review of surviving preterm children, mainly from high-income countries (HICs), indicates that approximately 7 percent showed mild or moderate-to-severe impairment in one of these areas. Those with very short gestational age fared worse: 24.5 percent of those with less than 32 weeks’ gestation had moderate-to-severe impairment, whereas 1.8 percent of those between 32 and 37 weeks had impairments (Blencowe and others 2013; Platt 2014). One hospital-based assessment of surviving preterm Bangladeshi infants with gestational age of less than 33 weeks finds that 73 percent had mild or serious impairments when tested at younger than age two years; 66 percent were reported as having impairments between ages two and four years (Khan and others 2009); most of the impairments were cognitive. Although most data come from studies in HICs, conclusions and applications to East Asia and Pacific and South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa are clear, especially for the 12.6 million children born at ages 32–37 weeks who need facility and family care but not necessarily a high-technology intensive care unit. More research is needed to identify the range of disabilities they may experience related to sensory development, learning, mental health, and executive function. Programs to prevent and treat these disabilities have received little attention in LMICs.

Increased Risk of Delayed Mental Development
The third hurdle for SGA and premature newborns is linear growth restriction, an important determinant of mental development. SGA newborns have experienced fetal growth restriction and are unlikely to catch up because of problems starting breastfeeding and the usual decline in growth rates found in the first 24 months (Christian and others 2013). In 19 longitudinal cohort studies from LMICs that followed children from birth to between ages 12 and 60 months, low birth weight (LBW) children were almost three times more likely to be stunted (< −2.00 height-for-age z-score) than normal birth weight children, but this likelihood varied according to gestational age. The risks were highest for preterm SGA newborns (odds ratio: 4.51), next for term-SGA (odds ratio: 2.43), and lowest for preterm average-for-gestational-age (odds ratio: 1.93). Accordingly, although prematurity was the stronger determinant of neonatal mortality, weight-for-gestational-age had more lasting effects on linear growth. The mental development of SGA newborns may be compromised in the short term, but their longer-term prospects in LMICs are unclear. For example, Tofail and others (2012) find that at age 10 months, LBW Bangladeshi infants, most of whom were term, had lower mental and motor Bayley scores than normal birth weight children, after controlling for a range of covariates, such as weight, length, and gestational age. Similarly, Walker and others (2004) find lower Griffiths scores at ages 15 and 24 months on cognitive and motor subscales for term-LBW Jamaican children compared with normal-weight peers. Thus, preterm- and term-SGA babies are likely to have lower mental development if they continue to have poor health and growth, and inadequate nutrition during fetal growth may be partly responsible.

Maternal Mental Health
Maternal depression is increasingly recognized as an important risk factor for poor child development (Tomlinson and others 2014; Walker and others 2011) (see chapter 3 in this volume, Filippi and others 2016). A systematic review reports that the prevalence of maternal depression among pregnant women in low-income and lower-middle-income countries was 15.9 percent,
and in the postpartum period was 19.8 percent; these rates are higher than those for women in HICs, which are, on average, 10 percent and 13 percent, respectively (Fisher and others 2012). Prevalence is higher in many South Asian countries, for example, in Pakistan, where one study reports a 25 percent prevalence of maternal depression in the antenatal period and 28 percent in the postnatal period (Rahman, Iqbal, and Harrington 2003). Recognizing that depression may not be confined to the prenatal and postnatal periods, many researchers monitoring maternal depression for 24 months after birth and beyond find it to be high in South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa, from 20 percent to 30 percent, using the WHO’s 20-item Self-Reporting Questionnaire (Harpham and others 2005; Servili and others 2010; Weobong and others 2009).

Important determinants of maternal mental health include intimate partner violence (Ludermir and others 2008); social support (Rahman and Creed 2007); the quality of her relationships with her husband (Oweye, Aina, and Morakinyo 2006) and other close relatives, such as in-laws (Chandran and others 2002); and her coping strategies (Faisal-Cury and others 2003). Nutritional status may be implicated. Evidence suggests that iron-deficiency anemia contributes to a depressed mood at levels lower than required for a diagnosis of depression, as might iodine deficiency (Beard and others 2005). Illness, fatigue, and lethargy are likely to reduce a mother’s ability to cope as well as to care for her young child. Infants with special needs requiring higher levels of care have been linked to higher levels of maternal distress (Yousafzai, Lynch, and Gladstone 2014).

Studies from South Asia have shown that young children of depressed mothers are at risk of poor health, growth, and development outcomes. Rural Pakistani children of depressed mothers were twice as likely to have five or more episodes of diarrhea per year than children of nondepressed mothers (Rahman, Bunn, and others 2007). Studies from India and Pakistan have shown that infants born to depressed mothers are 2.3 to 7.4 times more likely to be underweight (Patel and others 2004); in India, they were more likely to be stunted, but not in Vietnam, Ethiopia, or Peru (Harpham and others 2005). Evidence for the effect of maternal depression on mental development is mixed in LMICs. Some hospital samples show a link (for example, Hamadani and others 2012), but in rural Ethiopia, maternal depression was not associated with poor mental development in children (Servili and others 2010). In Bangladesh, maternal depression was found to be linked to poor mental development outcomes only if depressed mothers perceived their children as irritable (Black and others 2007). Maternal depression has a potentially detrimental impact on children and needs to be examined more carefully.

**INTERVENTIONS TO ENHANCE MENTAL DEVELOPMENT**

This section describes key protective interventions that promote healthy early child development. We consider each intervention’s outcome (figure 13.4), organizing the interventions into development-specific interventions that focus on the child, including psychosocial stimulation, child nutrition, and reduction of infections, followed by development-sensitive interventions that focus on the mother, including maternal nutrition and maternal mental health, that might indirectly affect the child.

**Development-Specific Interventions**

**Psychosocial Stimulation**

One of the strongest protective factors for mental development is the amount and quality of psychosocial stimulation provided in the home. A systematic review and meta-analysis of stimulation intervention outcomes from 21 studies finds positive effects: the mean effect size for cognitive outcomes was $d = 0.420$ and for language outcomes was $d = 0.468$ (Aboud and Yousafzai 2015). These effects are considerably higher than for other interventions, such as nutrition and hygiene. However, stimulation programs require considerably more manpower, training, and supervision. Four models of delivery have been implemented and evaluated (box 13.1), but all require special training of professionals or paraprofessionals and a method of instruction that encourages parents to actively learn new practices and be able to generalize what they learn as their children grow.

Changing behavior is difficult, but one review identifies several techniques that are more successful than others (Aboud and Yousafzai 2015). The traditional technique of simply educating or informing parents about what to do and why has not worked (Aboud 2007). Behavior change requires more than communication; it requires active learning techniques, such as demonstrations, practicing with children and receiving coaching and feedback, identifying and solving problems with enacting the practice, providing visual reminders, and engaging social support from peers and family members. Actual changes to parents’ behavior can be evaluated using the HOME Inventory; effect sizes for better HOME scores in intervention groups tend to be higher whenever mental scores are high, thus confirming a strong relationship between changes to stimulation
and mental development (figure 13.5). Typically changes are small, although significantly greater than changes in the control group. There are too few longitudinal studies yet to confirm that parents are able to sustain the new practices and adapt them as children age.

Overall, stimulation interventions, regardless of their delivery strategy, successfully improved mental development. This success may be partly attributed to the effect of the interventions on raising parental stimulation practices, which, in addition to linear growth, is one of the strongest correlates of mental development.

**Child Nutrition**

Exclusive breastfeeding from birth to six months is known to support healthy rates of growth and immunity. Correlational evidence argues that breastfed babies also have better mental development (Anderson, Johnson, and Remley 1999). This claim was affirmed by a trial in Belarus, in which half of the hospitals were randomly assigned to start the World Health Organization–supported Baby-Friendly Hospital Initiative activities sooner than others. Mothers who delivered in these hospitals breastfed longer, and their children had higher verbal intelligence at age six years (Kramer and others 2008).

One important nutrient in breast milk, fatty acids, has been studied in relation to mental development but mainly in HICs. Long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFA), particularly n-3, that are present in the brain and breast milk are considered to be a promising candidate to support mental development. Multiple trials, conducted mainly in HICs where it is possible to provide infants with formula milk with varying amounts of fatty acids, found no effects on Bayley mental or motor scores (Beyerlein and others 2010; Qawasmi and others 2012; Smithers and others 2008). Similar tests of fatty acids found in fish and fish oil have shown no advantage to Bangladeshi children whose mothers received fish oil during pregnancy (Tofail and others 2006). However, research on fatty acids continues to follow children as...
Supplementation with a milk lipid, ganglioside, was found to have positive effects on early mental development in Indonesia (Gurnida and others 2012). Furthermore, research has found mental development benefits of fatty acids in colostrum; 14-month-old children whose mothers had high levels of n-3 PUFA in colostrum and who were breastfed with greater intensity or duration had higher mental development scores (Guxens and others 2011). Thus, the clear cognitive benefits to breastfeeding appear to stem from high levels of n-3 PUFA and cumulative amounts of ingested breast milk.

Research is being conducted on multiple micronutrients with and without lipids. Some studies use vitamin A as the baseline and compare it with five other micronutrients (Black and others 2004); others provide a porridge with carbohydrates and add micronutrients (Manno and others 2012; Rosado and others 2011). Pollitt and others (2000) gave all children eight micronutrients (vitamins and minerals) with high-energy milk added to the diet of intervention children only. The fortification in many cases was available for a period of six to eight months; the effects on mental development scores were small. A review of 21 interventions examining the effects of

---

**Box 13.1**

**Four Models of Stimulation Program Delivery**

Four delivery formats for stimulation programs are most common: home visits, group sessions, clinic appointments, and one of these three piggybacked onto conditional cash transfer (CCT) programs. A fifth, combining group with home visits, has become increasingly common. All delivery models require a curriculum manual for providers. Those employing paraprofessionals require more training and supervision.

Home visits entail weekly or fortnightly visits by a paraprofessional to the children's homes. The home visitors engage in specific age-appropriate play activities with the children, demonstrate these activities to watching mothers, and leave play materials that will be replaced at the next session. Interventions based on home visits usually entailed more than 24 visits over 12 months (Lozoff and others 2010; Tofail and others 2013; Vazir and others 2013).

Group sessions consist of meetings with 8 to 20 mothers, and sometimes fathers, with their children at convenient locations in communities. Paraprofessionals from the community or local community health workers conduct the sessions. Group leaders demonstrate specific activities and coach mothers as they practice with their children. Groups could engage in discussions and general problem solving. Interventions using groups usually had fewer sessions than those using home visits (Aboud and others 2013; Eickmann and others 2003; Yousafzai and others 2014). Informational and social needs common to all parents are addressed during group sessions, and family-specific problems are addressed during home visits. These combined interventions usually had more than 15 contacts over 12 or 24 months.

The third model uses well- or sick-baby clinic visits to inquire about what mothers know about stimulating their children with toys and talk and counseling them on improved practices. This advice is usually provided by professionals, sometimes with two to four contacts (Jin and others 2007; Pottery and others 2010) and with at most 12 monthly contacts (Nair and others 2009). Group and clinic models explicitly aim to change parents' behavior, particularly the opportunities that parents provide for play and conversation.

The final model is the scale up of stimulation interventions using the infrastructure of a CCT program. One example is the home-visiting program attached to Colombia's Familias en Acción program. Mother Leaders from the community were trained to make weekly visits to the homes of children ages 12–24 months to provide guidance on play (Attanasio and others 2014). Another Colombian example is the home-based group care offered to CCT beneficiaries, whereby mothers were trained to provide stimulation weekdays to 15 children (most under age three years) in their homes (Bernal and Fernández 2013). Both large-scale effectiveness evaluations showed positive effects on the order of 0.2 to 0.3 standard deviation difference on children's cognitive and language abilities.
Multiple micronutrients on mental development yielded a very small overall effect size of $d = 0.082$ (Larson and Yousafzai in press). In many cases, children showed benefits, such as reduced anemia, but no benefits in linear growth. Motor development improved in some cases. Currently multiple micronutrients are being combined with a lipid base that provides macronutrients to examine their combined effects on linear growth. This combination has the potential to enhance mental development in food-insecure sites.

**Integrated Packages of Psychosocial Stimulation and Child Nutrition**

Researchers and program implementers are paying closer attention to optimizing integrated packages of stimulation and nutrition care given the independent and potentially additive benefits to promoting mental development. Although most small- and large-scale interventions have found little added benefit to mental development from integrating nutrition with stimulation (Attanasio and others 2014; Grantham-McGregor and others 2014; Yousafzai and others 2014), other benefits of integration, such as cost and task-sharing, are being examined. This combination is illustrated in a completed stimulation and nutrition trial in Pakistan (box 13.2).

**Reducing Infection Transmitted by Ground Contamination, Mosquitoes, and Flies**

The most commonly implemented solutions to environmental causes of infection are constructing and using latrines, improving access to clean drinking water, promoting facewashing and handwashing with soap, cleaning up animal feces around the home, immunizing all infants with the rotavirus vaccine, and deworming children starting at age 12 months (Dangour and others 2013; Ejemot and others 2008; Fewtrell and others 2005). Places where piped water and sewerage systems are installed have experienced an immediate reduction in diarrheal diseases (Fewtrell and others 2005). However, widespread provision of water and sanitation infrastructure is unrealistic in the near future, especially in rural areas of LMICs. Although 68 percent of urban dwellers in LMICs have latrines, only 40 percent of rural people have them (UNICEF 2013). Improved sources of water are commonly provided at the community level or preferably at point of use, so that the urban–rural gap for improved water is narrower than that for sanitation (94 percent of urban dwellers have access to improved sources of water compared with 76 percent of rural dwellers). Concern about the effects of very high levels of arsenic in drinking water is supported by evidence of fetal loss and infant mortality (Rahman, Vahter, and others 2007), but arsenic in water appears to have little effect on mental development in the first 24 months and up to age five years (Hamadani, Grantham-McGregor, and others 2010; Hamadani and others 2011).

Immunization with rotavirus vaccine as part of the national immunization schedule has begun in more than 35 countries, with support from the Global Alliance for Vaccines and Immunization. The rotavirus vaccine has been effective in reducing severe cases of diarrhea, mortality, and hospital and clinic visits, and it provides protection for several years. Mass treatment of children with deworming medication and azithromycin for trachoma can be attached to outreach services that deliver vitamin A drops. However, these are short-term solutions. The WHO’s recommended SAFE (surgery, antibiotics, facial cleanliness, and environmental improvements) strategy for trachoma elimination also includes hygiene (facewashing) and environmental management (along with surgery and antibiotics) as the more sustainable approaches (Mecaskey and others 2003).

Environmental management of stagnant water is only one of the means by which to control malaria. Bednets, intermittent preventive treatment, and vaccines are the most studied preventive interventions (Cissé and others 2006; Gies and others 2009). The provision of free insecticide-treated bednets led to high coverage and protection (Alaïi and others 2003); and three
intermittent doses of an antimalarial medication at the time of routine immunization reduced the incidence of malaria by 20 percent (Macete and others 2006). Neither hemoglobin levels nor future immunity were compromised with these preventive antimalarial measures. Psychosocial stimulation interventions appear to be effective at overcoming some of the deficits caused by cerebral malaria.

Latrine use and handwashing habits are very difficult to change. Interventions to increase latrine use and handwashing have met with success mainly in controlled experimental settings (Briscoe and Aboud 2012); they have been less successful when implemented at the community level (Huda and others 2012; Hutton and Chase, forthcoming; Luby and others 2008).

Development-Sensitive Interventions

Maternal Nutrition

Strategies to address the growing number of premature births (Lawn and others 2014) have not yet been identified. High stress during pregnancy is a correlate
among African-American women, many of whom deliver preterm-LBW babies (Lobel and others 2008). SGA is thought to be associated with maternal infection (malaria) and malnutrition (Black and others 2013), and preventable through intermittent preventive anti-malarial treatment (Gies and others 2009) and maternal nutrition, respectively.

Raising birth weights by providing supplements to pregnant women has received mixed reviews. Iron and folic acid supplementation are clearly beneficial, the latter in reducing neural tube defects that result in mental development impairments. Reviews of studies providing micronutrient supplements, energy-protein supplements, or both found small reductions in the number of SGA newborns (Haider and Bhutta 2012; Imdad, Yakoob, and Bhutta 2011). However, a large study in Bangladesh examined the effects of a daily energy-protein supplement starting either in the first trimester or later in the second trimester, and the effects of an additional 13 micronutrients, compared with the usual iron and folic acid (Persson and others 2012). Gestational age with a mean of 39 weeks was similar across groups, indicating that prematurity was not affected. Birth length and birth weight were not affected, with 31 percent LBW. Infant mortality was lowest among children whose mothers received multiple micronutrients and started energy-protein supplements early. A follow-up on the children from this study, using two items from the Bayley Scale at age seven months, found minimal differences on one item benefiting only those with low BMI mothers who received early energy-protein supplements (Tofail and others 2008). The nonsignificant findings of this study are supported by a preliminary meta-analysis of 10 randomized controlled trials (RCTs) in which pregnant women were given micronutrient or other fortified foods and their children tested before age 24 months. The overall mental development effect size was $d = 0.042$ (Larson and Yousafzai in press). Many scientists conclude that providing nutrition supplements during pregnancy is too late to significantly benefit birth outcomes and mental development, and that maternal nutritional status at conception is critical. More attention needs to be given to nutrition among children and adolescent girls.

Iodine is so important for reproductive and mental development that governments legislate the fortification of salt for general use. Interventions designed to study the effects of iodine on mental development in iodine-deficient areas typically randomize pregnant women to receive capsules that provide sufficient iodine for one year. Ten existing interventions, two of which were RCTs, found a moderate effect size for mental development of $d = 0.50$ (Bougma and others 2013). Iodine provided during pregnancy was more beneficial than iodine supplementation given to children after birth. Another strategy is to provide the lactating mother with iodine supplements; this indirect supplementation maintained healthy urine and serum levels in the infant better than direct supplementation of the infant (Bouhouc and others 2014). An important test is whether iodine delivered through salt in the diets of mothers and children improves the mental development of children. Careful scrutiny of RCTs in which school-age children were given an iodine capsule or a placebo reveals that the large majority of verbal and nonverbal tests yielded no positive outcomes (Huda, Grantham-McGregor, and Tomkins 2001; van den Briel and others 2000). However, iodized salt had a consistently small but positive effect on the mental development scores of children under age 24 months in Ethiopia (Bougma and others 2014). In short, iodine will have maximum effect on children’s mental development if available to women during pregnancy and lactation.

Maternal Mental Health

Integrated packages supporting mothers and children are receiving increasing attention (Tomlinson and others 2014). The postnatal period up to 24 months after birth might be a suitable time to address maternal depression along with child feeding and stimulation practices. This broader focus might benefit children’s development and can be provided in a context that does not stigmatize mothers. The available handful of evaluated interventions suggests that alleviating maternal depression may help mothers better meet their children’s needs. In Pakistan, the Thinking Healthy program was developed using principles of cognitive-behavioral therapy, although it also includes elements of interpersonal therapy. Cognitive-behavioral and interpersonal therapies are the two therapies for which there is sound evidence in North America and Europe; it is valuable to know that their principles can be adapted for use in LMICs. In Pakistan, community health workers were trained in a structured form of dialogue that covered empathic listening, family engagement, guided discovery using pictures, behavioral activation, and problem solving.

The integration of the Thinking Healthy program in a community-based maternal and child health service resulted in significant reduction of maternal depression in Pakistan. Additional positive benefits in the intervention group were lower rates of infant and young child diarrheal illness, higher rates of young child immunization, higher reported use of contraceptives among women, and increased parental time spent playing with their young children (Rahman and others 2008). It is reasonable that countries with a high...
prevalence of maternal depression should implement preventive programs for all women by combining risk-reducing skills for depression with child stimulation and nutrition skills. In Uganda, a combined 12-session group program to address maternal depression, child stimulation, and nutrition was effective in preventing depressive symptoms and enhancing children’s cognitive and language development (Singla, Kumbakumba, and Aboud 2015).

COST-BENEFIT OF EARLY CHILDHOOD INTERVENTIONS

Recognition of the beneficial societal returns of investing in early childhood is increasing (Kilburn and Karoly 2008). Many of the interventions discussed in this chapter are cost-effective and cost information is available (further detail can be found in chapter 17 in this volume, Horton and Levin 2016). This section focuses on literature not covered elsewhere specific to psychosocial stimulation and maternal depression. Generally, cost analyses are more readily available on the benefits of preschool programs for children ages three and older (Engle and others 2011); less information is available on the costs of early stimulation interventions for children younger than age two years. There may be several reasons for the meager available data on costs for early stimulation interventions; for example, Alderman and others (2014) highlight the many challenges in calculating cost-benefits of health and nutrition services with integrated early stimulation, including synergies between the fixed costs (existing costs linked to service delivery) and the additional costs of implementing the new intervention. A recent attempt at a cost and cost-effectiveness analysis points to the challenges that contribute to this lack of data on LMICs (Batura and others 2015). One challenge is that the follow-up is short, and outcomes do not focus on productivity.

One short-term cost-effectiveness analysis compared the costs and benefits of a nutrition education-plus-supplement package with one that counseled psychosocial stimulation (Gowani and others 2014). The former provided micronutrient fortification whereas the latter provided some play and book materials, costing approximately US$4.50 per child per month (approximately US$551 per year) using group and home visits. More psychosocial stimulation intervention studies need to conduct cost analyses, as do programs that combine nutrition and hygiene with stimulation and maternal mental health. One cost-benefit study analyzing labor market returns for a Jamaica cohort studied by Grantham-McGregor and others (1991) finds that adults age 22 years who received early psychosocial stimulation earned 25 percent more than control counterparts (Gertler and others 2014).

Cash transfer or CCT programs that target the most economically disadvantaged families provide a delivery platform that shows promising returns to investment in short- and medium-term outcomes. The two Colombian studies described in this chapter (box 13.1) showing benefits to children who received home visits or home-based group care under three years of age estimated a cost per child of US$516 per year (Attanasio and others 2014) and US$347 per 16 months (Bernal and Fernandez 2013). Evaluations of large-scale and long-running programs in Ecuador (Fernald and Hidrobo 2011; Paxson and Schady 2010), Mexico (Fernald, Gertler, and Neufeld 2008), and Nicaragua (Macours, Schady, and Vakis 2012) have demonstrated benefits to child outcomes in the preschool years. Cash transfers of US$70 monthly, for example, are linked to conditions such as attending health clinics, providing good nutrition, and school enrollment (Fernald, Gertler, and Neufeld 2008). Evaluations of CCT programs show that benefits are greater for the poorest children. Two pathways have been proposed to explain how CCT programs result in benefits to children’s development. First, families might invest more in better nutrition for young children and in learning and play materials. For example, mothers who received a cash transfer (non-conditional) in Ecuador were more likely to purchase a toy for their young children (Fernald and Hidrobo 2011). Second, reduced financial pressure and stress may lead to improved psychosocial well-being in the family, leading to improved early child care. These models are primarily from Latin America and the Caribbean, but hold promise for other regions.

CONCLUSIONS

The risk factors of greatest importance concern low-quality psychosocial stimulation at home; inadequate child nutrition; infections from environmental vectors, such as trachoma and malaria; and maternal nutrition and mental health during the first 1,000 days.

- **Psychosocial stimulation.** Programs to promote mental development through stimulation are very effective, especially if they use techniques of active learning to help parents and community paraprofessionals adopt the recommended practices.
- **Child nutrition.** The effects of macro- and micronutrients on development are increasingly clear as the
pathways through health, behavior, and brain development have been clarified.

- **Infectious illnesses.** Significant advances have been made in vaccines, preventive medications, and treatment; access remains a major obstacle. Further research is required to understand how repeated infections, particularly diarrheal illness, affect child nutrition and development outcomes.

- **Maternal nutrition.** Nutrients available to children from the pregnant and lactating mother are being examined. These include iodine, iron, and PUFA.

- **Maternal mental health.** Given the high levels of depressive symptoms among mothers of young children beyond the postnatal period, mental health can no longer be neglected in health and development services. Effective strategies are likely to benefit all mothers with young children in these settings.

Recommendations for future directions include the following:

- Government, community-based, and private organizations can adopt and adapt successful context-specific programs that address four or five critical practices related to stimulation, nutrition, hygiene, and maternal care. Evaluations of outcomes, acceptability, costs, and task-sharing among personnel can clarify whether there are benefits to integrating services.

- Program planners and implementers can adopt a social-ecological approach that improves access to food, a clean environment, and availability of play materials, as well as promotes parent practices that support child development.

- Programs can incorporate a multimode communication strategy of supportive practices so they are seen as normative and approved by respected authorities. The communication modes could include community groups, home visits, clinic visits, and mass media.

- Policy makers and partners can implement cost-effectiveness analyses in LMICs.

- Researchers and other stakeholders can develop and provide advocacy materials for effective programs and disseminate them to government officials, policy makers, health and education professionals, media, and civil society organizations.

**NOTE**

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:  
  a) lower-middle-income = US$1,046 to US$4,125
  b) upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126 to US $12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

1. For comparability across chapters, we present economic data in U.S. dollars, adjusted to 2012.

**REFERENCES**


bornstein, m. h., and d. l. putnick. 2012. “cognitive and boivin, m. j., p. bangirana, j. byarugaba, r. o. opoka, r. idro, black, m. m., a. h. baqui, k. zaman, l. a. persson, s. el black, m. m., a. h. baqui, k. zaman, l. a. persson, s. w. mcnary, k. le, and others. 2007. “depressive symptoms among rural bangladeshi mothers: implications for infant development.” journal of child psychology and psychiatry 48 (8): 764–72.

bhutta, z. a., j. k. das, a. rizvi, m. f. gaffey, n. walker, and others. 2013. “evidence-based interventions for improvement of maternal and child health: what can be done and at what cost?” the lancet 382 (9890): 452–77.

black, m. m., a. h. baqui, k. zaman, s. w. mcnary, k. le, and others. 2007. “maternal iron deficiency anemia affects postpartum emotions and cognition.” journal of nutrition 135: 265–72.


beyerlein, a., m. hadders-algra, k. kennedy, m. fewtrell, a. singhal, and others. 2010. “infant formula supplementation with long-chain polysaturated fatty acids has no effect on bayley developmental scores at 18 months of age—ipd meta-analysis of 4 large clinical trials.” journal of pediatric gastroenterology and nutrition 50 (1): 79–84.

bhutta, z. a., j. k. das, a. rizvi, m. f. gaffey, n. walker, and others. 2013. “evidence-based interventions for improvement of maternal and child health: what can be done and at what cost?” the lancet 382 (9890): 452–77.

black, m. m., a. h. baqui, k. zaman, s. w. mcnary, k. le, and others. 2007. “maternal iron deficiency anemia affects postpartum emotions and cognition.” journal of child psychology and psychiatry 48 (8): 764–72.

black, m. m., a. h. baqui, k. zaman, l. a. persson, s. el arifeen, and others. 2004. “iron and zinc supplementation promote motor development and exploratory behavior among bangladeshi infants.” american journal of clinical nutrition 80 (4): 903–10.

black, r. e., c. g. victoria, s. p. walker, z. a. bhutta, p. christian, and others. 2013. “maternal and child undernutrition and overweight in low-income and middle-income countries.” the lancet 382 (9890): 427–51.

blencowe, h., a. c. c. lee, s. cousens, a. bahalim, r. narwal, and others. 2013. “preterm birth-associated neurodevelopmental impairment estimates at regional and global levels for 2010.” pediatric research 74 (suppl. 1): 17–34.


bougu, k., g. s. marquis, f. e. aboud, h. mohammed, d. singla, and others. 2014. “iodine and other nutritional predictors of infant and preschoolers’ development: results from a cluster randomized trial in ethiopia.” micronutrient forum conference, addis ababa, june 5.

bouthouc, r. s., b. bouthouc, m. cherkaoui, a. aboussad, s. stinc, and others. 2014. “direct iodine supplementation of infants versus supplementation of their breastfeeding mothers: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled trial.” the lancet diabetes and endocrinology 2: 197–209.

boyle, m. h., y. racine, k. georgiades, d. snelling, s. hong, and others. 2006. “the influence of economic development level, household wealth and maternal education on child health in the developing world.” social science and medicine 63 (8): 2242–54.


checkley, w., g. buckley, r. h. gilman, a. m. o. assis, r. l. guerant, and others. 2008. “multi-country analysis of the effects of diarrhoea on childhood stunting.” international journal of epidemiology 37 (4): 816–30.

christian, p., s. e. lee, m. d. angel, l. s. adair, s. e. aifeen, and others. 2013. “risk of childhood undernutrition related to small-for-gestational age and preterm birth in low- and middle-income countries.” international journal of epidemiology 42 (5): 1340–55.


colombo, j., s. e. carlson, c. l. cheatham, d. l. shaddy, e. h. kerling, and others. 2013. “long-term effects of lcupa fa supplementation on childhood cognitive outcomes.” american journal of clinical nutrition 98 (2): 403–12.


INTRODUCTION

Significant progress has been made in maternal, newborn, and child health (MNCH) in recent decades. Between 1990 and 2015, the global mortality rate for children under age five years dropped by 53 percent, from 90.6 deaths per 1,000 live births in 1990 to 42.5 in 2015 (Liu and others 2016). Maternal mortality is also on the decline globally.\(^1\)

Despite progress, maternal, neonatal, and under-five mortality remain high in many low- and middle-income countries (LMICs). In 2015, approximately 303,000 women died as a result of complications from pregnancy and childbirth (WHO 2015). Globally, an estimated 5.9 million children under age five years die each year, including 2.7 million within the first month of life (Liu and others 2016).

Health indicators differ across countries, regions, and socioeconomic levels (Lozano and others 2011). Approximately 99 percent of all newborn deaths occur in LMICs (Bayer 2001). Maternal mortality is concentrated in Sub-Saharan Africa (Hogan and others 2010), where mortality rates for the poor are double those for the nonpoor, and they are higher among rural populations and women with low levels of education (PLoS Medicine Editors 2010). Children living in low-income countries are three times more likely to die before age five years than children living in high-income countries (HICs) (Black and others 2013).

Pneumonia, diarrhea, malaria, and inadequate nutrition drive early childhood deaths around the world. In 2015, an estimated 526,000 episodes of diarrhea and 922,000 cases of pneumonia in children under age five years led to death (Liu and others 2016). Undernutrition is a primary underlying cause of 3.5 million maternal and child deaths each year (Black and others 2013); stunting, wasting, and micronutrient deficiencies are responsible for approximately 35 percent of the disease burden in children under age five years and 11 percent of the total global disease burden (Lozano and others 2011). Although maternal mortality is caused chiefly by postpartum hemorrhage, preeclampsia and eclampsia, and sepsis, a large proportion of maternal deaths can be attributed to limited access to skilled care during childbirth and the postnatal period (Lozano and others 2011) as well as to limited access to family planning services and safe abortions (UNFPA and Guttmacher Institute 2010).

An appropriate mix of interventions can significantly reduce the burden of maternal and child mortality and morbidity. However, these interventions often do not reach those who need them most (Bayer 2001; Sines, Tinker, and Ruben 2006). An integrated approach that includes community-based care as an essential
component has the potential to substantially improve maternal, newborn, and child health outcomes.

This chapter provides a summary of community-based programs for improving MNCH. The chapter discusses strategies to improve the supply of services, including through community-based interventions and home visitations implemented by community health workers (CHWs), and strategies to increase demand for services, including through community mobilization efforts. The chapter summarizes the evidence about the impact of such interventions, describes contextual factors that affect implementation, and considers issues of cost-effectiveness. It concludes by highlighting research gaps, the challenges of scaling up, and the way forward.

COMMUNITY-BASED CARE

It is widely agreed that communities should take an active part in improving their own health outcomes (WHO 1979, 1986, 2008, 2011) and that CHWs can play a vital role. Since 2000, national governments have realized the substantial potential of CHWs to achieve child survival goals; these governments have or are considering national programs for CHWs. For example, since 2003, Ethiopia has trained thousands of community-based health extension workers to focus on maternal, newborn, and child health (Medhanyie and others 2012).

Although strategies vary considerably, community-based interventions may encompass encouraging healthier practices and care seeking among communities and families; recruiting and training local community members to work alongside trained health care professionals; and community member involvement in service provision, including diagnosis, treatment, and referral. Within these broad categories are a range of approaches, including CHWS, traditional birth attendants (TBAs), health campaigns, school-based health promotion, home-based care, and even community franchise–operated clinics.

Community-based care is an important component of providing a continuum of care for low-resource communities. The health and well-being of women, newborns, and children are inherently linked. When mothers are malnourished, ill, or receive insufficient care, their newborns are at increased risk of disease and premature death. In LMICs, a mother’s death during childbirth significantly raises the risk that the child will not survive (Ronsmans and others 2010).

Better health requires that women and children have the ability to access quality services from conception and pregnancy to delivery, the postnatal period, and childhood. Issues such as human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immune deficiency syndrome (HIV/AIDS), sexually transmitted infections, malaria, malnutrition, complications during pregnancy and delivery, and inadequate newborn and child care can be addressed through vertical programs. However, the best results can be obtained if these issues are tackled through interventions that target maternal, newborn, and child health care as a whole. Coordinating care, from preconception to delivery and the health of the child, can lead to profound benefits for the health and well-being of women and children and improve subsequent pregnancy and child health outcomes. A recent review of preconception risks and interventions shows that preconception care in community groups is associated with a lower neonatal mortality rate (risk ratio 0.76; 95 percent confidence interval 0.66–0.88), and a significant increase in antenatal care (ANC) (risk ratio 1.39; 95 percent confidence interval 1.00–1.93), breastfeeding rates (risk ratio 1.20; 95 percent confidence interval 1.07–1.36), and use of clean delivery kits (risk ratio 2.56; 95 percent confidence interval 1.55–3.60) (Dean and others 2011).

There are many approaches to community-based care. This chapter describes interventions aimed at improving the supply of services by delivering them in communities, often through CHWs, and interventions aimed at increasing demand for services and promoting healthy behaviors.

COMMUNITY-BASED CARE TO IMPROVE THE SUPPLY OF SERVICES

Health care provided in communities, as opposed to health facilities, is often provided by CHWs and may include home visitations and other intervention packages. The level of training CHWs receive, whether they are employed by a nongovernmental organization or the government and whether they are paid or volunteer, varies widely between and within countries. In general, they work in conjunction with frontline health workers across the primary health care spectrum to provide health education and promotion, distribute commodities, diagnose and manage illness, and provide referrals.

Substantial evidence suggests that community-based interventions are an important platform for improving health care delivery and outcomes (Bhutta and others 2010; Kerber and others 2007; Lassi, Haider, and Bhutta 2010; Lewin and others 2010; Singh and Sachs 2013).

Home Visits

For both at-risk pregnancies and healthy pregnancies, home visits by CHWs in the pre- and postnatal period to counsel mothers, provide newborn care, and facilitate
referral may lead to early detection of complications and appropriate referrals. Studies in Bangladesh, India, and Pakistan suggest that home visits can reduce newborn deaths in high mortality settings by 30 percent to 61 percent (Bang and others 1999; Baqui and others 2008; Bhutta and others 2008).

**Community Management of Delivery Complications, Neonatal Care, and Childhood Illnesses**

A pilot home-based newborn care intervention in India consisting of sepsis management; support for low-birth-weight (LBW) infants; and primary prevention, health education, and training of TBAs has been shown to decrease newborn and infant mortality rates (Bang and others 1999; Bang, Reddy, and others 2005). Home-based interventions in India to reduce neonatal and infant deaths and stillbirths included surveillance to identify pregnant women, followed by two home visits during pregnancy for birth preparedness and for routine neonatal care. In the event of a high-risk neonate or an LBW infant, extra care was administered. In the trial, 93 percent of neonates in the intervention areas received home-based care (Bang and others 1999). Similarly, results from a study in India show that the asphyxia-specific mortality rate was significantly reduced by 65 percent, comparing periods before and after CHW training with either tube-and-mask or bag-and-mask ventilation, and the case fatality of severe asphyxia was reduced by 48 percent (Bang, Bang, and others 2005). Results from a randomized controlled trial (RCT) in rural India (Bang and others 1999) suggest that implementation by CHWs of an essential newborn care package, in conjunction with administration of home-based antibiotic therapy for suspected neonatal sepsis, resulted in a 62 percent reduction in the neonatal mortality rate, when 93 percent of newborns in the intervention area were provided with treatment. Another study from an Indian urban slum reports a low case fatality rate of 3.3 percent among babies younger than age two months who were treated for serious infections as outpatients due to family noncompliance with advice for hospitalization (Bhandari and others 1996).

A systematic review of RCTs suggests that home visits for neonatal care by CHWs are associated with a 38 percent reduction in neonatal mortality and a 24 percent reduction in the stillbirth rate (table 14.1) in resource-limited settings with poorly accessible facility-based care, when conducted in conjunction with community mobilization activities (Gogia and Sachdev 2010). The review also shows significant improvements in other care-related outcomes (table 14.1).

Evidence suggests that home visits improve coverage of key newborn care practices such as early initiation of breastfeeding and exclusive breastfeeding; skin-to-skin contact; delayed bathing and attention to hygiene, such as handwashing with soap and water; clean umbilical cord care; immunization; and appropriate management and referral for sepsis and other infections. This evidence complements the experience from HICs, which shows that postnatal home visits are effective in improving parenting skills (Olds and others 2004).

Evidence also suggests that CHWs can effectively perform neonatal resuscitation. Basic neonatal resuscitation,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Interventions assessed</th>
<th>Outcomes</th>
<th>Estimates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gogia and Sachdev 2010</td>
<td>Randomized controlled trials comparing various intervention packages, one being home visits for neonatal care by community health workers</td>
<td>Neonatal mortality</td>
<td>RR 0.62 (95% CI: 0.44–0.87); five studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stillbirths</td>
<td>RR 0.76 (95% CI: 0.65–0.89); three studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Antenatal care visits</td>
<td>RR 1.33 (95% CI: 1.20–1.47); four studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tetanus toxoid immunization</td>
<td>RR 1.11 (95% CI: 1.04–1.18); four studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Breastfeeding within one hour of birth</td>
<td>RR 3.35 (95% CI: 1.31–8.59); four studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Clean cord care</td>
<td>RR 1.70 (95% CI: 1.39–2.08); four studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Delayed bathing after more than 24 hours</td>
<td>RR 4.36 (95% CI: 2.29–9.37); four studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bhutta and Lassi 2010</td>
<td>Randomized controlled trials that built community support and advocacy groups for mobilization on issues related to maternal, neonatal, and child health</td>
<td>Neonatal mortality</td>
<td>RR 0.70 (95% CI: 0.61–0.81); six studies, n = 67,808</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: CI = confidence interval; n = number of observations; RR = risk ratio.
including bag-and-mask ventilation, is adequate for most newborns who require neonatal resuscitation in low-resource settings (Newton and English 2006). The results of a systematic review report that several trials have shown that CHWs can perform neonatal resuscitation with reductions of up to 20 percent in intrapartum-related neonatal deaths (Wall and others 2009).

In integrated community case management (iCCM), CHWs are identified and trained in classification and treatment of key childhood illnesses, including identifying children in need of immediate referral. A systematic review suggests that iCCM of pneumonia could result in a 70 percent reduction in mortality in children younger than age five years (Theodoratou and others 2010). Another systematic review (Das and others 2013) shows that community-based interventions correlate to 13 percent and 9 percent increases in care seeking for pneumonia and diarrhea, respectively (table 14.2). These interventions are also associated with an up to 160 percent increase in the use of oral rehydration solution, an 80 percent increase in the use of zinc for management of diarrhoea, and a 32 percent reduction in pneumonia-specific mortality (Das and others 2013). Furthermore, in a meta-analysis of trials of community-based case management of pneumonia (Sazawal and Black 2003), all-cause neonatal mortality was 27 percent lower in the intervention group; pneumonia-specific neonatal mortality in the intervention group was reduced by an even greater amount.

A systematic review carried out to assess the improvement in skills of CHWs shows that workers trained in Integrated Management of Childhood Illness (IMCI), a strategy developed by the World Health Organization (WHO) in the 1990s, were more likely to correctly classify illnesses (risk ratio 1.93; 95 percent confidence interval 1.66–2.24) (Nguyen and others 2013). An RCT in Bangladesh demonstrates that implementation of IMCI improved health worker skills, health system support, and family and community practices, which translated into increased care seeking for illnesses. In IMCI areas, more children younger than age six months were exclusively breastfed (76 percent versus 65 percent; difference of differences 10.1 percent; 95 percent confidence interval 2.65–17.62), and the prevalence of stunting in children ages 24–59 months decreased more rapidly (difference of differences −7.33; 95 percent confidence interval −13.83 to −0.83) than in comparison areas, thereby reducing morbidity (Arifeen and others 2009).

An RCT from Zambia shows that CHWs can be trained to perform rapid diagnostic tests (RDTs) for malaria, treat test-positive children with antimalarials, and treat those with nonsevere pneumonia with amoxicillin. A higher number of children with nonsevere pneumonia received early and appropriate treatment in the intervention arm (treated by CHWs trained to perform RDTs) (risk ratio 5.32; 95 percent confidence interval 2.19–8.94). In the intervention group, only 27.5 percent of children with fever received antimalarial drugs after an RDT was conducted, while 99.1 percent of the children in the fever group received treatment for malaria (Yeboah-Antwi and others 2010).

This successful merger of formal health care systems with community-based efforts has profound effects on the achievement of Millennium Development Goals 4 and 5 to reduce child mortality and improve maternal health. Box 14.1 highlights an example of a CHW-based program.

### Table 14.2 Evidence on Community Care through Home Visitation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Interventions assessed</th>
<th>Outcomes</th>
<th>Estimates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Das and others 2013</td>
<td>Effect of community-based interventions, including community case management, on the coverage of various commodities and on mortality due to diarrhoea and pneumonia</td>
<td>Health care seeking for pneumonia</td>
<td>RR 1.13 (95% CI: 1.08–1.18); two studies, n = 671</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Health care seeking for diarrhea</td>
<td>RR 1.09 (95% CI: 1.06–1.12); four studies, n = 8,253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pneumonia mortality in newborns from birth to age one month</td>
<td>RR 0.58 (95% CI: 0.44–0.77); four studies, n = 1,070</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pneumonia mortality in children ages 1–4 years</td>
<td>RR 0.58 (95% CI: 0.50–0.67); nine studies, n = 2,507</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zinc use rates</td>
<td>RR 2.39 (95% CI: 1.45–3.93); four studies, n = 32,676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Free distribution of oral rehydration solution</td>
<td>RR 3.10 (95% CI: 1.28–7.48); two studies, n = 14,783</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theodoratou and others 2010</td>
<td>Effect of case management of childhood pneumonia on mortality</td>
<td>ALRI-related mortality</td>
<td>RR 0.65 (95% CI: 0.52–0.82); nine studies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: ALRI = acute lower respiratory infection; CI = confidence interval; n = number of observations; RR = risk ratio.
Community-Based Intervention Packages

Data suggest that the introduction of community-based intervention packages has the potential to reduce maternal and neonatal mortality (Ricca and others 2013; Schiffman and others 2010). Community-based care may improve breastfeeding practices and increase referrals to health facilities for pregnancy-related complications and other health care services during pregnancy, such as iron and folic acid supplementation (Lassi and others 2013). Results from a systematic review suggest that implementation of community-based intervention care packages led to a 25 percent reduction in neonatal mortality; referrals to health facilities for pregnancy-related complications increased by 40 percent; rates of early breastfeeding increased by 94 percent; and health care seeking for neonatal illnesses increased by 45 percent, leading to decreases in neonatal and maternal morbidity (tables 14.3 and 14.4) (Lassi, Haider, and Bhutta 2010). Results from a systematic review suggest that implementation of community-based intervention care packages led to a 25 percent reduction in neonatal mortality; referrals to health facilities for pregnancy-related complications increased by 40 percent; rates of early breastfeeding increased by 94 percent; and health care seeking for neonatal illnesses increased by 45 percent, leading to decreases in neonatal and maternal morbidity (tables 14.3 and 14.4) (Lassi, Haider, and Bhutta 2010). Interventions for the topics that follow are covered in more detail in two DCP3 volumes: HIV/AIDS, STIs, Tuberculosis, and Malaria (Volume 6, Bundy and others), and Child and Adolescent Development (Volume 8, Holmes and others), both forthcoming in 2016.

Malaria. Community-based interventions may also contribute to prevention of malaria. Bhutta and others (2013) show that intermittent preventive treatment with sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine in pregnancy, delivered through community-based approaches, is associated with a higher mean birth weight compared with case management (weighted mean difference 108.6 grams; 95 percent confidence interval 55.67–161.54). The review also indicates that ownership of insecticide-treated nets (ITNs) increased by 116 percent and usage increased by 77 percent. The use of ITNs was associated with a 23 percent reduction in the risk of delivering an LBW newborn. A meta-analysis replicates the findings of Bhutta and others (2013) and finds that ITN ownership significantly affects morbidity outcomes, including parasitemia, malaria prevalence, and anemia (Salam, Das, and others 2014).

Helminths. Salam, Maredia, and others (2014) also find that interventions such as preventive chemotherapy, health education to promote general hygiene and sanitation, iron and beta-carotene supplementation, construction of latrines, removal of cattle from residential areas, staff training, and community mobilization can have significant impacts on the prevention and management of worm infestations in children. Evidence suggests that school-based delivery of anthelmintics can significantly reduce soil-transmitted helminth prevalence by 55 percent, schistosomiasis prevalence (risk ratio 0.50; 95 percent confidence interval: 0.33–0.75), and anemia prevalence (risk ratio 0.87; 95 percent confidence...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Interventions assessed</th>
<th>Outcomes</th>
<th>Estimates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lassi, Haider, and Bhutta 2010</td>
<td>Randomized controlled trials undertaken to compare effects of various community-based intervention packages on maternal and newborn care</td>
<td>Neonatal mortality</td>
<td>RR 0.43 (95% CI: 0.27–0.69); 13 studies, n = 136,425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stillbirths</td>
<td>RR 0.84 (95% CI: 0.74–0.97); 11 studies, n = 113,821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Perinatal mortality</td>
<td>RR 0.80 (95% CI: 0.71–0.91); 10 studies, n = 110,291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Maternal morbidity</td>
<td>RR 0.75 (95% CI: 0.61–0.92); 4 studies, n = 138,290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Institutional deliveries</td>
<td>RR 1.28 (95% CI: 0.98–1.67); 8 studies, n = 80,479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Rates of early breastfeeding</td>
<td>RR 1.94 (95% CI: 1.56–2.42); 6 studies, n = 20,627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Referrals to health facility for pregnancy-related complication</td>
<td>RR 1.40 (95% CI: 1.19–1.65); 2 studies, n = 22,800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Health care seeking for neonatal illnesses</td>
<td>RR 1.45 (95% CI: 1.01–2.08); 5 studies, n = 57,157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kidney and others 2009</td>
<td>Randomized controlled trials that assess community-level interventions and maternal death as an outcome</td>
<td>Maternal mortality</td>
<td>OR 0.62 (95% CI: 0.39–0.98); 2 studies, n = 26,238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salam, Das, and others 2014</td>
<td>Effectiveness of community-based delivery of interventions for the prevention and management of malaria, including distribution of ITN, environmental cleaning, and provision of intermittent preventive treatment during pregnancy and childhood</td>
<td>ITN ownership</td>
<td>RR 2.16 (95% CI: 1.86–2.52); 14 studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ITN usage</td>
<td>RR 1.77 (95% CI: 1.48–2.11); 14 studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Parasitemia</td>
<td>RR 0.56 (95% CI: 0.42–0.74); 10 studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Malaria prevalence</td>
<td>RR: 0.46 (95% CI: 0.29–0.73); 9 studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anemia</td>
<td>RR: 0.79 (95% CI: 0.64–0.97); 11 studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salam, Maredia, and others 2014</td>
<td>Effectiveness of community-based delivery for the prevention and control of helmintiasi, including soil-transmitted helmintiasi (ascarisiasis, hookworms and trichuriasis), lymphatic filariasis, onchocerciasis, dracunculiasi, and schistosomiasis</td>
<td>Soil-transmitted helmintiaci</td>
<td>RR 0.45 (95% CI: 0.38–0.54); 10 studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Schistosomiasi</td>
<td>RR 0.40 (95% CI: 0.33–0.50); 13 studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mean hemoglobin levels</td>
<td>SMD 0.24 (95% CI: 0.16–0.32); 11 studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salam, Haroon, and others 2014</td>
<td>Effectiveness of community-based interventions for the prevention and management of HIV, including educational activities, counseling, home visits, mentoring, women's groups, peer leadership, street</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS-related knowledge scores</td>
<td>SMD 0.66 (95% CI: 0.25–1.07); 6 studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mean number of times condom used</td>
<td>SMD 0.96 (95% CI: 0.03–1.58); 2 studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Protected sex</td>
<td>RR 1.19 (95% CI: 1.13–1.25); 4 studies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 14.3 Evidence on Community-Based Intervention Packages (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Interventions assessed</th>
<th>Outcomes</th>
<th>Estimates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arshad and others 2014</td>
<td>Outreach activities, and dramas to increase awareness of HIV/AIDS risk factors and address perceived barriers to counseling and voluntary testing</td>
<td>Treatment adherence</td>
<td>MD 3.88 (95% CI: 2.69–5.07); 1 study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stilbirths</td>
<td>RR 0.34 (95% CI: 0.18–0.65); 1 study</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: CI = confidence interval; DOTS = directly observed treatment short course; HIV/AIDS = human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immune deficiency syndrome; ITN = insecticide-treated net; MD = mean difference; n = number of observations; OR = odds ratio; RR = risk ratio; SMD = standard mean difference.

Table 14.4 Forest Plot on a Community-Based Intervention Package and Its Impact on Health Care Seeking for Neonatal Illnesses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or subgroup</th>
<th>Intervention package N</th>
<th>Standard care N</th>
<th>Log (risk ratio) (SE)</th>
<th>Risk ratio IV, random, 95% CI</th>
<th>Weight (%)</th>
<th>Risk ratio IV, random, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Azad and others 2010</td>
<td>15,695</td>
<td>15,257</td>
<td>−0.117 (0.12)</td>
<td></td>
<td>22.5</td>
<td>0.89 [0.70, 1.13]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bari and others 2006</td>
<td>520</td>
<td>548</td>
<td>0.068 (0.03)</td>
<td></td>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>1.07 [1.01, 1.14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kumar and others 2008</td>
<td>1,087</td>
<td>1,079</td>
<td>0.857 (0.08)</td>
<td></td>
<td>23.7</td>
<td>1.93 [1.65, 2.26]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manandhar and others 2004</td>
<td>2,864</td>
<td>3,181</td>
<td>1.044 (0.277)</td>
<td></td>
<td>16.0</td>
<td>2.84 [1.65, 4.89]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tripathy and others 2010</td>
<td>8,807</td>
<td>8,119</td>
<td>0.425 (0.35)</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>1.53 [0.77, 3.04]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total (95% CI)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.45 [1.01, 2.08]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Heterogeneity: $\tau^2 = 0.14, \chi^2 = 63.42, df = 4 (P<0.0001); I^2 = 94$

Test for overall effect: $Z = 1.99 (P = 0.047)$

Source: Lassi, Haider, and Bhutta 2010.

Note: CI = confidence interval; IV = inverse variance; n = number of participants; SE = standard error.

interval 0.81–0.94) in school-going children. It also improves the mean hemoglobin levels significantly (standard mean difference 0.24; 95 percent confidence interval 0.16–0.32) (Salam, Maredia, and others 2014).

HIV/AIDS. Similarly, community-based interventions can significantly improve HIV/AIDS status. Interventions such as educational activities, counseling sessions, home visits, mentoring, women’s groups, peer leadership, and street outreach to increase awareness of HIV/AIDS risk factors have shown significant impacts on sexual practices and health outcomes. These interventions improve HIV/AIDS-related knowledge scores (standard mean difference 0.66; 95 percent confidence interval 0.25–1.07) and the frequency of protected sex (risk ratio 1.19; 95 percent confidence interval 1.13–1.25). Home visits can also decrease HIV-related morbidity by significantly increasing treatment adherence scores (mean difference 3.88; 95 percent confidence interval 2.69–5.07). Community delivery of highly active antiretroviral therapy during pregnancy and lactation also led to a 66 percent decrease in stillbirths (risk ratio 0.34; 95 percent confidence interval 0.18–0.65) (Salam, Haroon, and others 2014).
**Tuberculosis.** Tuberculosis can be managed and prevented through community-based intervention packages, including through variants of the directly observed treatment short course, community outreach, training sessions, and increased awareness to boost the detection rate and decrease relapse rates. Findings from 41 studies on the effectiveness of community-based interventions for tuberculosis show that these interventions were associated with a significant increase in cure and the success and completion of treatment (risk ratio 1.09; 95 percent confidence interval 1.07–1.11). Moreover, detection rates increased with community-based interventions using CHWs as the delivery strategy, with a pooled risk ratio of 3.10 (95 percent confidence interval 2.92–3.28) (Arshad and others 2014).

**Nutrition.** Evidence suggests that community-based nutrition programs can have a positive impact on health outcomes. India’s Tamil Nadu Integrated Nutrition Program delivered nutrition services composed of monthly growth monitoring, short-term supplementary feeding for malnourished children and pregnant and lactating women, deworming and micronutrient supplementation, and education on diarrhea management and feeding. Approximately 25 percent of the project’s food requirements were provided by village women’s groups in a neighboring state; this arrangement contributed to the incomes of local women and educated them in the production of a low-cost weaning food (Balachander 1993).

A nutrition program in Ethiopia is also illustrative. In the program, monthly community sessions are held to monitor and promote the growth of children ages two years and younger (Getachew 2011; World Bank 2012). The program empowers communities to assess the nutritional status of their children and take action, using their own resources, to prevent malnutrition. Monthly tracking of all children in the community enables the timely identification of severely underweight children and their referral for further examination and treatment. The government of Ethiopia introduced this initiative in 2008 in drought-prone and food-insecure districts. An evaluation jointly undertaken by the World Bank, United Nations Children’s Fund, and Tulane University shows that the program contributed to improved feeding and child care and thereby to lower rates of stunting: intervention areas experienced a 3–5 percentage point decrease in stunting compared with the national rate of decline of 1.3 percentage points a year (Getachew 2011; World Bank 2012). The study also finds that the program positively influenced infant and young child feeding, including greater adherence to exclusive breastfeeding for babies younger than age six months, complementary feeding between ages 6 and 23 months, and dietary diversity for older children, thereby reducing morbidity and mortality related to malnutrition (Getachew 2011; World Bank 2012).

A systemic review of community-based interventions to improve child nutrition status suggests that nutrition education in both food-secure and food-insecure populations is associated with an increase in height-for-age Z scores of 0.22 (95 percent confidence interval 0.01–0.43) and 0.25 (95 percent confidence interval 0.09–0.42), respectively, compared with a control group (annex figure 14A.1). The review also suggests that simple interventions, such as individual counseling and group counseling, increase the odds of exclusive breastfeeding practices (Bhutta and others 2013; Lassi and others 2013). Table 14.5 highlights several community-based nutrition programs.

**COMMUNITY-BASED CARE TO INCREASE THE DEMAND FOR SERVICES—EMPOWERING COMMUNITIES**

In addition to delivering health services, CHWs and other community facilitators can be involved in education and health promotion activities to empower communities with knowledge and mobilize them to improve their health practices.

One such mechanism for empowering and educating communities is organized women’s groups, which gather around particular health issues. For example, women’s groups may seek to increase appropriate care seeking (including ANC and institutional delivery) and appropriate home prevention and care practices for mothers and newborns.

A pooled analysis of RCTs from Bangladesh, India, Nepal, and Pakistan—in which community support groups and group advocacy sessions that targeted women were implemented as part of community interventions—suggests that these interventions led to a 30 percent reduction in neonatal mortality (table 14.6). A decrease in neonatal morbidity through benefits of domiciliary practices, such as early initiation of breastfeeding and health-seeking behaviors, was also observed (risk ratio 1.87; 95 percent confidence interval 1.36–2.58) (annex figure 14A.2) (Bhutta and Lassi 2010).

A 2013 systematic review suggests that women’s groups practicing participatory learning and action—specifically identifying and prioritizing problems during pregnancy, delivery, and postpartum period—are associated with a nonsignificant 23 percent reduction in maternal mortality and a 20 percent reduction in neonatal mortality (Prost and others 2013) (table 14.6).
### Table 14.5 Characteristics of Selected Nutrition Programs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Program</th>
<th>Institution and evaluation year</th>
<th>Sponsors and funds</th>
<th>Staff and service providers</th>
<th>Objectives of the nutrition program</th>
<th>Coverage of the nutrition program</th>
<th>Program evaluation results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nutrition centers as part of Viva Criança program, Brazil</td>
<td>1992 Evaluation in 1996</td>
<td>World Bank</td>
<td>A trained nutritionist, CHWs, and support staff</td>
<td>Provide nutrition training for center staff and CHWs and identify, treat, and then follow up moderately and severely malnourished children.</td>
<td>A total of 35 centers were developed; only 20 were functioning as nutrition centers.</td>
<td>Case fatality in two centers was 40 percent and more. Entry and exit criteria for rehabilitation were ill defined, resulting in some malnourished children being enrolled. Few staff were adequately trained; knowledge was weak, especially about case management; and mothers were not effectively instructed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integrated Nutrition Project, Bangladesh</td>
<td>1995 Evaluation in 2000</td>
<td>Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, World Bank, World Food Program</td>
<td>CHWs and trained nutritionists</td>
<td>Improve the capacity of communities, households, and individuals in the project areas to understand their nutritional problems and to take appropriate action; and improve the nutritional status of the population in the project area, with particular emphasis on children and pregnant and lactating women.</td>
<td>Coverage was 55 of the 464 districts in Bangladesh.</td>
<td>The program improved knowledge by about 10–20 percentage points beyond that seen in nonproject areas regarding exclusive breastfeeding. Roughly 60 percent of malnourished women (with BMI &lt; 18.5) received supplementary feeding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iringa nutrition project, Tanzania</td>
<td>1984 Evaluation in 1992</td>
<td>Government of Tanzania, UNICEF</td>
<td>CHWs and trained nutritionists</td>
<td>Reduce infant and young child mortality and morbidity through better child growth and development, and improvement of maternal nutrition. This was achieved by training of CHWs, day care programs, educational activities, village campaigns, and cash training programs.</td>
<td>The program began in 168 villages in the Iringa Region of Tanzania, covering an estimated population of 46,000 children under age five years.</td>
<td>The prevalence of total underweight (weight-for-age &lt; 80 percent of WHO standard) decreased from 55.9 percent to 38.0 percent, and the prevalence of severe underweight (weight-for-age &lt; 60 percent) decreased from 6.3 percent to 1.8 percent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 14.5  Characteristics of Selected Nutrition Programs (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Program</th>
<th>Institution and evaluation year</th>
<th>Sponsors and funds</th>
<th>Staff and service providers</th>
<th>Objectives of the nutrition program</th>
<th>Coverage of the nutrition program</th>
<th>Program evaluation results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Integrated Child Development Services (ICDS) scheme, India</td>
<td>1975 Evaluated in 2005</td>
<td>Ministry of Women and Child Development CHWs</td>
<td>Improve the nutritional and health status of children younger than age six years, and reduce incidence of mortality, morbidity, malnutrition, and school dropouts. Also aims to enhance the capability of the mother to look after the normal health, nutritional, and developmental needs of the child through proper community education. The package of services provided by the ICDS scheme includes supplementary nutrition, immunizations, health checkups, referral services, nutrition and health education, and preschool education. Iron and folic acid tablets and mega doses of vitamin A are distributed.</td>
<td>Started in 33 blocks and now spans the country. It is delivered through a network of more than 1 million CHWs and reaches more than 70 million children and 15 million pregnant and lactating mothers.</td>
<td>Multiple evaluations suggest that although there had been a vast increase in ICDS blocks, there was a lack of infrastructure and basic amenities. Though immunization activities under ICDS have appreciable credibility, nonformal preschool, nutrition, and health education are not fully functioning as planned. A World Bank evaluation in 1999 suggested that the program had no significant impact on nutritional outcomes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A study from Ethiopia showed promising results when a group of women from the community were empowered and mobilized to recognize and treat malaria (Rosato and others 2008). This process led to an overall 40 percent reduction in mortality in children under age five years (Kidane and Morrow 2000). In communities with underresourced health systems, such as in Jharkhand and Orissa, two of the poorest states in eastern India, 55 percent coverage of women’s groups formed to facilitate participatory learning, safe delivery practices, and care-seeking behavior was believed to be a factor in reducing maternal depression. Neonatal mortality rates were reduced by 45 percent in the intervention arm (Tripathy and others 2010).

An effective community mobilization program led to a 28 percent reduction in neonatal mortality in a study conducted in Hala, Pakistan, of LHWs who had received training in home-based neonatal care and TBAs who received voluntary training (Bhutta and others 2008). The Makwanpur trial was conducted in a rural mountainous community in Nepal, where 94 percent of babies are born at home (Pradhan and New 1997) and only 13 percent of births are attended by trained health workers (Central Bureau of Statistics 2001). With the implementation of facilitated monthly group meetings among pregnant women, a decrease in neonatal mortality was seen in the intervention arm, compared with the control arm, with an odds ratio of 0.7 (95 percent confidence interval 0.53–0.94) (Manandhar and others 2004).

**QUESTIONS AND CHALLENGES**

**Expanding the Community Health Worker Mandate**

Shortages in human resources and expanding populations have given new relevance to training CHWs in ever-more complex tasks. For countries with limited resources for training or employing paid labor, task shifting may allow CHWs or less trained TBAs to receive training and perform interventions that might have previously been reserved for more highly trained professionals (WHO 2012).

However, no global consensus exists on the appropriate package of services for CHWs. The case of CHWs and misoprostol is illustrative. The WHO recommends the use of oxytocin (10 International Units, intravenous/intramuscular) as the uterotonic drug for the prevention of postpartum hemorrhage, and misoprostol (600 microgram by mouth) administered by CHWs in the absence of a skilled birth attendant (Department of Reproductive Health and Research, WHO 2012).

An RCT from Afghanistan shows that uterotonics such as misoprostol are widely accepted in communities and can potentially decrease significant postpartum hemorrhage-related maternal morbidity and mortality. Results show that of the 1,421 women in the intervention group who took misoprostol, 100 percent correctly took it after birth. In the intervention area where community-based distribution of misoprostol was introduced, near-universal uterotonic coverage (92 percent) was achieved, compared with 25 percent coverage in the control areas (Sanghvi and others 2010).

A systematic review suggests that in the community, misoprostol distribution rates during home visits were higher compared with facility-based ANC distribution. Coverage rates were also higher when CHWs and TBAs distributed misoprostol compared with ANC providers (Smith and others 2013). The review highlights that misoprostol and other uterotonics may very well be widely acceptable within the community and can be delivered by CHWs. Usage is particularly seen more in the South Asia region, with uterotonic usage rates of up to 69 percent (Flandermeyer, Stanton, and Armbruster 2010).

A community-based, cluster-RCT from Ghana evaluates the use of intramuscular oxytocin with a Uniject device delivered by a CHW. In this trial, women receiving oxytocin had a reduced risk of postpartum hemorrhage (risk ratio 0.49; 95 percent confidence interval 0.27–0.88) (Stanton and others 2013),

---

**Table 14.6 Evidence on Community-Based Care through Community Mobilization**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Interventions assessed</th>
<th>Outcomes</th>
<th>Estimates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prost and others 2013</td>
<td>Seven randomized controlled trials undertaken on the effects of women’s groups practicing participatory learning and action were assessed to identify population-level predictors of effect on maternal mortality, neonatal mortality, and stillbirths.</td>
<td>Maternal mortality</td>
<td>OR 0.77 (95% CI: 0.48–1.23); seven studies, n = 113,911</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Neonatal mortality</td>
<td>OR 0.80 (95% CI: 0.67–0.96); seven studies, n = 113,911</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bhutta and Lassi 2010</td>
<td>Six randomized controlled trials that built community support and advocacy groups for mobilization on issues related to maternal, neonatal, and child health were analyzed.</td>
<td>Neonatal mortality</td>
<td>RR 0.70 (95% CI: 0.61–0.81); six studies, n = 67,808</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: CI = confidence interval; OR = odds ratio; RR = risk ratio.
suggesting that, with appropriate training, CHWs can deliver injectable uterotonics.

Neonatal resuscitation, the administration of intravenous antibiotics, and the management of postpartum hemorrhage with uterotonics are some of the interventions that may be appropriate for CHWs. Although promising evidence is emerging for their possible new roles, the data are still insufficient to draw a conclusion as to whether CHWs can be handed these tasks. Investigators should focus on this area of research as a promising approach in low-resource settings. However, increasing the number of tasks required from CHWs has also initiated a debate on the potential for overburdening CHWs and compromising quality.

**Improving the Quality of Community-Based Care**

Ensuring that care provided in communities meets quality standards is a key concern, and training and supervision are crucial mechanisms for ensuring quality care. However, training and supervisory systems are often deficient in the CHW subsystem in LMICs. Effective supervision requires that supervisors be trained and that they be provided with resources for supervision (Mason and others 2006). Training styles have evolved from being primarily classroom based into more interactive sessions, including small group discussions, clinical vignettes, and field training (Mason and others 2006). These modifications allow CHWs, especially those who are less educated or illiterate, to simulate real-life situations and be better equipped to manage such situations. Training should take into account differences in cultural and religious beliefs and particular practices of communities. A program tailored to communities' specific needs and health concerns is preferable.

Updates to technology or medical methods and practices can be communicated to CHWs through regular refresher training courses or through open lines of communication between CHWs and supervisors. Regular follow-up and evaluation of training courses will reinforce knowledge and skills as well as provide opportunities to acknowledge problems and issues that have arisen.

Poor supervision is often cited as a major constraint to improving the quality of essential health interventions and a factor in the poor performance of frontline health workers (PAIMAN 2006; WHO 2006). Effective supervision, however, can be an opportunity to show CHWs that their work is valued and motivate them (Bhutta and others 2010).

The supervision of CHWs requires that supervisors be aware of the issues and problems that CHWs face and understand gaps in capacity. The majority of CHW programs have been run at a small scale by nongovernmental organizations with the capacity to train and supervise; therefore, it was relatively easy to supervise CHWs in those programs. However, once a program is implemented at scale, government bodies need to ensure that supervision and monitoring are performed effectively and are considered to be a core pillar for successful delivery of the program. National CHW programs, which encompass CHWs in remote, rural areas, may be difficult to monitor and supervise effectively and consistently.

**Leveraging Mobile Technology**

Limited but increasing evidence indicates that the growing use of mobile health (mHealth) tools may increase the effectiveness of CHWs in resource-constrained settings. Mobile technology can be used for a variety of purposes, from helping CHWs collect comprehensive, timely, and precise health data to providing CHWs with information and reminders about health care practices and protocols via text messaging (Freifeld and others 2010; Guy and others 2012; Jha and others 2009; Mukund and Murray 2010). Mobile technology can also play a role in training, peer-to-peer learning, and monitoring of the performance of CHWs, in the following ways:

- A cluster RCT at rural health facilities in Kenya shows that health workers at dispensaries and rural outpatient services who received text messages on their personal mobile phones about malaria case management for six months as reminders provided better case management for malaria in children (Zurovac and others 2011).
- The Tanzania CommCare project used an automated text-message system to remotely monitor the real-time performance of midwives and provide workers with alerts and reminders to their mobile phones about past-due patient visits (Svoroнос and others 2010). Compared with a group of midwives who did not receive alerts and reminders, the midwives who received these messages improved the number of timely visits to expectant mothers.
- In the Aceh-Behar midwives study in Indonesia, the use of mobile phones was positively associated with access to institutional and peer information resources, which, in turn, was positively associated with an increase in knowledge about best practices for providing obstetric care (Lee, Chib, and Kim 2011).
- The k4Health project in Malawi introduced a text-messaging network to improve the exchange and use of reproductive health and HIV/AIDS information among CHWs. After an 18-month pilot, the authors found that CHWs who used the text-message network were more likely to contact supervisors for clinical support from the field (Lemay and others 2012).
The potential for CHWs to use mobile tools to improve health service delivery in resource-limited settings is certainly great; however, a stronger evidence base is necessary to guide global health policy and program implementation.

**Improving Referral Systems**

CHWs are often the first line of care for many patients, such as in Pakistan, where approximately 17 percent of those who seek health care consult CHWs first. For referral systems to be effective, transportation and communications capabilities must be in place, and CHWs must be integrated into the primary health care system (figure 14.1).

Integrating CHWs into the primary health care system, as well as ensuring sufficient staffing at facilities, is vital for ensuring strong referrals and for alerting facilities of the imminent arrival of patients. The Brazilian Ministry of Health created the Family Health Program in 1993; the program placed health agents (CHWs) in teams of physicians, dentists, nurses, dental assistants, and nursing technicians, thus formally integrating the CHWs into the primary health system (Singh and Sachs 2013).

**Enhancing Motivation**

In the absence of appropriate compensation, along with weak supervision and monitoring systems, a lack of effort and decline in performance among CHWs has been noted (Bhutta and others 2010). CHWs, especially in low-income countries and lower-middle income countries, may come from lower socioeconomic groups and would benefit from regular salaries. Although some may serve on a voluntary basis, full-time status would help improve performance and encourage CHWs to exert the effort necessary to deliver quality care.

Some countries are exploring the use of nonfinancial incentives to motivate CHWs. Nonfinancial incentives can also play a key role in the overall satisfaction and motivation of CHWs (Bhutta, Pariyo, and Huicho 2010). One such incentive is the certification of training so that CHWs may gain recognition from peers and work toward building a career. Recognition and the knowledge that career advancement is a possibility motivates CHWs to continually improve the quality of the care they provide. Community support, as well as professional support from superiors, is another motivating factor for overall job security and satisfaction.

**Scaling Up**

Scaling up health interventions includes expanding interventions, whether on a population or a geographical basis, and sustaining their use. Both require increased resources, funding, and in some cases, technical equipment.

Scale up of community mobilization efforts can be bolstered by partnerships between government and non-governmental organizations (Coe 2001; CORE Group 2005; Howard-Grabman, Seoane, and Davenport 1994). Strong political will along with mechanisms for monitoring political commitments are essential components of implementing interventions on a large scale. Allowing communities to take an active part in the decision-making and implementation processes permits differences in culture, religion, or beliefs to be addressed and successfully planned for; this approach leads to successful intervention packages and programs that meet the populations’ needs and achieve the initial goals for which they are designed. A bottom-up approach from educated communities with adequate support from reliable government and national institutions will be key for sustainable interventions.

**Building Links with Community and Local Health Facilities**

Primary care services need to be well linked with the community, and effective communication must be present along with feedback mechanisms so that community concerns may be conveyed to higher authorities.

We have developed an evidence-driven framework based on a continuum of care model for reproductive, maternal, neonatal, and child health (figure 14.2), highlighting several approaches that have been recognized.
as successfully reaching communities and providing the best possible interventions. The framework (figure 14.3) portrays the essential components of a promising health care system that should be focused on integrating communities with the primary health care system. Unless these two elements can work together effectively, neither can benefit from the available resources and infrastructure. Community mobilization, home visitation, social marketing, community intervention packages, and community-based programs can be the bridge between these two levels. Once the links are firmly established, the health care system can gain substantially from the resources and support provided by national and local governments and nongovernmental organizations.

**COSTS AND COST-EFFECTIVENESS OF COMMUNITY-BASED PROGRAMS**

**Cost-Effectiveness of Community-Based Programs**

CHW program costs vary widely from country to country. The introduction of community-based interventions requires personnel, resources, training, management, and infrastructure.

Using the WHO-CHOICE model, Adam and others (2005) estimate the most cost-effective mix of interventions for countries with high adult and child mortality in Sub-Saharan Africa and South-East Asia. Interventions for newborn care at the community level were highly cost-effective, followed by ANC, skilled attendance at birth, maternal and neonatal primary
care around childbirth, and emergency perinatal and postnatal obstetric and neonatal care. Using a frequently cited threshold, interventions are considered to be cost-effective when the cost per disability-adjusted life year (DALY) averted is less than per capita gross domestic product (GDP) and very cost-effective when less than three times GDP per capita (WHO 2001).

Community-based strategies that deliver a package of child health interventions including vitamin A (Fiedler and Chuko 2008), ITN distribution (Ross and others 2011), home-based management of fever (Nonvignon and others 2012), treatment for severely malnourished children (Puett, Sadler, and others 2013; Puett, Salpéteur, and others 2013), and training TBAs to improve neonatal health (Sabin and others 2012) are cost-effective at less than US$100 per DALY averted (figure 14.4). Many of the studies rely on CHWs to deliver services, yet studies focused explicitly on the cost-effectiveness of CHWs are scarce. Lehmann and Sanders’s (2007) review of the cost-effectiveness of CHW programs notes the dearth of data on the cost-effectiveness of CHW programs, despite assumptions that services provided by CHWs are expected to be less expensive and reach larger numbers of underserved people compared with clinic-based services. A similar finding is noted in a review of the cost-effectiveness of lay health workers delivering vaccines (Corluka and others 2009). Methodologically, cost-effectiveness analyses may also miss key elements of CHW programs that enhance equity, increase communities’ self-reliance, and contribute to other social benefits and community norms (Lehmann and Sanders 2007).

RCTs have also been used to generate cost-effectiveness results for community-based interventions. In a multi-country study conducted in Bangladesh (Fottrell and others 2013), India (Tripathy and others 2010), Malawi (Lewycka and others 2013), and Nepal (Manandhar and others 2004), community mobilization through women’s groups was effective in preventing neonatal deaths. Using a systematic review and meta-analysis from these RCTs, Prost and others (2013) model the cost-effectiveness of women’s groups for newborn care and find that the cost per averted neonatal year of life lost was US$91 in India and US$753 in Nepal, and was considered cost-effective when compared with GDP per capita. In Zambia, an RCT evaluating the Lufwanyama Neonatal Survival Project shows that training TBAs to manage birth asphyxia, hypothermia, and neonatal sepsis reduced all-cause neonatal mortality by 45 percent (Gill and others 2011) and was cost-effective for all scenarios. Scaling up the intervention from 2011 to 2020 was considered cost-effective at

Figure 14.4 Cost per DALY Averted in Community-Based Programs for Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health

Sources: Based on Bachmann 2009; Bang, Bang, and Reddy 2005; Fiedler and Chuko 2008; Jan and others 2011; Nonvignon and others 2012; Puett and others 2013; Ross and others 2011; Sabin and others 2012; Sutherland and others 2010; Wilford, Golden, and Walker 2012; Yukich and others 2008; Yukich and others 2009.

Note: IPV = intimate partner violence.
US$74 per DALY averted at the baseline and improved to US$24 per DALY averted for an optimistic scale-up scenario. A strategy of using trained TBAs to reduce neonatal mortality can be highly cost-effective (Sabin and others 2012). Other community-based programs, such as social marketing or employer-based schemes for ITN distribution, are also cost effective at US$72 per DALY averted (Hanson and others 2003) and US$40 per DALY averted (Bhatia, Fox-Rushby, and Mills 2004), respectively.

Table 14.7 Average Intervention Costs for Community-Based RMNCH Services, 2012 U.S. Dollars

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Community-based RMNCH services</th>
<th>Mean cost per beneficiary (range) (US$ 2012)</th>
<th>Sources of costs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maternal and neonatal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volunteer peer counselling</td>
<td>$30.60 ($4.97–$68.04)</td>
<td>Nepal; Borghi and others (2005)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traditional birth attendants and birth preparedness</td>
<td></td>
<td>Malawi; Lewycka and others (2013)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home-based neonatal care</td>
<td></td>
<td>India; Bang, Bang, and others (2005)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community health worker maternal care</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cambodia; Skinner and Rathavy (2009)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bangladesh; LeFevre and others (2013)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zambia; Sabin and others (2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Breastfeeding</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer counseling, education, and support</td>
<td>$166.50 ($162.55–$170.44)</td>
<td>Uganda; Chola and others (2011)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>South Africa; Nikonki and others (2014)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child health</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deworming campaigns</td>
<td>$3.47 ($0.34–9.69)</td>
<td>Lao PDR; Boselli and others (2011)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child health days and weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ethiopia; Fiedler and Chuko (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Honduras; Fiedler (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zambia; Fiedler and others (2014)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Somalia; Vijayaraghavan and others (2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Vietnam; Casey and others (2011)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Immunization</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School-based and community-based vaccine programs</td>
<td>$26.75 ($3.50–$50)</td>
<td>South Asia; Jeuland and others (2009)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile community health workers</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ecuador; San Sebastián and others (2001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Malaria</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPT with volunteer health workers</td>
<td>$5.02 ($1.350–$10.10)</td>
<td>Gambia, The; Bojang and others (2011)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community health worker malaria treatment</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ghana; Nonvignon and others (2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ghana; Patouillard and others (2011)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Severe acute malnutrition</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bangladesh; Puett, Sadler, and others (2013)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ethiopia; Tekeste and others (2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gender-based violence</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microfinance</td>
<td>$54.12</td>
<td>South Africa; Jan and others (2011)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender/HIV training for prevention of GBV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: GBV = gender-based violence; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IPT = intermittent preventive treatment; RMNCH = reproductive, maternal, newborn, and child health; USD = U.S. dollars.
Costs of Community-Based Programs

On average, community-based interventions range from US$3 per beneficiary for child health days to US$166 for peer counseling, education, and support to promote breastfeeding. As seen in table 14.7, community strategies can cost as low as US$0.34 per beneficiary for a national deworming campaign in the Lao People’s Democratic Republic (Boselli and others 2011) to a high of US$180.00 for community-based therapeutic care to treat severe acute malnutrition in Ethiopia (Tekeste and others 2012). The main cost drivers relate to the intensity of the intervention and the numbers covered. Even in cases in which intensive resources are required, the cost per capita can be quite low.

In Vietnam, weekly deworming and iron and folic acid supplementation delivered by CHWs to women of reproductive age required considerable resources to train caregivers and sustain the program over a year, yet the cost per woman treated was US$0.88 per year (Casey and others 2011).

A key factor in most of the studies described in table 14.7 is the reliance on CHWs to deliver services. McCord, Liu, and Singh (2013) estimate that it would cost US$2.6 billion a year to deploy CHWs to serve the entire Sub-Saharan African rural population, at a cost of US$6.86 per person for each CHW catchment area, and US$2.72 per person per year.

Research Agenda

Since 2000, a substantial amount of research has been conducted on community-based health interventions, particularly those carried out by CHWs. Yet numerous research gaps exist that, if studied, could have a significant impact on the delivery of health care. The studies available for review are mostly program evaluations without comprehensive and high-quality study designs. RCTs are limited to evaluation of interventions to improve newborn, child, and maternal outcomes.

The majority of community-based health programs are based in South Asian and Sub-Saharan African countries, and CHWs remain the core of the community-based care concept. Many program evaluations have been conducted to examine the effect of these programs on maternal and child health parameters, yet very few exist that study the quality of life and satisfaction among the CHWs themselves. There is also scarce evidence about whether the CHWs are over- or underutilized, and the impact of incentives, work hours, and job-related satisfaction on the performance of CHWs.

Evidence is also needed on the cost-effectiveness of small and large nutrition and other community-based programs, the role of public and private partnerships, and the effect of political will and stability on health care delivery.

It is important to support routine implementation research while programs are being implemented and to identify hurdles and review and revise programs as necessary. More learning is also needed from community-based programs from HICs, with lessons adapted to LMICs.

Conclusions

As countries grow as a result of increased global economic development, existing health care systems are ill equipped to deal with the new population increments. Even with the expansion of health care systems, resources may be limited or facilities may be inaccessible to increasing segments of the population. Maternal, neonatal, and child mortality and morbidity continue to be persistent challenges, particularly in rural areas. Issues of cultural barriers, political instability, poverty, and poor educational systems contribute to ill health.

Improving reproductive, maternal, newborn, and child health requires successful community engagement. A combination of efforts is required to mobilize communities to take charge of their own needs, as well as to provide outreach activities to bring care to communities. Based on the evidence and examples mentioned in this chapter, we conclude that a bottom-up approach that actively involves communities, and that employs and recognizes CHWs as a formal cadre of the national health system, will bring about substantial changes to health care. The integration of community care subsystems into the primary care health system will have wide-ranging effects on the sustainability, effectiveness, and longevity of community health systems, bringing all closer to achieving the Millennium Development Goals.

Annex

The annex in this chapter is as follows. It is available at http://dcp-3.org/rmnch:

- Annex 14A. Additional Information on the Effect of Select Community-Based Interventions on Neonatal Health Indicators.

Notes

1. The number of women who die annually during pregnancy and childbirth has fallen globally from 526,300 in 1980 to 303,000 in 2008 (Hogan and others 2010; WHO 2015). A number of countries in Sub-Saharan Africa have
halved the levels of maternal mortality since 1990 (PLoS Medicine Editors 2010).

2. See CCM Central (http://ccmcentral.com/about/iccm/). iCCM is typically delivered by community health workers at the community level and encompasses treatment for (1) childhood pneumonia with antibiotics, (2) diarrhea with zinc and oral rehydration solution, and (3) malaria with artemisinin combination therapy. The joint statement on iCCM also supports the identification (but not treatment) of severe acute malnutrition and home visits (but not treatment) for newborns (Bennett and others 2014; UNICEF 2012).

REFERENCES


INTRODUCTION

The first two editions of Disease Control Priorities contained extensive discussions of which health care services should be delivered to reduce the global burden of disease for a wide variety of diseases. These editions also provided justification, including by calculating cost-effectiveness ratios, for prioritizing the particular interventions (Jamison and others 1993; Jamison and others 2006). There was, however, little discussion of which service delivery platforms could be used to deliver the prioritized health care services.

To facilitate this discussion, we describe the existing health care service delivery mechanisms for reproductive, maternal, newborn, and child health (RMNCH) that are not community based. (The availability of community-based RMNCH service delivery is discussed in chapter 14 of this volume, Lassi, Kumar, and Bhutta 2016). We discuss different ways of organizing service delivery, including innovative approaches and their impacts on the quality of services delivered.

We begin with a landscape analysis of RMNCH indicators, organized by the conceptual framework used throughout this volume and described in detail in chapter 1: structure, including human resources; process; and outcomes. We next discuss different ways of organizing service delivery for RMNCH, including task-shifting, as well as examples unrelated to personnel. We examine coverage gaps and efforts to boost coverage, and we describe innovations to improve quality. Although evidence exists regarding the benefits of increasing coverage with innovative methods, little support is available on the effects of this increased coverage on quality. This paucity of data is due partly to a lack of an agreed-upon methodological framework, as well as to the poor quality of studies that do attempt to evaluate the innovative interventions.

LANDSCAPE ANALYSIS OF INDICATORS

To ensure the most consistent and comparable results, we present data from the World Bank World Development Indicators database, retrieving the most recent data for each country and averaging across available countries for each indicator to calculate regional averages for low- and middle-income countries (LMICs) in six regions: East Asia and Pacific, Europe and Central Asia, Latin America and the Caribbean, the Middle East and North Africa, South Asia, and Sub-Saharan Africa.

• First, we discuss indicators that represent the structure of the service delivery platforms, measured by the number of nurses and midwives per 1,000 people, the number of physicians per 1,000 people, and the number of hospital beds per 1,000 people.
• Second, we present indicators measuring the process of health care service delivery. For children, these are the
percentage of children under age five years being taken to health providers for treatment of acute respiratory infection, the percentage under age five years with a fever receiving antimalarial drugs, and the percentage under age five years receiving a packet of oral rehydration solution for the treatment of diarrhea. For women, these indicators are the percentage of births being attended by skilled health staff and the percentage of pregnant women receiving antenatal care.

- Finally, we examine indicators for outcome measures. For children, these are the percentage ages 12–23 months being immunized against diphtheria, pertussis, and tetanus (DPT); the percentage ages 12–23 months being immunized against measles; the percentage of newborns being immunized against tetanus; the percentage under age five years using insecticide-treated bednets; and the percentage ages 6–59 months receiving vitamin A supplementation. For women, this is the percentage of married or in-union women ages 15–49 years having an unmet need for contraception.

**Structure of Service Delivery Platforms**

Dramatic differences in absolute numbers of structural resources can be seen across regions. Europe and Central Asia contain the highest average number of resources, while South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa contain the lowest.

Of the 49 countries that the World Bank has categorized as low income, only five meet the minimum standard established by the World Health Organization (WHO) of 23 nurses, midwives, and physicians per 10,000 population (Global Health Workforce Statistics, http://www.who.int/hrh/workforce).

A number of structural resources is associated with each region (table 15.1, panel A).

**Number of Nurses and Midwives per 1,000 People**

Europe and Central Asia has 5.36 nurses and midwives per 1,000 people, almost twice as many as the next three best-served regions: Latin America and the Caribbean (2.76), East Asia and Pacific (2.52), and the Middle East and North Africa (2.40). After these four regions, the number of nurses and midwives per 1,000 people drops dramatically to about 1 in Sub-Saharan Africa; South Asia has only about 0.5 nurses and midwives, less than 10 percent of the value observed in Europe and Central Asia.

**Number of Physicians per 1,000 People**

At 2.78, Europe and Central Asia also has the highest number of physicians per 1,000 people. This is almost twice as high as the values for the next regions; Latin America and the Caribbean and the Middle East and North Africa each have 1.5 physicians per 1,000 people. East Asia and Pacific drops significantly below that figure, with only 0.9. This value drops again by half in South Asia, which has 0.4. Sub-Saharan Africa has only 0.16 physicians per 1,000 people, which is not quite 5 percent of the value observed in Europe and Central Asia, an even greater differential than that between the highest-covered and lowest-covered regions for nurses and midwives.

**Number of Hospital Beds per 1,000 People**

The number of hospital beds per 1,000 people varies from a high of 5.34 in Europe and Central Asia to a low of 1.41 in Sub-Saharan Africa. Europe and Central Asia has more than double the number of hospital beds as in the next region, 2.56 in East Asia and Pacific. Latin America and the Caribbean and the Middle East and North Africa have similar values, at approximately 1.9 hospital beds; South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa have the fewest number of hospital beds, at 1.50 and 1.41 per 1,000 people, respectively. This value is approximately 25 percent of Europe and Central Asia, indicating a relatively lower level of inequality in the distribution of resources.

**Process of Health Care Service Delivery**

**Indicators Related to Children**

The indicators measuring the health care delivery process, which contribute to the final set of indicators—health outcomes—are displayed in table 15.1, panel B. The values for the two process indicators related to children are much more similar across regions than are the values for the structural indicators. The values for the first indicator, the percentage of children with acute respiratory infection taken to health providers, range from a high of 70 percent in Europe and Central Asia; to East Asia and Pacific and the Middle East and North Africa, with values of 69 percent and 68 percent, respectively; to a low of 50 percent in Sub-Saharan Africa. Latin America and the Caribbean and South Asia fall in between, at 64.5 percent and 56.7 percent, respectively. The lowest value is fully 70 percent of the highest value, which is significantly better than the differential that exists for structural indicators.

The same is true for the second process indicator related to children, the percentage of children under age five years receiving oral rehydration solution for diarrhea. East Asia and Pacific displays the highest percentage at 50.7 percent, followed by South Asia at 47.4 percent, Latin America and the Caribbean at 44.5 percent, the Middle East and North Africa at 38.8 percent, Europe and Central Asia at 38.7 percent, and Sub-Saharan Africa at 34.2 percent. The difference between the highest and
The percentage of births attended by skilled health staff reaches 98 percent in Europe and Central Asia. The next three regions follow closely: Latin America and the Caribbean at 86.7 percent, the Middle East and North Africa at 84.8 percent, and East Asia and Pacific at 81.2 percent. The value for the next region, Sub-Saharan Africa, drops to 57.8 percent. The lowest level is in South Asia; skilled health personnel attend only 40.3 percent of births; this rate is only 40 percent of the value in Europe and Central Asia.

**Indicators Related to Women**

The percentage of women receiving some antenatal care (ANC) shows a slightly more compressed distribution of values across regions. The highest value is observed again in Europe and Central Asia, followed even more closely by Latin America and the Caribbean (94.4 percent), East Asia and Pacific (91.6 percent), and the Middle East and North Africa (87.5 percent); Sub-Saharan Africa is only slightly lower at 81.9 percent. South Asia lags, with only 59.4 percent of women receiving some prenatal care; this lowest value is still about 60 percent of the value observed in Europe and Central Asia.

**Health Outcomes**

The indicators representing health outcomes as a result of the performance of the RMNCH health care service delivery system are displayed in table 15.1, panel C.
**Immunizations**
The recent push to increase coverage in immunizations is reflected in the relatively high rates shown in table 15.1, with only one region’s immunization coverage rate dropping below 80 percent for each of the first three indicators. The first four regions show rates of about 90 percent for fully immunizing children against DPT and measles; South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa report child immunization rates of about 80 percent. The lowest percentages for these two immunization rates are about 85 percent of the value of the highest percentages, indicating a fairly even distribution of immunization rates across all LMICs. The percentage of newborns protected against tetanus is slightly lower overall; the highest value is 86 percent in the Middle East and North Africa. However, the lowest value is 79.6 percent in South Asia, fully 93 percent of the highest value.

**Unmet Need for Contraception**
The unmet need for contraception varies from 25.1 percent in Sub-Saharan Africa to 13.8 percent in the Middle East and North Africa. Both Latin America and the Caribbean and Europe and Central Asia have values similar to those of the Middle East and North Africa, 15.2 percent and 16.1 percent, respectively. South Asia and East Asia and Pacific have similar levels of unmet need at 20.5 percent and 21.4 percent, respectively.

**Vitamin A Supplementation**
The percentage of children receiving vitamin A supplementation varies widely from 95 percent in Europe and Central Asia to 31 percent in Latin America and the Caribbean.

**ORGANIZING SERVICE DELIVERY**

**Task-Shifting Related to Personnel**
Given the significant financial requirements for health systems in LMICs, which are confronted by personnel costs that account for a large proportion of budgets and shortages of health personnel, one innovative approach to delivering more services is by reassigning part or all of certain tasks to lower cadres of workers. Because the quality of services may be affected through task-shifting, the WHO undertook an extensive review of the literature to determine which interventions could be delivered safely and effectively by different cadres, and in a sustainable fashion (WHO 2012).

Based on the evidence, the following classification can be used to determine whether task-shifting is appropriate for specific interventions:

- Recommend
- Recommend with targeted monitoring and evaluation
- Recommend only in the context of rigorous research
- Recommend against the practice.

Based on the literature review referred to above, and documented in the 2012 recommendations, the Guidance Panel made 119 recommendations for tasks that could be potentially shifted: 36 for lay health workers, 23 for auxiliary nurses, 17 for auxiliary nurse midwives, 13 for nurses, 13 for midwives, 8 for associate clinicians, 8 for advanced-level associate clinicians, and 1 for nonspecialist doctors.

In addition, the Guidance Panel refers to several factors that might create difficulties when task-shifting is implemented:

- Management of programs: If sufficient and trained management personnel are not available to supervise the lower cadre of workers, quality and efficiency may suffer. However, local implementation of programs might improve with local knowledge.
- Financial issues: Financial management capacity may not be available at more decentralized levels, which would impede the success of task-shifting. In addition, if higher cadres are compensated on a fee-for-service basis, shifting tasks may affect their income and hence encounter resistance.
- Supply issues: Shifting to more decentralized service delivery may result in stock-outs if logistical systems are overwhelmed.
- Effects of task-shifting on personnel: Task-shifting will affect providers from whom and to whom tasks are shifted, along with their interactions. Ensuring their inclusion in the design process could help smooth the transition.
- Health workforce impacts: The demand for both pre-service and in-service training is likely to increase. In addition, lower cadres will likely need higher levels of supervision and support, which should be included in any analysis of the financial implications of task-shifting.

**Task-Shifting Related to Other Approaches**
Several innovative approaches unrelated to personnel have been reported.
• Two studies evaluate the safety and efficacy of using sublingual misoprostol for incomplete abortions instead of surgical techniques, basically shifting the task from expensive personnel to a medication, although some personnel were involved in the implementation of the interventions (Ngoc and others 2013; Shochet and others 2012).

• An example of innovative task-shifting was reported in Ethiopia in measuring maternal mortality. A community-based approach in a rural area was tested at three health posts and one health center. Instead of tasking physicians with attributing cause of death, this approach trained priests, traditional birth attendants, and community-based reproductive health agents in reporting all births and deaths to the community health post (Prata, Gerdts, and Gessessew 2012).

• A review article of the use of ultrasound to diagnose obstetrical conditions in LMICs finds that it was highly effective, resulting in different clinical management in more than 30 percent of cases. The authors recommend expanding its use for tropical and noncommunicable diseases (Groen and others 2011).

EXPANDING COVERAGE AND IMPROVING QUALITY OF CARE

Achieving health improvements for women and children requires high coverage of essential interventions. It also requires that those interventions be effective in combating disease and promoting health. The success of the RMNCH agenda hinges on achieving both coverage and quality. In this section, we review selected current approaches to improving the coverage of priority RMNCH health care services, as well as efforts to improve their effectiveness. The list is not comprehensive; rather, it focuses on initiatives that have been (1) implemented in multiple LMIC settings in the past decade and (2) evaluated. We focus on strategies that receive substantial support from global funders, such as the World Bank, the WHO, and private foundations. The selection draws on several recent reviews, including Mangham-Jefferies and others (2014) and Dettrick, Firth, and Jimenez Soto (2013). A forthcoming overview of systematic reviews from the Cochrane Effective Practice and Organisation of Care Group (http://epoc.cochrane.org/) will provide more extensive guidance on what works to improve utilization and quality. An extensive review of strategies to improve provider performance is also near completion at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (Rowe and others 2015). Although for child health in particular, many essential interventions are in the home and community, we focus here on improving access to and quality of care in clinical settings—clinics, health centers, or hospitals.

Expanding Coverage

The Millennium Development Goals proposed ambitious maternal and child health targets: two-thirds reduction in under-five mortality and three-quarters reduction in maternal mortality between 1990 and 2015. These goals were based on expert estimates that if existing health interventions could be distributed to all women and children in need in LMICs, it would be possible to reduce mortality dramatically without the need for further technical breakthroughs. This remarkable assertion shone the light on gaps in coverage of RMNCH services.

Bhutta and others (2010) review the progress on provision of 26 key maternal and child health intervention in 68 countries that accounted for more than 90 percent of maternal and child health deaths globally in 2010. As table 15.1 shows, they find substantial underprovision of a range of health services. Coverage tended to be highest for interventions that can be delivered vertically through specialized programs or campaigns and can be scheduled in advance. In contrast, coverage of curative interventions, and those that were more complex or required treatment on demand, was lower. An excellent example of this divergence is the high coverage of ANC versus the low coverage of deliveries by skilled birth attendants. The coverage gaps for curative and complex interventions result from weak health systems in which health workers are few and often unmotivated; facilities are deteriorating; and supplies, equipment, and medicines are lacking. Perhaps most important, accountability for results is weak: only one in three of the countries reviewed had policies for maternal death notification, and fewer than one in two had robust vital registration systems (Bhutta and others 2010). Accountability is even weaker at the facility level, where poor outcomes rarely lead to needed changes (Pattinson and others 2009).

Equity analyses show major variations in coverage levels within low-income, high-burden countries, with the rich utilizing maternal and child health services more than the poor. The differences are largest for health system interventions, such as skilled birth attendance, and for ANC visits, where the ratio of coverage between the richest and poorest wealth quintile ranges from 3:1 to 5:1 (Barros and others 2012).
Efforts to increase coverage of RMNCH services have largely centered on users. These demand-side interventions are intended to raise awareness of the need for health care and reduce the direct and opportunity costs of care seeking.

Community Mobilization and Community Health Workers

The formation of women’s groups to promote effective parenting, feeding, and recognition of signs of illness has been tested in several settings. Fotrell and others (2013) find that introduction of women’s groups that participated in a learning and action cycle to improve the health of mothers and children in a cluster randomized trial in Bangladesh was associated with a 38 percent reduction in neonatal mortality and was cost-effective. A study in Malawi reports reductions in both maternal mortality and infant mortality in areas with women’s groups, compared with groups with peer counselors (Lewycka and others 2013). A meta-analysis including these and other rigorous studies suggests that women’s participatory learning and action groups could potentially reduce maternal mortality by 37 percent and newborn mortality by 23 percent (Prost and others 2013).

Community health workers, most of whom are community members with modest health training, have been effective in increasing the uptake of some interventions, including immunization, as well as in promoting breastfeeding. There is less evidence on their ability to increase care seeking for childhood illness or improve effectiveness of tuberculosis treatment (Lewin and others 2010).

User Fee Removal

User fees, or payments for services at the point of care, have been extensively studied for their role in suppressing health care seeking. In the wake of the Millennium Development Goals, many LMICs in Sub-Saharan Africa removed user fees for maternal and newborn care in the mid-2000s to enhance ANC and skilled delivery coverage. User fee removals have typically resulted in increased utilization of the targeted service, sometimes by a large margin (Lagarde and Palmer 2008; Ponsar and others 2011). The effect is particularly pronounced for curative services, with the poor showing the largest increases in utilization (Nabyonga and others 2005). However, effects on quality of care and long-term health outcomes have not been systematically examined. Adequate preparation for user fee removal is required if facilities are not to be overwhelmed with new patients (Meessen and others 2011). At the national level, greater reliance on government health financing (versus out-of-pocket and private insurance) is associated with higher coverage of skilled delivery attendants and cesarean sections (Kruk, Galea, and others 2007).

It is increasingly evident that user fee removal, while promoting utilization, does not protect women and families from financial hardship (Kruk and others 2008; Xu and others 2006). This is particularly the case with complex services, such as emergency obstetric care, and for poor families. This hardship is driven by costs of travel, purchase of supplies and medicines out of stock in government clinics, informal payments, and the continued use of private providers where available (Nabyonga and others 2011). In short, removal of user fees is an important but partial solution to expanding coverage and providing financial protection.

Conditional Cash Transfers

Conditional cash transfers (CCTs) are negative user fees in the sense that they pay households for using services rather than charging them for services. Whereas LMICs have experimented with removing fees, many countries in Latin America and the Caribbean have introduced financial incentives for using care, with the aim of improving home health practices and health care utilization, as well as a wide range of other desired social behaviors, such as education and employment. A 2007 Cochrane review finds that conditional transfers were associated with higher utilization and may be an effective approach to promoting preventive interventions, such as immunization (Lagarde, Haines, and Palmer 2007).

Recent experiences with CCTs have been positive. Brazil’s Bolsa Familia program, which provided households with cash transfers of US$18 to US$175 per month conditional on fulfilling the requirements on health and education, were associated with reduced under-five mortality. Effects increased with Bolsa Familia coverage and were greatest for mortality due to malnutrition (Rasella and others 2013). The Mexican program Oportunidades, which paid women for ANC visits, increased ANC attendance but also increased delivery by physicians or nurses by 40 percent to 90 percent in rural Mexico (Sosa-Rubi and others 2011). The same program raised cesarean section rates among underserved poor women in rural areas by 7.5 percent (Barber 2010).

A current debate is whether unconditional cash transfers (UCTs)—cash transfers to the poor not linked to specific desired behaviors—can accomplish similar outcomes while reducing administrative and logistical hurdles. A study in Zimbabwe shows that CCTs and UCTs achieved similar improvements in school attendance, and that CCTs but not UCTs increased the proportion of children with birth certificates (Robertson and others 2013). Another study finds that UCTs and CCTs reduced human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and herpes simplex...
Vouchers
Vouchers are another type of demand-side incentive. Vouchers are distributed or sold at a discount to target populations who can exchange them for health services by contracted providers or facilities. Vouchers often include private sector services, thereby enlarging the set of health service options for women and children. Because provider participation in voucher schemes is generally conditional on accreditation, voucher programs offer an opportunity to improve the quality of care in enrolled facilities. Vouchers have been extensively used to promote the uptake of family planning, facility birth delivery, and child preventive care. Although rigorous evaluations are few, vouchers have been linked to increases in utilization of facility delivery and family planning services (Bellows and others 2013; Bellows, Bellows, and Warren 2011). Vouchers appear to be less effective in areas with high levels of poverty, where contracted facilities are fewer, and where roads are poor (Kanya and others 2013). Transport vouchers are a promising intervention in these areas (Ekirapa-Kiracho and others 2011).

However, a quasi-random evaluation of a very large voucher-type scheme, India's Chiranjeevi Yojana, finds no differences in facility delivery rates or newborn complications, compared with nonprogram areas. This study is notable for contradicting earlier findings of large improvements in facility deliveries and reductions in maternal and child deaths, which the authors of the evaluation attribute to poor study design in earlier research. The Chiranjeevi Yojana program, which covered 800,000 deliveries between 2005 and 2012, paid contracted private sector hospitals a fixed fee (US$37) per vaginal or cesarean delivery per poor woman. The authors note that poor quality in contracted hospitals and high transport costs may have constrained demand for services (Mohanan and others 2013).

Performance-Based Financing
Performance-based financing (PBF), or paying for performance, is a supply-side financing method that rewards providers or health care organizations for achieving coverage or quality targets. These rewards typically are in the form of bonus payments in addition to regular salaries. A frequently cited study from Rwanda shows a 23 percent increase in facility delivery and larger increases in preventive care visits by young children in facilities enrolled in pay-for-performance schemes, as compared with randomly selected controls (Basinga and others 2011). These increases did not favor the rich or the poor, so additional measures would be required to close the equity gap in utilization (Priedeman Skiles and others 2012).

However, a Cochrane review suggests that the quality of evidence is too poor to draw general conclusions about the effectiveness of PBF, noting that several studies arrived at contradictory results (Witter and others 2012). Fretheim and others (2012) argue that PBF is a donor fad and unproven; others counter that whatever its direct effects, PBF may trigger constructive reforms in public health systems to make care at public facilities more efficient and responsive (Meessen, Soucat, and Sekabaraga 2011).

Improving Quality
Poor quality of care is a double obstacle to improved survival for mothers and children; it deters utilization and hinders achievement of good health outcomes. To improve health, health care has to effective and safe. Good-quality care is also respectful and considers the needs and preferences of patients. Interventions that are efficacious in clinical trials or in highly skilled settings in high-income countries have frequently been shown to be less effective when implemented in resource-constrained health systems in LMICs (Das and Gertler 2007; Das and others 2012; Leonard and Masatu 2007).

Quality of care for complex services is particularly problematic. Souza and others (2013) assess the use of evidence-based interventions in maternal health care and the frequency of poor maternal outcomes (near miss or maternal death) in large hospitals in 29 LMICs. The investigators find that mortality ratios were two to three times higher than expected on the basis of illness severity in high and very high maternal mortality ratio countries, which were the poorest countries in the sample; most were in Sub-Saharan Africa. These excess deaths occurred despite the high use of key interventions, such as magnesium sulfate for treating preeclampsia and eclampsia. Delays in the detection or treatment of complications, poor-quality critical supportive care (such as airway and fluid management), and weak infection control explained the poor outcomes (Souza and others 2013).

In addition to affecting health outcomes, quality of care can influence coverage. Good quality promotes trust in the health system and encourages utilization; poor quality can dissuade people from using health care.

One indicator of population preferences for care is bypassing—going to a more-distant facility when a nearby health facility is available. Bypassing is
considered a strong sign of revealed preference, given that attending distant facilities takes longer and is more costly. Leonard, Milga, and Mariam (2002) show that Tanzanian patients travel farther if they can access providers with greater medical knowledge and facilities that are better stocked. In examining the utilization of facilities for delivery, our research finds that 4 in 10 women bypassed local facilities to deliver in hospitals in western Tanzania, despite wide availability of nearby dispensaries that could provide the service (Kruk, Mbaruku, and others 2009). Bypassing was highest among first-time mothers, who were likely motivated by perceived higher risk of first delivery; it was also higher among women who perceived the local clinic to provide low-quality care.

In a separate paper, Kruk, Paczkowski, and others (2009) find strong preference for quality-of-care attributes in shaping women’s decisions on where to seek care. We conclude that these data are consistent with high home delivery rates, given that few facilities can provide the quality that women expect. A range of qualitative studies supports the notion that women avoid low-quality facilities and may forgo care altogether if better options are not accessible (Abelson, Miller, and Giacomini 2009; Gilson 2003; Russell 2005).

Quality improvement in RMNCH is a vast enterprise with a long history. The initiatives here are not a comprehensive list; we focus on the strategies that have been recently applied in LMICs at scale, that have received donor support, and that have been evaluated.

Measurement and Accreditation
Accreditation of health facilities, common in high-income countries, is increasingly used as a quality-of-care intervention in LMICs. Accreditation is a formal process of assessing whether a health facility meets agreed-upon quality standards; it is typically conducted by an independent body. Published data suggest that accreditation is more common in middle-income countries than in low-income countries. Quimbo and others (2008) find that clinical performance in pediatric care was better in providers who worked in accredited hospitals in the Philippines. An even more influential factor was receipt of insurance payments, which were disbursed, at least in part, on the basis of compliance with clinical practice guidelines—and so could be seen as a payment for performance.

In Sub-Saharan Africa, accreditation is still rare, and evidence of its effects is rarer still. The Zambian Ministry of Health implemented a comprehensive accreditation program for its hospitals with support from the United States Agency for International Development (USAID). The program succeeded in raising compliance with standards, but the complex logistics and high costs (US$10,000 per hospital) of the accreditation process resulted in its cancellation (Bukonda and others 2002). Liberia, which is rebuilding its health system after 14 years of civil war, introduced more streamlined tablet-based data collection for accreditation in all 437 facilities in the country as a requirement for receiving funding. Facilities were rated using a star system. Although the baseline data were successfully collected, the follow-up assessment to demonstrate quality improvements has not been completed. However, the initial data showing large deficiencies in laboratory functions spurred national purchase of laboratory equipment (Cleveland and others 2011).

Performance-Based Financing
One of the potential reasons for poor-quality care may be a mismatch between provider knowledge and the effort providers make when treating patients. This might occur if providers are unmotivated or underpaid. PBF has been applied to improving the quality as well as the quantity of services.

A randomized trial in the Philippines tested the effect of a 5 percent salary bonus paid to physicians upon improvement on clinical vignettes—tests of clinical competence (Peabody and others 2014). The study finds improvements in self-reported health and wasting in children under age five years who attended intervention facilities. The authors note that the measurement and feedback to providers about their performance on the clinical vignettes was an essential element of the intervention.

Rusa and others (2009) find that PBF payments representing 40 percent to 80 percent of nurses’ salaries that were paid in part on improved quality metrics were temporally associated with improved quality of maternal and child health services in health centers in Rwanda. The metrics included completed partograms, growth curves, follow-up for missed visits, and mother and child alive on discharge. Overall, the centers involved in PBF reached quality metrics between 80 percent and 95 percent of total possible scores within 18 months. However, the study design makes it impossible to disentangle the effects of PBF from overall salary increases, monthly supervision visits introduced as part of PBF, and other health system reforms at the same time in the country.

A lively discussion about the role of PBF in global health has ensued on the basis of these and other experiences. Some argue that PBF can catalyze essential health system reforms (Meessen, Soucat, and Sekabaraga 2011). Others believe that it is at best a
partial solution and may create important distractions from more fundamental health system reform, such as expanding the health workforce and raising the salary floor (Ireland, Paul, and Dujardin 2011). Most agree that the jury is still out about the extent to which paying for performance—apart from raising salaries and increasing oversight—is transformative in improving quality (Basinga, Mayaka, and Condo 2011). The lack of evidence has not stopped adoption: 22 countries in Sub-Saharan Africa have introduced PBF in the past several years (Soeters and Vroeg 2011; Spector and others 2012).

Training and Supportive Supervision
Supportive supervision is managerial support for frontline health workers, typically through periodic visits from first-level hospitals to peripheral facilities. It is intended to support quality of care and improve provider motivation and retention through nonpunitive review of practices and mentoring. It is popular in many countries where health services are decentralized and where structures to perform supportive supervision exist, at least in theory (Rowe and others 2005).

A Cochrane review of the evidence on supportive supervision in general primary care, not solely maternal and child health, is conducted by Bosch-Capblanch, Liaqat, and Garner (2011). They assess nine studies and find generally small benefits for provider practice and knowledge. They note that the quality of the assessments was weak.

A few country studies since 2011 show more positive results. Hoque and others (2013) find that monthly supportive supervision, combined with Integrated Management of Childhood Illness training, allowed health workers with 18 months of training to provide similar care to providers with four years of training in Tanzania. McAuliffe and others (2013) report that formal systems of supportive supervision were associated with high levels of job satisfaction and low intention to leave among clinical officers in Malawi, Mozambique, and Tanzania.

Continuous Quality Improvement and Quality Collaboratives
Continuous quality improvement (CQI) strategies rely on engaging facility and health system leaders in reflection on and measurement of performance in health care settings. This process involves identifying poor outcomes (for example, postpartum infections) and brainstorming about root and proximal causes. The quality improvement team then identifies causes that are both important and amenable to change and proposes strategies for addressing the cause. CQI initiatives have shown good results in selected hospitals in the United States, but they have been not been widely used in LMICs. One study from Colombia finds that CQI methods used in two nonprofit hospitals in Bogota led to reduction in surgical site infections immediately after the improvements (Weinberg and others 2001).

A related initiative is known as quality collaboratives. First advanced by the Institute for Healthcare Improvement, these consist of multiple facility-based teams working in parallel to apply improvement in a single area of care then sharing results and best practices in learning sessions (Ovretveit and others 2002). Although these initiatives have mostly been implemented in the United States, the USAID has funded quality collaboratives in 14 LMICs. A 2011 review of 27 collaboratives in 12 countries finds generally positive results with 87.4 percent of time-series charts reaching at least 80 percent performance levels on practices such as oxytocin administration within one minute of delivery and retaining HIV-infected patients in care, with gains sustained on average for 13 consecutive months (Franco and Marquez 2011). These data are encouraging but require a substantial health system effort to succeed (Wilson, Berwick, and Cleary 2003). The potential for scale up and the long-term sustainability of these results in the context of weak systems require further study.

Use of Checklists
Surgical safety checklists have been promoted as a means of reducing human errors in health care by ensuring a systematic approach to each patient and procedure. Similar checklists have been introduced for intrapartum care. A pilot study of a 29-point checklist consisting of items such as hand hygiene, administration of uterotonic, and management of complications was piloted at a large hospital in Karnataka, India. The researchers find that the proportion of indicated practices increased from 10 of 29 to an average of 25 (Spector and others 2012). This approach has to be tested to ensure the result can be obtained with a proper counterfactual and, if so, if it can be sustained.

COST-EFFECTIVENESS OF INTERVENTIONS TO EXPAND COVERAGE AND IMPROVE QUALITY OF CARE
Although limited in number, economic evaluations demonstrate that health center and community-based approaches to improving access to care and quality of services are cost-effective as measured by
In Nicaragua, learning approaches used through quality improvement collaboration in a hospital setting reduced the length of stay for children with pneumonia and diarrhea and was also cost saving. In Niger, a similar quality improvement collaborative for obstetric and newborn care was both less costly and cost-effective. In Malawi, a community approach using both women’s groups and health facility quality improvement that reduced maternal and neonatal deaths was cost-effective. Task-shifting through use of community health workers and lower-level health care providers can be both cost saving and cost-effective (Babigumira and others 2009; Grimes and others 2014; Kruk, Pereira, and others 2007). It is challenging to measure costs and cost-effectiveness associated with programs and policies designed to increase uptake, access, and quality. Part of the challenge lies in the absence of standard metrics for measuring quality; moreover, the health impacts of policies and programs established and implemented at multiple levels of health systems are harder to evaluate.

**CONCLUSIONS**

Good maternal and child health care is critical to improving survival and quality of life. Both expansion of access and improvements to quality are crucial elements of good care. Despite growing awareness of serious quality deficits, research on interventions to improve quality has not produced clear guidance on what works and which models improve quality at scale. This void in guidance is due in part to the lack of coherent conceptual frameworks that would direct the testing of promising quality interventions in different settings. Where interventions are tried, the evaluation is often of poor quality.

The situation is better for interventions aimed at increasing coverage of services where good evidence exists for demand-side interventions to motivate service uptake. Particularly effective interventions to expand access include task-shifting, community groups, and CCTs. However, as the epidemiology of maternal and child death shifts to more complex causes, insufficient quality of care will be an increasing barrier to reducing mortality and morbidity and to achieving global health goals. Indeed, expanding coverage will yield diminishing returns unless quality deficits are also tackled.
NOTE

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:
  a) lower-middle-income = US$1,046–US$4,125
  b) upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126–US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

REFERENCES


A Cluster Randomised Trial.”


A Cluster Randomised Trial.”


A Cluster Randomised Trial.”


A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster Randomised Trial.”

A Cluster R


INTRODUCTION

The continuum of care for reproductive, maternal, newborn, and child health (RMNCH) addresses three key dimensions of service delivery across time, space, and type of care (Kerber and others 2007):

- Access to needed services throughout the lifecycle, including adolescence, pregnancy, childbirth, the postnatal period, and childhood
- Access to interventions with functional linkages among levels of care in the health system provided by families and communities, outpatient and outreach services, and health facilities
- Access to different types of health services and activities, including prevention, promotion, and curative and palliative care (World Health Assembly 2009).

Assessing the returns on investments in the continuum of care for RMNCH requires specification of a package of interventions and an estimate of the full costs incurred in the health system to deliver those interventions. On the benefits side, the outcome of the continuum of care is evidenced in the many dimensions of the health benefits arising from an integrated care program. These benefits are not only lives saved; they also include the improved health and welfare of mothers and children, and the benefits that arise from expanding the ability of women to plan their pregnancies. These diverse health gains will have a wide range of economic and social benefits. Thus, assessing the returns on investment in the continuum of care for RMNCH also requires a comprehensive attempt to measure the various benefits that accrue to communities, at different stages of the lifecycle, as a result of the interventions. The overall analysis compares costs and benefits, taking into consideration their varying patterns over time, to generate benefit-cost ratios and rates of return on investment.

This chapter assesses the costs and benefits of delivering a set of integrated RMNCH interventions across the continuum of care in countries with high child and maternal mortality. The purpose is twofold:

- To demonstrate that very high returns can be achieved by strengthening investments in the delivery of a suite of high-impact interventions
- To underscore the importance of an accurate assessment of those returns, including the full range of costs involved in delivering integrated care across the continuum and the full range of benefits that flow from the interventions.
This chapter is based on the first attempt, to our knowledge, to undertake such a comprehensive analysis of the returns on investment in the continuum of care for RMNCH (Stenberg and others 2014).

CONTEXT OF THE ANALYSIS

The benefits of improving the health of mothers and children are indisputable, and considerable progress has been made in reducing maternal and child deaths since the publication of Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries, second edition (Jamison and others 2006). The global maternal mortality ratio decreased 25 percent, from 288 per 100,000 live births in 2005 to 216 in 2015 (Alkema and others 2015; WHO, UNICEF, UNFPA, and World Bank 2015). The global mortality rate for children under age five years decreased 32 percent, from 63 per 1,000 live births in 2005 to 42.5 in 2015 (UNICEF, WHO, World Bank, UN 2013; You and others 2015). Although several factors have contributed to these reductions, including general socioeconomic development, the increased coverage of essential RMNCH interventions has played an important role (WHO and UNICEF 2013).

Notwithstanding this progress, 5.9 million children died before their fifth birthdays in 2015, and 303,000 pregnant women died in 2015 from preventable complications related to pregnancy and birth. Moreover, progress has been uneven—both among countries and within countries (Barros and others 2012); a number of countries did not reach Millennium Development Goal (MDG) 4, to reduce child mortality, and MDG 5, to improve maternal health, by 2015 (Alkema and others 2015; You and others 2015).

The remaining challenges in reducing maternal and child mortality are, to a large extent, the effects of uneven attention to the full continuum of care. For example, in the 75 low- and middle-income countries (LMICs) that account for more than 95 percent of global maternal and child deaths, coverage of routine diphtheria-tetanus-pertussis immunization has reached a median level of more than 80 percent; however, coverage of other life-saving interventions is much lower, especially those delivered in the immediate postnatal period (median coverage of less than 45 percent) such as postnatal care for mothers and babies (WHO and UNICEF 2013). Similarly, adolescence remains a neglected period, as highlighted by a series in The Lancet on adolescent health (Cappa and others 2012). The continuum of care, including referral chain, is often less than fully functional in these countries (Bossyns and Van Lerberghe 2004; Font and others 2002).

Additional investments are required to sustain gains achieved and to accelerate efforts to address the remaining gaps. With LMICs facing the double burden of communicable and noncommunicable diseases, priorities need to be set to allocate resources to the most effective outcomes.

INVESTMENT “WINS”

This chapter demonstrates the considerable social and economic returns realized through the effect of investments in RMNCH interventions, building on and adding more specificity to earlier results. For example, it has previously been estimated that 30 percent to 50 percent of East Asia’s dramatic economic growth during 1965–90 can be attributed to reduced child mortality and subsequent lower fertility rates (Bloom and Williamson 1997), and that gross domestic product (GDP) per capita is increasing by 1.0 percent per year in China and 0.7 percent per year in India as a result of the effect of lower fertility on age structures (Bloom and others 2010).

There are additional reasons why investing in women’s and children’s health is not only the right thing to do; it is also the smart thing to do.

Improved and Equitable Access

Well-targeted investments along the continuum of care can respond to a fundamental human right: the right to health. Increasing equitable access to RMNCH services is a key strategy for moving closer to universal health coverage, defined by the WHO as when all people obtain the health services they need without suffering financial hardship when paying for them (WHO 2010, ix).

Health System Benefits

Investments in women’s and children’s health strengthen the entire health system. For example, the capacity to provide 24-hour emergency obstetric care requires that health system components, such as qualified health workers, medications, facilities, and a functioning referral system, be in place across geographic areas.

Extended Lifecycle Benefits

Investments in RMNCH bring benefits across age groups. For example, investments in nutrition have long-lasting effects beyond the immediate improvement in nutritional status, such as improvements in cognitive development, school performance, and future earnings (Ruger and others 2012).

Cost-Effective Interventions

A considerable body of research, including Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries, second edition, has
established that RMNCH interventions are among the most effective and cost-effective available (Jamison and others 2006). Recent evidence confirms these findings. A study of diarrhea and pneumonia interventions finds that 15 highly cost-effective interventions exist that, if implemented at scale, would prevent 95 percent of deaths from diarrhea and 67 percent of deaths from pneumonia in children under age five years by 2025 (Bhutta and others 2013). Evidence from Afghanistan suggests that an approach combining improved family planning with incremental improvements in skilled birth attendance, transport, referral, and appropriate intrapartum care in high-quality facilities could prevent 75 percent of maternal deaths at a cost of less than US$200 per year of life saved (Carvalho, Salehi, and Goldie 2012).

**Improved Integration of Services**

Opportunities exist to deliver packages of interventions when women and children present at health facilities, for example, to prevent sexually transmitted infections in conjunction with family planning programs (Church and Mayhew 2009). Findings of the Multi-Country Evaluation of the Integrated Management of Childhood Illness (IMCI) suggest that integrated care can lead to cost savings: the annual cost of providing health care to children was considerably lower in districts with IMCI compared with districts without it (Adam and others 2005).

**ANALYTICAL FRAMEWORK FOR ASSESSING INVESTMENTS IN THE CONTINUUM OF CARE**

The conceptual and methodological framework used is summarized in figure 16.1. This framework has three main elements:

- Identification of a suite of essential, cost-effective interventions

**Figure 16.1 Conceptual and Methodological Framework**

Source: Adapted from Stenberg and others 2014.

*Note: RMNCH = Reproductive, maternal, newborn, and child health.*
• Estimation of the health and fertility impacts and the total cost of specific levels of additional investment in these interventions
• Assessment of the economic and social benefits arising from these health and fertility impacts.

**Selecting the Interventions**

National policy makers must choose which services to provide, taking into account budgetary constraints and financial ceilings allocated by the ministry of finance and other financing partners. Evidence on cost-effectiveness, current health system capacity, feasibility, and acceptability will inform investment strategies. The framework outlined in this chapter includes interventions that were identified in a 2011 review as essential and cost-effective RMNCH interventions (PMNCH, WHO, and Aga Khan University 2011). Table 16.1 lists the 50 selected interventions grouped into six broad packages that follow program structures in many national health systems: family planning, maternal and newborn health, malaria, HIV/AIDS, immunization, and child health, with nutrition included in several packages.

The effective delivery of high-quality interventions depends on key enablers, including national policies, functional health systems, community engagement, and innovation. Strategies modeled include those supporting both the supply side (for example, expanding health

---

### Table 16.1 Preventive and Treatment Interventions Modeled

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Promotive and preventive interventions</th>
<th>Treatment interventions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Family planning</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modern family planning methods, including pill, condom, injectable, IUD, implant, female sterilization, male sterilization, LAM, vaginal barrier method, and vaginal tablets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maternal and newborn health</strong></td>
<td>Safe abortion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple micronutrient supplementation</td>
<td>Postabortion case management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balanced energy supplementation</td>
<td>Ectopic case management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preventive postnatal care</td>
<td>Syphilis detection and treatment in pregnant women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periconceptional folic acid supplementation</td>
<td>Management of preeclampsia with magnesium sulphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium supplementation for prevention and treatment of preeclampsia and eclampsia</td>
<td>Detection and management of diabetes in pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Induction of labor (beyond 41 weeks)</td>
<td>Detection and management of fetal growth restriction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labor and delivery management</td>
<td>Basic and emergency obstetric care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean practices and immediate essential newborn care</td>
<td>Management of eclampsia with magnesium sulphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active management of the third stage of labor</td>
<td>Neonatal resuscitation in institutions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kangaroo mother care</td>
<td>Antenatal corticosteroids for preterm labor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antibiotics for preterm premature rupture of membranes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full supportive care for neonatal infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Malaria</strong></td>
<td>Treatment of malaria in children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insecticide treated materials</td>
<td>Treatment of malaria in pregnant women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnant women sleeping under ITNs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermittent preventive treatment for pregnant women</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HIV/AIDS</strong></td>
<td>ART (first-line treatment) for pregnant women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevention of mother-to-child transmission</td>
<td>Pediatric ART</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cotrimoxazole for children</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table continues next page*
Table 16.1 Preventive and Treatment Interventions Modeled (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Promotive and preventive interventions</th>
<th>Treatment interventions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Immunization</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tetanus toxoid vaccine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Rotavirus vaccine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Measles vaccine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• DPT vaccination</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hib vaccine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Polio vaccine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• BCG vaccine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pneumococcal vaccine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Meningitis vaccine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Child health</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Breastfeeding counseling and support; complementary feeding counseling and support</td>
<td>• Oral rehydration therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Vitamin A supplementation in infants and children ages 6–59 months</td>
<td>• Zinc for diarrhea treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> ART = antiretroviral therapy; BCG = bacille Calmette-Guérin; DPT = diphtheria, pertussis, and tetanus; Hib = <em>Haemophilus influenzae</em> type B; ITN = insecticide-treated bednet; IUD = intrauterine device; LAM = lactational amenorrhea method.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>a.</strong> Some interventions may have both preventive and curative elements.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>b.</strong> Current analysis includes impact only, not cost.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>c.</strong> In countries where abortion is legal.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

System access by constructing new hospitals and facilities) and the demand side (for example, mass media campaigns to encourage breastfeeding and care seeking for childhood illnesses).

**Estimating the Costs**

The second stage of the analysis is to use modeling tools to estimate the health and fertility impacts of the interventions and the investment costs required.

With respect to costs, attempts have been made to estimate the resources required to scale up the provision of essential RMNCH services in LMICs. Most of these are disease- or program-specific cost studies that determine costs more or less specific to the disease or age group (Bhutta and others 2013; Singh and Darroch 2012; Stenberg and others 2007). Such studies tend to include patient-level costs for intervention-specific commodities, such as vaccines, bednets, and nutritional supplements, as well as some estimates of the time and related cost of health workers involved in providing the health services. Ideally, these studies would also include program support costs, for example, for training in disease-specific management, epidemiological surveillance, and provision of vehicles specific to the program activities. However, the studies may not always do so, or the specific methods used to estimate such costs are not always well described. Finally, program- or disease-specific estimates may miss resources needed for broader health-system-strengthening activities, thereby underestimating the true resource needs for the provision of services. Health-system-strengthening activities to consider include preservice training and deployment of clinical staff, development of a functioning referral system, strengthening the health information system, and upgrading facility infrastructure. Figure 16.1 shows the 12 components of the full cost of scaling up the interventions that are estimated in the analysis presented in this chapter.
Estimating Health and Fertility Impacts

The scale up of a comprehensive package of care will have interactions across diseases and age groups. The interlinkages built into the OneHealth Tool and accompanying impact modules (box 16.1) eliminate double counting of lives saved, and they take into account the reduction in need for treatment as preventive care is scaled up. Increases in coverage are translated into reductions in maternal, newborn, and child mortality, along with declines in some aspects of morbidity such as prevalence of wasting and stunting. Fertility rates are modeled to decrease with increasing targets for contraceptive prevalence rates, in turn affecting population growth projections over time.

Assessing the Economic and Social Benefits of Achieved Outcomes

Once the improved health outcomes arising from the interventions—lives saved, morbidity averted, and unwanted pregnancies avoided—are determined, the task is to measure the benefits arising from these better outcomes. Some of these benefits will be strictly economic, reflected in higher GDP from increased workforce participation and from higher productivity. However, other benefits, although equally real and certainly economic in a broader welfare sense, will not be reflected in conventional GDP measures. A mother’s life saved so that she is able to look after her children and support her community has great social value even if she does not enter the paid workforce. Equally, the value of a child’s life saved does not depend only on his or her participation in the labor force when an adult. We refer to the benefits not captured in existing GDP measures as social benefits.

A strong consensus exists among economists that measurements of economic and social change need to move beyond production or conventional GDP to sustainable well-being (Stiglitz and others 2009) and that these more inclusive measures are especially important in relation to health (Arrow and others 2013; Suhrcke and others 2012). These more inclusive methods can be referred to as full income methods. They include additional benefits from improved health outcomes and more inclusive gauges of income than those included in GDP as it is currently measured.

The Lancet Commission on Investing in Health (Jamison and others 2013) argues strongly for a full income approach to measuring the benefits of investment in health, defined as measured increases in conventional GDP plus the value of additional life years gained. The approach presented in this chapter goes further, because it does not limit the analysis to the benefits arising from lives saved. We attempt to include in an explicit manner estimates of economic and social benefits from morbidity averted, and to estimate the economic benefits

---

Box 16.1

Translating Coverage Increases into Cost and Health Impacts: The OneHealth Tool

The OneHealth Tool (OHT) is a software program that aims to support integrated planning processes in low- and middle-income countries by bringing together disease-specific program planning and health systems planning. The tool was born out of a review of tools for strategic planning and costing that found that existing tools did not adequately allow for sector-wide scenario analysis (PMNCH 2008). The OHT aims to facilitate planning that incorporates health promotion, prevention, treatment, and disease management. Version 4 includes detailed modules for programs such as nutrition, child health, malaria, and noncommunicable diseases, as well as modules for health systems planning, for example, human resources, logistics, and infrastructure. It is prepopulated with demographic and epidemiological data by country, as well as input assumptions for prevention and treatment interventions based on World Health Organization–recommended treatment protocols. The tool estimates the likely health impact (mortality and morbidity) of scaling up coverage. The OHT incorporates preexisting models used by various United Nations’ epidemiological reference groups such as the Lives Saved Tool (Winfrey, McKinnon, and Stover 2011); the AIDS Impact Model for HIV/AIDS interventions (USAID 2007; Stover and others 2010); and the FamPlan model, which computes the relationship between family planning and the total fertility rate (Bongaarts 1978; USAID 2004).
derived from control of fertility and hence from the reduction in unwanted pregnancies—the demographic dividend. Accordingly, the approach in this chapter allows for a more comprehensive approximation of the estimated benefits than that used in Jamison and others (2013) and other studies.

MEASURING THE HEALTH IMPACTS AND FULL COSTS OF INVESTMENTS IN THE CONTINUUM OF CARE

Estimates were derived for 74 high-burden countries in which more than 95 percent of the world’s child and maternal mortality occurs (WHO and UNICEF 2013). The list includes 35 low-income countries (LICs), 27 LMICs, 11 upper-middle-income countries (UMICs), and one high-income country (HIC). The investment occurs during 2013–35, and only health and fertility outcomes brought about by investment up to 2035 are considered. The economic and social benefits of those outcomes, such as lives saved or morbidity averted, continue to accrue for some decades to come and can be taken account of in the investment appraisal.

Modeling an Increase in Coverage Level

An investment case may take into account different scenarios of specific packages of services (content), levels of investment (level of ambition), and strategies (for example, community-based versus facility-based delivery) to achieve the set goals. At the country level, the various different scenarios should be assessed to inform national policy discussions regarding the most-effective resource allocations. Here, for illustrative purposes and in the interest of assessing the benefits of investing in a set of high-mortality countries, we scale up the same package of interventions across all countries. A scenario that maintains current baseline (2012) coverage is defined as Low, while an ambitious scenario with coverage increasing for all 50 interventions until 2035 is defined as High (table 16.2).

The relative level of coverage across the scenarios drives the differences in intervention costs and impact so that the incremental effect of an investment strategy (that is, the High scenario) compared with maintaining current coverage without strengthening the health system (the Low scenario) can be assessed and valued. The analysis is centered on the comparison between

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Overall parameters</th>
<th>Scope of the analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Years of investment cost</td>
<td>2013–35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Years for which benefits are estimated</td>
<td>2013–35 (health benefits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population considered</td>
<td>4.9 billion in 2013 (74 countries) (UN 2013)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Costs considered**

- **Inpatient care**: Costs comprise the “hotel” component of hospital costs, that is, excluding the cost of drugs and diagnostic tests but including costs for personnel and infrastructure running costs.
- **Outpatient care**: Personnel and infrastructure running costs.
- **Community-based care**: A proxy value is applied, assuming that the running cost of community-based care would be one-third the cost of care provided at health centers.
- **Intervention-specific direct costs**: Drugs, vaccines, laboratory tests, and medical supplies based on treatment guidelines
- **Program administration costs**: Resource needs are estimated using a bottom-up ingredients approach for each specific area (child health, maternal health, immunization) and comprise in-service training activities, development of preservice training materials, distribution of printed information materials, mass media campaigns, supervision of community health workers, routine program management, conditional cash transfers, and other activities considered essential for ensuring an expansion of quality services.
- **Specific for improving adolescents’ access to health services**: Costs for general program coordination at national and district level of adolescent-friendly health services (AFHS), development and distribution of national standards for AFHS, in-service training on AFHS, information and communication activities, and upgrade of infrastructure and equipment to adolescent-friendly standards.
Table 16.2 Parameters of the Investment Analysis (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Overall parameters</th>
<th>Scope of the analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Health systems costs<sup>d</sup> | • Capital investments in infrastructure, primarily related to construction of hospitals, facilities, and health posts. Capital investments are assumed to take place during the first 12 years only (2013–24) to accommodate expansion in service delivery and effective referral systems.  
• Operational costs for transporting additional RMNCH commodities throughout the supply chain.<sup>e</sup>  
• Investments in equipment and procedures for better health information management.  
• Administration of social health insurance in 13 countries classified as having or planning to set up insurance schemes.  
• Investments in procedures for improved governance and management of resources. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scenarios considered</th>
<th>Health interventions</th>
<th>Family planning</th>
<th>Economic growth assumptions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LOW</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| This scenario assumes that coverage is maintained at current levels. | • Coverage is maintained at predicted current levels (2012).  
• It is assumed that with constant coverage, mortality rates do not change over time. | • Coverage is maintained at predicted current levels (2012).  
• Population growth is as would occur with current contraceptive use and fertility and mortality profiles of the 74 countries. The total population will continue to increase over time, along with the cost of providing services; the total absolute number of deaths will increase. | GDP per capita converges from current estimates to an annual growth rate of 2 percent by 2070. |

| **HIGH**             | Projected coverage values are derived from historical trends using the fastest rate of change achieved by countries at specific coverage levels. | Family planning and contraceptive use increase based on best-performer trends, with TFR limited from going below 2.1 (unless currently below 2.1). | GDP per capita and year are calculated based on economic benefits and social benefits valued in monetary terms. |
| This ambitious scenario scales up coverage by accelerating current trends using a best-performer approach. | • For newer vaccines (rotavirus, *Haemophilus influenzae* type b [Hib], and pneumococcal vaccines), predictions of rollouts by Gavi, the Vaccine Alliance were used.  
• For predictions of HIV incidence, PMTCT, ART for children and adults, and treatment with cotrimoxazole, we applied global targets of 80 percent by 2015, and 95 percent by 2035.  
• The average coverage level attained for the 50 interventions is 88 percent by 2035. | |

Source: Based on Stenberg and others 2014.

Note: ART = antiretroviral therapy; GDP = gross domestic product; PMTCT = prevention of mother-to-child transmission; RMNCH = reproductive, maternal, newborn, and child health; TFR = total fertility rate.

<sup>a</sup> WHO-CHOICE estimates of service delivery costs by country.

<sup>b</sup> Commodity, vaccine, test, and supply costs included as defaults within the OneHealth Tool, multiplied by quantities of services delivered based on intervention scale up.

<sup>c</sup> Program administration and support activity costs calculated as part of previous analysis, notably WHO (2009) and Deogan, Ferguson, and Stenberg (2012).

<sup>d</sup> Health-system-strengthening costs calculated as part of previous analysis (WHO 2009).

<sup>e</sup> Supply chain costs calculated as a mark-up rate on the variable commodity costs associated with intervention scale up.

 scenarios; it is important to note that the main counterfactual in our example is the Low scenario with constant coverage levels and a growing population. Accordingly, the results should not be interpreted as additional spending above current levels of health expenditure, but rather as the cost and impact of bending the curve and accelerating progress compared with a Low scenario in which coverage remains at the 2012 level while population increases.

We applied tools that have been developed by the international community, including the OneHealth Tool (box 16.1) to assess intervention-specific costs and
health and fertility impacts. Intervention-specific costs are driven by increases in coverage, with costs distributed to different levels of care (community, outreach, facility, and hospital). Program- and systems-related costs draw upon estimates made by the Taskforce on Innovative International Financing for Health Systems (WHO 2009) and are described in detail in Stenberg and others (2014). Costs are generally estimated using an ingredients approach (quantity times price), with the exception of supply chain costs, for which a mark-up ratio is applied.

ESTIMATING THE FULL BENEFITS OF INVESTMENT IN THE CONTINUUM OF CARE

Key Methodological Assumptions

The costs and the benefits are defined as the incremental costs and benefits between two scenarios. However, when fertility management tools are an important part of the suite of interventions, the populations in the two scenarios diverge substantially. The approach we adopt is to assess only those benefits that apply to those alive in the High scenario, and we compare their situation to what it would have been in the Low scenario.

Three broad types of benefit are identified:

- Some have the benefit of life because their lives were saved through the interventions.
- Others are in much better health because of the morbidity averted.
- The whole community has the benefit of higher per capita incomes arising from the reduction in unintended pregnancies and from the processes that the fall in fertility rates sets in motion.

The difference in deaths and in morbidity for children between the Low and High scenarios will reflect two different factors: the impact of the health interventions for a given level of births, and the reduction in the number of births (due to expanding family planning) for a given level of health. We partition the reduction in child deaths and in morbidity between the Low and High scenarios into these two components. We use only the former, which we refer to as lives saved, in calculating benefits. The reduction in child mortality from scaling up contraceptives is thus counted in the health impact results but not in the cost-benefit analysis. All maternal deaths prevented are considered to be lives saved; that is, the full reduction in maternal mortality is translated into economic benefits.

GDP per capita paths were derived from World Bank data and were combined with population estimates from the OneHealth Tool projections; these were extended to 2070 on the basis of convergence to zero population growth in each country by that year. Per capita GDP estimates and assumptions about productivity are combined with data on labor force participation of those affected by the intervention (ILO 2013).

Economic and Social Benefits of Years of Life Saved

A vast literature discusses the value of a statistical life and, by implication, the value of life years saved (VLY). Most studies use a willingness-to-pay approach, either in the form of analyses of revealed preferences evident in wage and risk data or analyses of stated preferences. Viscusi and Aldy (2003) review the revealed preference literature and suggest, albeit with a wide uncertainty margin, an implied value for a life year of about 4.0 times GDP per capita, with an income elasticity of about 0.6. These two facts, in turn, imply a value of a life year for LICs of 1.5 to 2.0 times GDP per capita.

Jamison and others (2012) estimate the VLY as 2.3 times GDP per capita in LMICs at a 3 percent discount rate, with estimates by World Bank region ranging from 1.4 for Latin America and the Caribbean and for the Middle East and North Africa to 4.2 for Sub-Saharan Africa. Cropper, Hammitt, and Robinson (2011) note the recent expansion of the stated preference literature, in which individuals are asked about how they would act in hypothetical situations, and that the value of a statistical life emerging from these studies is much lower than for revealed preference studies.

The revealed preference studies refer to both the economic and social value of a life year; by economic value we mean the value that would be captured in conventional GDP measures, primarily through labor force effects; the social value refers to all other benefits of an additional year of life to an individual or a community not captured in GDP. We regard it as useful to distinguish between the social and economic components of the VLY because they may have different roles in some investment analyses.

We have constrained the total value of a life year across these two components to 1.5 times GDP per capita for the sample as a whole, which we regard as being at the lower end of the range used in the literature. The calculated economic benefits of increased labor force participation amount to about 1.0 times GDP per capita, calculated as the sum of GDP for all 74 countries divided by the population for all 74 countries. A social VLY equal to 0.5 times the GDP per capita of the full set of sample countries is then applied as a common value across countries. Although the strictly economic value of an additional year of life will vary with local economic
parameters, there is no reason to think that the social value is lower in poorer countries than in richer ones. Although we do not use any age adjustment for the social value of a life, our procedure results in some discounting of the overall value of a life year for age, and the economic benefits of children’s lives saved only begin to accrue when they enter the labor force.

Benefits of Morbidity Averted

Many women and children who survive adverse RMNCH events suffer serious and sustained disabilities (Ashford 2002; Blencowe and others 2013; Mwaniki and others 2012; Souza and others 2013) that undoubtedly have substantial human, social, and economic costs. The interventions studied here should be expected to generate important benefits through lower morbidity. In spite of its acknowledged importance, few attempts have been made to quantify the burden of maternal and child morbidity or to estimate its economic and social cost; we attempt to begin the process in this study.

Although the OneHealth Tool estimates the lives saved as a result of scaling up the interventions, it does not measure the morbidity averted (other than for wasting and stunting) or the impact on mortality in subsequent years from averting morbidity in the initial year. We estimate morbidity averted for four causes for children (preterm birth complications, birth injury, congenital abnormalities, and malnutrition) and two for mothers (obstructed labor and other maternal disorders), and calculate economic and social benefits. Moreover, we derive parameters relating improved nutritional outcomes—prevention of low stature and low birth weight—to lifetime earnings and apply these to estimates of reduced wasting and stunting by country.

Benefits of Reduced Fertility Rates

The third benefit is the economic impact of the reduction in fertility rates, which is well documented in the literature. Ashraf, Weil, and Wilde (2013) identify a range of channels through which a reduction in the total fertility rate (TFR), that is, the number of children born to the average woman during her lifetime, affects growth in GDP per capita; these channels can be grouped into three types of effect, each affecting GDP:

- A labor supply effect because adults are able to devote more time to working. (With fewer births, women and other caregivers will have an increased propensity to enter the labor force, leading to increased labor supply per capita and hence to increased GDP per head.)
- A productivity effect covering a range of factors influencing long-term productivity, such as higher saving by households and higher investment in schooling. More generally, with lower birth rates, more of a society’s resources can be devoted to capital deepening, thereby increasing productivity, rather than to capital widening to meet the needs of the expanding population.

The estimates of the demographic dividend draw on and adjust the methods of Ashraf, Weil, and Wilde (2013), who developed estimates of key parameters based on a review of relevant literature. We derive from their model an aggregate relationship between the reduction in the TFR and the change in GDP per capita over time, out to 2070, and apply this to the change in the TFR in each country to estimate the impact on per capita GDP and hence on overall GDP.

In summary, we present economic benefits, valued in GDP terms, derived from the following:

- Lives saved
- Morbidity averted
- Demographic dividend.

Social benefits, also valued in GDP terms, are derived from the following:

- Lives saved
- Morbidity averted.

In the Low scenario, GDP per capita paths converge to an annual growth rate of 2 percent by 2070. The economic benefits here refer to the difference in GDP growth between the High and Low scenarios.

Two Country Case Studies

To illustrate how the investment framework could be applied at the country level, we present two case studies of LICs. One is a country in Asia that has seen increased coverage of RMNCH interventions and reductions in the fertility rate to about 2.5. The other is a country in Sub-Saharan Africa with low coverage of many RMNCH interventions and continued high fertility rates (table 16.3).
RESULTS: INVESTMENT METRICS AND COMPONENTS OF COSTS AND BENEFITS

We present benefit-cost ratios of investing in RMNCH. For details on costs (in 2011 U.S. dollars) and health benefits, see Stenberg and others (2014). In brief, the High scenario would require an extra US$4.48 per capita in 2035, with country estimates ranging from US$1.2 to US$112.7, although the per capita numbers will be higher in earlier years because of frontloading in infrastructure costs and the increase in population over time. Total costs reach US$30 billion in the third year and remain at that level until 2035.9

Table 16.4 shows estimates of total deaths prevented, apportioned between deaths averted (the reduction in births due to enhanced access to contraceptives) and lives saved (the impact of the health interventions on those who are born). The distribution of deaths across these two categories varies across countries and regions, largely reflecting the importance of fertility reduction in individual countries. In UMICs, for example, where fertility rates are in general already fairly low, 75.6 percent of deaths prevented are lives saved.

Benefit-Cost Ratios for Investments

Applying a discount rate enables benefits and costs to be expressed as a net present value (NPV). The benefit-cost ratio for a given discount rate is the ratio of the NPV of benefits and costs at that discount rate.

Table 16.5 reports for all countries considered as a whole, and for groups of countries, the benefit-cost
### Table 16.4 Costs and Deaths Prevented, High versus Low Scenarios, 2013–35

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country grouping (number of countries in parentheses)</th>
<th>Cost (billion 2011 US$)</th>
<th>Deaths prevented (millions)</th>
<th>Lives saved (percent)</th>
<th>Deaths averted (percent)</th>
<th>Lives saved (percent)</th>
<th>Deaths averted (percent)</th>
<th>Lives saved (percent)</th>
<th>Deaths averted (percent)</th>
<th>Total lives saved (millions)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low-income countries (35)</td>
<td>173.6</td>
<td>78.9</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>40.4</td>
<td>106.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower-middle-income countries (27)</td>
<td>316.3</td>
<td>98.1</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>59.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper-middle- and high-income countries (12)</td>
<td>188.8</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>5.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total (74)</td>
<td>678.1</td>
<td>184.9</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>106.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Saharan Africa (43)</td>
<td>232.9</td>
<td>109.3</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>54.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin America and the Caribbean (6)</td>
<td>46.8</td>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle East and North Africa (5)</td>
<td>24.1</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe and Central Asia (5)</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Asia (5)</td>
<td>165.3</td>
<td>60.4</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>40.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East Asia and Pacific (10)</td>
<td>199.0</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Based on Stenberg and others 2014.
Note: Numbers may not sum precisely because of rounding.

### Table 16.5 Benefit-Cost Ratios for High Compared with Low Scenarios, Selected Periods and Discount Rates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country grouping</th>
<th>Number of countries</th>
<th>To 2035 (3 percent discount rate)</th>
<th>To 2050 (5 percent discount rate)</th>
<th>To 2070 (7 percent discount rate)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All 74 countries</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>27.6</td>
<td>34.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low-income countries</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>16.9</td>
<td>18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower-middle-income countries</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>11.3</td>
<td>34.0</td>
<td>41.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper-middle-income countries, excluding China</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>22.5</td>
<td>30.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>42.8</td>
<td>52.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Saharan Africa</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>32.3</td>
<td>37.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Asia</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>12.7</td>
<td>36.2</td>
<td>43.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High fertility impact countries</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>13.7</td>
<td>40.6</td>
<td>47.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia case study country</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Saharan Africa case study country</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>27.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Based on Stenberg and others 2014.

a. The 27 high fertility impact countries are those in which the estimated demographic dividend by 2035 (comparing the High and Low scenarios) is 8 percent of gross domestic product or greater. These are Afghanistan, Angola, Benin, Burkina Faso, Cameroon, Chad, Comoros, the Democratic Republic of Congo, the Republic of Congo, Equatorial Guinea, The Gambia, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Iraq, Kenya, Liberia, Malawi, Mali, Mozambique, Niger, Nigeria, Rwanda, Senegal, Sierra Leone, Somalia, Tanzania, Uganda, and Zambia.
ratios calculated using rising discount rates over the period: 3 percent for 2013–35, 5 percent for 2013–50, and 7 percent for 2013–70. We present results individually for China and India given the significant size of these countries. China is also a particular case in that there is limited additional demographic dividend to gain (table 16.6). Although the 3 percent rate is commonly used in this type of analysis (appendix 3 in Jamison and others 2013), the use of rising discount rates for longer periods is one way of taking account of higher uncertainty over the longer term as well as myopic time preferences and likely increases in consumption over time.

The benefit-cost ratios shown in table 16.5 indicate high returns on increased investment in RMNCH in most countries, especially when benefits beyond the intervention period are included. For all countries considered as a group, the benefit-cost ratio is 8.7 for the intervention period to 2035 at a 3 percent discount rate, 27.6 at 5 percent for the period to 2050, and 34.2 at 7 percent for the period to 2070. The benefit-cost ratio is generally higher for lower-middle-income countries and UMICs than for LICs, especially post 2035, as well as for those 43 countries in Sub-Saharan Africa and 5 in South Asia where maternal and child mortality are highest.

### Analysis of Benefits and Benefit-Cost Ratios by Type of Benefit

Tables 16.6 and 16.7 show the contribution from the three sources of benefits to 2050 comparing the High and Low scenarios (using a 5 percent discount rate) expressed in two ways: as a contribution to the overall benefit-cost ratio and as a percentage share of all benefits in NPV terms. These tables illustrate four points about the distribution of benefits.

#### Uneven Distribution of Demographic Dividend

First, the demographic dividend is unevenly distributed across countries, depending on each country’s projected fertility rate reduction. Overall, the reduced fertility generates a benefit-cost ratio of 13.3 by 2050 (the demographic dividend in table 16.6), but the estimated impact of reduced fertility rates in the High scenario is particularly high in 27 countries, where it could lead

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country grouping</th>
<th>Benefit-cost ratio</th>
<th>Direct workforce-related benefits</th>
<th>Social benefits</th>
<th>All benefits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lives saved (a)</td>
<td>Morbidity averted (b)</td>
<td>Increase in GDP (c) = (a) + (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All 74 countries</td>
<td>27.6</td>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low-income countries</td>
<td>16.9</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower-middle-income countries</td>
<td>34.0</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper-middle-income countries, excluding China</td>
<td>22.5</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>42.8</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Saharan Africa</td>
<td>32.3</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>4.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Asia</td>
<td>36.2</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High fertility impact countries</td>
<td>40.6</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia case study country</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Saharan Africa case study country</td>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Based on Stenberg and others 2014.

Note: Total direct health benefits = increase in gross domestic product (GDP) from work-related benefits (c) + total social benefits (h). Numbers may not sum precisely because of rounding.
to an increase in GDP per capita of 8 percent or more by 2035. In these countries, which are mainly lower-middle-income countries, the demographic dividend on total investment generates a benefit-cost ratio of 22.

High Direct Health Benefits
Second, the direct health benefits, excluding the demographic dividend, are very high at 14.3 for the sample as a whole. These direct benefits are much more evenly distributed across countries, 11.4 for LICs and 11.5 for UMICs, excluding China.

Total Economic and Social Benefits Are Fairly Equal
Third, the workforce-related economic benefits (excluding the demographic dividend) and the social benefits are about equal for the sample as a whole. The benefit-cost ratio generated by the direct workforce benefits alone is 7.1, and that generated by the social benefits alone is 7.2 for the 74 countries. The contribution of direct workforce benefits versus social benefits varies significantly across country income groups; social benefits are much greater than workforce-related benefits in LICs, but the reverse is true in UMICs. This finding presumably reflects the lower economic value of lives saved and morbidity averted in poorer countries, whereas the social benefits are valued using a sample-wide metric.

Significant Morbidity Benefits
Finally, in spite of the very preliminary nature of the morbidity analysis, the morbidity benefits are significant, representing 6.8 percent of the total benefits (table 16.7). These results suggest that further detailed work on maternal and child morbidity is both appropriate and necessary.

Table 16.7 Analysis of Contribution to Benefits, High versus Low Scenarios, by percentage Shares, 5 percent Discount Rate for Net Present Value, 2013–50

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country group</th>
<th>Direct workforce-related benefits</th>
<th>Social benefits</th>
<th>All benefits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lives saved (a)</td>
<td>Morbidity averted (b)</td>
<td>Total (c) = (a) + (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All 74 countries</td>
<td>20.6</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>25.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low-income countries</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower-middle-income countries</td>
<td>12.4</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>15.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper-middle-income countries, excluding China</td>
<td>29.7</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>37.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>46.4</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>57.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>11.9</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>15.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Saharan Africa</td>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>15.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Asia</td>
<td>12.2</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>15.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High fertility impact countries</td>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>13.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia case study country</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>15.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-Saharan Africa case study country</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>9.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Based on Stenberg and others 2014.
Note: Total direct health benefits = increase in gross domestic product (GDP) from work-related benefits (c) + total social benefits (h).
fertility rate and a higher level of labor force participation by women (table 16.3).

Although the total cost of the intervention for the Asian country is larger than that for the Sub-Saharan African country, reflecting the disparity in population size, the additional cost per person for the High versus the Low scenario is considerably lower at US$2.65 (versus US$6.88). This result is due to the higher fertility and maternal and child death rates in the Sub-Saharan African country, which require a higher level of intervention and a greater cost per capita. Despite the differences in population size, the numbers of maternal, child, and stillbirth deaths prevented by the interventions are similar in the two countries, with a proportionally greater impact in the Sub-Saharan African country.

Table 16.5 shows a high benefit-cost ratio for the Sub-Saharan African country, with results similar to those for the average of all 74 countries and for the group of LICs. Although positive, the benefit-cost ratio for the Asian country is more modest, again reflecting the differences in initial fertility and death rates.

A more detailed description of the sources of the benefits that arise from the intervention for the two country case studies is provided in tables 16.6 and 16.7. For the Asian country, the biggest contributors to the benefit-cost ratio are those benefits arising from the social value of lives saved and morbidity averted (65.7 percent). The contributions from the increase in GDP from workforce-related benefits (15.2 percent) and from the demographic dividend (20.0 percent) are more modest but still significant. Considered solely as a function of either the increase in GDP from workforce-related benefits or from the demographic dividend, the benefit-cost ratio still shows benefits outweighing costs (ratios of 1.4 and 1.8, respectively).

For the Sub-Saharan African country, in contrast, the contributions from the economic and social benefits are virtually equal (48.1 percent and 51.9 percent, respectively). The demographic dividend is about twice as important as for the Asian country (39.0 percent), while the contribution from additional GDP is lower (9.1 percent). Again as a function of either the increase in GDP from workforce-related benefits or from the demographic dividend, the benefit-cost ratio shows benefits outweighing costs (ratios of 2.3 and 9.6, respectively) and the ratios are higher than for the Asian country.

IMPLICATIONS OF THE ANALYSIS

The analysis presented refers to 74 countries that account for more than 95 percent of global maternal and child deaths. This approach goes beyond the standard full income approach to allow for a more comprehensive picture of the returns on investment by explicitly including estimates of economic and social benefits from morbidity averted, and by estimating the effect of the demographic dividend. The analysis points to six main findings.

Large Economic and Social Returns

First, investments in high-impact interventions across the continuum of care in RMNCH have large economic and social returns in addition to the impact on health outcomes. The benefit-cost ratio of investments in the High scenario for the full country sample is 8.7 in 2035. Findings are robust to variations in the methods of analysis, such as discount rates.

Affordable Investments

Second, the required investments are affordable for most countries. On average for the 74 countries, an additional US$4.48 per capita would be needed in 2035 to finance the High scenario. However, affordability needs to be examined in the context of fiscal sustainability as issues related to universal coverage, financial protection, quality, responsiveness, and efficiency will affect the policy dialogue around public investment in health, and macroeconomic conditions will set the overall boundaries for what can be achieved. The Global Financing Facility to Advance Women’s and Children’s Health, created in 2014, will support countries in overcoming fiscal constraints in the short term and in setting up mechanisms to achieve long-term sustainable domestic financing.10

Variable Returns on Investment

Third, the magnitude of returns on investment varies across country groupings. By income, the highest returns are realized in lower-middle-income countries. This finding might be explained by two factors: First, economies of lower-middle-income countries with higher GDP have higher returns operating through workforce benefits and the demographic dividend compared with LICs. Second, returns in UMICs might be lower than in LMICs, given their already lower mortality rates and more strongly diminishing returns.

The findings vary by individual countries, reflecting the epidemiological and demographic situation in each, current health systems performance, and country-specific economic factors. The substantially different findings of the two country case studies confirms that individual countries will find considerable value in undertaking their own investment analyses, to give results specific to their circumstances. For example, the returns on...
investment in the Sub-Saharan African case study country, with low coverage of most RMNCH interventions, and therefore still facing high child and maternal mortality rates and high fertility rates, are more than twice as large as the case study country in Asia, which has managed to increase coverage of RMNCH interventions and reduce fertility rates to less than 2.5. The country case studies confirm the importance of investing in family planning; the effect of the demographic dividend is substantial even when the investment reduces the TFR by a small amount.

Similarly, we present results for China and India separately, given the size of their populations and economies. Given current low birth rates in China, no significant economic benefits are to be derived from increasing the availability of family planning. This is not to argue that significant benefits could not be bought by increasing the quality of current programs and ensuring their responsiveness to population needs (Kane and Choi 1999). In India, our model estimates high economic benefits from increasing the contraceptive prevalence rate to respond to the unmet need.

**High Rates of Return for a Comprehensive Approach, Including Family Planning**

Fourth, investment in each of the elements in the continuum of care matters. The analysis finds that family planning programs generate particularly high returns, especially in countries with current high fertility rates, primarily through its effect on the demographic dividend. We have not separated out the rate of return on investment in maternal versus child health because the analysis deals with investing across the full spectrum of RMNCH; however, we note that there may be specifically high returns on investment in maternal care for adolescents, given that adolescent pregnancies pose a much higher risk for both mother and newborn compared with pregnancies among women of older age groups (Patton and others 2009; WHO 2008, 2011).

**Returns on Investment Vary over Time**

Fifth, the different types of interventions often generate benefits in different time frames, so that the rate of return varies over time. Returns increase substantially over time, particularly beyond the investment period of 2013–35. For example, at a discount rate of 3 percent, the benefit-cost ratio for the full sample of 74 countries is about four times larger in 2070 (34.2) as in 2035 (8.7). Although policy makers often make decisions in much shorter time horizons, it is nevertheless important to note that returns are realized well beyond the investment period.

**An Extended Modeling Approach**

Finally, on a methodological note, the overall economic and social benefits are driven by the demographic dividend generated by the investment. For example, in 2050 the demographic dividend accounts for 48.3 percent of the benefit-cost ratio (for the 74 countries). Workforce-related benefits and social benefits account for about 25 percent each. The relative share of morbidity-averted benefits compared with lives saved benefits is low because only a few sources of morbidity are included in the model, and the gains in morbidity are adjusted for the degree of disability averted. For LICs, the social benefits predominate because these are valued using the average GDP per capita of all countries; the workforce-related benefits are valued using country GDP per person in the workforce.

**CONCLUSIONS**

The analysis extends the full income approach to include estimates of economic and social benefits from morbidity averted and estimates of the effect of the demographic dividend, thereby providing a more comprehensive picture of the returns on investment in RMNCH interventions.

The analysis is limited to the health sector and does not include all sexual and reproductive health interventions; notably, surgical care is omitted because of a lack of data to enable us to model related costs and impacts. Estimates do not take into account costs and returns of some interventions that contribute to improving RMNCH outcomes, such as water supply, sanitation and hygiene, girls’ education, empowerment of women and girls, and food fortification. Moreover, it should be acknowledged that the high returns calculated here are dependent on those investments being made, for example, in the education sector, to empower women with greater decision-making authority in relation to planning family size. To realize high returns, countries need to consider effective multisectoral policies to deliver public goods associated with family planning and maternal and reproductive health, including for adolescents.

Despite these limitations, the results underscore the value of addressing remaining gaps. RMNCH concerns should feature prominently in the post-2015 landscape, for example, in the Sustainable Development Goals that are to supersede the MDGs. The development of models focused more strongly on the morbidity
elements of maternal and child health, and the evolution of that morbidity over time, is an important topic for future research. Further work should also consider nonhealth interventions, including activities that affect social determinants of health.

NOTES

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:
  - lower-middle-income (LMICs) = US$1,046 to US$4,125
  - upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126 to US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

1. Of the 75 countries accounting for more than 95 percent of global maternal and child mortality, data limitations prevented inclusion of South Sudan in the analysis.
2. The original analysis also includes an intermediate Medium scenario.
3. The methods by which this is done are discussed in Stenberg and others (2014).
4. For assumptions on participation rates and labor market productivity of women and children upon entering the labor force, see Stenberg and others (2014).
5. For reviews see Viscusi and Aldy (2003); Jamison and others (2012); and Cropper and others (2011).
6. For more details, see Stenberg and others (2014).
7. For a recent review, see Canning and Schultz (2012).
8. In subsequent work it would be appropriate to take account of the specific characteristics, especially of the population structure, of each country.
9. Per capita costs in 2035 for the High versus Low, refer to the difference between the estimated costs in the High and in the Low scenarios in 2035, divided by the population in the High scenario in 2035.

REFERENCES


INTRODUCTION

Substantial efforts and investment have been made in global reproductive, maternal, newborn, and child health (RMNCH) since 2000. The Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) have been one focus for efforts. The establishment of international funds—such as the Global Alliance for Vaccines and Immunization (Gavi, founded in 2000); and smaller foundations, such as the Clinton Health Access Initiative founded in 2007; the Children’s Investment Fund Foundation, which made its first significant investments in 2009; and the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, founded in 1997—has brought new resources as well as an emphasis on value for money.

The amount of funding has been significant. In 1990, the members of the Development Assistance Committee of the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development provided an estimated US$5.6 billion for international health assistance (Ravishankar and others 2009). In 2011, this amount had grown to US$27.7 billion (Leach-Kemon and others 2012). Part of the increase was due to spending for human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (HIV/AIDS) (US$7.7 billion), but the increase in other areas was also substantial: RMNCH was the second largest component (US$6.1 billion) (IHME 2014).

The increase in resources and the growing interest in results combined to greatly increase the number of economic analyses of maternal and child health interventions. This chapter summarizes the findings of a systematic search of the cost-effectiveness literature on RMNCH, which builds on previous work, including several chapters in Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries, second edition (Jamison and others 2006), as well as other systematic surveys and reviews on specific topics. The chapter’s focus is on the cost-effectiveness of interventions; one section summarizes the findings on cost, building on a longer systematic search on unit cost (Levin and Brouwer 2014).

The studies identified in this chapter do not cover all of the interventions that affect maternal and child health. Some are covered in other volumes in this series (see table 17.1). The literature also has biases. Studies tend to concentrate on areas of current policy interest; for example, the literature on vaccines concentrates disproportionately on new vaccines—particularly those for pneumococcus and rotavirus, but also hepatitis B and Haemophilus influenzae B (HiB)—and not on older interventions known to be cost-effective, such as the original Expanded Program of Immunization (EPI) vaccines. Ideally, when resources are allocated across interventions, the full range would be considered. Funding could potentially be reallocated.
We undertook a systematic survey of the literature beginning in 2000 on the cost-effectiveness of interventions for RMNCH, detailed in Horton and others (2015). The studies discussed here are primarily those measured as cost per discounted disability-adjusted life year (DALY) averted, the most commonly considered outcome, but we also provide figures showing results for deaths averted. Studies using cost per quality-adjusted life year (QALY) saved and life-year saved (LYS) are included in the working paper (Horton and others 2015), as are studies using other outcomes, for example, per patient correctly treated. For studies that express outcomes in life-years or deaths, we have in some cases made an approximate conversion to DALYs, where one life-year is approximately 0.5 DALY for a newborn in low-income countries (LICs). Similarly the conversion from deaths to DALYs assumes that a newborn life is approximately 32 DALYs (a life expectancy of about 60 years, discounted at 3 percent). The flow charts for the searches on cost-effectiveness and cost are presented in Horton and others (2015).

In all, 222 articles were identified; of these, 21 covered reproductive care, 26 maternal and newborn morbidity, 10 febrile conditions, 10 diarrheal diseases, 131 vaccines, 3 community management of severe acute malnutrition, and infant and child growth. Seven articles covered more than one category, and 104 included DALYs as one of the outcome measures. We benefited from several recent systematic reviews, including Gyles and others (2012); Mangham-Jefferies and others (2014); Ozawa and others (2012); and White and others (2011). All studies were read by two reviewers to extract the cost-effectiveness data; one reviewer graded the article quality using the Drummond Checklist (Drummond and others 2011). All studies were read by two reviewers to extract the cost-effectiveness data; one reviewer graded the article quality using the Drummond Checklist (Drummond and others 2011); grades are presented in Horton and others (2015). In some cases we augmented systematic reviews with additional searches. For vaccines (Ozawa and others 2012), we added literature from 2010 onward for HiB, meningitis, pneumococcal, rotavirus, and syncytial virus. Small, focused searches in PubMed only were undertaken to find additional studies on meningitis, yellow fever, and rubella, which are not covered in Ozawa’s review; however, no studies for these conditions report results in DALYs.

Cost-effectiveness data were converted to 2012 U.S. dollars using the original study country currency and consumer price index (World Bank 2013). Several studies provided multiple cost-effectiveness estimates for different interventions. This chapter discusses those that provided an incremental cost-effectiveness ratio compared with a clear alternative. Cost-effectiveness data from more complex interventions, for example, switching from fortification to supplementation combined

Table 17.1 Interventions Covered in This Chapter: Topics Covered in Other Volumes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topics covered in this volume</th>
<th>Topics covered in other volumes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reproductive health: Family planning, safe abortion, intimate partner violence</td>
<td>Adult male circumcision in volume 6 (HIV/AIDS, STIs, Tuberculosis, and Malaria)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maternal and child mortality: Antenatal, intrapartum, and postpartum care; care of newborns</td>
<td>Intrapartum care also covered in volume 1 (Essential Surgery)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Febrile child: Diagnosis and treatment of malaria and pneumonia</td>
<td>Prevention of malaria covered in volume 6 (HIV/AIDS, STIs, Tuberculosis, and Malaria)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarrheal diseases: Treatment of diarrhea; brief review of interventions to prevent diarrhea, including water and sanitation</td>
<td>Water and sanitation also covered in volume 7 (Injury Prevention and Environmental Health)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaccines: 16 conditions (BCG, DPT, polio, measles, hepatitis B, Haemophilus influenzae B [HiB], Japanese encephalitis, meningitis A, yellow fever, pneumococcus, rubella, rotavirus, typhoid, and cholera)</td>
<td>HPV covered in volume 3 (Cancer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrition: Management of severe acute malnutrition, and infant and child growth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platforms for health care and public health interventions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: BCG = Bacillus Calmette–Guérin; DPT = diphtheria, pertussis, and tetanus; HIV/AIDS = human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (HIV/AIDS); HPV = human papillomavirus; STIs = sexually transmitted infections.

from old but cost-ineffective interventions to promising new ones, or coverage of older and very cost-effective interventions could be completed before new ones that are less cost-effective are incorporated.

The next section discusses the methods used for the search and analysis of the literature. The findings are then organized according to the sequence of chapters in this volume:

- Reproductive health (chapter 6)
- Maternal and newborn child morbidity and mortality (chapter 7)
- Febrile conditions (chapter 8)
- Diarrheal disease (chapter 9)
- Vaccines (chapter 10)
- Treatment of severe acute malnutrition (chapter 11)
- Infant and young child growth (chapter 12)
- Platforms for the delivery of interventions (chapters 14 and 15).

Following a discussion of the literature on the cost and affordability of interventions, we provide conclusions. Throughout the chapter, unless otherwise specified, costs and cost-effectiveness are converted to 2012 U.S. dollars.
with another package of interventions, are not summarized here but are listed in Horton and others (2015).

The cost-effectiveness results measured in DALYs are summarized in figure 17.1; figure 17.2 provides similar results for deaths averted. The studies used to generate the figures are cited in tables 3 and 4, respectively, in Horton and others (2015). To interpret the results, a useful yardstick comes from the WHO (2001), which suggests that interventions costing less than per capita gross national income (GNI) per DALY averted can be termed “very cost-effective,” and those costing less than three times per capita GNI can be termed “cost-effective.” In 2012, according to the World Bank’s World Development Indicators (World Bank 2013), only one country had a GNI per capita of less than US$320, and LICs’ GNI per capita was up to and including US$1,035. Thus, all interventions costing less than US$320 per DALY averted are “very cost-effective” in all countries but one, and those costing less than about US$1,000 per DALY averted are cost-effective in LICs, and very cost-effective in middle-income countries.

REPRODUCTIVE HEALTH

Economic studies of family planning preceded those of health, just as international assistance and lending for family planning preceded that for health; the cost-effectiveness of modern contraceptives is well established. Only two surveys were identified on the cost-effectiveness of modern contraception using DALYs (Babigumira and others 2012; Seamans and Harner-Jay 2007); both indicate that contraceptives are very cost-effective in all countries as measured by the benefits to mothers’ and children’s health. Other studies were identified in which the outcome (couple-year of protection) is specific to contraception; these are discussed in chapter 6 of this volume (Stover and others 2016).

Safe abortion is cost saving compared with unsafe abortion, which leads to adverse health outcomes for mothers as demonstrated by Hu and others (2010) for Ghana and Nigeria; other studies with outcomes such as maternal lives saved are summarized in Horton and others (2015). Safe abortion remains an issue for policy; safe abortion methods are not available in all low- and middle-income countries (LMICs), and the availability of new methods, such as medical abortion, increases the options.

Only one economic study was found on intimate partner violence (Jan and others 2010); this study examines a microfinance initiative combined with gender training in South Africa. Although the cost-effectiveness was less than the per capita GNI for South Africa and thereby “very cost-effective” for that country, the cost of US$2,908 per DALY averted is at the higher end compared with other interventions in this chapter.

MATERNAL AND NEWBORN MORBIDITY AND MORTALITY

Expanding access to existing essential and cost-effective interventions for maternal and newborn care, while also focusing on impact, costs, and affordability, has been a priority for reaching MDG 4 (reduce child mortality) and MDG 5 (improve maternal health) (Bhutta and others 2014). Several new interventions have also become available, and efforts to deliver interventions more inexpensively and to encourage uptake have been undertaken. Goldie and others (2010) model an “expansion path” of interventions, suggesting that starting with family planning and safe abortion is the most cost-effective first step, followed by increasing the availability of skilled birth attendants, then improving antenatal and postpartum care. Shifting births to facilities comes next, and finally increasing referral for complicated cases and providing transport. The study by Goldie and others (2010) was restricted to India, but the findings are confirmed by the studies identified for this chapter.

A few innovations studied used new modest-cost health inputs and have costs per DALY averted in the range of US$20 to US$100, for example, skin emollients to help keep small newborns warm (Lefevre and others 2010), single-use injection devices for oxytocin delivery during labor (Tsu and others 2009), and clean delivery kits for in-home births (Sabin and others 2012). However, the total amount of DALYs averted by these methods are modest. Several studies (Borghi and others 2005; Fottrell and others 2013; Lewycka and others 2013; Tripathy and others 2010) look at the cost-effectiveness of participatory women’s groups on health outcomes; cost per DALY averted ranges from US$150 to US$1,000. Training initiatives for village health workers and midwives have a similar range of costs per DALY averted (Lefevre and others 2013).

Safe motherhood initiatives (a package combining antenatal and postpartum care with trained birth attendants, potentially in a health facility) in various countries fall in the same range of US$150 to US$1,000 per DALY averted (Carvalho, Salehi, and Goldie 2013 for Afghanistan; Erim, Resch, and Goldie 2012 for Nigeria; Goldie and others 2010 for India; Hu and others 2007 for Mexico). Cesarean sections for obstructed labor have a wider range, from US$200 to US$4,000 per DALY averted, depending on the country, with a median of US$400 (Alkire and others 2012)
Bhutta and others (2014) undertake a more ambitious estimate of the cost-effectiveness of a package involving scaling up effective interventions in the 75 high-burden Countdown countries; the annual cost of the package would be US$5.65 billion. This investment would reduce maternal and neonatal deaths and prevent stillbirths at a cost of US$1,928 per life saved or US$60 per DALY averted. Bhutta and others (2014) estimate that 82 percent of the effect in lives saved would be from facility-based care.
UNDER-FIVE ILLNESS

Febrile Conditions

The most recent cost-effectiveness estimates for the treatment of pneumonia are from the second edition of Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries (Simoes and others 2006), and suggest that cost-effectiveness is US$516 per DALY averted in LMICs overall (US$342 per DALY averted in South Asia and US$282 per DALY averted in Sub-Saharan Africa). These costs are averaged across nonsevere cases treated in communities or local facilities along with severe and very severe cases treated in hospitals.

A significant amount of work has been done on malaria in the past decade, alongside policy efforts such as the Roll Back Malaria Partnership. Recent studies suggest that treatment of severe malaria with artesunate is very cost-effective, even in LICs. White and others (2011) identify four studies of treatment of severe malaria using artesunate. Lubell and others (2009) estimate the cost-effectiveness of artesunate compared with quinine as US$14 per DALY averted, pooling results for four countries in Sub-Saharan Africa; in pooled results for four countries in the WHO regions of South Asia and Southeast Asia, the cost-effectiveness is US$152 per DALY averted. Buchanan and others (2010) and Tozan and others (2010) examine the cost-effectiveness of presumptive treatment in the community with rectal artesunate for severe malaria in Sub-Saharan Africa. Cost-effectiveness is US$20 per DALY averted compared with no treatment (Buchanan and others 2010), and US$122 to US$1,855 per DALY averted compared with parenteral treatment (Tozan and others 2010). Nonvignon and others (2012) examine the cost-effectiveness of presumptive community-based treatment of malaria, using an artemisin combination therapy compared to standard care; standard care is a combination of treatment at health facilities, purchase of antimalarials at a pharmacy, and other types of treatment. They estimate the cost per DALY averted compared to standard care to be US$93.

In contrast, the literature suggests that rapid diagnostic tests (RDTs) for malaria are not generally very cost-effective in program settings. However, where
microscopy is poorly done, RDTs become more cost-effective. Microscopy has been considered the gold standard for the diagnosis of malaria, but it is not always feasible in low-resource environments. If not well done, it can lead to a relatively high rate of misdiagnosis, and can entail long waits for treatment, depending on the capacity for reading slides. In areas without microscopy, presumptive diagnosis has been used. Clinicians use their expert knowledge to determine whether a patient presenting with fever has malaria or another infection and treat accordingly. Thus, RDTs are potentially more cost-effective where *P. falciparum* predominates and the more effective but more costly artemisinin combination drugs are being used. RDTs are also cost-effective where transmission rates are low because presumptive treatment involves overuse of antimalarials and, possibly, delays antibiotic treatment if the underlying infection is bacterial rather than malarial (Ansa and others 2013; Babigumira and Gelband, forthcoming; Lemma and others 2011; Rolland and others 2006). RDTs and microscopy both perform more favorably if clinicians are more likely to use the results of the diagnosis in their prescription behavior, that is, if they only prescribe antimalarials if the test indicates malaria is the likely diagnosis, and only prescribe antibiotics if malaria is not the likely diagnosis (Yukich and others 2010). Two studies with outcomes measured in cost per deaths averted (Chanda, Castillo-Riquelme, and Masiye 2009; Uzochukwu and others 2009) suggest that RDTs do not rank as particularly cost-effective in program settings because clinicians apparently do not always prescribe according to test results. Chapter 8 in this volume (Hamer and others 2016) discusses some of these issues in more detail and cites other studies that did not fit the inclusion criteria here.

**Diarrheal Disease**

New developments for diarrheal disease since 2000 include the use of zinc as adjunct therapy in combination with oral rehydration solution (ORS), a substantial decrease in the cost of rotavirus vaccine, and additional research separating the cost-effectiveness of water supply from that of sanitation.

The most cost-effective interventions for diarrhea, based on cost per DALY averted, are prophylactic zinc supplementation as an adjunct to ORS (US$10 to US$50 per DALY averted), ORS (US$150 per DALY averted), rotavirus vaccine (US$100 per DALY averted at the Gavi price in LICs), and household-level water treatment in rural areas using chlorination or solar disinfection (US$180 to US$200 per DALY averted) (figure 17.1). The next most cost-effective group includes rural sanitation; piped water; and in selected countries, cholera vaccine (US$2,000 per DALY averted). Urban sanitation and cholera vaccine in lower mortality countries can cost US$3,000 or more per DALY averted.

The systematic search identified only one recent study of behavior change. Behavior change interventions tend to have heterogeneous results, and some are not effective (let alone cost-effective), but the one identified—a handwashing education intervention in Burkina Faso (Borghi and others 2002)—falls into the very cost-effective group (US$88 per DALY averted). It is quite possible that well-designed behavior change interventions to increase the use of clean water, of latrines where available, of ORS, of prophylactic zinc, and of vaccines could all be cost-effective.

Most studies estimate the cost-effectiveness of adding a single intervention to “usual care.” If interventions are added in combination, the incremental cost-effectiveness of each additional individual intervention can decline. Fischer Walker and others (2011) estimate the combined effect of 10 interventions designed to reduce diarrhea in 68 countries with high child mortality, using the Lives Saved Tool (LiST). Two scenarios are modeled: an ambitious strategy designed to reach MDG 4 goals; and a universal strategy designed to bring coverage of many interventions to 90 percent or more, and water, sanitation, and handwashing interventions to 55 percent or more. Both strategies are scaled up from current coverage to the target over five years.

The ambitious strategy saves 3.8 million lives during a five-year period, at a cost of US$49.2 billion, which is US$12,847 per death averted or approximately US$405 per DALY averted in 2008 U.S. dollars. The universal strategy saves 5 million lives at a cost of US$19,460 per death averted, approximately US$608 per DALY averted in 2008 U.S. dollars. Although $608 per DALY averted certainly falls in the cost-effective or very cost-effective range for most countries, affordability remains problematic. The water and sanitation component is the main issue, accounting for 84 percent of the cost of the ambitious package and 87 percent of the universal one.

**Vaccines**

Vaccines rank among the most cost-effective health interventions because of their life-saving potential. The original EPI-6 vaccines (against tuberculosis, diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis, measles, and polio) are very cost-effective (less than $100 per DALY averted), although no studies on the basic six antigens that typically comprise a national EPI were identified by the systematic search.
One study published after our search examines Vietnam’s national EPI, and estimates that 26,000 deaths were prevented by EPI since 1980, with a cost-effectiveness of about US$1,000 to US$27,000 (in 2010 U.S. dollars) per death averted (based on financial data for that same period) (Jit and others 2015). Since 2000, the focus has been on the introduction of new and underutilized vaccines and those in the pipeline. Of the 57 studies since 2000 using DALYs as an outcome, more than half focus on pneumococcus and rotavirus vaccines. Whether, and how, to adopt these vaccines has been the major LMIC childhood vaccine policy preoccupation of the past decade. Vaccine cost-effectiveness studies are frequently undertaken before governments or donors decide to fund the intervention.

The cost-effectiveness of new childhood vaccines is very much dependent on the price of the vaccine. For well-established vaccines with long-expired patent protection, a clear world market price may exist based on the cost of production. For new vaccines, the price is less clear. The companies that develop new vaccines retain patents but have increasingly been willing to offer differentiated prices to different markets. To take advantage of economies of scale, international organizations (particularly Gavi, but also the United Nations Children’s Fund) have entered into agreements for bulk purchase or have made advance market commitments. Hence, cost-effectiveness studies are often undertaken at a variety of price points to gauge ability to develop a market for different groups of countries. Our summary is undertaken using current prices, which vary between Gavi-eligible countries, recent Gavi graduates, countries covered by the Pan-American Health Organization’s revolving fund, and upper-middle-income countries facing the world market.

Table 10.1 (chapter 10 in this volume [Feikin and others 2016]) summarizes the cost-effectiveness findings in DALYs at current key price points and adds information for meningitis A (Miller and Shahab 2005), and yellow fever (Monath and Nasidi 1993).

Among the new and underutilized vaccines, cost-effectiveness ranges from about US$24 to US$2,500 per DALY averted in low-income settings, depending on the vaccine, geographic setting, income level, and associated price point. Rotavirus and Japanese encephalitis are the most cost-effective at less than US$50 per DALY averted in high-burden, LICs in Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa, followed by pneumococcal vaccines. Some vaccines in LICs have not yet been incorporated into EPI programs because their cost-effectiveness is less favorable, at more than US$1,000 per DALY averted. These vaccines include cholera and typhoid, which may meet the WHO’s cost-effective criterion, but only in countries of high endemicity. However, these vaccines are planned for rollout by Gavi and its partners before 2020, assuming prices come down or effectiveness goes up (or both).

Cost-effectiveness ratios increase with country income per capita, but the general ranking of what is considered cost-effective stays the same. In lower-middle-income countries, hepatitis B, HiB, and rotavirus vaccines range between US$60 and US$350 per DALY averted and are among the most cost-effective. Rubella, pneumococcal, and polio vaccines are between US$1,000 and US$3,000 per DALY averted.

The estimates of cost per DALY averted for yellow fever and meningitis fall between US$100 and US$1,040 (converting from deaths prevented in children). For the rubella vaccine, the only study from LMICs (from the English-speaking Caribbean) reports that the vaccination is cost saving (Irons and others 2000). Other vaccines, such as meningitis A and yellow fever in selected countries that are being considered for EPI expansion, are typically between US$100 and US$200 per DALY averted or at least below US$500 in LICs (Miller and Shahab 2005). Cost-effectiveness of even newer vaccines, for example, malaria and respiratory syncytial virus, is more speculative, given that the effectiveness is still being investigated and price points are unknown.

Eradication through immunization—although costly in the short and medium terms—may be cost saving in the long term by eliminating the need for vaccination; smallpox is the best example. Polio eradication is potentially cost saving in the long term, but it requires a switch from oral polio vaccine (OPV) to the inactivated polio vaccine to prevent outbreaks from vaccine-derived polioviruses. However, the inactivated polio vaccine is 20 or more times more costly than OPV (Duintjer Tebbens and others 2010) and correspondingly less cost-effective and less affordable in the short term. Measles eradication is also potentially cost saving (Bishai and others 2010), but the second measles immunization needed to approach eradication has to be given outside of the traditional EPI schedule and hence incurs additional delivery cost. This delivery schedule also affects rubella because measles and rubella vaccines are typically delivered together.

A systematic review of studies of interventions to affect the demand side of vaccine uptake (Shea, Andersson, and Henry 2009) finds that the literature was of variable quality, with only two randomized controlled trials. Some of the interventions, such as mass media campaigns, do not lend themselves to randomized controlled trials. The review concludes that mass media campaigns might be effective, but their effectiveness depends on the context.
Incentives to households might help. Other interventions have been tried, such as conditional cash transfers and use of text message reminders, but no results on cost-effectiveness of these methods were found.

NUTRITION

Interventions for Severe Acute Malnutrition

Community management of SAM is attractive from a cost-effectiveness perspective, ranging from US$26 to US$39 per DALY averted across three studies. This finding is driven in part by the high probability, as high as 20 percent, that children will die if not treated. Initially, programs cost as much as US$200 per child for a four-month course of treatment; however, during the past decade or so the cost has declined by at least a third, with greater program efficiency. Experience suggests that substituting cheaper ready-to-use therapeutic food for proprietary ones does not lead to outcomes that are quite as good, although it may lower costs. All three studies examined in this section used Plumpy’Nut, a popular ready-to-use therapeutic food.

Interventions for Infant and Young Child Growth

The majority (14) of the studies of nutrition for the general population focus on micronutrient interventions, 1 on nutrition education, 1 on the effects of scaling up a comprehensive package of nutrition intervention, and 1 on outcomes other than nutrition. No new studies of cost-effectiveness were identified for breastfeeding.

Nutrition interventions are associated with impacts on multiple outcomes of importance. Some nutrition interventions reduce morbidity and save lives in the more malnourished populations. In these cases, the outcomes can be measured using cost-effectiveness methods, such as deaths averted, LYS, QALYs saved, or DALYs averted. In other cases, nutrition is associated with impacts on cognitive improvements, and these benefits are better measured using benefit-cost ratios because benefits can be measured in financial units (higher wages).

From the literature search, five studies for folic acid, iron, and iodine interventions all had very favorable benefit-cost ratios (Horton, Alderman, and Rivera 2008; Horton and Ross 2003, 2006; Sayed and others 2008; Sharieff, Horton, and Zlotkin 2006; Sharieff and others 2008). Hoddinott and others (2013) undertake a benefit-cost analysis for a comprehensive set of nutrition interventions. These studies cannot be compared with those using DALY outcomes without assigning a dollar value to DALYs, a task that involves judgments about the value of human life.

As in previous studies (Hoddinott, Rosegrant, and Torero 2012; Horton, Alderman, and Rivera 2008), micronutrient interventions remain very cost-effective (typically less than US$100 per DALY averted, and often less than US$50 per DALY averted), with some variation. Interventions are often more cost-effective in LICs with more widespread deficiencies; for example, the cost per DALY averted is lower in South Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa than in China. Fortification is more cost-effective than supplementation for micronutrients where deficiencies are widely spread throughout the population and the micronutrient is relatively cheap, for example, iron; the opposite is true for micronutrients that are relatively more expensive, and where the benefits are concentrated particularly in vulnerable groups, for example, vitamin A. Biofortification appears to be very cost-effective, with some estimates in the US$0 to US$20 range. However, the biofortification estimates for staple food crops, such as rice, were early stage projections, and it remains to be proven whether these optimistic projections can be realized. There has been more success to date for more minor crops (orange-flesh sweet potato, beans, and vitamin A–rich cassava), although iron-rich rice and wheat seeds are now beginning to be disseminated to farmers (Harvest Plus 2013).

The only intervention identified for nutrition education (Waters and others 2006) costs slightly more than US$100 per DALY averted; this was a modest-cost intervention (US$6 per child in 2001 U.S. dollars). Estimated costs per DALY averted for earlier, more elaborate interventions were at least two to three times higher than the single case here.

Another innovation since 2000 has been the evaluation of packages of nutritional interventions. When interventions are combined, the cost-effectiveness of each individual component tends to become less attractive. Either vitamin A supplements or measles immunization can save lives, but the combined effect of both vitamin A supplements and measles immunization saves fewer lives than the sum of the two individually. Bhutta, Das, Rivzi, and others (2013) estimate that the cost per DALY averted of three components of a comprehensive nutrition intervention—micronutrients, nutrition education with selected supplements regarding infant and young child feeding, and SAM management—ranges from US$240 to US$340 per DALY averted; this cost per DALY averted is three to five times higher than the cost per DALY averted of the components introduced individually. Hoddinott and others (2013) use the same intervention package and estimate that the median benefit-cost ratio is 35 to 1 for a group of 17 LMICs for interventions provided to children.
The cost per DALY averted for nutrition interventions provided to mothers is higher still—more than US$1,100, but still in the cost-effective range for middle-income countries (Bhutta, Das, Rivzi, and others 2013).

PLATFROMS FOR DELIVERY OF INTERVENTIONS

Maternal and child health services can be delivered from a variety of platforms, including the following:

- The household level or through mobile outreach
- The community level
- At health facilities, which range from health posts and community clinics to higher-level facilities such as first-level hospitals.

Service delivery can be combined on any of the platforms if doing so increases cost-effectiveness.

In part, the type of health activity determines the appropriate platform: surgical interventions related to delivery need to be provided at the facility level, whereas immunizations have achieved better coverage in some countries through mobile outreach or community-level delivery. Outreach and community-based strategies that deliver a package of child health interventions, including vitamin A (Fiedler and Chuko 2008); distribute insecticide-treated bednets (Ross and others 2011); provide home-based management of fevers (Nonvignon and others 2012); treat severely acute malnourished children (Puetz and others 2013); and train traditional birth attendants to improve neonatal health (Sabin and others 2012) are cost-effective at less than US$100 per DALY averted (chapter 14 in this volume [Bhutta and Lassi 2016]).

Community health workers (CHWs) have become essential facilitators in delivering outreach and community-based services. They are also critical for linking beneficiaries to health facilities for preventive care and treatment, when essential. Depending on the country, condition, and setting, CHWs play different roles that change with the level of coverage of fixed health facilities and urbanization. For example, outreach workers, by going to households to provide family planning and maternal and child health services in Bangladesh, played an important role in reducing birth rates; but Routh and Khuda (2000) show that in urban Dhaka, the delivery of family planning and maternal and child health services at clinics now become more cost-effective. However, the delivery of vaccinations by community-based workers cost less and achieved greater coverage than outreach by health workers in communities reached by river in the Amazon (San Sebastian and others 2001).

Despite the growing evidence on effectiveness of CHW programs, data on the cost-effectiveness of such programs are still lacking. Cost-effectiveness analyses of CHW programs may pose methodological challenges because they do not capture the full benefits of enhanced equity, increased self-reliance by communities, and contributions to other social benefits and community norms (Lehmann and Sanders 2007).

Task-shifting through the use of lay workers sheds some light on the potential cost reductions and improved cost-effectiveness. Lewin and others (2010) undertake a Cochrane review on effectiveness of lay health workers for selected maternal and child health care interventions (not restricted to LMICs), and conclude that the use of lay health workers could increase vaccine uptake. A systematic review of the cost-effectiveness of vaccination programs delivered by lay health workers in LMICs (Corluka and others 2009) finds insufficient data to allow conclusions to be drawn. Sabin and others (2012) find that training traditional birth attendants in treating birth asphyxia, hypothermia, and sepsis was very cost-effective in situations in which access to facility care was not readily available; but this intervention would not be effective in addressing obstructed labor and deliveries requiring cesarean section. The cost-effectiveness of task-shifting is underresearched for LMICs, and additional studies are needed to strengthen policy guidance.

An emerging area of interest is the integration of services to improve impact and reduce costs. The cost-effectiveness of integrating services while maintaining the effectiveness of individual interventions is a high priority research area, given the investments in individual interventions. Some of the considerable interest in the cost-effectiveness of different delivery platforms has been driven by the literature on vertical services for HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, and malaria that have been successful but where sustainability requires integration of services. Kahn and others (2012), for example, conclude that an integrated service in Kenya that provided HIV testing and early treatment, insecticide-treated nets for malaria prevention, and water filters for diarrhea prevention saved lives and was cost-effective. For some preventive services, there may be trade-offs between cost-effectiveness and coverage. However, campaigns and mobile delivery may be essential to achieve high and equitable levels of coverage in countries with poorer availability of facilities or greater population dispersion. Verguet and others (2013) find that child health campaigns that integrated supplementary immunization activity for measles with vitamin A supplements, deworming medications, and OPVs were more cost-effective than measles supplementary immunization activity alone.
Bartlett and others (2014) use the LiST to model the effect of scaling up an integrated midwifery, obstetrics, and family planning intervention in 58 LMICs. They conclude that scaling up any of the three individually is attractive in cost per death averted, but that scaling up midwifery combined with family planning costs half as much per death averted as scaling up obstetrics combined with family planning; the lowest cost per death averted occurs when all three are scaled up together. Midwifery saves lives across the continuum of prepregnancy, prenatal, delivery, and neonatal care; obstetrical care has a strong effect on mortality during delivery.

The only cost-effectiveness study undertaken for Integrated Management of Childhood Illness finds that mortality was lower in the intervention district than in the control, and the costs were no higher and possibly lower (Armstrong-Schellenberg and others 2004). However, experience was not uniformly positive in other effectiveness trials, and there have been some difficulties scaling up this intervention. No cost-effectiveness studies were identified on the Integrated Management of Neonatal and Child Illness (IMNCI) or integrated community case management. Prinjha and others (2013) note that even though overall health expenditures per case did not increase as IMNCI was implemented, there was an increase from the perspective of the government, which they estimate to be 1 percent to 1.5 percent of the government’s health budget (US$0.61 to US$2.60 per child covered), depending on which field workers implement the program. The additional costs arose because the program was effective, which led to increased utilization as households switched from using private health providers.

COSTS

The country setting, type and level of the facility, severity of the event, and specific treatment offered influence costs. Service delivery platforms that reach large numbers of beneficiaries close to their homes increase the coverage and lower the cost of services. Child health days in Ethiopia, Somalia, and Zambia offer a package of preventive services that cost US$1 to US$2 per child reached; facility-based integrated care offering similar services is closer to US$10 per child treated and may be as high as US$20, as in Brazil (Adam and others 2005; Adam and others 2009; Bryce and others 2005; Fiedler and Chuko 2008; Vijayaraghavan and others 2012). For many interventions, effective and cost-effective interventions exist but suffer from low uptake or coverage. Many of the studies that present specific costs of facility-based programs do not capture the shared health system costs or costs of demand creation to increase access to and use of services.

Information on RMNCH unit costs comes from a large selection of literature published primarily after 2007. The review assessed the quality of cost data found in 146 articles and chose to liberally include unit costs if the data sources and methods were clearly explained (Levin and Brouwer 2014). Unit costs vary substantially across country settings for similar interventions. In addition, a variety of methodological approaches confound the expected variation in costs due to country context and different choices of interventions evaluated. Identifying sources of heterogeneity is challenging because many studies lack detailed information on resource use and how costs were estimated (Crowell and others 2013; Pegurri, Fox-Rushby, and Walker 2004; Shearer, Walker, and Vlassoff 2010; Walker and others 2004).

In some areas in which cost or cost-effectiveness studies have been conducted and published dating back to the 1990s, representative and standardized data on long-running interventions, such as vitamin A or iron capsule supplementation or food-based strategies, is surprisingly lacking despite consistent calls for improved information on the costs and cost-effectiveness of nutrition interventions (Fiedler and Puett 2015; Gyles and others 2012; Morris, Gogill, and Uauy 2008; Ruel 2001; Ruel, Alderman, and the Maternal and Child Nutrition Study Group 2013). Similarly, in the area of family planning, for which effective coverage of modern contraceptive use still lags, little new information is available on country-level costs of scaling up interventions to increase the supply of and demand for services (Singh, Darroch, and Ashford 2014).

In general, average unit costs are relatively low for family planning interventions, antenatal care visits for pregnant women, and normal deliveries at home or at health centers with trained birth attendants. Unit costs tend to increase with the complexity of the service. For example, clinic-based breastfeeding support and prevention of micronutrient deficiencies are inexpensive, compared with home visits and peer counseling to support breastfeeding and optimal child feeding or community-based treatment of SAM. Treatment of febrile illness and diarrheal disease are less expensive per child (US$20 to US$100) than treatment of pneumonia and meningitis, which typically require inpatient admission (US$150 per visit, or US$800 per child treated for pneumonia; US$300 to US$500 for inpatient care). Although the treatment of diarrhea is typically between US$2 and US$20 per visit for outpatient visits, treatment costs can be much higher and more variable when inpatient hospital care is required.

Other interventions for which affordability is an issue, and has likely slowed the rate of scale up, include...
community management of SAM (US$120 per child), and facility-based delivery. Safe motherhood interventions including facility-based delivery are estimated to cost US$1.15 per person in the population, not including the initial investment in new facilities (Bhutta and others 2014). The year for the costing is not specified, so these amounts are assumed to be in 2014 U.S. dollars. Although US$1.15 per person sounds modest, with a crude birth rate of 25–30 per 1,000 population, it amounts to an increased cost per birth of US$33 to US$40, not a small sum in resource-constrained settings.

Similarly, the relatively high cost for water and sanitation has likely hindered scale up. In 2007 the initial investment costs per household for standard urban requirements, namely, water piped to the house and a sewer connection, were estimated to be US$102 and US$120, respectively. For the lowest-cost interventions in a rural area, these costs were still substantial: the lowest-cost clean water supply was US$21 per household for a dug well and US$23 for a borehole. The lowest cost sanitation, a pit latrine, was US$39 per household (all costs from Haller, Hutton, and Bartram [2007] in 2000 U.S. dollars).

An enormous international effort has gone into universalizing coverage of children with the EPI. According to Brenzel (2015), the cost per fully immunized child was US$25 in LICs (higher in higher-income regions) in 2008–11. She estimates that HiB, pneumococcus, and rotavirus will increase this amount to US$45 or more per fully immunized child. This cost may lead to affordability issues, even though these immunizations are cost-effective.

CONCLUSIONS

The large literature surveyed in this chapter suggests that many very cost-effective interventions could be used to address maternal, neonatal, and child health conditions. Simple solutions for newborn health, treatment of febrile illness, immunization against preventable childhood diseases, and micronutrient interventions are among the most cost-effective interventions and are affordable in many settings. Other studies explore how to provide existing interventions using new platforms to increase outreach or decrease cost per person covered, or both. Interventions provided in the community—for example, community management of SAM—may achieve both purposes to differing extent. Task-shifting, such as training lay health workers to provide vaccines, may decrease costs. Training traditional birth attendants in skills for safer deliveries may increase coverage.

The main challenge is to increase coverage of interventions known to be effective and cost-effective. These include many old interventions for which no new cost-effectiveness findings were identified past 2000, as well as new innovations whose cost-effectiveness is assessed in this chapter, such as vaccines for rotavirus and pneumococcus; biofortification of staple crops; RDTs for malaria; new protocols for community management of nutrition and of malaria or severe malaria; and prophylactic zinc for diarrhea. A few studies have focused on how to increase demand for services in settings in which supply is less the issue. Changing people's behavior can be more difficult than identifying ways to supply effective interventions. Some promising findings emerge for women’s groups surveyed in the section on maternal and neonatal conditions. No cost-effectiveness studies were found for mHealth (that is, utilizing mobile phones to improve health), a growth area. Studies on cost-effectiveness of conditional cash transfers designed to enhance uptake of health interventions were not covered in the survey, and few studies provide such information, even though some conditional cash transfer programs have been found to be effective.

Despite the very large number of studies, research gaps persist. More information on cost-effective approaches to integration, task-sharing, and the use of CHWs to deliver community-based services is needed, along with new studies on costs and impacts for demand creation to increase coverage. The volume of studies in this area is so large that a single repository for cost-effectiveness studies for health in LMICs would be useful, along the lines of similar registries for high-income countries, for example, the Tufts Cost-Effectiveness Analysis Registry (https://research.tufts-nemc.org/cear4/Default.aspx) or that maintained at the University of York. Although published systematic reviews and the rise of common standards for grading studies are extremely helpful, the reviews are undertaken in different years and costs are not standardized to a single year. There are plans for a single registry for unit costs for health for LMICs, and a parallel registry of cost-effectiveness studies for health interventions in LMICs would be valuable.

Methodological gaps exist as well. The method for standardizing costs is not uniform, whether done in the currency of the original study or in U.S. dollars. In vaccine studies, the vaccine prices are not adjusted for inflation when cost-effectiveness is adjusted to a different year. Studies done in international dollars for a region (as is the case for a number of WHO-CHOICE studies from the Choosing Interventions that are Cost-Effective project, http://www.who/int/choice/en) could not be updated to dollars of a common year, at the time of writing this chapter, because the WHO has not provided...
a time series for this price index. The resulting limitation is that none of those studies could be included here because they could not be updated to 2012 U.S. dollars. For some interventions, particularly the nutrition ones, benefits include improved quality of life rather than lives saved, and a benefit-cost analysis is a more appropriate methodology than cost-effectiveness. These and other methodological issues are addressed at more length in volume 9 of this series.

A larger unresolved issue is that of the DALY measure itself. More studies surveyed here used the discounted DALY measure than the other main measures—QALY, life-years, or deaths. The recent suggestion by the Institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation (Murray and others 2012) not to discount DALYs is likely to lead to confusion in the literature, with practitioners unsure about whether a particular study uses discounted or undiscounted DALYs. It will also drive a wedge between studies of HICs, where QALYs are discounted on a standard basis, and those of LMICs. Already, the lack of a single outcome measure makes comparisons of interventions more difficult, and this recent methodological advice will exacerbate the difficulties.

An innovation in modeling the cost-effectiveness of integrated interventions has been the use of LiST to estimate the impact and costs of packages of RMNCH interventions (Bartlett and others 2014; Bhutta, Das, Rivzi, and others 2013; Bhutta, Das, Walker, and others 2013; Bhutta and others 2014). The LiST model accounts for the synergies in effects such that lives saved are not double counted. However, the extent to which services can remain effective when management of them becomes more complicated, and when demands increase on the time of community-level personnel, remains to be verified in practice.

Analysis of cost and cost-effectiveness data has been an important tool in progress toward the MDGs and seems likely to continue to be useful with the transition to the Sustainable Development Goals.

NOTES

Susan Horton acknowledges support from the Grand Challenges Grant 0072-03 to the Grantee, the Trustees of the University of Pennsylvania.

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:
  - a) lower-middle-income (LMICs) = US$1,046 to US$4,125
  - b) upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126 to US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

1. Note that the WHO uses the term DALY to mean the loss of a healthy year of life; hence, deaths and DALYs are bad things that health interventions try to avert, whereas life-years and Quality-Adjusted Life Years are good things that health interventions try to save (“Health Statistics and Information Systems: Metrics: Disability-Adjusted Life Year [DALY].” http://www.who.int/healthinfo/global_burden_disease/metrics_daly/en/).

REFERENCES


Cost-Effectiveness of Interventions for Reproductive, Maternal, Neonatal, and Child Health


INTRODUCTION

Each year, 27 percent of the world’s newborn deaths—about 748,000—occur in India according to 2013 estimates (UN IGME 2014). India’s newborn mortality rate (NMR) has declined by nearly 43 percent since 1990. However, this decline has been much slower than the decline in the mortality rate for children under age five years, which has dropped by 58 percent during the same period. Consequently, the share of newborn deaths among all under-five deaths in India has risen from 41 percent in 1990 to 56 percent in 2013, highlighting the relative lack of progress made in newborn survival. Conditions associated with neonates—such as preterm birth complications and sepsis—rank among the top 10 causes of all prematurity mortality in India (CDC 2015). A study in 2005 found that prematurity and low birth weight, infections, birth asphyxia, and birth trauma caused nearly 80 percent of newborn deaths (Bassani and others 2010).

India’s NMR of 29 per 1,000 live births continues to be among the highest in the world,1 underscoring the need for a policy response (UN IGME 2014) (figure 18.1).2 Although antenatal care and other preventive interventions such as encouraging institutional delivery and improving maternal health care access have been implemented, their impact on newborn survival has been minimal (Hollowell and others 2009; Lim and others 2010; Singh and others 2013). Good quality postnatal care may prevent about 67 percent of all newborn deaths (WHO 2012) in India. However, availability of and access to postnatal care remain low. Data from the District Level Household Survey conducted between 2007 and 2008 suggest that only 45 percent of newborns in India underwent a health examination within the first 24 hours (IIPS 2010).

In addition to low levels of access to newborn care in general, large regional and socioeconomic differences in access lead to significant variations in outcomes. The mortality among newborns in India’s rural areas is twice that in urban areas—34 and 17 per 1,000 live births, respectively—with mortality rates substantially exceeding the national average in the poorer and larger states of Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Odisha, Rajasthan, Jammu and Kashmir, and Chhattisgarh (Chand and others 2013).

In this chapter, we examine the health and economic benefits and the cost to the government associated with scaling up a publicly financed home-based neonatal care (HBNC) package in rural India. We consider two intervention scenarios against a baseline of no HBNC:

• In the first scenario, we examine the scaling up of access to HBNC through the current network of

Corresponding author: Ramanan Laxminarayan, Center for Disease Dynamics, Economics & Policy, Washington, DC, ramanan@cddep.org.
accredited social health activists (ASHA)—a group of community health workers (CHWs) that covers 60.1 percent of India’s villages (or roughly 54 percent of the rural population)—to those not presently receiving care. Of rural newborns, 39.8 percent receive some form of home- or facility-based newborn care during the first 10 days of life (IIPS 2010). By extending HBNC within the current network of ASHA workers, 72 percent of the rural newborn population would have access to care either through the HBNC package or their existing home-or facility-based care.

In the second scenario, we analyze a near-universal setting in which access to HBNC—through expansion of the network of CHWs—is extended to 83.4 percent of those not presently receiving care. With this extension, 90 percent of the rural neonate population would have access to the HBNC package or their existing home- or facility-based care.

Box 18.1 provides information on the types of CHWs and the primary health systems in which they operate.

HOME- AND COMMUNITY-BASED NEONATAL CARE IN INDIA

In 2011, the government of India introduced an HBNC package—to be delivered by ASHAs—that includes five or six home visits during the first month after birth for children born at health facilities or at home, respectively (Ministry of Health and Family Welfare 2011). The ASHAs provide essential newborn care, particularly for preterm and low-birth-weight infants; identify illnesses; refer sick infants to health facilities; and provide information to mothers on care practices, such as thermal care and breastfeeding.

In their joint statement, the World Health Organization and the United Nations Children’s Fund recognized the role of home-based care in providing postnatal care to mothers who are unable to access it otherwise because of financial, social, physical, or other barriers (WHO/UNICEF Joint Statement 2009). In a widely cited field trial in the Indian state of Maharashtra, Bang and others (1999) find that an HBNC package—the key components of which included a method of screening high-risk neonates; management of sepsis, low birth weight, and birth asphyxia; and education and training of mothers on newborn care—reduced mortality by more than 60 percent. Kumar and others (2008) also conducted an efficacy trial of a similar community-based prevention package of essential newborn care in Uttar Pradesh. This package comprised birth preparedness, clean delivery and cord care, thermal care including skin-to-skin care, breastfeeding promotion, danger sign recognition, and liquid crystal hypothermia indicators. The authors find mortality reductions of about 54 percent. Similar results in Bangladesh and Pakistan have contributed to the growing body of evidence demonstrating the effectiveness of home-based and community-based care in improving access to postnatal care and curbing newborn deaths in countries with high barriers to institutional care (Baqui and others 2008; Bhutta and others 2008).

Although the home-based care packages in these studies share similarities, they also contain important differences in the number of home visits, kind of training provided to community workers, extent of community mobilization, and quality of the local health infrastructure (community-worker-to-population ratio). These are important considerations that might affect the efficacy of the intervention as it is scaled up to the national level (Gogia and others 2011). We note these differences but still use parameters from various studies (with sensitivity analyses) to assess the potential magnitude of the benefits that can be derived from implementing a home-based package.

PRIORITY-SETTING METHODOLOGIES

Resource allocations are guided by evidence. Cost-effectiveness analysis (CEA) is an extremely useful and widely applied method that identifies interventions that provide the most value for money on the basis of...
cost per disability-adjusted life year (DALY) averted (Brouwer and Koopmanschap 2000; Garber and Phelps 1997; Jamison and others 2006; WHO 2003).

CEAs are relatively simple in application, but do not include the nonhealth benefits of interventions. Adverse health events in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs) are often associated with economic hardship (O’Donnell and others 2008; van Doorslaer and others 2006, 2007; Wagstaff 2008). Households experiencing health shocks may need to finance health care costs through out-of-pocket (OOP) expenditures, which may lead to borrowing or selling of assets, thereby causing impoverishment (Gertler and Gruber 2002; Kruk, Goldmann, and Galea 2009; Wagstaff 2007). Such economic shocks may have a lasting intergenerational effect if they reduce resources available to children (Dillon 2012; Sun and Yao 2010). Free or subsidized health interventions can potentially prevent such economic shocks.

Although the literature on economic impacts of newborn morbidity is limited, several studies have shown that the financial burden of care is significant (Asian Development Bank 2012). Bonu and others (2009) find that 16 percent of households incur catastrophic expenditures of more than 10 percent of annual household consumption for antenatal and postnatal care in India. Complications caused by hemorrhage, sepsis, and dystocia were associated with 15 percent to 34 percent of

Box 18.1

Community Health Workers in India

Structure of India’s health system
India’s primary care network consists of two types of institutions: primary health subcenters and primary health centers. As of March 2014, India had 152,326 primary health subcenters and 25,020 primary health centers (Health Management Information System 2014). Subcenters are established at the rate of one per 5,000 people in most areas, and one per 3,000 people in hilly, tribal, or remote areas.

Types of Community Health Workers
India has three main types of female community health workers (CHWs) supporting child health: accredited social health activists (ASHAs), auxiliary nurse midwives (ANMs), and nutrition workers known as Anganwadi workers.

ASHAs were introduced in 2005 as part of the National Rural Health Mission, to serve a population of 700 in tribal areas and 1,000 in rural villages. An ASHA is typically a woman residing in the village, reporting to the local ANM. Her primary responsibilities are to improve health awareness in the local communities while facilitating the use of health care services (including antenatal and postnatal care and ushering pregnant women to nearby health facilities at the time of delivery). She is also expected to track pregnant women and newborn children from the village. ASHAs are not paid a salary but receive allowances based on tasks performed. The 800,000 ASHAs constitute the largest group of CHWs in the world (Perry and Zulliger 2012) and presently cover about 60 percent of villages in rural India (IIPS 2010).

ANMs are posted at health subcenters and earn monthly salaries as employees of local health departments. They are responsible for providing treatment for basic ailments; antenatal, postnatal, and delivery care; family planning services; and immunization of children (Mavalankar and Vora 2008). Each ANM is typically supported by three to five ASHAs in carrying out these tasks (Sharma, Webster, and Bhattacharyya 2014).

Anganwadi workers were introduced under the Integrated Child Development Scheme of 1975, a large-scale supplementary nutrition program for pregnant women and young children. The Department of Women and Child Development employs them, and their primary focus is on providing supplementary nutrition under the scheme. However, they also provide health education services, immunizations, and health check-ups (Shashidhar 2012).

Although there is considerable overlap in the functions of these three groups of CHWs, this study evaluates the rollout of home-based neonatal care through the ASHA network because they are closest to the communities and most suited to providing home-based care.
total household expenditures in Benin and 5 percent to 8 percent in Ghana (Borghi and others 2003).

Therefore, the impoverishing effects of newborn morbidity should not be ignored; the economic benefits of an intervention need to be incorporated into priority-setting methodologies. Other methodologies, such as cost-consequence analysis and benefit-cost analysis, attempt to incorporate the nonhealth benefits of health interventions; but these approaches are computationally intensive and do not explicitly capture the financial risk protection that interventions provide.

In this study, we apply the method of extended cost-effectiveness analysis (ECEA) to estimate the economic benefits, in addition to health gains, of health interventions (Verguet, Laxminarayan, and Jamison 2014). ECEA has been used to examine the impacts of publicly financed interventions—for example, tuberculosis treatments in India (Verguet, Laxminarayan, and Jamison 2014) and rotavirus vaccinations in India and Ethiopia (Verguet and others 2013)—and thus to measure the distributional consequences of interventions on the health and financial outcomes for a population. Similarly, we measure the health benefits of scaling up the HBNC package in India by the resulting reductions in newborn morbidity and mortality. The economic benefits are measured from the perspective of health systems accounting, that is, the amount of OOP private medical expenditures and associated financial risk that could be averted by the HBNC.

### Data and Methods

We extract information on disease epidemiology from existing studies; table 18.1 presents these input parameters and the interventions in our analysis. The lack of recent disease data presents a significant challenge in generating health and economic estimates that we overcome in two ways.

First, some of the parameters have been revised based on current conditions. For example, a newborn’s risk of suffering from high-risk morbidity, such as sepsis, congenital anomaly, or birth asphyxia, was observed to be 48.2 percent by Bang and others (2001). This risk is likely to have changed significantly since the 1990s; therefore we assume that the baseline probability that a neonate suffers from high-risk morbidity equals 28.3 percent, based on the most recently available neonatal mortality rate of 29.2 per 1,000 live births in India (UN IGME 2014). We continue to use the case fatality rate of 10.3 percent from severe morbidity (Bang and others 1999) on the assumption that the underlying mortality risk after contracting the disease is unlikely to have changed significantly, even with progress in access or improved economic conditions. Furthermore, because of the lack of disease data disaggregated by population subgroups, we make the simplifying assumption that the incidence and mortality rates are the same across all income quintiles.

Second, recognizing the uncertainty surrounding the true morbidity and mortality risks of newborns, we

### Table 18.1 Disease, Treatment, and Newborn Care Package Intervention Parameters for Community Health Worker Analysis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Sensitivity analysis</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disease parameters</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disease: Newborn morbidity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incidence</td>
<td>0.283</td>
<td>0.198–0.369</td>
<td>Based on NMR (UN IGME 2014)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case fatality rate</td>
<td>0.103</td>
<td>0.072–0.134</td>
<td>Bang and others 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Treatment parameters</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment: Intensive care treatment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demand for treatment (%)</td>
<td>75.00</td>
<td>52.50–97.50</td>
<td>Assumed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost of treatment (US$)</td>
<td>108.97</td>
<td>76.28–141.66</td>
<td>Prinja, Manchanda, and others 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intervention parameters</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intervention: Home-based newborn care as defined in Bang and others (2005)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baseline coverage of intervention (%)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>Assumed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baseline coverage of ASHA workers (%)</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>IIPS 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost at 54% coverage (US$)</td>
<td>5.89</td>
<td>4.12–7.66</td>
<td>Prinja, Mazumder, and others 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost at 83% coverage (US$)</td>
<td>6.54</td>
<td>4.58–8.50</td>
<td>Prinja, Mazumder, and others 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk reduction in incidence</td>
<td>0.5035</td>
<td>0.3520–0.6550</td>
<td>Bang and others 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk reduction in mortality</td>
<td>0.540</td>
<td>0.378–0.702</td>
<td>Kumar and others 2008</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: ASHA = accredited social health activist; DLHS = District Level Household Survey; NMR = newborn mortality rate. n.a. = not applicable.
conducted a 100-simulation Latin hypercube sampling sensitivity analysis on these risks and other intervention and cost parameters (table 18.1). Results from the sensitivity analysis are used to produce 95 percent uncertainty ranges for our mean estimates. These ranges are reported in the results in the next section.

**Intervention and Treatment Data**

Parameters with respect to the efficacy of interventions on prevention of newborn morbidity and mortality were obtained from published studies and secondary household survey data in India. According to the District Level Household Survey—3, 39.8 percent of rural newborns receive some form of home- or facility-based newborn care during the first 10 days of life (IIPS 2010). We assumed that the HBNC package in our analysis would be administered to the remaining 60.2 percent of the neonate population without access to care (that is, baseline coverage rate of 0). We scaled up the HBNC package in our model in two scenarios. First, responsibilities of the existing ASHAs (who were available to 54 percent of the neonate population) were extended to include the HBNC. In the second scenario, access to HBNC was extended to 83.4 percent of newborns without care by assuming that more ASHAs would be used. In this scenario, a total of 90 percent of newborns born in rural India would access care either directly through the intervention or through the home- or facility-based care provided in the baseline.

Studies have shown that care packages in Gadchiroli, Maharashtra, and in Shivgarh, Uttar Pradesh, reduced the incidence of severe newborn morbidity and mortality by 50.4 percent and 54.0 percent, respectively (Bang and others 2005; Kumar and others 2008). We assumed these efficacy rates on incidence and mortality for our study, but performed a sensitivity analysis on the parameters to estimate the impact of a wide range of possible levels of intervention effectiveness. Baqui and others (2007) observe a lower efficacy on mortality reduction (34 percent) in Bangladesh of a community-led intervention, which is significant given that the intervention was conducted in India’s geographic neighborhood. Because this effect size falls below the lower limit (37.8 percent) of the efficacy on mortality reduction parameter in our sensitivity analysis, we conducted a separate analysis using an effectiveness rate of 34 percent to report the corresponding reduction in deaths.

Under our intervention scenario, the government bears the full cost of administering or expanding the HBNC program. The cost of this program is derived from the costs of administering the Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses (IMCI) program through CHWs in Faridabad district, examined by Prinja, Mazumder, and others (2013).

Within the current ASHA network, we assumed that the cost of implementing the intervention would approximate the annual per child cost under the IMCI program of US$1.52, in addition to the US$4.37 per neonate incentive provided to each ASHA worker for delivering care, which totals US$5.89.3 Prinja, Mazumder and others (2013) also estimate the incremental costs (including increased time commitments of ASHA workers and additional monitoring time) of expanding coverage of the IMCI program. We assumed that similar costs would be incurred to expand the intervention beyond the current network of ASHA workers. These additional costs of US$0.65 per newborn (including the cost of enlarging the ASHA network), result in a total cost of US$6.54 (2013 dollars) per neonate under this scenario.

Finally, we assumed the demand for newborn intensive treatment to be 75 percent, which means that the parents or guardians of 75 percent of neonates suffering from severe morbidity seek intensive care, if available, with an OOP treatment expenditure of US$108.97 (Prinja, Manchanda, and others 2013). As with other parameters, we considered a wide range of additional demand and cost scenarios in our sensitivity analysis.

**Methods**

Our analysis was conducted on an annual cohort of 10.48 million Indian newborns as of 2013. This cohort size was estimated in two steps. First, based on India’s birth rate of 20.438 per 1,000 and the total rural population of 852 million (World Bank, World Development Indicators),4 we estimated 17.40 million new births in rural India per year. We subtracted the 39.8 percent of rural newborns receiving some form of home- or facility-based care during the first 10 days of life (IIPS 2010) from this birth cohort to obtain the resultant cohort of 10.48 million neonates who do not receive any care each year.

We estimated the incident cases and deaths averted from severe newborn morbidity by the HBNC package under each of the two intervention scenarios, compared with the baseline. Our analysis is similar to the well-known Lives Saved Tool (LiST)—a powerful tool developed to model the impact on children of scaling up health interventions (Steinglass and others 2011). However, our estimates differ from its projections because the LiST is based on the effectiveness of interventions gathered from scientific evidence that is not restricted to a specific country. The ECEA method enables us to estimate the impacts of interventions based...
on the efficacy literature available for the target country. In addition to health outcomes, we estimated economic benefits of the HBNC including incremental OOP expenditures averted and the money-metric value of insurance provided. For simplicity, we only considered OOP expenditures related to treatment expenditure for newborn morbidity. Higher levels of access to HBNC are likely to lower the incidence of morbidity, reducing the need for treatment and associated expenditure.

The money-metric value of insurance is a metric that measures the financial protection provided by the HBNC package. It estimates the risk premium, that is, the amount of money an individual is willing to pay to avoid an ailment. To calculate the value of insurance, we started with a mean per capita gross domestic product (GDP) in India of US$1,489 (in 2013 U.S. dollars) (World Bank World Development Indicators).

We used a constant relative risk aversion utility function of the form \( u(y) = \frac{y^{1-\rho}}{1-\rho} \) with a coefficient of relative risk aversion of \( \rho = 3 \) (McClellan and Skinner 2006). The probability of receiving treatment for a disease is denoted by \( r(y) \), a function of income. Therefore, the expected value of income will be as follows:

\[
E(y) = (1-r)y + r(y-c),
\]

in which \( c \) denotes the OOP cost of treatment. The certainty equivalent of this expected income, denoted by \( y^* \) is as follows:

\[
y^* = u^{-1}[(1-r)u(y) + ru(y-c)]
\]

\[
= [(1-r)y^{1-\rho} + r(y-c)^{1-\rho}]^{1/(1-\rho)}.
\]

The money-metric value of insurance denoted by \( v \) is as follows:

\[
v = E(y) - y^*
\]

\[
= [(1-r)y + r(y-c) -[(1-r)y^{1-\rho} + r(y-c)^{1-\rho}]^{1/(1-\rho)}.
\]

RESULTS

Table 18.2 reports the health and financial consequences of the HBNC package based on the disease and intervention parameters listed in table 18.1. For our study cohort of neonates, we found that if the current network of ASHA workers were utilized with a coverage rate of 54 percent of the population, the corresponding reduction in incidence of morbidity and deaths would be 805,000 (95 percent uncertainty range 477,000 to 1,218,000) and 89,000 (95 percent uncertainty range 44,200 to 149,100), respectively, compared with the baseline. Extending the coverage of the care package in scenario 2 could avert a total of 1.25 million cases (95 percent uncertainty range 750,000 to 1,950,000) of newborn morbidity and 138,000 deaths (95 percent uncertainty range 76,400 to 244,100) compared with the baseline (figure 18.2). Even at a more conservative efficacy rate of 34 percent on mortality based on Baqui and others (2008), we found that the package averts 55,900 deaths (95 percent uncertainty range 34,700 to 85,100) when scaled up to the present ASHA coverage level, and 86,800 deaths (95 percent uncertainty range 49,000 to 130,000) when scaled up in scenario 2.

The financial benefits of the estimated health reductions are significantly large as well. At US$108.97 for newborn intensive care (Prinja, Manchanda, and others 2013), the OOP expenditures averted by the care package amount to US$66 million (95 percent uncertainty range $35 million to $106 million) at the existing ASHA coverage, and US$102 million (95 percent uncertainty range $51 million to $182 million) under intervention scenario 2. At a relative risk aversion coefficient of 3 and income per capita of US$1,489, we estimate that the financial risk protection (value of insurance) afforded by the HBNC package amounts to US$474 (95 percent uncertainty range $222 to $885) per 1,000 births in the cohort within existing ASHA coverage levels, and US$826 (95 percent uncertainty range $351 to $1,626) per 1,000 births when scaled up further in the second intervention scenario.

The financial burden of the newborn care package on the government would amount to US$33 million (95 percent uncertainty range $24 million to $42 million) when the package is rolled out within the present ASHA network, and US$53 million (95 percent uncertainty range $41 million to $66 million) when extended to 83 percent of the population in scenario 2. To put this figure in context, the government allocated US$386.1 million (23.2 billion Indian rupees, assuming US$1 = 60 Indian rupees) for all child health-related programs in fiscal year 2013/14 (CBGA 2013).

The value of this package measured by costs per death averted indicates that it is cost saving under both scenarios (if we include the OOP expenditure averted). Otherwise, if we only consider programmatic costs and ignore OOP costs averted, the first intervention scenario extending the package to current ASHA worker levels costs US$373 per death averted from the baseline; the second scenario costs US$387 per death averted from
DISCUSSION AND CONCLUSION

We assessed the health and financial benefits of expanding access to an HBNC package. Although the health benefits may be of primary importance, the direct and indirect costs of newborn care are also significant (Asian Development Bank 2012). Newborn morbidity poses a significant economic risk for households, and evaluating the financial risk protection benefits of the HBNC package is important.

Incorporating this aspect of financial risk protection and OOP expenditures averted favorably differentiates the ECEA method from other priority-setting tools. For the purpose of this analysis, we assumed that the government bears the full cost of the intervention and expands coverage to either 54 percent or 83 percent of the population that does not have access to care. The total cost to the government under these two intervention scenarios would be $33 million (up to $42 million) and $53 million (up to $66 million), respectively. The HBNC is a new program and the details of its budget allocations are not yet publicly available. However, we can compare the estimated financial requirements of the HBNC with other large-scale maternal and child health programs in India. The Janani Suraksha Yojana (Safe Motherhood Scheme) is one such program. It provides cash incentives to pregnant women for delivering their babies at health facilities (instead of home births). Implemented across the country beginning in 2005, it has led to some modest improvements in newborn and perinatal death rates (Lim and others 2010). However, in comparison with the estimated cost of HBNC, Janani Suraksha Yojana has a much larger budget of more than $300 million per year (Ministry of Health and Family Welfare 2012).

The two intervention scenarios in our analysis reflect some of the options available to the government. The policies can be adapted as needed, for example, by setting a lower threshold for coverage or by paying a percentage of the cost of the intervention. At the given rates of intervention efficacy, this adaptability would help strike a balance between the potential benefits and financial viability for the government.

The health and financial outcome estimates in this analysis illustrate the potential benefits under an ideal policy implementation scenario. The effectiveness of policy depends on more than access to ASHAs. On the demand side, it is essential to change the care-seeking practices and behaviors of mothers. Only 17 percent of pregnant women in rural Uttar Pradesh received at the baseline. These costs suggest that these interventions are “very cost-effective” by the cost-effectiveness threshold of the WHO (WHO 2003).

Table 18.2 Estimates of the Impact of Home-Based Neonatal Care through Community Health Workers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Intervention 1</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>Intervention 2</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>At 54 percent</td>
<td>95 percent uncertainty range</td>
<td>At 83 percent</td>
<td>95 percent uncertainty range</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incidence averted</td>
<td>804,718</td>
<td>476,612–1,217,799</td>
<td>1,246,812</td>
<td>751,155–1,950,785</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deaths averted</td>
<td>89,022</td>
<td>44,199–149,050</td>
<td>138,162</td>
<td>76,358–244,072</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OOP expenses averted (US$ millions)</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>35–106</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>51–182</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost to government (US$ millions)</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>24–42</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>41–66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value of insurance per 1,000 newborn (US$ millions)</td>
<td>474</td>
<td>222–885</td>
<td>826</td>
<td>351–1,626</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: OOP = out-of-pocket.
least one antenatal checkup during their entire period of pregnancy (Baqui and others 2007). Furthermore, only 5 percent of women were informed about thermal care and breastfeeding. These alarming statistics highlight the need to improve health education for mothers and increase incentives to seek proper care through programs like Janani Suraksha Yojana.

In addition to improving the demand for care and changing the practices of mothers, it is important to focus on improving health care delivery channels. The quality of training provided to ASHAs, motivation levels, and remuneration of workers are factors that contribute to the effectiveness of the intervention and influence its uptake among the population (Bang and others 1999). The challenges of delivery were highlighted by a recent situational analysis of the new HBNC program in Uttar Pradesh. The assessment found that ASHAs failed to identify critical signs and did not follow program guidelines. Furthermore, they were misclassifying sickness categories of a staggering 80 percent of newborn children (Das and others 2014).

Based on available evidence on the efficacy of the interventions, our results indicate that expanding the HBNC package within the current network of ASHA workers to 54 percent and further expanding it to 83 percent would significantly prevent newborn morbidity, extend the lives of neonates, and yield significant financial risk protection. Considering that newborn mortality constitutes 71 percent of infant mortality and 56 percent of mortality under age five years in India (UN IGME 2014), the HBNC has tremendous potential to lower NMR in India. Recognizing this potential and its ability to overcome the demand-side barriers to accessing postnatal care at health facilities, HBNC was recommended as the primary strategy for combating NMR by the Eleventh Five-Year Plan of India (2007–12) (Planning Commission of India 2008).

Furthermore, expanding coverage of the HBNC is in complete alignment with the objectives of continuum of care as outlined in India’s Newborn Action Plan (2014)—which aims to reduce preventable newborn deaths and stillbirths. It is also in harmony with the future goals of universal health coverage in India. The 2010 World Health Report (WHO 2010) outlines the need for public financing of health interventions in the developing world to reduce OOP private medical expenditure and protect vulnerable populations from catastrophic health shocks in an equitable way. The report also highlights the need to ensure that interventions are prepaid (through some form of progressive taxation), to enable the poor and the sick to benefit from the implicit subsidy provided to them by rich and healthy population groups through such a mechanism. The Indian Planning Commission’s report on universal health coverage has also emphasized such public financing (High Level Expert Group on Universal Health Coverage 2011).

The following factors circumscribe the conclusions of our study. Because data on HBNC are limited, we have relied on a research study conducted in 1996 for newborn morbidity and efficacy of interventions in a district of India. Although this study is dated and localized, we overcame the uncertainty in these estimates by conducting a rigorous sensitivity analysis. The estimates of this model would be enriched by the availability of geographic or economic segmentation in the data on incidence and mortality to provide an understanding of the distributional consequences of the intervention. As a result of the absence of such data, we were unable to estimate the equity impacts of the HBNC intervention and account for any spatial or economic heterogeneity, such as costs or income, in our results. Furthermore, differences in quality of interventions or factors that could affect behavioral responses to the intervention were not included. A more dynamic model could capture these heterogeneities.

Despite these limitations, our analysis takes an important step toward highlighting the overall magnitude of health and economic benefits provided by the HBNC for the welfare of India’s newborn population. Further research on the role of community worker training and supervision, the health system in which they operate, and community mobilization would lead to a broader understanding about the impacts of home- and community-based interventions in improving newborn survival in a variety of conditions.

NOTES

World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:
  a) lower-middle-income = US$1,046–US$4,125
  b) upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126–US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

1. By comparison, the average NMR among countries in the same economic category as India (lower-middle-income) is 20.7 per 1,000 live births.
2. In 1990, India’s NMR was 51.1 per 1,000 live births, which declined to 29.2 in 2013 (UN IGME 2014).
3. Unless otherwise specified, all cost data in our analysis are in 2013 U.S. dollars.
4. In 2013, 68 percent of India’s total population of 1.252 billion was rural.
5. In a traditional CEA framework, priority setting is based on the health benefits of an intervention, measured by...
the cost per DALY averted. DALYs put greater emphasis on early life by discounting future life years. Therefore, a neonatal care package will avert a very large number of DALYs and be highly cost-effective. However, when the financial benefits of an intervention are considered (as in the ECEA) in a priority-setting analysis, they may shift the policy makers’ focus away from early life to future life years. Although an HBNC will be very attractive on the basis of DALYs, other health interventions may significantly outweigh it based on economic benefits.

6. The Janani Suraksha Yojana is a conditional cash transfer scheme introduced in 2005 to encourage demand for institutional deliveries and provide mothers with incentives to give birth at health facilities.

REFERENCES


Chapter 19

Health Gains and Financial Risk Protection Afforded by Treatment and Prevention of Diarrhea and Pneumonia in Ethiopia: An Extended Cost-Effectiveness Analysis

By Stéphane Verguet, Clint Pecenka, Kjell Arne Johansson, Solomon Tessema Memirie, Ingrid K. Friberg, Julia R. Driessen, and Dean T. Jamison

INTRODUCTION

Universal health coverage (UHC) continues to receive considerable attention from the global health community. UHC was the main topic of the 2010 World Health Report (WHO 2010), the main topic in 2012 issues of The Lancet (2012) and Health Policy and Planning (McIntyre and Mills 2012), and the theme of the Second Global Symposium on Health Systems Research in Beijing in 2012. Margaret Chan, Director-General of the World Health Organization (WHO), stated that “universal health coverage [is] the single most powerful concept that public health has to offer” (Chan 2012). This continued attention led to the 2013 World Health Report, which discusses the role that research can play in answering important questions about UHC (WHO 2013).

Although substantial variation is a hallmark of UHC initiatives, UHC is generally viewed along three dimensions: who is covered, what services are covered, and the proportion of the costs that are covered (WHO 2010). One financing option, universal public finance (UPF), involves the government shouldering the entire cost of specific services, regardless of who receives them. The potential benefits of UPF include improved health outcomes and improved financial risk protection (FRP). However, the evidence available to policy makers is limited with respect to the magnitude and distribution of these benefits.

Extended cost-effectiveness analysis (ECEA) (Verguet, Gauvreau, and others 2015; Verguet and Jamison 2015; Verguet, Laxminarayan, and Jamison 2015; Verguet, Olson, and others 2013; Verguet and others 2013) provides a tool with which to gain a more complete understanding of the health and financial benefits associated with different health policies and interventions. ECEA combines the traditional health system perspective of cost-effectiveness analysis (CEA) with the patient perspective, notably through the quantification of the benefits associated with avoiding medical impoverishment and the assessment of the distributional consequences, that is equity, of policies (Verguet, Laxminarayan, and Jamison 2015). This tool helps policy makers make decisions based on the joint benefits and tradeoffs associated with different policies and interventions, specifically in health gains, FRP and equity benefits.
In 2013 in Ethiopia, about 60,000 children under age five years died as a result of pneumonia or diarrhea, the fifth-highest absolute level worldwide (IVAC 2013). Studies have associated the incidence of both conditions with socioeconomic status (Fekadu, Terefe, and Alemie 2014; Mihrete, Alemie, and Teferra 2014), suggesting that an evaluation of the impact of prevention and treatment services by income quintile would be suitable.

This chapter uses ECEA methods to examine UPF of the prevention and treatment of pneumonia and diarrhea in Ethiopia, with a focus on children under age five years. The combination of prevention and treatment options illustrates health and FRP benefits brought by the different intervention packages available to decision makers. This analysis also examines these benefits by income quintile so that policy makers can better understand how each package affects different segments of the population—a critical element of UHC. A 20 percentage point increase in coverage is modeled. Our purpose is to expose with simplicity the broad implications for policy makers rather than to provide them with definitive estimates, hence the presentation of limited rudimentary sensitivity analyses. After we summarize current child health services in Ethiopia, we outline the methods used in this chapter, which draw from the ECEA methodology (Verguet, Laxminarayan, and Jamison 2015). Then, we present results—both health and financial protection—for the following:

- Pneumonia treatment
- Combined pneumonia treatment and pneumococcal conjugate vaccination (PCV)
- Diarrhea treatment
- Combined diarrhea treatment and rotavirus vaccination.

Finally, we discuss the implications of the findings and conclude.

### CHILD HEALTH AND HEALTH CARE SERVICES IN ETHIOPIA

Ethiopia has made substantial progress in reducing the mortality rate of children under age five years—from 205 deaths per 1,000 live births in 1990 to 68 in 2012 and to 59 in 2015 (You and others 2015)—achieving Millennium Development Goal 4 three years early (UNICEF 2013a, 2013b; UN IGME 2015). Despite this progress, substantial need remains for child health interventions. In 2012, approximately 205,000 Ethiopian children died from preventable causes and treatable diseases before reaching their fifth birthday. Apart from neonatal causes, the two major killers of children in Ethiopia were acute respiratory infections and diarrhea (Liu and others 2012).

The coverage of child health care services remains very low compared with other low- and middle-income countries (LMICs) (WHO 2015). According to Ethiopia’s 2011 Demographic and Health Survey (DHS) (Central Statistical Agency and ICF International 2011), coverage of measles vaccine, pentavalent 3 (third dose of diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus, *Haemophilus influenzae* type b, and hepatitis B vaccines), care-seeking for acute respiratory infection, and care-seeking for diarrhea were 56 percent, 35 percent, 27 percent, and 32 percent, respectively. Inequities in child mortality and access to care between urban and rural dwellers and across wealth quintiles remain large. According to Ethiopia’s 2011 DHS, infant mortality is 29 percent higher in rural areas than in urban areas. The urban-rural difference is even more pronounced for mortality in children under age five years, and up to 37 percent higher in rural areas than in urban areas. Furthermore, wide regional variations are observed in mortality rates in infants and children, with more than a twofold difference, for example, between Addis Ababa and Benishangul-Gumuz in the western part of the country. In addition to the increased risk of diarrheal illnesses and pneumonia among children from the lowest wealth quintile, children from the wealthiest quintiles were considerably more likely to receive care from health facilities or providers (Central Statistical Agency and ICF International 2011).

There are about 12 million children under age five years in Ethiopia (table 19.1) and strong demographic and mortality disparities exist between the different wealth strata of the Ethiopian population (table 19.2). More specifically, strong inequalities in pneumonia- and diarrhea-related deaths can be observed in the country. Using the Lives Saved Tool (LiST), a partial cohort model that projects mortality by age and cause of death using inputs on health status and intervention coverage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age group in years</th>
<th>Population</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0–1</td>
<td>1,230,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>1,220,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2–3</td>
<td>1,200,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3–4</td>
<td>1,190,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4–5</td>
<td>1,180,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>6,020,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

and effectiveness (Winfrey, McKinnon, and Stover 2011), and methods described elsewhere (Amouzou and others 2010), we estimate total under-five deaths due to pneumonia and diarrhea by income group (figure 19.1). Subsequently, we see that such disease-specific mortality rates are about four times higher in the poorest quintile than in the wealthiest quintile.

As in many low-income countries, government per capita spending on health in Ethiopia is very low at about US$15 (WHO 2015). The national health policy strongly emphasizes fulfilling the needs of the underserved rural population, which constitutes 84 percent of the total population. Ensuring health care accessibility for the whole population is one of the main strategic objectives of Ethiopia’s health sector development program IV (2011–15) (Federal Democratic Republic of Ethiopia 2010). The Ministry of Health envisages the health extension program (HEP) as a primary vehicle for delivering critical and basic preventive and curative care to the community (Banteyerga 2011). The HEP is an innovative, community-based program that makes essential health services available at the grassroots level. It proposes a package of basic preventive and curative health services that targets rural households (Banteyerga 2011).

HEP comprises the following four health subprograms, which correspond to the elements of primary health care as defined in the Alma Ata Declaration (WHO 1978):

- Disease prevention
- Family health
- Environmental hygiene and sanitation
- Health education and communication.

Every village with at least 1,000 households—about 5,000 residents—builds a health post. Two female health extension workers (HEWs), who have completed tenth grade, are recruited from the same community and trained in HEP modules for one year; upon completion of their training, they return home as salaried frontline health care staff. The major goals of the HEWs are to provide communities and households with increased knowledge and skills regarding preventable diseases, accessible health services at health posts, and facilitated referrals to health centers and hospitals.

Ample evidence suggests that community health workers can identify, refer, or treat childhood illnesses outside of health facilities (Bang and others 1999; Baqui and others 2009; Bhutta and others 2005; Haines and others 2007). The HEWs have substantial potential to increase coverage of highly cost-effective child survival interventions at the community level. Starting in 2011, the government of Ethiopia took an additional step and allowed the HEWs to provide community case management of childhood pneumonia, malaria, and diarrheal illnesses. The HEP offers an opportunity to scale up child health services in Ethiopia and is expected to narrow the gap between different income quintiles and geographic locations.

Despite the government’s current attempt to provide certain essential services free of charge—including those that relate to family health, communicable disease control, hygiene and environmental sanitation, and health education and communication—34 percent of health expenditure is privately financed as of 2012.
Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health (WHO 2012). This expenditure consists of households’ direct outlays, including gratuities and in-kind payments, for health services.

To prevent deaths from pneumonia and diarrhea, the two biggest killers for those younger than age five years in Ethiopia (Liu and others 2012), preventive and curative interventions must be intensified to reach all segments of the population. Establishing healthy environments to protect children from pneumonia and diarrhea, and increasing access to cost-effective interventions for both prevention and treatment, will greatly reduce mortality rates from those conditions. Although little work has examined the cost-effectiveness of pneumonia and diarrhea interventions in an Ethiopian or other low-income setting (Kim and others 2010; Laxminarayan and others 2006; Rheingans, Atherly, and Anderson 2012; Sinha and others 2007), efficacious rotavirus and PCVs have been licensed (Fischer Walker and Black 2011; Theodoratou, Johnson, and others 2010). Treatment interventions for pneumonia (for example, community case management with antibiotics) and diarrhea (for example, oral rehydration salts) have proven to be effective (Munos, Fischer Walker, and Black 2010; Theodoratou, Al-Jilaihawi, and others 2010). Evidence-based information on the expected health, equity, and FRP outcomes for various diarrhea and pneumonia strategies is crucial for setting priorities. Verguet and others (2013) conducted a preliminary ECEA of public finance of rotavirus vaccination in Ethiopia that points to the substantial health benefits (such as deaths averted) and FRP benefits (such as prevention of medical impoverishment) that would accrue to the poorest socioeconomic groups.

Here we use ECEA methods to evaluate the consequences of UPF on health, equity, and impoverishment for a hypothetical program targeting children under age five years in Ethiopia. This program would consist of four interventions:

- Pneumonia treatment
- Combined pneumonia treatment and PCV
- Diarrhea treatment
- Combined diarrhea treatment and rotavirus vaccination.

We measure program impact along four dimensions: under-five deaths averted, household expenditures averted, FRP afforded, and distributional consequences across the wealth strata of the country population.

**METHODS**

**Extended Cost-Effectiveness Analysis**

ECEA (Verguet, Gauvreau, and others 2015; Verguet and Jamison 2015; Verguet, Laxminarayan, and Jamison 2015; Verguet, Olson, and others 2015; Verguet and others 2013) expands on the standard approach to economic evaluation proposed by CEA, by evaluating aspects of health policies that are important for policy makers. Specifically, in addition to health benefits, ECEA estimates the impact of policies along three dimensions: (1) household out-of-pocket (OOP) expenditures averted by the policy, (2) FRP benefits provided, and (3) distributional consequences (for example, according to socioeconomic status or geographical setting). Thus, this study examines provision of diarrhea and pneumonia interventions within the broader framework of UPF. The broader household financial consequences of publicly financed prevention and treatment interventions could then be analyzed, evaluating their impact on the reduction of household OOP expenditures and FRP. The distributional impact is also considered across income quintiles, highlighting the equity potential of UPF.

**Interventions Analyzed**

**Pneumonia Treatment with Antibiotics**

We assume that current coverage of pneumonia treatment (antibiotics) across all income groups is increased by 20 percentage points (table 19.3). The average baseline coverage of pneumonia treatment was 27 percent before UPF. After UPF, coverage increases, on average, to 47 percent. Health gains as measured by deaths averted are calculated for the increase. We chose a 20 percentage point increase, a rather small increase, to capture a realistic scenario that can be achieved by the Ethiopian health system. The effectiveness of pneumonia treatment also drew on a meta-analysis of studies used for populating LiST; community case management with antibiotics was found to reduce pneumonia-related deaths by 70 percent (Theodoratou, Al-Jilaihawi and others 2010).

**Combined Pneumonia Treatment and Pneumococcal Conjugate Vaccination**

As a complement to the scale-up of pneumonia treatment, we assume that UPF scales up coverage of PCV from 0 percent to 20 percent across income groups (table 19.3). PCV-13 protects against the 13 serotypes (1, 3, 4, 5, 6A, 6B, 7F, 9V, 14, 18C, 19A, 19F, 23F) that are typically associated with invasive diseases like pneumonia, sepsis, and meningitis. These 13 serotypes have been estimated to cause 70 percent of all invasive pneumococcal diseases in Gavi-eligible countries (Johnson and
Table 19.3 Input Parameters Used for Analysis of Pneumonia Treatment and Combined Pneumonia Treatment and Pneumococcal Conjugate Vaccination

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Sources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Epidemiology</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Under-five deaths due to pneumonia in 2011, from poorest to richest (income quintiles 1–5)</td>
<td>10,900; 11,000; 7,900; 6,800; 3,100</td>
<td>Authors’ calculations using LiST based on Amouzou and others 2010; Fischer Walker and others 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of under-five pneumonia deaths attributed to pneumococcal disease</td>
<td>33 percent</td>
<td>Fischer Walker and others 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interventions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibiotic effectiveness</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>Theodoratou, Al-Jilaihawi, and others 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaccine (PCV-13) effectiveness (per three-dose course)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pneumonia (all causes)</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>Theodoratou, Johnson, and others 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pneumonia (pneumococcal)</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>Cutts and others 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Meningitis</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>Hsu and others 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Nonpneumonia nonmeningitis</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>Black and others 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coverage of antibiotics, from poorest to richest (income quintiles 1–5), before UPF</td>
<td>16%; 25%; 22%; 33%; 62%</td>
<td>Central Statistical Agency and ICF International 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coverage of antibiotics, from poorest to richest (income quintiles 1–5), after UPF</td>
<td>36%; 45%; 42%; 53%; 82%</td>
<td>Central Statistical Agency and ICF International 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coverage of vaccine, from poorest to richest (income quintiles 1–5), before UPF</td>
<td>0%; 0%; 0%; 0%; 0%</td>
<td>Central Statistical Agency and ICF International 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coverage of vaccine, from poorest to richest (income quintiles 1–5), after UPF</td>
<td>20%; 20%; 20%; 20%; 20%</td>
<td>Central Statistical Agency and ICF International 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Costs (2011 US$)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospitalization cost for disease$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumonia</td>
<td>$94</td>
<td>Stack and others 2011; WHO-CHOICE 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningitis or nonpneumonia nonmeningitis</td>
<td>$182</td>
<td>Stack and others 2011; WHO-CHOICE 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outpatient clinic visit cost for pneumonia</td>
<td>$45</td>
<td>Stack and others 2011; WHO-CHOICE 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probability of hospitalization, from poorest to richest (income quintiles 1–5)</td>
<td>0.09 for pneumonia cases; 0.75 for meningitis and nonpneumonia nonmeningitis cases</td>
<td>Rudan and others 2004; Central Statistical Agency and ICF International 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probability of outpatient visit, from poorest to richest (income quintiles 1–5)</td>
<td>0.16; 0.25; 0.22; 0.33; 0.62</td>
<td>Central Statistical Agency and ICF International 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumococcal conjugate vaccine price (per vial, 3 doses needed)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base case</td>
<td>$3.5</td>
<td>Gavi 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With Gavi subsidy</td>
<td>$0.2</td>
<td>Griffiths and others 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaccination system cost (per vial, 3 doses needed)</td>
<td>$0.5</td>
<td>Griffiths and others 2009</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We found no studies reporting serotype distribution in Ethiopia. Our estimates of the efficacy of PCV-13 come from clinical trials (Black and others 2000; Cutts and others 2005; Hsu and others 2009) and from a meta-analysis of PCV-9 and PCV-11 used for populating LiST, where all-valent PCV was found to reduce radiologically confirmed pneumonia by 26 percent (Theodoratou, Johnson and others 2010). To estimate pneumococci deaths averted—33 percent of all pneumonia deaths are due to pneumococci (Fischer Walker and others 2013)—the model follows the current Ethiopian birth cohort. Depending on disease-specific mortality (pneumonia, meningitis, non-pneumonia nonmeningitis), we estimated intervention coverage, intervention effectiveness, and reductions in disease-specific deaths in each income group. This static approach does not capture epidemiological changes such as herd immunity and serotype replacement from vaccination, which could be captured more fully in, for example, a dynamic transmission model. However, the extent of such indirect effects on the nonvaccinated population is unclear, leading to their exclusion from this analysis (Weinberger, Malley, and Lipsitch 2011).

Diarrhea Treatment with Oral Rehydration Salts
Oral rehydration salts (ORS) are evaluated as a treatment for diarrhea in this analysis. To determine the number of deaths averted by UPF of ORS, we assume a 20 percentage point increase in treatment-seeking above the level reported for each income quintile in the DHS (Central Statistical Agency and ICF International 2011). We also assume ORS is 93 percent effective in preventing deaths from diarrhea, following estimates based on a systematic review from the Child Health Epidemiology Reference Group (Munos, Fischer Walker, and Black 2010). Deaths averted by income quintile are the product of the baseline number of diarrhea deaths, the increase in treatment coverage, and the effectiveness of treatment.

Combined Diarrhea Treatment and Rotavirus Vaccination
As a complement to the scale up of diarrhea treatment, we assume that UPF scales up rotavirus vaccination from 0 percent to 20 percent coverage across income groups (table 19.4) to mimic coverage achievable by the Ethiopian health system. After determining the baseline number of diarrhea deaths by income quintile, we attribute 27 percent of diarrhea deaths to rotavirus (Fischer Walker and others 2013). This yields the number of rotavirus-attributable deaths by income quintile (table 19.4). Although estimates of vaccine efficacy vary in Sub-Saharan Africa and by strain, we use an effectiveness of 50 percent taken from a meta-analysis (Fischer Walker and Black 2011) and assume it prevented visits to health facilities as well as mortality (Verguet and others 2013). Specifically, to estimate rotavirus deaths averted, the model follows the current Ethiopian birth cohort; rotavirus deaths averted are the product of baseline rotavirus deaths, vaccine coverage, and vaccine effectiveness (Verguet and others 2013). This static approach is unable to capture epidemiological changes such as herd immunity, which has only been documented in a few countries (Buttery and others 2011; Tate and others 2011; Yen and others 2011).

Treatment Expenditures Averted
Household private expenditures averted through UPF of vaccinations are calculated differently than for treatment. Vaccine intervention–related private
Table 19.4 Input Parameters Used for Analysis of Diarrhea Treatment and Combined Diarrhea Treatment and Rotavirus Vaccination

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Sources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Epidemiology</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Under-five deaths due to diarrhea in 2011, from poorest to richest (income quintiles 1–5)</td>
<td>8,100; 7,100; 4,900; 4,100; 1,100</td>
<td>Authors’ calculations using LiST based on Amouzou and others 2010, Fischer Walker and others 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of under-5 diarrhea deaths attributed to rotavirus</td>
<td>27%</td>
<td>Fischer Walker and others 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interventions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORS effectiveness</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>Munos, Fischer Walker, and Black 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotavirus vaccine effectiveness (per two-dose course)</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>Fischer Walker and Black 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coverage of ORS, from poorest to richest (income quintiles 1–5), before UPF</td>
<td>22%; 25%; 35%; 33%; 53%</td>
<td>Central Statistical Agency and ICF International 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coverage of ORS, from poorest to richest (income quintiles 1–5), after UPF</td>
<td>42%; 45%; 55%; 53%; 73%</td>
<td>Central Statistical Agency and ICF International 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coverage of vaccine, from poorest to richest (income quintiles 1–5), before UPF</td>
<td>0%; 0%; 0%; 0%; 0%</td>
<td>Central Statistical Agency and ICF International 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coverage of vaccine, from poorest to richest (income quintiles 1–5), after UPF</td>
<td>20%; 20%; 20%; 20%; 20%</td>
<td>Central Statistical Agency and ICF International 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Costs (2011 US$)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospitalization cost for diarrhea*</td>
<td>$49</td>
<td>Stack and others 2011; WHO-CHOICE 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outpatient clinic visit cost for diarrhea</td>
<td>$9</td>
<td>Stack and others 2011; WHO-CHOICE 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probability of hospitalization for diarrhea, from poorest to richest (income quintiles 1–5)</td>
<td>0.02; 0.02; 0.01; 0.02; 0.01</td>
<td>Authors’ calculations based on Central Statistical Agency [Ethiopia] and ICF International 2011; and Lamberti, Fischer Walker, and Black 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probability of outpatient visit for diarrhea, from poorest to richest (income quintiles 1–5)</td>
<td>0.22; 0.25; 0.35; 0.33; 0.53</td>
<td>Central Statistical Agency and ICF International 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotavirus vaccine price (per vial, two doses needed)</td>
<td>$2.5</td>
<td>Gavi 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With Gavi subsidy</td>
<td>$0.2</td>
<td>Griffiths and others 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaccination system cost (per vial, two doses needed)</td>
<td>$0.5</td>
<td>Griffiths and others 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethiopia’s gross domestic product per capita</td>
<td>$360</td>
<td>World Bank 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethiopia’s Gini index</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>World Bank 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utility function as a function of individual income $y$</td>
<td>$\frac{y^{1-r}}{1-r}$ with $r = 3$</td>
<td>McClellan and Skinner 2006; Verguet, Laxminarayan, and Jamison 2015</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: LiST = Lives Saved Tool; ORS = oral rehydration salts; UPF = universal public finance.

a. Severe infections and hospitalizations were not included.
expenditures averted depend on the number of cases of a specific infection (a subset of total cases), vaccine coverage, vaccine effectiveness, probability of seeking either inpatient or outpatient care in the absence of the vaccine, and cost of inpatient and outpatient care. Details of the methods are given elsewhere (Verguet and others 2013). Before UPF is implemented, households pay at a 34 percent level for inpatient and outpatient care (the remaining 66 percent is covered by the government) (WHO 2012). After UPF is implemented, individuals would pay 0 percent for inpatient and outpatient care, and the government would pay 100 percent of the costs.

**Government Costs**

Government costs due to UPF of the vaccine also differ from those for treatment. Government costs for the vaccine are based on the size of the birth cohort, vaccine coverage, the costs of the vaccine itself, and the associated system costs of delivery. Because the vaccine also averts future government treatment costs, these averted costs are subtracted from the cost of delivering the vaccine to estimate the net costs of the combined treatment-vaccine interventions from the government’s perspective.

Government costs for diarrhea and pneumonia treatment include 66 percent of the costs for inpatient and outpatient care for currently covered households, plus 100 percent of the costs for inpatient and outpatient care for the 20 percentage point increment in coverage.

**Financial Risk Protection**

UPF provides FRP benefits to households by shielding them from the OOP costs and impoverishment-related consequences of the covered health care services. UPF “insures” households against the OOP cost of diarrhea and pneumonia treatment, and in doing so can prevent households from related impoverishment.

Several metrics can be used to quantify the FRP benefits of health policies. One approach is to estimate the amount of households’ OOP expenditures averted by the policy; another is to estimate the number of cases of poverty averted (that is, counting the number of individuals no longer falling under a poverty line or threshold because of substantial OOP medical expenditures). In this study, we use the money-metric value of insurance provided by UPF as the FRP metric (Verguet, Laxminarayan, and Jamison 2015). The money-metric value of insurance metric quantifies “insurance risk premiums”; it reflects risk aversion, in which individuals would prefer the certainty of insurance to the uncertainty or risk of possible OOP expenditures, and hence they are willing to pay a certain amount of money to avoid that risk.

As explained in great detail in Verguet, Laxminarayan, and Jamison (2015), to estimate the FRP (for example, the money-metric value of insurance) to an individual who is provided UPF, we first estimate the individual’s expected income before UPF, depending on treatment coverage and associated costs. We then estimate the individual’s certainty equivalent by assigning individuals utility functions that specify their risk aversion (tables 19.3 and 19.4), which is equivalent to calculating their willingness to pay for insurance against risks of medical expenditures. This certainty equivalent reflects the final income that individuals are willing to accept to make the outcome certain. Finally, we derive a money-metric value of insurance provided (risk premium) as the difference between the expected value of income and the certainty equivalent (Brown and Finkelstein 2008; Finkelstein and McKnight 2008; McClellan and Skinner 2006; Verguet, Laxminarayan, and Jamison 2015). Aggregating the money-metric value of insurance provided using an income distribution in the population (with a proxy based on country gross domestic product per capita and Gini coefficient [Salem and Mount 1974]) yields a dollar value of FRP at the societal level.

All mathematical derivations used are presented in annex 19A. All calculations are estimated using the R statistical software (www.r-project.org).

**RESULTS**

**Pneumonia Treatment and Combined Pneumonia Treatment and Pneumococcal Conjugate Vaccination**

**Deaths Averted**

Annually, pneumonia treatment would avert about 5,600 deaths; the combined treatment-vaccine package would avert about 7,500 deaths (figure 19.2, panel a). Pneumonia treatment would save more lives among the poorest income group because of the higher disease burden in this population and would evenly increase coverage among all income groups.

Combined pneumonia treatment and PCV would save more lives among the bottom income quintiles because the higher burden of disease is concentrated in the poorest income groups. Yet, 32,000 pneumonia-related deaths would still occur; of these, 8,000 would occur in the poorest income quintile.
OOP Expenditures Averted
The health benefits finding is the opposite of the distribution of OOP expenditures averted because of the variations in current coverage of pneumonia treatment, from 16 percent in the bottom income quintile to 62 percent in the top income quintile. Wealthier people have better access to care in both programs, which would lead to reductions in household private expenditures for those who have access (figure 19.2, panel b).

Financial Risk Protection
Both programs would offer the highest FRP for the poorest income quintile (figure 19.2, panel c). There would, however, be a shift in gradients between private expenditures...
averted and FRP. The poorest would have, in absolute terms, the lowest private expenditures averted but the highest FRP. This outcome occurs because the poorest quintile would have substantially lower disposable income than the richest in absolute terms; therefore the change in income due to the interventions would be much higher.

To illustrate the results per dollar of expenditure, an arbitrary budget constraint of US$1 million is introduced (figure 19.3). The two dimensions of health gains and FRP afforded (measured by a money-metric value of insurance) are given for the five income groups, for UPF of pneumonia treatment, and UPF of combined pneumonia treatment and PCV. Per dollar expenditure, the combined treatment-vaccine package would save slightly more lives compared with treatment alone. However, the FRP afforded would be slightly reduced in each quintile. This slight reduction in FRP, when vaccines are added, is due to the fact that vaccines provide less FRP per dollar spent than treatment. In particular, vaccines protect only against pneumococcal pneumonia, whereas full public finance of treatment is more targeted. In both instances, health and FRP benefits would disproportionately aid the poorest income groups given that both the health and FRP benefits would be substantially larger in the poorest income quintile than in the richest income quintile.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Program Costs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The total costs of scaling up pneumonia treatment by 20 percentage points across all income groups (and of providing UPF for those who currently have access to pneumonia treatment) would be approximately US$49.6 million. The costs of the combined treatment-vaccine package vary substantially, depending on the vaccine price and Gavi eligibility. The total costs of the combined pneumonia treatment and PCV package would be approximately US$56.1 million (88 percent of which is for pneumonia treatment, 12 percent of which is for pneumococcal vaccine) based on a vaccine price of US$3.50 per dose, which is the market price currently paid by Gavi. If the fully Gavi-subsidized cost of US$0.20 per dose were to be used, the total cost of the combined treatment-vaccine package would be US$50.6 million. Regardless of vaccine price, more of the combined treatment-vaccine program funding would go to the richest groups of the population, since they are expected to have higher utilization rates.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Diarrhea Treatment and Combined Diarrhea Treatment and Rotavirus Vaccination |
| Deaths Averted |
| UPF for diarrhea treatment would avert 4,700 deaths each year. Combined diarrhea treatment and rotavirus vaccination would avert 5,400 deaths each year. Yet, 20,000 diarrhea-related deaths would still occur; of these, 6,000 would occur in the poorest income quintile (figure 19.4, panel a). |

| OOP Expenditures Averted |
| On an annual basis, UPF for diarrhea treatment would avert US$43.8 million of OOP expenditures. It would also provide insurance valued at US$93,000 at a cost of approximately US$100.9 million to the government. Combining diarrhea treatment and rotavirus vaccination would avert US$44.1 million in OOP expenditures, and it would provide insurance valued at US$96,000 at a net cost of US$103.3 million to the government (gross government expenditure for rotavirus vaccination is approximately US$3.2 million) (figure 19.4, panel b). |

| Financial Risk Protection |
| Diarrhea treatment would provide about US$1,000 in FRP benefits per US$1 million spent. Combined diarrhea treatment and rotavirus vaccination would provide approximately US$1,000 in FRP benefits per US$1 million spent. For both diarrhea treatment and combined diarrhea treatment and rotavirus vaccination, health and FRP benefits would be substantially larger among the poorer income quintiles than the richer income quintiles (figure 19.4, panel c; figure 19.5). |
Program Costs

Diarrhea treatment would save lives at a cost of approximately US$21,000 per death averted; combined diarrhea treatment and rotavirus vaccination would save lives at an approximate cost of US$19,000 per death averted. If we view these results per US$1 million spent, diarrhea treatment would avert approximately 47 deaths and US$430,000 in private expenditures. Diarrhea treatment would provide about US$1,000 in FRP benefits per US$1 million spent (figure 19.5). Combined diarrhea treatment and rotavirus vaccination would avert 52 deaths and US$430,000 in private expenditures averted per US$1 million spent.

These results provide two outstanding messages. First, diarrhea treatment and combined diarrhea treatment and rotavirus vaccination provide similar FRP
Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health

benefits per income group, and combined diarrhea treatment and rotavirus vaccination averts more deaths than diarrhea treatment alone. Second, the scale of the FRP benefits provided by UPF is small relative to the health benefits and private expenditures averted.

The numbers provide important information on the overall impacts of these interventions. However, it is also critical to view the results through the equity lens to understand the effects of UPF. The figures show how an investment of US$1 million in UPF in these interventions is distributed throughout the population. With regard to deaths averted, both diarrhea treatment and combined diarrhea treatment and rotavirus vaccination generally provide greater benefits to the poor. A major reason that both packages benefit the poorest is the higher burden of diarrheal disease among the poorest.

An examination of private expenditures averted demonstrates a different trend. For both diarrhea treatment and combined diarrhea treatment and rotavirus vaccination the wealthy tend to experience greater relative gains in private expenditures averted, since private expenditures averted by UPF are relatively flat across income quintiles. Finally, the FRP benefits provided by UPF again favor the poorest by a substantial margin. In general, the poorest tend to gain more FRP benefits because their incomes are lower, and the marginal value of the reduction of risk is of lower value for the wealthier quintiles.

DISCUSSION

This chapter illustrates the potential broader benefits of providing UPF for child health interventions for pneumonia and diarrhea in Ethiopia. It also demonstrates that UPF could provide different benefits across the wealth distribution, in addition to FRP and equity.

Main Findings

UPF for pneumonia treatment and for combined pneumonia treatment and PCV would provide substantially higher FRP for the poor and save more lives for the poor. Similar results are seen for UPF for diarrhea treatment and for combined diarrhea treatment and rotavirus vaccine.

This analysis also highlights the role that organizations such as Gavi can play. In particular, for rotavirus and pneumococcal vaccines, both health and FRP benefits of the combined packages could be enhanced if Gavi were to fully subsidize the vaccine prices to the Ethiopian government so that the government paid $0.20 per dose (tables 19.5 and 19.6). Although interesting in its own right, this situation may become a practical concern if Gavi support were to expire. Acknowledgment of these altered benefits is important when considering Gavi eligibility and the sustainability of the inclusion of vaccine interventions in benefits packages. This issue is particularly compelling when a strong rationale, such as equity, supports an intervention that a country may not implement under current incentives.

Although this analysis focuses on Ethiopia, the findings may also speak to the value of these interventions in other countries facing similar coverage gaps and mortality burdens related to diarrhea and pneumonia. Ethiopia is one of 15 countries that account for 75 percent of the worldwide child deaths from pneumonia and diarrhea (IVAC 2013; Liu and others 2012), all of which are characterized by inadequate coverage of ORS and antibiotic treatment. This coverage issue underscores the relevance of using ECEA to understand distributional impact. Furthermore, future applications of ECEA should examine the impact of UPF for all four interventions studied here combined, and more broadly for a package of highly cost-effective child health interventions.
Limitations of the Analysis

Our analysis has several limitations. First, consistent with much of the cost-effectiveness literature, our disease models are static rather than dynamic. Dynamic models can more accurately capture synergies but require greater reliance on additional data and assumptions about disease behavior that may not be readily available. The inclusion of secondary cases prevented would lead to increased deaths averted and FRP benefits. Longer-term benefits of vaccination at ages older than five years were not addressed, however, because the burden of disease is largely concentrated among children under age five years.

Second, a more comprehensive accounting of household medical payments could be included, and other costs associated with the short-term treatment and long-term impacts of disease could be considered. In particular, direct nonmedical costs, such as for transportation and housing, and indirect costs due to disease or condition, including loss of earnings and impact on labor productivity, can be substantial, although empirical data are sparse. The focus on child health interventions in this study magnifies the productivity impacts associated with disease, given the inevitability of lost work time for caregivers and the higher number of years of lost productivity associated with childhood disability or death. For example, an economic analysis of the benefits of an array of vaccines estimated caretaker productivity to be roughly 20 percent of averted treatment costs for both pneumonia and rotavirus (Stack and others 2011). Averted productivity losses due to death from rotavirus and pneumonia were, respectively, approximately 15 and 18 times greater than treatment costs (Stack and others 2011). An economic analysis of rotavirus vaccine in Brazil includes costs associated with transportation and missed work in the total cost of treating gastroenteritis, finding that these costs constituted approximately 20 percent of the total cost per inpatient and almost 75 percent of the total cost per outpatient (Constenla and others 2008). Given the magnitude of costs involved in treatment beyond those strictly due to medical care, inclusion of nonmedical and indirect costs would increase the FRP benefits reported here and would also bolster the argument for prevention over treatment.

Third, data on the existing mix of public and private provision and purchase of health care are limited. Fourth, we did not pursue an uncertainty analysis because the purpose of this chapter is to expose broad implications for policy makers with simplicity and not to provide definitive estimates. Nevertheless, many sources of uncertainty underlie this analysis, including the imputed mortality rates derived from estimation, the efficacy of rotavirus and pneumococcal vaccines, and more generally the leap from efficacy to effectiveness for the treatment and prevention interventions studied here. The pricing of vaccines can also affect the findings (tables 19.5 and 19.6), a difference that can be even more pronounced when vaccines are considered stand-alone interventions. In addition, our modeling choices embody inherent uncertainty. For example, we assumed a uniform increase of 20 percentage points across all income quintiles to facilitate the interpretation of the results, although richer quintiles currently have higher treatment coverage than do poorer quintiles (tables 19.3 and 19.4). Finally, we chose to represent FRP according to the money-metric value of insurance provided. Alternatives include number of cases of poverty averted and avoided cases of forced borrowing and forced sales (Kruk, Goldmann, and Galea 2009).

Table 19.5 Deaths Averted and Financial Risk Protection Afforded by Combined Pneumonia Treatment and Pneumococcal Conjugate Vaccines, under Different Gavi Subsidies for Vaccines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Income quintile</th>
<th>I (poorest)</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
<th>V (richest)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deaths averted</strong> (per US$ 1 million spent)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$0.20 per dose</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$3.50 per dose</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Financial risk protection afforded</strong> (2011 US$)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$0.20 per dose</td>
<td>2,710</td>
<td>1,170</td>
<td>780</td>
<td>640</td>
<td>510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$3.50 per dose</td>
<td>2,490</td>
<td>1,060</td>
<td>700</td>
<td>580</td>
<td>440</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONCLUSIONS

Future research will expand on this analysis by incorporating other essential features that promote realism of the scenario. Financial barriers are not the only barriers preventing individuals from seeking care: lack of information, limited availability of services, and distance to facilities are also important. In countries with weak health infrastructures, such as Ethiopia, health services may not be available even after the removal of some financial barriers. In particular, expanding health services to rural areas may require additional investments, such as strengthening or upgrading health facilities through training and deployment of skilled health workers, providing essential equipment, and improving infrastructure for service delivery. Inability to make these investments will, in turn, limit the expansion of coverage that UPF is able to achieve. To account for this challenge, we chose a specified coverage increment of 20 percentage points for all interventions. In addition, marginal costs of health care provision may increase substantially with increases in coverage, and these marginal costs may vary substantially depending on the population subgroups targeted (Brenzel and Claquin 1994; Brenzel and others 2006). This analysis also points to the substantial data requirements for understanding household health-seeking behaviors, OOP expenditures, and time and wages associated with illness.

The case study presented in this chapter is tailored to specific selected child health interventions. The interventions chosen for an essential child health package will involve other considerations, such as the acceptability of an intervention from a public health or clinical standpoint, and the scope of the chosen intervention. The scale and rate of intervention rollout should be evaluated in the context of a thorough understanding of the strengths and weaknesses of the host health systems.

Our approach permits the incorporation of FRP in the economic evaluation of health policies. This methodology enables packages of benefits to be selected based on the quantitative inclusion of information on how much FRP can be bought, in addition to how much health can be bought, per dollar expenditure on health care. Some interventions and packages will rank higher on one or both metrics relative to others. Although this methodology does not provide advice on what is to be selectively prioritized and included in a benefits package, it allows policy makers to take both health and FRP into account when making decisions and thereby to more effectively target scarce resources to specific policy objectives.

This analysis also provides policy makers with information on how they might sequence the development of health care packages as the health and financial needs of populations evolve and resource envelopes change. Here, we show that the interventions studied would largely benefit the poorest populations, which can help to both progressively and efficiently prioritize limited resources. In addition, we point to substantial FRP benefits, which can help demonstrate how worthwhile investments in health can be in comparison with investments in other sectors such as education or transport, which is critical from the viewpoints of ministries of finance and development. This is why, while most of the health economics literature has focused on determining the efficient purchase of health benefits, with ECEA we intend to directly estimate the efficient purchase of nonhealth benefits, starting with distributional consequences such as equity and FRP.

**Table 19.6 Deaths Averted and Financial Risk Protection Afforded by Combined Diarrhea Treatment and Rotavirus Vaccines, under Different Gavi Subsidies for Vaccines**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Income quintile</th>
<th>I (poorest)</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
<th>V (richest)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deaths averted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(per US$1 million spent)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$0.20 per dose</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$2.50 per dose</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financial risk protection afforded (2011 US$)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$0.20 per dose</td>
<td>480</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$2.50 per dose</td>
<td>470</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ANNEX

The annex to this chapter is as follows. It is available at http://www.dcp-3.org/RMNCH.


NOTE

Portions of this chapter were previously published:


World Bank Income Classifications as of July 2014 are as follows, based on estimates of gross national income (GNI) per capita for 2013:

- Low-income countries (LICs) = US$1,045 or less
- Middle-income countries (MICs) are subdivided:
  a) lower-middle-income = US$1,046 to US$4,125
  b) upper-middle-income (UMICs) = US$4,126 to US$12,745
- High-income countries (HICs) = US$12,746 or more.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation for funding through the Disease Control Priorities Network grant to the University of Washington, Seattle. Kjell Arne Johansson and Solomon Tessema Memirie were funded through the project Priorities 2020 by a grant from NORAD/The Norwegian Research Council. An earlier version of this paper was presented at a meeting of the authors of this volume, in Ferney-Voltaire, France, in November 2013. We received valuable comments from participants, including Robert E. Black, Zulfiquar Bhutta, Jerry Keusch, and Carol Levin, as well as from Elizabeth Brouwer and Zachary Olson.

REFERENCES


DCP3 Series Acknowledgments

*Disease Control Priorities*, third edition (*DCP3*) compiles the global health knowledge of institutions and experts from around the world, a task that required the efforts of over 500 individuals, including volume editors, chapter authors, peer reviewers, advisory committee members, and research and staff assistants. For each of these contributions we convey our acknowledgement and appreciation. First and foremost, we would like to thank our 33 volume editors who provided the intellectual vision for their volumes based on years of professional work in their respective fields, and then dedicated long hours to reviewing each chapter, providing leadership and guidance to authors, and framing and writing the summary chapters. We also thank our chapter authors who collectively volunteered their time and expertise to writing over 160 comprehensive, evidence-based chapters.

We owe immense gratitude to the institutional sponsor of this effort: The Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation. The Foundation provided sole financial support of the Disease Control Priorities Network. Many thanks to Program Officers Kathy Cahill, Philip Setel, Carol Medlin, and (currently) Damian Walker for their thoughtful interactions, guidance, and encouragement over the life of the project. We also wish to thank Jaime Sepúlveda for his longstanding support, including chairing the Advisory Committee for the second edition and, more recently, demonstrating his vision for *DCP3* while he was a special advisor to the Gates Foundation. We are also grateful to the University of Washington’s Department of Global Health and successive chairs King Holmes and Judy Wasserheit for providing a home base for the *DCP3* Secretariat, which included intellectual collaboration, logistical coordination, and administrative support.

We thank the many contractors and consultants who provided support to specific volumes in the form of economic analytical work, volume coordination, chapter drafting, and meeting organization: the Center for Disease Dynamics, Economics, & Policy; Center for Chronic Disease Control; Center for Global Health Research; Emory University; Evidence to Policy Initiative; Public Health Foundation of India; QURE Healthcare; University of California, San Francisco; University of Waterloo; University of Queensland; and the World Health Organization.

We are tremendously grateful for the wisdom and guidance provided by our advisory committee to the editors. Steered by Chair Anne Mills, the advisory committee assures quality and intellectual rigor of the highest order for *DCP3*.

The National Academies of Science, Engineering, and Medicine, in collaboration with the Interacademy Medical Panel, coordinated the peer-review process for all *DCP3* chapters. Patrick Kelley, Gillian Buckley, Megan Ginivan, and Rachel Pittluck managed this effort and provided critical and substantive input.

The World Bank External and Corporate Relations Publishing and Knowledge division provided exceptional guidance and support throughout the demanding production and design process. We would particularly like to thank Carlos Rossel, the publisher; Mary Fisk, Nancy Lammers, Rumit Pancholi, and Deborah Naylor for their diligence and expertise. Additionally, we thank Jose de Buerba, Mario Trubiano, Yulia Ivanova, and Chiamaka Osuagwu of the World Bank for providing professional counsel on communications and marketing strategies.

Several U.S. and international institutions contributed to the organization and execution of meetings that supported the preparation and dissemination of *DCP3*. 
We would like to express our appreciation to the following institutions:

- University of Bergen, consultation on equity (June 2011)
- University of California, San Francisco, surgery volume consultations (April 2012, October 2013, February 2014)
- Institute of Medicine, first meeting of the Advisory Committee to the Editors ACE (March 2013)
- Harvard Global Health Institute, consultation on policy measures to reduce incidence of noncommunicable diseases (July 2013)
- Institute of Medicine, systems strengthening meeting (September 2013)
- Center for Disease Dynamics, Economics, and Policy (Quality and Uptake meeting Sept 2013, reproductive and maternal health volume consultation November 2013)
- National Cancer Institute cancer consultation (November 2013)
- Union for International Cancer Control cancer consultation (November 2013, December 2014)

Carol Levin provided outstanding governance for cost and cost-effectiveness analysis. Stéphane Verguet added invaluable guidance in applying and improving the extended cost-effectiveness analysis method. Shane Murphy, Zachary Olson, Elizabeth Brouwer, Kristen Danforth, David Watkins, Jennifer Nguyen, and Jennifer Grasso provided exceptional research assistance and analytic assistance. Brianne Adderley ably managed the budget and project processes. The efforts of these individuals were absolutely critical to producing this series, and we are thankful for their commitment.
Volume and Series Editors

VOLUME EDITORS

Robert E. Black
Robert E. Black, MD, MPH, has focused his research and professional activities on reducing the number of unnecessary child deaths in developing countries. He is conducting epidemiologic research on the interaction of infectious diseases and nutrition, clinical and community-based trials of new vaccines to prevent childhood infectious diseases, and trials of nutritional interventions to reduce infectious disease morbidity and mortality, as well as improve growth and development. He is also assisting with implementation of disease control and nutrition programs in developing countries and conducting evaluations of their effectiveness and mortality impact. He is currently a Professor of International Health at Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health.

Ramanan Laxminarayan
Ramanan Laxminarayan is Vice President for Research and Policy at the Public Health Foundation of India, and he directs the Center for Disease Dynamics, Economics & Policy in Washington, D.C., and New Delhi. His research deals with the integration of epidemiological models of infectious diseases and drug resistance into the economic analysis of public health problems. He was one of the key architects of the Affordable Medicines Facility for malaria, a novel financing mechanism to improve access and delay resistance to antimalarial drugs. In 2012, he created the Immunization Technical Support Unit in India, which has been credited with improving immunization coverage in the country. He teaches at Princeton University.

Marleen Temmerman
Professor Marleen Temmerman is Chair, Department Obstetrics and Gynaecology, and Director, Women’s Health and Research, Aga Khan University, East Africa, since 2015. She was previously Director, Reproductive Health and Research, World Health Organization. She is the Founding Director of the International Centre of Reproductive Health, Ghent University, Belgium, with sister organizations in Kenya and Mozambique. She has a strong academic background, with over 500 publications in the area of women’s health, and she has mentored PhD students around the globe.

In 2007, she was elected Senator in the Belgian Parliament. She served as a member of the iERG (independent expert review group) of the United Nations Secretaries-General’s Every Woman, Every Child platform to accelerate Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) 4 and 5. She is one of the penholders of the new Global Strategy for Women’s, Children, and Adolescents’ health, transitioning from the MDGs to the Sustainable Development Goals.

Neff Walker
Neff Walker is a Senior Scientist in the Institute for International Programs, Department of International Health, Bloomberg School of Public Health, Johns Hopkins University. Before coming to Johns Hopkins University, he spent four years at UNICEF as the Senior Advisor for estimation and modeling related to the impact of HIV/AIDS, as well as serving as UNICEF’s focal point for the Child Health Epidemiology Reference Group (CHERG). From 1998 through 2003, Neff worked as the Senior Advisor for statistics and modeling at United Nations Program on HIV/AIDS. In both positions a primary focus of his work was the development
and implementation of standard methods for estimation and modeling related to disease burden.

SERIES EDITORS

Dean T. Jamison

Dean T. Jamison is a Senior Fellow in Global Health Sciences at the University of California, San Francisco, and an Emeritus Professor of Global Health at the University of Washington. He previously held academic appointments at Harvard University and the University of California, Los Angeles; he was an economist on the staff of the World Bank, where he was lead author of the World Bank’s World Development Report 1993: Investing in Health. He was lead editor of DCP2. He holds a PhD in economics from Harvard University and is an elected member of the Institute of Medicine of the U.S. National Academy of Sciences. He recently served as Co-Chair and Study Director of The Lancet’s Commission on Investing in Health.

Rachel Nugent

Rachel Nugent is a Research Associate Professor in the Department of Global Health at the University of Washington. She was formerly Deputy Director of Global Health at the Center for Global Development, Director of Health and Economics at the Population Reference Bureau, Program Director of Health and Economics Programs at the Fogarty International Center of the National Institutes of Health, and senior economist at the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. From 1991–97, she was associate professor and department chair in economics at Pacific Lutheran University. She has advised the World Health Organization, the U.S. government, and nonprofit organizations on the economics and policy environment of noncommunicable diseases.

Hellen Gelband

Hellen Gelband is Associate Director for Policy at the Center for Disease Dynamics, Economics & Policy (CDDEP). Her work spans infectious disease, particularly malaria and antibiotic resistance, and noncommunicable disease policy, mainly in low- and middle-income countries. Before joining CDDEP, then Resources for the Future, she conducted policy studies at the (former) Congressional Office of Technology Assessment, the Institute of Medicine of the U.S. National Academies, and a number of international organizations.

Susan Horton

Susan Horton is Professor at the University of Waterloo and holds the Centre for International Governance Innovation (CIGI) Chair in Global Health Economics in the Balsillie School of International Affairs there. She has consulted for the World Bank, the Asian Development Bank, several United Nations agencies, and the International Development Research Centre, among others, in work carried out in over 20 low- and middle-income countries. She led the work on nutrition for the Copenhagen Consensus in 2008, when micronutrients were ranked as the top development priority. She has served as associate provost of graduate studies at the University of Waterloo, vice-president academic at Wilfrid Laurier University in Waterloo, and interim dean at the University of Toronto at Scarborough.

Prabhat Jha

Prabhat Jha is the founding director of the Centre for Global Health Research at St. Michael’s Hospital and holds Endowed and Canada Research Chairs in Global Health in the Dalla Lana School of Public Health at the University of Toronto. He is lead investigator of the Million Death Study in India, which quantifies the causes of death and key risk factors in over two million homes over a 14-year period. He is also Scientific Director of the Statistical Alliance for Vital Events, which aims to expand reliable measurement of causes of death worldwide. His research includes the epidemiology and economics of tobacco control worldwide.

Ramanan Laxminarayan

See the list of Volume Editors.

Charles N. Mock

Charles N. Mock, MD, PhD, FACS, has training as both a trauma surgeon and an epidemiologist. He worked as a surgeon in Ghana for four years, including at a rural hospital (Berekum) and at the Kwame Nkrumah University of Science and Technology (Kumasi). In 2005–07, he served as Director of the University of Washington’s Harborview Injury Prevention and Research Center. In 2007–10, he worked at the World Health Organization (WHO) headquarters in Geneva, where he was responsible for developing the WHO’s trauma care activities. In 2010, he returned to his position as Professor of Surgery (with joint appointments as Professor of Epidemiology and Professor of Global Health) at the University of Washington. His main interests include the spectrum of injury control, especially as it pertains to low- and middle-income countries: surveillance, injury prevention, prehospital care, and hospital-based trauma care. He is President (2013–15) of the International Association for Trauma Surgery and Intensive Care.
Contributors

Frances E. Aboud
Department of Psychology, McGill University, Montreal, Canada

Fernando Althabe
Institute for Clinical Effectiveness and Health Policy, Buenos Aires, Argentina

Ashvin Ashok
Clinton Health Access Initiative, Boston, Massachusetts, United States

Henrik Axelson
Partnership for Maternal, Newborn and Child Health, World Health Organization, Phnom Penh, Cambodia

Rajiv Bahl
Department of Reproductive Health and Research, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Akinrinola Bankole
Guttmacher Institute, New York, New York, United States

Zulfiqar A. Bhutta
Division of Women and Child Health, Aga Khan University Hospital, Karachi, Pakistan

Lori A. Bollinger
Avenir Health, Glastonbury, Connecticut, United States

Deborah C. Hay Burgess
Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, Seattle, Washington, United States

Doris Chou
Department of Reproductive Health and Research, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Yue Chu
Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health, Baltimore, Maryland, United States

John Cleland
Department of Population Health, London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine, London, United Kingdom

Simon Cousens
MARCH Center, London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine, London, United Kingdom

Jai K. Das
Division of Women and Child Health, Aga Khan University, Karachi, Pakistan

Julia R. Driessen
Department of Health Policy and Management, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, United States

Valérie D’Acemont
Swiss Tropical and Public Health Institute, University of Basel, Basel, Switzerland

Alex Ezeh
African Population and Health Research Center, Nairobi, Kenya

Daniel R. Feikin
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, Georgia, United States

Véronique Filippi
Department of Infectious Disease Epidemiology, London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine, London, United Kingdom
Mariel M. Finucane
Gladstone Institutes, University of California, San Francisco, San Francisco, California, United States

Christa Fischer Walker
Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health, Baltimore, Maryland, United States

Brendan Flannery
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, Georgia, United States

Ingrid K. Friberg
Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health, Baltimore, Maryland, United States

Bela Ganatra
Department of Reproductive Health and Research, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Marijke Gielen
Department of Paediatrics, University Hospitals Leuven, Leuven, Belgium

Wendy Graham
The Institute of Applied Health Sciences, University of Aberdeen, Aberdeen, United Kingdom

A. Metin Gülmezoglu
Department of Reproductive Health and Research, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Demissie Habte
Board of Trustees, International Clinical Epidemiological Network, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia

Mary J. Hamel
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, Georgia, United States

Davidson H. Hamer
Department of Global Health, Boston University School of Public Health, Boston, Massachusetts, United States

Peter M. Hansen
Gavi Alliance, Geneva, Switzerland

Karen Hardee
Population Council, New York, New York, United States

Julie M. Herlihy
Department of Global Health, Boston University School of Public Health, Boston, Massachusetts, United States

Natasha Hezelgrave
Division of Women’s Health, King’s College London School of Medicine, London, United Kingdom

Kenneth Hill
Harvard T. H. Chan School of Public Health, Boston, Massachusetts, United States

G. Justus Hofmeyr
Effective Care Research Unit, East London Hospital Complex, East London, South Africa

Dan Hogan
Department of Health Statistics and Informatics, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Susan Horton
School of Public Health and Health Systems, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, Canada

Aamer Imdad
SUNY Upstate Medical University, Syracuse, New York, United States

Dean T. Jamison
Department of Global Health, University of Washington, Seattle, Washington, United States

Kjell Arne Johansson
Department of Public Health & Centre for International Health, University of Bergen, Bergen, Norway

Gerald T. Keusch
Boston University School of Medicine, Boston, Massachusetts, United States

Margaret E. Kruk
Harvard T.H. Chan School of Public Health, Boston, Massachusetts, United States

Rohail Kumar
Division of Women and Child Health, Aga Khan University, Karachi, Pakistan

Zohra S. Lassi
Division of Women and Child Health, Aga Khan University, Karachi, Pakistan

Joy E. Lawn
MARCH Center, London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine, London, United Kingdom

Theresa A. Lawrie
Department of Reproductive Health and Research, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Lindsey Lenters
The Hospital for Sick Children, Toronto, Canada
Carol Levin
Department of Global Health, University of Washington, Seattle, Washington, United States

Li Liu
Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health, Baltimore, Maryland, United States

Colin Mathers
Department of Health Statistics and Informatics, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Agustina Mazzoni
Institute for Clinical Effectiveness and Health Policy, Buenos Aires, Argentina

Solomon Tessema Memirie
Department of Public Health & Centre for International Health, University of Bergen, Bergen, Norway

Claudia Garcia Moreno
Department of Reproductive Health and Research, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Sheila Mwero
African Population and Health Research Center, Nairobi, Kenya

Arindam Nandi
Center for Disease Dynamics, Economics & Policy, Washington, DC, United States

Olufemi T. Oladapo
Department of Reproductive Health and Research, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Shefali Oza
MARCH Center, London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine, London, United Kingdom

Christopher J. Paciorek
Department of Statistics, University of California, Berkeley, Berkeley, California, United States

Clint Pecenka
PATH, Seattle, Washington, United States

Carine Ronsmans
School of Public Health, Sichuan University, Chengdu, China

Rehana A. Salam
Division of Women and Child Health, Aga Khan University, Karachi, Pakistan

Lale Say
Department of Reproductive Health and Research, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Peter Sheehan
Victoria Institute of Strategic Economic Studies, Melbourne, Victoria, Australia

João Paula Souza
Department of Social Medicine, Ribeirão Preto School of Medicine, University of São Paulo, São Paulo, Brazil

Meghan Stack
Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health, Baltimore, Maryland, United States

Cynthia Stanton
Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health, Baltimore, Maryland, United States

Karin Stenberg
Department of Health Systems Governance and Financing, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Gretchen A. Stevens
Department of Health Statistics and Information Systems, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

John Stover
Avenir Health, Glastonbury, Connecticut, United States

Kim Sweeny
Victoria University, Melbourne, Victoria, Australia

Stéphane Verguet
Department of Global Health and Population, Harvard T. H. Chan School of Public Health, Boston, Massachusetts, United States

Kerri Wazny
The Hospital for Sick Children, Toronto, Canada

Aisha K. Yousafzai
Department of Paediatrics and Child Health, Aga Khan University, Karachi, Pakistan

Abdhalah Kasiira Ziraba
African Population and Health Research Center, Nairobi, Kenya
Advisory Committee to the Editors

Anne Mills, Chair  
Professor, London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine, London, United Kingdom

Olusoji Adeyi  
Director, Health, Nutrition and Population Global Practice, World Bank, Washington, DC, United States

Kesetebirhan Admasu  
Minister of Health, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia

George Alleyne  
Director Emeritus, Pan American Health Organization, Washington, DC, United States

Ala Alwan  
Director, World Health Organization, Regional Office for the Eastern Mediterranean, Cairo, Arab Republic of Egypt

Rifat Atun  
Professor, Global Health Systems, Harvard University, Boston, Massachusetts, United States

Zulfiqar A. Bhutta  
Chair, Division of Women and Child Health, Aga Khan University Hospital, Karachi, Pakistan

Agnes Binagwaho  
Minister of Health, Kigali, Rwanda

Mark Blecher  
Senior Health Advisor, South Africa Treasury Department, Cape Town, South Africa

Patricia Garcia  
Dean, School of Public Health, Universidad Peruana Cayetano Heredia, Lima, Peru

Roger Glass  
Director, Fogarty International Center, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Maryland, United States

Amanda Glassman  
Director, Global Health Policy, Center for Global Development, Washington, DC, United States

Glenda Gray  
Executive Director, Perinatal HIV Research Unit, Chris Hani Baragwanath Hospital, Johannesburg, South Africa

Demissie Habte  
Chair of Board of Trustees, International Clinical Epidemiological Network, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia

Richard Horton  
Editor, The Lancet, London, United Kingdom

Edward Kirumira  
Dean, Faculty of Social Sciences, Makerere University, Kampala, Uganda

Peter Lachmann  
Professor, University of Cambridge, Cambridge, United Kingdom

Lai Meng Looi  
Professor, University of Malaya, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia

Adel Mahmoud  
Senior Molecular Biologist, Princeton University, Princeton, New Jersey, United States

Anthony Measham  
World Bank (retired)
Carol Medlin
Senior Health and Nutrition Specialist, Health, Nutrition, and Population Global Practice, World Bank, Washington, DC, United States

Alvaro Moncayo
Researcher, Universidad de los Andes, Bogotá, Colombia

Jaime Montoya
Executive Director, Philippine Council for Health Research and Development, Taguig City, the Philippines

Ole Norheim
Professor, University of Bergen, Bergen, Norway

Folashade Omokhodion
Professor, University College Hospital, Ibadan, Nigeria

Toby Ord
President, Giving What We Can, Oxford, United Kingdom

K. Srinath Reddy
President, Public Health Foundation of India, New Delhi, India

Sevkat Ruacan
Dean, Koç University School of Medicine, Istanbul, Turkey

Jaime Sepúlveda
Executive Director, Global Health Sciences, University of California, San Francisco, San Francisco, California, United States

Richard Skolnik
Lecturer, Health Policy Department, Yale School of Public Health, New Haven, Connecticut, United States

Stephen Tollman
Professor, University of Witwatersrand, Johannesburg, South Africa

Jürgen Unützer
Professor, Department of Psychiatry, University of Washington, Seattle, Washington, United States

Damian Walker
Senior Program Officer, Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, Seattle, Washington, United States

Ngaire Woods
Director, Global Economic Governance Program, Oxford University, Oxford, United Kingdom

Nopadol Wora-Urai
Professor, Department of Surgery, Phramongkutklao Hospital, Bangkok, Thailand

Kun Zhao
Researcher, China National Health Development Research Center, Beijing, China
Reviewers

Diego G. Bassani  
University of Toronto Centre for Global Child Health,  
Toronto, Canada

Florencia Lopez Boo  
Inter-American Development Bank, Washington, DC,  
United States

Lara Brearley  
Edward I. Broughton  
University Research Co., Washington, DC,  
United States

William Checkley  
Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine,  
Baltimore, Maryland, United States

Jacqueline E. Darroch  
Guttmacher Institute, Seattle, Washington,  
United States

Jai K. Das  
Division of Women and Child Health, Aga Khan University, Karachi, Pakistan

Mercedes de Onis  
Growth Assessment and Surveillance Unit,  
World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Shannon Doocy  
Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health,  
Baltimore, Maryland, United States

Karen Edmond  
University of Western Australia School of Paediatrics and Child Health, Perth, Western Australia, Australia

Alex Ergo  
Broad Band Associates, Yangon, Myanmar

Victoria Fan  
Office of Public Health Studies, University of Hawaii,  
Honolulu, Hawaii, United States

Ingrid K. Friberg  
Norwegian Institute of Public Health, Oslo, Norway

Anna Glasier  
Society of Family Planning, University of Edinburgh,  
Edinburgh, Scotland

Joseph E. de Graft-Johnson  
Save the Children, Accra, Ghana

Glenda Gray  
Perinatal HIV Research Unit, Chris Hani Baragwanath Hospital, Johannesburg, South Africa

Richard L. Guerrant  
University of Virginia School of Medicine,  
Charlottesville, Virginia, United States

Jane Hutchings  
PATH, Seattle, Washington, United States

Claudio F. Lanata  
Instituto de Investigación Nutricional, Lima, Peru

Karen Macours  
Paris School of Economics, Paris, France

Matthews Mathai  
Department of Maternal, Newborn, and Child and Adolescent Health, World Health Organization,  
Geneva, Switzerland

Jeff K. Mathe  
Mbabane Government Hospital, Mbabane, Swaziland

William McGreevey  
Department of International Health, Georgetown University, Washington, DC, United States
Regina Moench-Pfanner  
Global Alliance for Improved Nutrition, Geneva, Switzerland

Luke C. Mullany  
Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health, Baltimore, Maryland, United States

Omotade Olayemi Olufemi-Julius  
University of Ibadan Institute of Child Health, Ibadan, Nigeria

Alexander K. Rowe  
Center for Global Health, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, Georgia, United States

Enrique Ruelas  
Institute for Healthcare Improvement, Cambridge, Massachusetts, United States

Harhad Sanghvi  
Jhpiego, Baltimore, Maryland, United States

Katherine Seib  
Emory Vaccine Center, Emory University, Atlanta, Georgia, United States

Saba Shahid  
Indus Hospital, Karachi, Pakistan

Karin Stenberg  
Department of Health Systems Governance and Financing, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Jorge E. Tolosa  
Oregon Health & Science University, Portland, Oregon, United States

Nana A. Y. Twum-Danso  
The Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, Accra, Ghana

Walter A. Orenstein  
Emory Vaccine Center, Emory University, Atlanta, Georgia, United States

Roman Prymula  
University Hospital Hradec Králové, Hradec Králové, Czech Republic

Usha Ramakrishnan  
Emory University Rollins School of Public Health, Atlanta, Georgia, United States

Helen Rees  
Wits Reproductive Health and HIV Institute, Johannesburg, South Africa

Harhad Sanghvi  
Jhpiego, Baltimore, Maryland, United States
Index

Boxes, figures, maps, notes, and tables are indicated by b, f, m, n, and t following page numbers.

A
Abbas, K., 103
abortion, 28–32, 106–7
access to safe abortions, 64, 106–7
as cause of maternal morbidity, 4, 6, 31, 31t, 57
as cause of maternal mortality, 6, 29–31, 30–31t, 54
consequences of, 4, 29–32, 31t
cost-effectiveness of safe abortion, 321
definition of, 28, 54, 59b
economic and social consequences, 31–32
incidence, 29, 30–31t
induced, 54
information and attitudes, 107
interventions to reduce, 106
legal restrictions on abortion, 106
measurement used in study of, 29
provider pool to improve safety, 106–7
safe abortion technologies, 106, 107
teenage pregnancy and, 103
Abortion Incidence Complications Methodology (AICM), 29, 31
access to health services equitable, 64
maternal mortality related to limited access, 263
rights-based approach to maternal mortality and morbidity, 64
three delays model, 64
accreditation of health facilities, 292
Accredited Social Health Activists (India), 101
ACT (artemisinin-based combination therapy), 147, 154
acute lower respiratory tract infections (ALRIs), 144–45
acute respiratory infections (ARIs), 144–45, 146t, 286
Adam, T., 276
Adler, A., 60
adolescents
age-appropriate sex education, 104
condom use, 105, 105b
education of girls and boys, equal retention of, 104
gender-inequitable norms and violence, 104
legal protection of, 104
out-of-school and married adolescents, 105
reduction in teen pregnancy, 28
sexual and reproductive health, 103–5, 105b
Advanced Market Commitment, 188b
Afghanistan
childbirth interventions in, 273
maternal deaths in, care approaches to lower, 301
stunting and height-for-age in, 87–88
Africa. See also specific regions and countries
diarrheal diseases in, 164f
female genital mutilation (FGM) in, 39
malnutrition in, 208
maternal mortality, disproportionate burden in, 53
polio in, 191
stunting and height-for-age in, 7
unintended pregnancy in, 28
AICM (Abortion Incidence Complications Methodology), 29, 31
AIDS. See HIV/AIDS
alcohol abuse disorders, 5
Alderman, H., 254
Aldy, J., 307
ALRIs (acute lower respiratory tract infections), 144–45
Amsel criteria, 34
anemia, 6, 59, 231–32, 244–45
Angola, child mortality (under five) in, 79
Annan, R. A., 209
antenatal care visits, 123, 287
antenatal corticosteroids, 127
antibiotics, use of
cesarean delivery, 122–23
diarrheal diseases, 170–71, 179
group B streptococcus (GBS), 129
malnutrition, 215–16
maternal sepsis, 122
neonatal sepsis, 129
pneumonia treatment in Ethiopia, 348
preterm rupture of membranes, 128
anticonvulsant prophylaxis, 120
antihypertensive therapy in preeclampsia, 120
antiretroviral therapy for HIV (ART), 123, 125, 215
antiseptics. See vaginal application of antiseptics
antithrombotic agents, use of, 126
ARIs (acute respiratory infections), 124–45, 146–147
artemisinin-based combination therapy (ACT), 147, 154
artery embolization, 55, 118
Ashworth, A., 211
Asia. See also specific regions and countries
female genital mutilation (FGM) in, 39
Japanese encephalitis (JE) in, 195
maternal mortality, disproportionate burden in, 53
rubella vaccine in, 194
stunting and height-for-age in, 7
unintended pregnancy in, 28
unsafe abortion in, 29
asphyxia. See birth asphyxia
aspirin as prophylactic, 119

B
Baby-Friendly Hospital Initiative, 235, 249
Bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG) Vaccine, 189–90
bacterial vaginosis, 33–35, 34
Bangladesh
community-based interventions in, 270
cost-effectiveness of, 277
contraceptive use in, 97, 100f
delayed mental development in, 247
diarrheal diseases in, 167, 169
fever in children in, 148
handwashing in, 175
home visits and reduction in newborn deaths in, 265, 336
IMCI effectiveness in, 149
Integrated Community Case Management (iCCM) in, 153
Integrated Management of Childhood Illness (IMCI) in, 266
maternal mortality decline in, 65
Matlab program, 101
outreach workers in, 327
pneumonia in, 145
preterm infants and neurodevelopmental disabilities in, 247
reduced fertility, benefits of, 28
stunting and height-for-age in, 87
teenage pregnancy in, 28
wasting in, 91b, 207
Baqui, A. H., 339
Barkat-e-Khuda, 327
Bartlett, L., 328
Bayley Scales of Infant and Toddler Development (Third Edition), 242
BCG (Bacille Calmette-Guérin) Vaccine, 189–90
behavioral interventions, 174–77, 251–52
benefit-cost ratios, 1, 16, 338
continuum-of-care approach, 309–11, 310–11
early childhood development, 254
Benin
costs of health care in, 338
Integrated Community Case Management (iCCM) in, 153
wasting in, 91b
Berkley, J. A., 215
Bhutan
maternal mortality reduction in, 53
stunting and height-for-age in, 87
Bhutta, Z. A., 129, 167, 289, 322, 326
Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, 9b, 101, 189, 319
Gavi (Vaccine Alliance), 188
Malaria Control and Evaluation Partnership in Africa, 140
Meningitis Vaccine Project, 195
biofortification, 326, 329
birth asphyxia, 6, 78, 265
birth control. See contraceptives; family planning
Black, R., 227
blindness from trachoma, 245–46
Bolivia, family planning in, 102
Bongaarts, J., 101
Bosch-Capblanch, X., 293
Brazelton Neonatal Behavioral Assessment Scale, 242
Brazil
Bolsa Familia, 19, 103, 275, 290
child health services, costs of, 328
contraceptive use in, 97, 100f
diarrheal diseases in, 170
IMCI effectiveness in, 149
rotavirus vaccine costs in, 357
stunting and height-for-age in, 87
breastfeeding
early child development and, 249
as intervention, 13r, 128, 173
costs of support for, 328
malnutrition and, 8, 215, 229–30
WHO definition of appropriate breastfeeding, 220n2
Brenzel, L., 329
Brown, R., 209
Buchanan, J., 323
burden of disease/medical condition
abortion, 28–32. See also abortion
diarrheal diseases, 164
female genital mutilation (FGM), 39–40. See also
female genital mutilation
ill health, defined, 25
infertility, 35–37, 36–37t. See also
infertility, involuntary
maternal morbidity, 61
official development assistance increase for, 2
reproductive ill health, 25–50. See also abortion;
pregnancy
data presentation and limitations, 25
overview, 25
unintended pregnancy, 25–28. See also pregnancy
violence against women, 37–39. See also violence
against women
Burkina Faso
diarrheal diseases in, 175–76, 324
postpartum vaginal or uterine prolapse in, 60
wasting in, 207
Burundi, stunting and height-for-age in, 88
C
Cabo Verde, maternal mortality reduction in, 53
calcium supplementation, 119, 124
Cambodia, maternal mortality reduction in, 53
Catalytic Initiative, 154
CCTs. See conditional cash transfers
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), 32, 289
Central Asia. See Europe and Central Asia
cerebral malaria, 246
cesarean section, 121, 122–23, 321
Chad, wasting in, 91b
Chan, M., 345
checklists, use of, 18, 293
CHERG. See Child Health Epidemiology Reference Group
chikungunya virus, 147
childbirth, 1
active management of, 126–27
cesarean section. See cesarean section
checklists for safe childbirth, 18
community-based interventions, 265–66
death at. See stillbirths
early delivery options, 120
fetal monitoring during, 126
indicators measuring health care delivery for
women, 287
interventions, 12t
obstructed labor, 6, 54, 59
definition of, 59b
prevention of, 121
treatment of, 121–22
prolonged labor, 6, 59, 59b
vacuum and forceps delivery, 121–22
Child Health Epidemiology Reference Group
(CHERG), 9b, 52, 71, 76, 143, 350
child health package. See child mortality (under age five
years, U5MR), at interventions
childhood development. See early childhood
development
childhood illness (under age five). See also febrile
children; specific disease or condition
child mortality and, 78–79, 79t, 80f, 263
cost-effectiveness of interventions, 15f, 323–26
cost of interventions, 16t, 17
interventions. See interventions; vaccines
stunting. See stunting
child mortality (under age five years, U5MR),
71–83
causes of, 6, 7f, 76–81, 79t, 80f
data and methods, 76–77
policy implications, 81
results, 77–81
challenges in reducing, 75–76
cost of interventions, 16t, 17
data sources, 72, 76
defaths averted, 10f, 13–14, 14f
decline in, 1, 81, 300
family planning and, 96, 97
fertility rates and, 4, 5m
iCCM and, 154
interventions, 1, 8–14, 13t
indicators measuring health care delivery for
children, 286–87
levels and trends, 6, 7f, 71–76
malnutrition and, 227
deaths averted by scaling up interventions, 235f
maternal education’s effect on, 75–76
MDG 4 to reduce, 71, 72–73, 75
overview, 71
policy implications, 75–76, 81
risk results from research studies, 72–75, 73–74t
stillbirths included, 71, 75, 76
unintended pregnancy and, 28
Children’s Investment Fund Foundation, 319
child sexual abuse, 38, 39
Chile
  Hib in, 193
  stunting and height-for-age in, 87
China
  adolescent-friendly contraceptive services in, 105
  benefit-cost ratio in, 311, 314
  child mortality (under five) in, 78–79
  fertility rates and reduced child mortality in, 300
  stunting and height-for-age in, 87
  cholera, 170, 172, 188b, 325
  chorioamnionitis, 123
  Clinton Health Access Initiative, 319
CLTS (Community-Led Total Sanitation), 176
CMAM (community management of acute malnutrition), 212, 213–14, 217
CMAM (Community-Based Management of Acute Malnutrition) Forum, 210
cognitive development. See early childhood development
Colombia
  continuous quality improvement (CQI) in, 293
  Familias en Acción program, 250b, 254
Columbia University study on pregnancy-related complications, 61
Commission on Information and Accountability for Women's and Children's Health, 89
community-based interventions, 2, 8, 263–84
  continuum of care including, 264
  contraceptive use, 98
  cost-effectiveness of, 276–79, 327
  costs of, 278r, 279
  delivery complications, neonatal care, and childhood illnesses, 265–66
diarrheal diseases, 176
disability-adjusted life years (DALYs) and, 277–78, 277f
everal child development and, 253
empowering communities, 270–73, 273t
evidence on packages from literature review, 268–69
  expanding community health worker mandate, 273–74, 290
  family planning, 101
  helminths, 267–69
  HIV/AIDS, 269
  home visits, 265–66, 265–66f
  improving supply of services, 264–70
  India's community health workers, 337b, 338t
  integrating with community and local health facilities, 275–76, 276f
  leveraging mobile technology, 274–75
  malaria, 267
  malnutrition, 213–14, 217, 233
  maternal and child mortality and morbidity, 8, 11–13r, 14, 15
  motivation for, 275
  nutrition, 235–36, 270, 271–72t
  overview, 263–64
  Pakistan's lady health worker program, 252b, 267b
  quality of, 274
  referral systems, 275, 275f
  research agenda, 279
  scaling up, 275, 277–78
  severe acute malnutrition (SAM), 326
  strategies, 264
  training of community health workers, 273, 274
  tuberculosis, 270
Community-Based Management of Acute Malnutrition (CMAM) Forum, 210
community health workers. See community-based interventions
Community-Led Total Sanitation (CLTS), 176–77
community management of acute malnutrition (CMAM), 212, 213–14, 217
community mobilization and community health workers, 290
complementary feeding, 230–31
conditional cash transfers (CCTs), 19, 290–91
  cost-effectiveness of, 329
  education of adolescent girls and boys, equal retention of, 104
  family planning, 103
  immunization programs, 326
  stimulation programs and, 250b, 254
Congo, Democratic Republic of
  child mortality (under five) in, 78–79
diarrheal diseases in, 170
  DTP vaccine in, 197
  fever in children under age five years in, 140
continuous quality improvement (CQI), 293
continuum-of-care approach, 2, 16, 299–317
  analytical framework for assessing, 301–5, 301f
  assessing economic and social benefits of achieved outcomes, 304–5
  benefits of morbidity averted, 308
  benefits of reduced fertility rates, 308
  of community-based interventions, 264
  cost-effective interventions, 300–301
  estimating costs, 303
  estimating full benefits of investment in, 307–8
  estimating health and fertility impacts, 304
  extended lifecycle benefits, 300
  global child and maternal mortality rates and, 300
  health system benefits, 300
implications of analysis, 313–14
affordable investments, 313
extended modeling approach, 314
high rates of return, 314
large economic and social returns, 313
over different timeframes, 314
variable returns, 313–14
improved and equitable access, 300
increase in coverage level, model of, 305–6, 305–7
integration of services, 301
investment metrics, 309–13
analysis by type of benefit, 311–12
analysis of contribution to benefits, 312t
benefit-cost ratios, 309–11, 310–11t
high direct health benefits, 312
morbidity benefits, 312
total economic and social benefits, equality of, 312
two case studies, comparison of, 308–13, 309t
uneven distribution of demographic dividend, 311–12
investment “wins,” 300–301
key methodological assumptions, 307
maternal morbidity and, 64
measuring health impacts and full costs, 305–7
overview, 299–300
selection of interventions, 302–3, 302–3t
years of life saved, 307–8
contraceptives, 1, 2, 10
access to and promotion of condom use, 105
adolescent use of, 105, 105b
cost-effectiveness of, 321
cost of, 17, 17t
family planning and, 96, 97–99
global distribution of methods, 100f
innovations to expand access and improve health care quality, 288
MDG 5b to improve access to, 51, 63
methods, choice of, 97, 99t
by countries, 100f
postabortion, 107
primary health centers as service providers, 2
Sino-implant (II) and future types of, 99
social and economic benefits, 26
controlled cord traction, 118
cord clamping, early vs. late, 118
cord cleansing, 128–29
corticosteroids, 127
cost-effectiveness of interventions, xiii, 1, 2, 14–16, 15f, 319–34. See also benefit-cost ratios
assessment of, 3b
childhood illness (under age five), 323–26
community-based interventions, 276–79, 327
delivery platforms, 327–28
diarrheal diseases interventions, 177–78, 177t, 324
Ethiopia’s treatment and prevention of diarrhea and pneumonia, 345–61. See also Ethiopia
family planning, 103
febrile children, 323–24
India universal home-based neonatal care package, 15–16, 335–44. See also India
infant and young child growth, 326–27
innovations to expand access and improve health care quality, 293–94
literature biases, 319
malnutrition treatment, 216–17, 326–27
maternal mortality and morbidity, 129–30
methodology of study, 320–21
overview, 319–20, 322–23t
quality of care and, 293–94, 294t
reproductive health, 323
returns on investment in continuum of care, 300–301
vaccines, 197–98, 198t, 324–26
costs
of community-based interventions, 278t, 279
of contraceptives, 17, 17t
of diarrheal diseases interventions, 177–78, 177t, 328
effect on care-seeking behavior, 176
estimating for returns on investment in continuum of care, 303
of family planning, 17, 328
of interventions, 2, 328–29
of malnutrition interventions, 216–17, 328
of maternal morbidity and mortality, 130
of RMNCH interventions, 2, 16t, 20n1
scaling up interventions, 16–18. See also scaling up of unsafe abortions, 31–32
of vaccines, 197–98
of water, sanitation, and hygiene interventions, 174
Côte d’Ivoire, stunting and height-for-age in, 87
Countdown to 2015 initiative, 8, 17, 64, 129, 154, 230, 235, 322
CQI (continuous quality improvement), 293
Cresswell, J. A., 58
Cropper, M., 307
Cryptosporidium infection, 167
D
DALYs. See disability-adjusted life years
Das, J. K., 326
dating violence, 38
DCP. See Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries
Declaration on the Elimination of Violence against Women (UN), 37
delivery platforms. See also community-based interventions; primary health centers
cost-effectiveness of interventions, 327–28
cost of scaling up, 17–18
interventions for maternal and child mortality and morbidity, 8, 11–13

demand-side interventions, 19
Democratic Republic of Congo. See Congo, Democratic Republic of

Demographic and Health Surveys, 26, 51, 60, 85, 96, 174, 176, 188b, 346
demographic dividend, 96, 305, 311–12
dengue fever, 147
depression, 5, 6, 39
child development, effect of maternal depression on, 247
postpartum depression, 60
Detrick, Z., 289
Development Assistance Committee (Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development), 319
diabetes, 6
treatment, 125
diarrheal diseases, 1, 163–85
antibiotics, use of, 170–71, 179
behavioral interventions, 174–77
burden of infection, 164
by region, 164–65 child mortality (under five) and, 78, 79t, 163
cholera, 172
community-based interventions, 176, 266
community-led total sanitation, 176–77
cost-effectiveness of interventions, 177–78, 177t, 324
cost of interventions, 177–78, 177t, 328
scaling up, 18
definitions and classification, 163–64
early childhood development and, 246
environmental enteric dysfunction, 167–69, 168b in Ethiopia, treatment and prevention, 345–61.
See also Ethiopia
etiologies, 164–65
handwashing, 174–75
health care seeking, 175–76
incidence, 163, 164
inflammatory diarrhea and dysentery, 166, 169
interventions, 163, 164b, 169–77, 169b
mortality due to, 78, 164
natural history, 166
nutrition, 173
oral rehydration solutions (ORS). See oral rehydration solutions
overview, 163
persistent, 166–67
preventive interventions, 169b
rotavirus, 165, 171–72, 350, 351t
subclinical infections, 167
therapeutic interventions, 169–71, 169b
transmission and epidemiology, 165–66
tropical enteropathy, 167
vaccines, 171
water, sanitation, and hygiene, 174
watery, 166
zinc supplementation, 173–74
diet. See nutrition; vitamin and mineral supplements
diphtheria, tetanus, and pertussis (DTP) vaccines, 188b, 189, 190–91, 300, 324–25
disability-adjusted life years (DALYs) in CEA vs. ECEA framework, 343n5
community-base care and, 277–78, 277f
cost-effectiveness results using, 321, 330
diarrheal diseases and, 177, 178
malnutrition and, 217, 326
maternal morbidity and, 61, 129–30
pneumonia and, 323
quality of services and, 293–94, 294r
vaccination and, 187, 189, 197–98
WHO metrics and, 330n1

Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries (DCP)
coverage of other volumes, 2, 320t
evolution of series and third edition, xiii, 3, 300, 319
Djibouti, wasting in, 91b
Dolea, C., 58
domestic violence. See violence against women
Doppler ultrasound, use of, 125–26
dysentery, 166, 169

E early childhood development, 8, 241–61
cerebral malaria and, 246
cost-benefit of interventions, 254
delayed mental development, 247
diarrhea and, 246
enteropathy and, 246
environmental conditions and, 245–46
Family Care Indicators, 243
fatty acids and, 249–50
Home Observation for Measurement of the Environment (HOME) Inventory, 243, 243f, 248, 251f
infections and, 246, 251–52, 255
interventions to enhance, 248–54
macronutrients and, 244, 244f
maternal mental health and, 247, 255
interventions, 253–54
maternal nutrition and, 246–47, 255
interventions, 252–53
mental development, measurement and prevalence of, 242
micronutrients and, 244–45, 244f
neurodevelopmental disabilities, 247
overview, 241–42
psychosocial stimulation and, 243–44, 244f, 248–49, 250b, 254
integrated with child nutrition, 251
Pakistan’s Early Child Development Scale-Up Trial, 252b
recommendations for future programs and research, 255
trachoma and, 245–46, 251
vitamin and mineral supplements and, 245

East Asia and Pacific
chikungunya in, 147
child mortality (under five) in, 72–75, 73–74t, 80f
community-base care, cost-effectiveness of, 276
diarrheal diseases in, 164f, 246
health care service delivery in, 286–87, 287t
iodine deficiency in, 245
malnutrition in, 208
number of hospital beds per 1,000 people in, 286
number of nurses, midwives, and physicians per 1,000 people in, 286
preterm infants and neurodevelopmental disabilities in, 247
stunting and height-for-age in, 86–87, 87–88f
ECEA. See extended cost-effectiveness analysis
economic factors. See also social and economic benefits
for maternal mortality and morbidity, 62t
for maternal mortality and morbidity, 63

Ecuador, cash transfer program for early child development in, 254
edematous acute malnutrition, 216, 220n5
education
adolescent girls and boys, equal retention of, 104
family planning, 10
in relation to school retention, 104
feeding practices, maternal education for, 231
fertility rates, and education of girls, 28
health care seeking and level of education, 175
maternal education’s effect on child mortality, 75–76
nutrition education, 245, 326
sex education, 11t, 104
UNESCO, on children not attending school, 105

Egypt
contraceptive use in, 97, 100f
IMCI effectiveness in, 150
Integrated Community Case Management (iCCM) in, 153
empowerment
community-based interventions, 270–73, 273t
freedom and right of women to control their bodies, 63
everential rights, 63
Ending Preventable Maternal Mortality, 115
enteric fever, 146
enteropathy, 246
entitlements, defined, 64
environmental enteric dysfunction, 167–69, 168b
environmental factors
for early child development, 245–46
for family planning, 96
for maternal mortality and morbidity, 62t, 65
EPI (Expanded Program on Immunization), 14, 187, 189–92, 319, 329
ergot alkaloids, 116

Ethiopia
abortion services in, 106
Catalytic Initiative in, 154
costs of child health services, 328
child mortality (under five) in, 78, 346, 347f, 347t
community-based programs in
innovative task-shifting, 289
nutrition, 270
women’s empowerment, 273
condom use in, 105
cost of contraception, 101, 102
DTP vaccine in, 197
health extension program (HEP) in, 347
health spending in, 347, 352
Integrated Management of Neonatal and Childhood Illness (IMNCI) in, 151
iodine deficiency in, 253
malnutrition, community-based treatment programs in, 216, 217
maternal depression’s effect on child development in, 248
treatment and prevention of diarrhea and pneumonia in, 178, 345–61
analysis, 356–57
antibiotics, use of, 348
child demographics, 346, 346–47t
child health and health care services, 346–48
defects averted, 350, 352, 357–58t
diarrhea treatment combined with rotavirus vaccination, 354–56, 355f
expenditures averted, 350–52
extended cost-effectiveness analysis, 348
financial risk protection, 352, 354–55, 357–58f
methods of study, 348–52
OOP expenditures averted, 353
oral rehydration salts, use of, 350
overview, 345–46
pneumococcal conjugate vaccination, 15, 348–50, 349–50
program costs, 352, 354, 355
results of study, 352–56
rotavirus vaccination, 350, 354–56
Europe and Central Asia
child mortality (under five) in, 73, 73–74, 80f
diarrheal diseases in, 164f
health care service delivery in, 286–87, 287t
infertility in, 36t
maternal mortality, disproportionate burden in, 53
number of hospital beds per 1,000 people in, 286
number of nurses, midwives, and physicians per 1,000 people in, 286
stunting and height-for-age in, 86–87, 87f, 88f
European Medicines Agency, 196
Every Woman Every Child (UN), 100
evidence-based policy making and interventions
child mortality, 81
malnutrition, 217, 233
maternal morbidity and mortality, 116, 117t
perinatal morbidity and mortality, 124t, 127t
Expanded Program on Immunization (EPI), 14, 187, 189–92, 319, 329
extended cost-effectiveness analysis (ECEA)
Ethiopia’s treatment and prevention of diarrhea and pneumonia, 345–61. See also Ethiopia
India’s home-based neonatal care (HBNC) package, 335–44. See also India
external cephalic version, 121
F
Family Care Indicators, 243
family planning, 95–103
adolescent programs, 103–5, 105b
age-appropriate sex education, 104
child mortality reduction and, 81
community-based programming, 101
conditional cash transfers (CCTs) and, 103
contraceptive methods, 97–99. See also contraceptives
access to and promotion of condom use, 105
adolescent-friendly, 105
cost-effectiveness of, 103
costs of, 17, 328
demographic rationale for, 95–96
environment and sustainable development rationale for, 96
fertility rates and, 97, 98f
global initiatives, 99–100
health consequences of high fertility, 96–97
human rights and equity rationale for, 96
integration with other sectors, 101
mass media approaches to, 104–5
maternal and child health rationale for, 96
methodology of study, 8
mHealth, 102
mobile services, 102
organization of programs, 99–100
out-of-school and married adolescents, 105
public, nongovernmental, and commercial providers, 101
rationales for, 95–96
resilience-building and, 105–6
results-based financing, 102
rights-based approach to, 96
school retention and, 104
services delivery, 101
social franchising, 102
social marketing, 101–2
unsafe abortion, 106–7
violence against women and, 107–8
vouchers, 19, 102–3
Family Planning Effort Index, 96, 97
fatty acids and early childhood development, 249–50
febrile children, 137–61
acute respiratory infections, 144–45, 146t, 286
challenges and future research needs, 154–55, 155b
chikungunya virus, 147
cost-effectiveness of interventions, 323–24
dengue fever, 147
diagnosis and treatment, 143–47, 156
enteric fever, 146
etiology of fever, 140–43, 141–42t, 156
group B streptococcus disease, 144
health systems approaches to, 148–54
herpes simplex virus, 143–44
Integrated Community Case Management (iCCM) and. See Integrated Community Case Management
integrated management of childhood illness. See Integrated Management of Childhood Illness
malaria, 147. See also malaria
diagnostic tools for, 147–48
management of, 150–52
meningitis, 143
most common presenting symptoms, 137, 138–39t
newborns, 143
overview, 137–40
respiratory and other bacterial illnesses, 148
sepsis, 143
urinary tract infections (UTIs), 144
viral exanthems, 145–46
female genital mutilation (FGM), 25, 39–40
  consequences of, 40
  measurement for study of, 39–40
  prevalence of, 40, 41–42
Ferguson, E., 211
fertility rates, 4, 4m. See also family planning
  child mortality and, 6, 75
  continuum-of-care approach and, 304, 308
  family planning and, 96, 97, 98f
  health consequences of high fertility, 96–97
  maternal mortality and, 97
fetal movement counting, 126
fetal shoulder manipulation, 122
financial incentives to improve health, 233. See also
  conditional cash transfers
financial risk protection, 15, 19, 352, 353f,
  354–55, 357–58
Firth, S., 289
Fischer Walker, C. L., 178, 324
Fisher, J., 60
Flenady, V., 76
folic acid, 1, 8, 10, 124f, 253, 326
Food Aid Quality Review, 211
food-insecure populations, 211
food-secure populations, 210–11
freedom, concept of, 63
Fretheim, A., 291
full-income methods, 16, 304

G
Gabrysch, S., 65
The Gambia
  diarrheal diseases in, 166, 167, 170
  Hib in, 193
  Integrated Management of Neonatal and Childhood
    Illness (IMNCI) in, 151
  pneumonia in, 145
  postpartum vaginal or uterine prolapse in, 60
  stunting and height-for-age in, 167
Ganatra, H. A., 143
García-Moreno, C., 37
Garner, P., 293
Gavi (Global Vaccine Alliance), 14, 146, 178, 188–89f,
  189, 192f, 199, 251, 319
  new and underutilized vaccines supported by,
    192–93, 325, 356
GBS (group B streptococcus), 129, 144
gender-based violence, 43n1. See also violence
  against women
Ghana
  abortion services in, 106
  adolescent-friendly contraceptive services in, 105
  Catalytic Initiative in, 154
childbirth interventions recommended in, 273–74
  costs of health care in, 338
  family planning in, 102
  Integrated Community Case Management (iCCM)
    in, 153, 154
  stillbirth data from, 76, 78, 78t
Giardia infection, 167
Gillespie, D., 96
Global Financing Facility to Advance Women’s and
  Children’s Health, 313
Global Fund to Fight AIDS, Tuberculosis and
  Malaria, 140
global initiatives
  for family planning, 99–100
  for vaccines. See Gavi; vaccines
Global Polio Eradication Initiative, 191
Global Strategy for Women’s and Children’s Health
  (UN Secretary-General), 2, 19, 52
Global Symposium on Health Systems Research
  (Beijing 2012), 345
Global Vaccine Alliance. See Gavi
Goldie, S. J., 321
Grantham-McGregor, S., 8, 254
Griffiths Mental Development Scales, 242
group B streptococcus (GBS), 129, 144
group sessions in stimulation programs, 250b
Guatemala, stunting and height-for-age in, 88
Gunasekera, P., 60
Gurman, T. A., 104
Guttmacher Institute, 17
Gyles, C. L., 320

H
H. pylori infection, 167
Haemophilus influenzae Type b (Hib) vaccine,
  81, 193, 325
Haines, A., 19
Haiti, cholera in, 197
Hammitt, J., 307
handwashing, 167, 174–75, 251, 252, 324
Harner-Jay, C. M., 103
health outcomes, 287–88, 287t
health workers/professionals
  abortion services, 106–7
  community-based health workers (CHWs).
    See community-based interventions
cost-effectiveness of training, 321
handwashing by, 175
maternal mortality and morbidity and, 65
midwives. See midwives
newborn resuscitation training, 128, 151
number of nurses and midwives per 1,000
  people, 286
number of physicians per 1,000 people, 286
Pakistan’s lady health worker program, 252b, 267b
performance-based rewards to, 292
shortage of, 2
task shifting, 18–19, 288–89, 327
violence against women, assistance for, 108
height-for-age. See stunting
Heise, L., 37
helminths, 267–69
heparin, use of, 126
hepatitis B vaccines, 188b, 192–93, 325
herpes simplex virus (HSV-2), 143–44
high-income countries (HICs)
  breastfeeding and early child development in, 249
  child mortality (under five) in, 72, 73–74t, 79, 80f, 81
  Japanese encephalitis (JE) vaccine in, 195
  postpartum hemorrhage in, 58
  stillbirth in, 77, 77t, 81
  unintended pregnancy in, 26–27, 27t
  unsafe abortions in, 30t
HIV/AIDS
  burden of disease, 32, 35
  child mortality (under five) and, 78
  community-based interventions, 269
  condom use and, 105
  drug treatment, 125
  funding for, 319
  Hib and, 193
  identification of children with, 150
  malnutrition and, 215, 219
  mass media to educate about, 104
  maternal morbidity and, 61
  maternal mortality and, 6, 55, 55b
  violence against women and, 4–5, 39
  wasting and, 208
Hoddinott, J., 326
home-based care, 15, 327
  community-based interventions, 264–65, 265–66t
India
  Accredited Social Health Activists, 101
  adolescent-friendly contraceptive services in, 105
  benefit-cost ratio in, 311, 314
  checklists, use of, 293
  Chiranjeevi Yojana program, 291
  community-based interventions in, 270. See also below: universal home-based neonatal care package in
  cost-effectiveness of, 277
  perinatal packages, 151, 265
  women’s empowerment, 273
  contraceptive use in, 97, 100f
  diarrheal diseases in, 170, 178
  diphtheria in, 190
  District Level Household Survey, 335
  DTP vaccine in, 197
  fertility rates and reduced child mortality in, 300
  fever in children under age five years in, 140
  home visits and reduction in newborn deaths in, 265
  Integrated Management of Neonatal and Childhood Illness (IMNCI) in, 150
  malnutrition and wasting in, 207, 215
  maternal depression’s effect on child development in, 248
  maternal mortality, disproportionate burden in, 53
  newborn, infant, and child mortality (under five) in, 78–79, 335, 336f
  pregnancy-related infection in, 58–59
  stillbirth data from, 76, 78, 78t

Hunger. See malnutrition
Hussain, R., 26
hygiene. See water, sanitation, and hygiene
hypertensive disease, 6, 57–58
  antihypertensive therapy, 120
Index

stunting and height-for-age in, 87
Tamil Nadu Integrated Nutrition Program, 270
teenage pregnancy in, 28
universal home-based neonatal care package in, 15–16, 335–44
accredited social health activists (ASHAs), 336, 337b, 339, 342
analysis, 341–42
anganwadi workers, 337b
auxiliary nurse midwives (ANMs), 337b
community health workers, 337b
data and methods, 338–39
intervention and treatment data, 339
Janani Suraksha Yojana (Safe Motherhood Scheme), 341, 343n6
methods, 339–40
overview, 335–36
priority-setting methodologies, 336–38
results of study, 340–41, 341f, 341t
vaccine costs in, 197
wasting in, 91b
Indonesia, mobile technology in, 274
infant and young child feeding (IYCF) guidelines, 225, 226f, 235–36, 326
infants. See neonatal interventions; neonatal mortality; newborns
infections. See also febrile children
in children with SAM, 13t, 215
early child development and, 246, 255
maternal infections, treatment of, 125
pregnancy-related infection, 58–59, 59b
subclinical, 167
transmitted by ground contamination, mosquitoes, and flies, 251–52
infertility, involuntary, 4, 35–37, 36–37t
definition and measurement, 35
influenza vaccines, 189b, 196
information and communication technologies, 102
innovations to expand access and improve health care quality, 2, 18–19, 285–98
checklists, use of, 18, 293
community mobilization and community health workers, 290
conditional cash transfers (CCTs), 19, 290–91
continuous quality improvement, 293
contraception, need for, 288
cost-effectiveness of, 293–94
expanding coverage and improving quality of care, 289–93
health outcomes, 287–88, 287t
immunizations, 288
landscape analysis of indicators, 285–88
measurement and accreditation, 292
performance-based financing, 291, 292–93
process of health care service delivery, 286–87
service delivery platforms, 286
task-shifting approaches, 18–19, 288–89, 327
training and supportive supervision, 293
user fee removal, 290
vitamin A supplementation, 288
vouchers, 19, 291
insecticide-treated bednets, 125, 251, 267, 286, 303, 327
Institute for Healthcare Improvement, 293
Institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation (IHME), 146
Integrated Community Case Management (iCCM), 140, 148, 152–54, 266, 280n2
impact of, 154
quality and safety, 153
Integrated Global Action Plan for Prevention and Control of Pneumonia and Diarrhoea, 145
Integrated Management of Childhood Illness (IMCI), 130, 137, 140, 212, 266, 293, 339. See also World Health Organization
cost-effectiveness study of, 328
Multi-Country Evaluation, 301
Integrated Management of Neonatal and Childhood Illness (IMNCI), 150–52, 328
integrated preventive and therapeutic health interventions, xiv, 2, 16
community-based services as part of, 276, 276f.
See also community-based interventions
compelling case for, 19
in continuum of care, 301
cost of, 329
family planning and, 101
febrile children and, 152–54
malnutrition interventions and, 219–20
psychosocial stimulation and child nutrition, 251
intergenerational consequences
of health care economic shocks, 337
of violence against women, 39
International Child Development Committee, 8
International Classification of Diseases (ICD-10) on AIDS-related maternal death, 55b
on child mortality, 76
on maternal death, 51
on unsafe abortion, 54
International Code of Marketing of Breast-milk Substitutes, 235
International Conference on Human Rights, 96
International Conference on Population and Development (ICPD), 99
interventions, xiii, 8, 95–114
abortion. See abortion
contraceptives. See contraceptives

385
cost-effectiveness. See cost-effectiveness of interventions
demand-side, 19
diarrheal diseases, 169–77, 169b
everal childhood development and, 248–54
family planning, 95–103. See also family planning
India’s universal home-based neonatal care package, 339. See also India
maternal mortality and morbidity, 8–14, 115–36. See also maternal mortality and morbidity, interventions to reduce
scaling up. See scaling up
stunting, 225–39, See also stunting
supply-side, 18–19
violence against women. See violence against women
intimate partner violence (IPV), 4–6, 37, 108, 248. See also violence against women
microfinance initiative combined with gender training on, 321
intrapartum-related complications, 6
child mortality (under five) and, 78–79, 79t interventions, 126–28, 127t
intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR), 7, 8
causes of, 228
consequences of, 228–29
definition of, 227–28
everal childhood development and, 247
prevention of, 125–26, 229
intussusception, 194
in vitro fertilization, 36
iodine deficiency and interventions, 8, 245, 253, 326
Iran, Islamic Republic of
cost-effectiveness of family planning in, 103
maternal mortality reduction in, 53
iron supplementation, 231–32, 245, 253, 326
IYCF (infant and young child feeding) guidelines, 225, 226t, 235–36, 326

J
Jamaica
delayed mental development in, 247
psychosocial stimulation in, 254
stunting and height-for-age in, 87
Jamison, D. T., 352
Japanese encephalitis (JE) vaccine, 188b, 195
Jimenez Soto, E., 289
Jones, K. D. J., 215

K
Kahn, J. G., 327
kangaroo mother care, 81, 128
Kenya
adolescent-friendly contraceptive services in, 105
contraceptive use in, 98, 100f
diarrheal diseases in, 170
Integrated Community Case Management (iCCM) in, 153
integrated services for HIV, malaria, and diarrhea in, 327
mobile technology in, 274
pneumonia in, 145
TRAction Project in, 64
Khan, A., 103
Khan, A. A., 103
Kirby, D., 104
Kruk, M. E., 292
Kumar, V., 336
Kuwait, stunting and height-for-age in, 87
kwashiorkor, 206, 216

L
Lagarde, M., 19
Lancet Commission on Investing in Health, 304
Lao People’s Democratic Republic, maternal mortality reduction in, 53
Latin America and the Caribbean. See also specific countries
cash transfer programs in, 290
early child development, 254
chikungunya in, 147
child mortality (under five) in, 72–75, 73–74t, 80f
health care service delivery in, 286–87, 287t
maternal mortality, disproportionate burden in, 53, 55, 65
number of hospital beds per 1,000 people in, 286
number of nurses, midwives, and physicians per 1,000 people in, 286
stunting and height-for-age in, 7, 86, 87–88f
teenage pregnancy in, 28
unintended pregnancy in, 27–28
unsafe abortion in, 29
Laxminarayan, R., 352
legal restrictions
on abortion, 106
on adolescents, 104
Lehmann, U., 277
Lenters, L. M., 209–10, 211, 219
Leonard, K. L., 292
Lewin, S., 327
Liaqat, S., 293
Liberia, accredited hospitals in, 292
Liu, A., 279
Liu, L., 144
Lives Saved Tool (LiST), 8, 9b, 10, 178, 324, 330, 339, 346
London Summit on Family Planning (2012), 100
low- and middle-income countries (LMICs), 2.
See also specific diseases/conditions and interventions; specific regions and countries
accredited hospitals in, 292
benefit-cost ratio for interventions in, 16
child mortality (under five) in, 72–75, 73–74t, 80f, 263
cost of contraceptives in, 17
diarrheal diseases in, 164, 164f
family planning in, 95–96
maternal mortality, disproportionate burden in, 53, 115
stunting and height-for-age in, 88f
unintended pregnancy in, 27–28, 27t
unsafe abortions in, 29, 30–31t
low height-for-age. See stunting
low weight-for-height. See wasting

M
macronutrients, 244, 244f
Madagascar, contraception in, 101
magnesium sulphate, use of, 128
Maggie study, 120
malaria, 1
cerebral malaria, 246
child mortality (under five) and, 78–79, 79t
community-based interventions, 267
cost-effectiveness of interventions, 323–24
cost of scaling up interventions, 18
diagnostic tools for, 147–48
febrile children and, 137, 155
malnutrition and, 215
prevention strategies, 124t, 125, 140, 147, 148t
vaccines, 187, 196, 325
Malawi
Catalytic Initiative in, 154
community-based interventions in
  cost-effectiveness of, 277
  nutrition, 216
  women's groups, 290
malnutrition in, 215, 216
mobile technology in, 274
Malaysia, malaria in, 147
Maldives, maternal mortality reduction in, 53
Mali
Catalytic Initiative in, 154
pneumonia in, 145
malnutrition, 7–8, 205–23. See also stunting
anemia. See anemia
antibiotic treatment, 215–16
breastfeeding, 229–30
causes and consequences of, 207m, 207–8, 208t
challenges and future interventions, 233–34
commonly used, specially formulated foods for
  prevention and treatment of, 209, 209t
community-based interventions, 217, 233,
  235–36, 270
community management of acute malnutrition
  (CMAM), 212, 213–14, 217
complementary feeding, 230–31
cost-effectiveness of interventions, 326
costs of interventions, 216–17
definition of, 205–6
edematous acute, 216
enhancing study design and standardizing
  reporting, 217–19
environmental enteric dysfunction and, 168
evidence gaps, need to address, 217
  key priorities, 218b
financial incentives to counter, 233
food-insecure populations, 211
food-secure populations, 210–11
fortified blended flours (FBFs) and, 209
global acute malnutrition (GAM), 206
Global Nutrition Cluster decision-making tool, 210
height-for-age and. See stunting
hidden hunger, 205
HIV/AIDS and, 215, 219
implementation research and integrated
  programming, 219–20
inpatient treatment programs, 216–17
interventions, 13t, 232–36, 234–35t
intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR) and, 227–29
iodine deficiency, 8, 245, 253
iron, 231–32
lipid-based nutrient supplements (LNS), 209, 210,
  211, 220n4
management of, 210–12
maternal nutrition and fetal growth, 7, 8, 227–29
micronutrient supplementation, 229, 231–32
moderate acute malnutrition (MAM)
  consequences of, 207m, 207–8
  definition of, 205
  food-insecure populations, 211
  food-secure populations, 210–11
  management of, 210–12
  research priorities for, 218b
  risk factors for, 206
  strategies for prevention, 210
multiple micronutrient supplementation, 232
  prevention of, 208–10
  ready-to-use-foods (RUFs) and, 209
  risk factors and causes of, 206–7
  seasonal supplementation, 211–12
severe acute malnutrition (SAM)
  community management of, 326
complications in, 212–13, 212t
consequences of, 207
cost of scaling up treatment, 18
definition of, 205
follow-up phase, 214
infections in children with, 13t, 215
initial treatment phase, 214
interventions, 1, 14, 212–16
rehabilitation phase, 214
research priorities for, 217, 218b
risk factors for, 206–7
stunting as result of. See stunting
therapeutic foods for preventing, 208–9
UNICEF undernutrition framework, 206, 206f
vitamin A, 231. See also vitamin A
WASH strategies, 232–33
WHO’s 10-step program, 213, 213f, 214
zinc and. See zinc deficiencies
MAM (moderate acute malnutrition). See malnutrition
Mangham-Jefferies, L., 289, 320
marasmus, 206
Maredia, H., 267
Mariam, D. H., 292
Marie Stopes International, 102
Martorell, R., 231
maternal education, decline in child mortality associated with, 75–76
maternal mental health, 247, 255. See also depression
interventions, 253–54
maternal mortality and morbidity, 51–70
abortion and, 6, 29–31, 54, 57
broader determinants of, 61–65
fourth delay, newly identified, 63
health system factors, 64
individual risk factors, 61–63, 62t
intersectoral issues, 65
rights-based approach, 63–64
three delays model, 63, 64
cost-effectiveness of interventions, 15f, 129–30
deaths averted, 10f, 13, 14f, 352
decline in, 1, 65, 279–80n1, 300
definition of maternal death, 51
definition of maternal morbidity, 56
ecological studies of, 65
embolism as cause of death, 55
family planning rationale, 96
fertility rates and, 4, 5m, 97
global distribution of maternal death, 54–55
HIV/AIDS and, 6, 55b
indirect causes of death, 54, 65–66
interventions, 1, 8–14, 115–36. See also maternal mortality and morbidity, interventions to reduce
levels and trends, 6, 7f, 52–53, 116m
maternal death causes, 55
MDG 5a to reduce, 51, 115
medical causes of maternal death, 7f, 52b, 53–55
abortion, 29–31, 54
definitions of, 59b
ectopic pregnancy, 54
indirect causes, 54
obstructed labor, 54, 59b
medical causes of maternal morbidity, 56–61
abortion, 57. See also abortion
anemia, 59
definition of maternal morbidity, 56
definitions of, 59b
global burden of, 61
HIV/AIDS, 61. See also HIV/AIDS
hypertensive disease, 6, 57–58
incontinence, 60
obstetric fistula, 6, 60
obstetric hemorrhage, 6, 58
perceived morbidity, 56
postpartum depression, 60
postpartum vaginal or uterine prolapse, 60–61
pregnancy-related complications, 61
pregnancy-related infection, 58–59
principal diagnoses, 56–57, 57–58f
prolonged and obstructed labor, 6, 59, 59b
severity of conditions, 56, 58f
overview, 51–52
perceived morbidity, 56
quality of services, 64, 66
research studies of, 51–52
need for better data, 66
trends in maternal death, 55
underlying causes of maternal deaths, 52b
unintended pregnancy and, 28
violence against women and, 39
maternal mortality and morbidity, interventions to reduce, 1, 8–14, 115–36
active management of labor, 126–27
antenatal corticosteroids, 127
antibiotics, use of
cesarean delivery, 122–23
group B streptococcus (GBS), 129
neonatal sepsis, 129
preterm rupture of membranes, 128
anticonvulsant prophylaxis, 120
antihypertensive therapy, 120
antithrombotic agents, use of, 126
artery embolization, 118
aspirin as prophylactic, 119
breastfeeding, 128
calcium supplementation, 119
cesarean section, 121, 122–23
controlled cord traction, 118
cord clamping, early vs. late, 118
cord cleansing, 128–29
cost-effectiveness of, 15f, 129–30
cost of, 16f
deaths averted, 10f, 13, 14f, 352
diabetes treatment, 125
Doppler ultrasound, use of, 125–26
drug interventions, 118
early delivery options, 120
external cephalic version, 121
fetal monitoring during labor, 126
fetal movement counting, 126
fetal shoulder manipulation, 122
heparin, use of, 126
HIV drug treatment, 125
hygiene, 126
interventions in development, 119, 122, 129
intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR), 125–26
kangaroo mother care, 128
magnesium sulphate, use of, 128
malaria prevention strategies, 125
maternal infections, treatment of, 125
maternity waiting homes, 121
neonatal encephalopathy, 129
newborn care, 128
newborn resuscitation, 128
nonpneumatic antishock garment, 119
nutrition and supplementation, 124–25
obstructed labor, 121–22
prevention of, 121
prevention of, 121–22
overview, 115–16
partograph, use of, 126
postnatal care, 128–29
postpartum endometritis, 123
postpartum hemorrhage
prevention of, 116–18, 117f
treatment of, 118–19
postterm pregnancy, 126
pre eclampsia and eclampsia, 119–21
prevention of preeclampsia, 119
prevention of, 119–20
research programs on
obstructed labor, 122
postpartum hemorrhage, 119
preeclampsia and eclampsia, 120–21
stillbirth, 129
respiratory distress syndrome, management of, 129
routine antenatal care visits, 123
rupture of membranes, 123, 127–28
sepsis
neonatal, management of, 1, 129
prevention of, 122–23
treatment of, 123
stillbirths, 8–14, 123–29
antenatal interventions, 123–26
intrapartum interventions, 126–28
neonatal interventions, 128–29
surgical intervention, 119
symphysiotomy, 122
syphilis detection, 125
tetanus immunization, 125
training of birth attendants to give newborn resuscitation, 128
uterine massage, 118
uterine tamponade, 118
vacuum and forceps delivery, 121–22
vaginal application of antiseptics for cesarean delivery, 123
for vaginal delivery, 123
zinc supplementation, 125
maternity waiting homes, 121
Mazumder, S., 339
McAuliffe, E., 293
McCord, G. C., 279
MDGs. See Millennium Development Goals
measles, 79
vaccines, 188b, 191–92, 325
media
abortion information, 107
to reach adolescents on sexual and reproductive health issues, 104–5
“Meeting the Reproductive Health Challenge: Securing Contraceptives, and Condoms for HIV/AIDS Prevention” (Istanbul conference 2001), 100
Megiddo, I., 15
meningitis
child mortality (under five) and, 78–79, 79f
interventions, 143
cost of scaling up, 18
Meningitis Vaccine Project, 195
meningococcal meningitis serogroup A conjugate vaccine, 188b, 195, 325
Mexico
Cuidate program for sexual-risk reduction, 106
Oportunidades program, 103, 290
mHealth, 102
micronutrients, 229, 231, 244–45, 244f, 326. See also vitamin and mineral supplements
Middle East and North Africa. See also specific countries
child mortality (under five) in, 73–74t, 74, 80f
contraceptive use in, 97
female genital mutilation (FGM) in, 39–40
health care service delivery in, 286–87, 287f
number of hospital beds per 1,000 people in, 286
number of nurses, midwives, and physicians per 1,000 people in, 286
stunting and height-for-age in, 86–87, 87f, 88f
wasting in, 91b
midwives, 106, 286, 321, 328
auxiliary nurse midwives (ANMs) in India, 337b
mifepristone and misoprostol, 106, 107
Millennium Development Goals (MDGs), 1, 2, 6, 19, 99, 319, 330
MDG 4 (reduction of child mortality), 71, 72–73, 75, 178, 187, 266, 289, 300, 346
MDG 5 (improvement of maternal health), 289, 300
MDG 5a (reduction of maternal mortality), 51, 115, 266
MDG 5b (access to contraception), 51, 63
MDG 7 (improvements in water, sanitation, and hygiene), 146, 174
misoprostol, 117–18, 117f, 273, 289
Mliga, G. R., 292
mobile services
family planning and, 102
outreach clinics, 189, 327
mobile technology as part of community-based interventions, 274–75
moderate acute malnutrition (MAM).
See malnutrition
Mongolia, maternal mortality reduction in, 53
Moore, S. R., 166
Morocco, contraceptive use in, 97, 100f
Mozambique
Catalytic Initiative in, 154
malnutrition in, 215
Multi-Country Evaluation of the Integrated Management of Childhood Illness (IMCI), 301
Multi-country Study on Women's Health and Domestic Violence against Women, 38
Multiple Indicator Cluster Surveys (DHSs & UNICEF), 39–40, 85, 242
Myanmar, contraception in, 102
N
Nakhaee, N., 103
Nandi, A., 15
National Center for Health Statistics, 86
neonatal interventions, 8–14, 128–29
community-based interventions, 265–66, 270
neonatal encephalopathy, management of, 129
respiratory distress syndrome, management of, 129, 151, 266, 274
sepsis, management of, 1, 129
neonatal mortality, 1, 6, 115, 265. See also child mortality in India, 335, 336f
Nepal
abortion services in, 106, 107
community-based interventions in, 270
birth attendants, 273
cost-effectiveness of, 277
perinatal packages, 151
contraception in, 102
family planning in, 102
maternal morbidity in, 56
stunting and height-for-age in, 87
neurodevelopmental disabilities, 247
newborns
care, 128
febrile, 143
mortality. See child mortality; neonatal mortality resuscitation, 128
Nguyen, P., 231
Nicaragua
adolescent-friendly contraceptive services in, 105
quality improvement collaboration in, 294
Red de Proteccion Social, 103
Niger
Catalytic Initiative in, 154
malnutrition and wasting in, 91b, 211–12
stunting and height-for-age in, 87, 88
Nigeria
child mortality (under five) in, 78–79
cost-effectiveness of family planning in, 103
diphtheria-tetanus-pertussis vaccine in, 188b
DTP vaccine in, 197
fever in children under age five years in, 140
maternal mortality, disproportionate burden in, 53
vaccine costs in, 197
nonpneumatic antishock garment, 119
non-sexually transmitted reproductive infections, 32–35
bacterial vaginosis, 33–35, 34t
vulvovaginal candidiasis (VVC), 32–33, 33t
Nonvignon, J., 323
nutrition. See also folic acid; malnutrition; vitamin A; vitamin and mineral supplements
biofortification, 326, 329
cost deaths averted by scaling up, 235f
cost interventions, 232–36, 234–35f
cost-effectiveness of nutrition programs, 270, 271–72f
cost-effectiveness of interventions, 177, 326–27
costs of interventions, 328
diarrheal diseases and, 173
everal childhood development, 244–45, 244f, 249–51, 254–55
height-for-age and. See stunting
iron supplementation, 231–32
maternal mortality and morbidity, 124–25, 124t
maternal nutrition, 234–35t, 246–47
  interventions, 252–53
psychosocial stimulation integrated with child
  nutrition, 251
Nutrition Impact Model Study (NIMS), 85

O
obstetric fistula, 6, 60
obstetric hemorrhage. See postpartum hemorrhage
obstructed labor. See childbirth
official development assistance, 2
OneHealth Tool, 304, 304b, 307, 308
Onwujekwe, O., 103
open defecation, 176, 232
oral cholera vaccine, 188b, 197
oral rehydration salts, use of, 350
oral rehydration solutions (ORS), 169–70, 171, 173,
  179, 286–87, 324, 350
Ouagadougou Declaration (West Africa, 2011), 100
overweight, 7, 8
oxytocin, 116, 117t, 118, 273
Ozawa, S., 320

P
Paciorek, C. J., 85
Paczkowski, M., 292
Pakistan
child mortality (under five) in, 78–79
  community-based interventions in, 270
  home visits and reduction in newborn
  deaths, 265
  lady health worker program, 252b, 267b, 273
  perinatal packages, 151
  contraception in, 102
  DTP vaccine in, 197
Early Child Development Scale-Up Trial, 252b
family planning in, 102
  cost-effectiveness of, 103
handwashing in, 175
home visits and reduction in newborn
  deaths in, 336
Integrated Community Case Management (iCCM)
  in, 153, 154
maternal depression’s effect on child development
  in, 248
pneumonia in, 153
stillbirth data from, 76
Thinking Healthy program, 253
vaccine costs in, 197
wasting in, 207
Palmer, N., 19
Pan-American Health Organization’s revolving
  fund, 325
Papua New Guinea
  Integrated Management of Neonatal and Childhood
  Illness (IMNCI) in, 151
wasting in, 91b
parasite infestations, 267–68
partograph, use of, 126
Peabody, J. W., 18
pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), 34–35
performance-based financing, 18, 102, 291,
  292–93
perinatal morbidity and mortality
evidence-based policy making and interventions,
  124t, 127t
levels and trends, 6
pertussis immunization. See diphtheria, tetanus, and
  pertussis vaccines
Peru
diarrheal diseases in, 167, 170
  IMCI effectiveness in, 149
maternal depression’s effect on child
devolution in, 248
Philippines
  accredited hospitals in, 292
  Integrated Management of Neonatal and Childhood
  Illness (IMNCI) in, 151
  payment-for-performance incentives in,
  18, 292
physicians, 286. See also health workers/professionals
PID (pelvic inflammatory disease), 34–35
pneumococcal conjugate vaccines, 14, 15, 81, 188b,
pneumonia, 1
  antibiotics, use of, 348
  child mortality (under five) and, 79t
  in children under age of five, 6, 78
  community-based care, 266
  cost-effectiveness of interventions, 323, 353f
  cost of scaling up treatment, 18
  in Ethiopia, treatment and prevention, 345–61.
  See also Ethiopia
  universal public finance for pneumonia treatment,
  15
Pneumonia Etiology Research for Child Health
  project, 145
Polio Eradication and Endgame Strategic
  Plan 2013–2018, 191
polio vaccines, 188b, 191, 325
postnatal care, 128–29
postpartum depression, 60, 248
postpartum endometritis, 123
postpartum hemorrhage, 6, 58
definition of, 59b
prevention of, 116–18, 117t
treatment of, 118–19
postpartum vaginal or uterine prolapse, 60–61
poverty and the poor
diarrheal diseases interventions and, 178
financial risk protection for, 15. See also financial
risk protection
maternal mortality and morbidity of, 62t, 130
stunting and, 8, 92
unconditional cash transfers (UCTs) and, 290
vouchers for. See vouchers
wasting and, 207
preeclampsia and eclampsia, 119–21
definition of, 59b
prevention of preeclampsia, 119
treatment of, 119–20
pregnancy
anemia in, 59
complications related to, 61
ectopic pregnancy, 54
infection related to, 58–59
interventions, 11–12t
partner violence reported during, 5, 39
teens. See adolescents
unintended, 25–28
consequences of, 28
measurement approach for study of, 26
prevalence and incidence, 26–28, 27t
reasons for, 28
unsafe abortion. See abortion
preterm births, 1, 6, 28
African-American women and, 253
child mortality (under five) and, 78, 79t
early childhood development and, 247
maternal morbidity and mortality and, 127–28
primary health centers, 2, 9
interventions for maternal and child mortality and
morbidity, 8, 11–13t, 14
Prinjas, S., 328, 339
prolonged labor. See childbirth
psychosocial stimulation, 243–44, 244f, 248–49,
250b, 254
integrated with child nutrition, 251
Pakistan’s Early Child Development Scale-Up
Trial, 252b
Puett, C., 217
Q
quality of services
child mortality reduction and, 81
community-based care, 274
cost-effectiveness of, 293–94, 294t
innovations to improve, 291–93
Integrated Community Case Management (iCCM), 153
maternal mortality and morbidity and, 64, 66
supply-side interventions, 18
Quimbo, S. A., 292
R
rabies, 189b
Ramakrishnan, U., 231
referral systems, 275
reproductive, maternal, newborn, and child health
(RMNCH). See also childbirth; childhood
ilness; child mortality; maternal mortality and
morbidity; newborns; reproductive health
community-based care, 263–84. See also
community-based interventions
continuum-of-care approach, 2, 299–317. See also
continuum-of-care approach
cost-effectiveness, 14–16, 15f, 319–34. See also
cost-effectiveness of interventions
cost of, 2, 16t
delivery platforms, 2, 8, 11–13t. See also
community-based interventions;
hospitals; primary health centers
funding levels, 319
innovations to overcome weaknesses in services,
285–98. See also innovations to expand access
and improve health care quality
interventions. See interventions
levels and trends in indicators, 4–6
overview, xiii, 2
summary of major topics, 1–2
reproductive health
abortion. See abortion
burden of reproductive ill health, 25–50. See also
burden of disease
contraceptive services. See contraceptives
cost-effectiveness of interventions, 15f, 321, 323
cost of interventions, 16t, 17
delivery platforms, 11t
family planning. See family planning
funding for, 2
importance of, 1
interventions to improve, 10–13, 11t, 95–114
levels and trends in indicators, 4–5
unintended pregnancies, 4, 25–28
Reproductive Health Supplies Coalition, 100
research studies
on community-based interventions, 279
on early childhood development, 255
future research needs, 19, 155
on malnutrition, 218b, 219–20
on maternal mortality and morbidity, 51–52
on obstructed labor, 122
on postpartum hemorrhage, 119
on preeclampsia and eclampsia, 120–21
on stillbirth, 129
resilience-building, 105–6
respiratory and other bacterial illnesses, 144–45, 146t, 148
respiratory distress syndrome, management of, 129
results-based financing. See performance-based financing
rights-based approach
to family planning, 96
to maternal mortality and morbidity, 63–64
Rizvi, A., 326
Robberstad, B., 178
Robinson, L., 307
Roll Back Malaria Partnership, 140, 323
Ross, J., 97
rotavirus, 171–72
diarrhea and, 165, 350, 351t
vaccine, 81, 188b, 194, 350, 354–56
Routh, S., 327
rubella vaccine, 188b, 194–95, 325
rupture of membranes, 127–28
preterm and term prelabor, 123
rural areas
health centers, iCCM and, 154
home-based neonatal care (HBNC) package in rural India, 335–44. See also India
stunting and height-for-age in, 87–90, 88–89f, 90m, 91f
Rusa, L., 292
Rwanda
maternal mortality reduction in, 53
performance-based financing in, 18, 291
S
Sabin, L. L., 327
Safe Motherhood Initiative, 63, 130, 321, 329
Salam, R. A., 267
SAM (severe acute malnutrition). See malnutrition
Sanders, D., 277
sanitation. See water, sanitation, and hygiene
Sayana Press, 99
scaling up, 1
child mortality reduction, 81, 235f
community-based interventions, 275, 277–78
cost of, 16–17t, 16–18
India’s HBNC package, 338
of Integrated Community Case Management (iCCM), 155
interventions in maternal and newborn health and child health, 14, 130
Scaling-Up Nutrition initiative, 89
schistosomiasis, 267–68
Seamans, Y., 103
Sedgh, G., 26
sepsis
child mortality (under five) and, 78–79, 79t
febrile children, 143
maternal, 6, 122–23
neonatal, 1, 129
severe acute malnutrition (SAM). See malnutrition
sex education, 11t, 104
sexual abuse. See also violence against women
child sexual abuse, 38, 39
sexually transmitted infections (STIs), 5, 25, 32
Shigella infection, 165–69, 171, 172
sickle-cell disease, 146
Sierra Leone, contraception in, 102
Singh, P., 279
Singh, S., 26
Sino-implant (II), 99
Smith, M. I., 216
social and economic benefits, 16
of continuum-of-care approach, 304, 307–8, 312, 313
of contraception, 26
of family planning, 81
of immunization, 198–99
social costs and stigma
of infertility, 36
of open defecation, 176
of unsafe abortions, 32, 54
social factors for maternal mortality and morbidity, 62t
social franchising, 102
social marketing, 101–2
social networking, 107
South Africa
HIV/AIDS in, 150
microfinance initiative combined with gender training on intimate partner violence in, 321
pneumonia in, 145
South Asia
Aetiology of Neonatal Infection study in, 151
anemia in, 231, 244
chikungunya in, 147
childbirth interventions recommended in, 273
child mortality (under five) in, 6, 72–75, 73–74t, 79, 80f
community-base care, cost-effectiveness of, 276
cost-effectiveness of malaria interventions in, 323
diarrheal diseases in, 164, 164f, 246
eyear childhood development in, 243
Expanded Program on Immunization (EPI) in, 187
health care service delivery in, 286–87, 287t
infertility in, 36t
iodine deficiency in, 245
malnutrition in, 208, 230, 235
maternal depression’s effect on child
development in, 248
maternal mortality and morbidity in, 4m, 6
  disproportionate burden in, 54, 55
number of hospital beds per 1,000 people in, 286
number of nurses, midwives, and physicians per
  1,000 people in, 286
preterm infants and neurodevelopmental
disabilities in, 247
safe abortion technologies in, 106
stunting and height-for-age in, 86–88, 87–88f, 225
wasting in, 91b
South Sudan, wasting in, 91b
Souza, J. P., 291
Stein, C., 58
sterilization, 97, 102
stillbirths, 1, 8–14, 123–29
  antenatal interventions, 123–26
  cause of, 77–78, 77–78t
  child mortality including, 71, 75, 76, 115
  data sources, 72, 76
  interventions, 1, 8–14, 123–29
  intrapartum interventions, 126–28
  levels and trends, 6
  neonatal interventions, 128–29
  by regions, 77t
research needs on, 81
STIs (sexually transmitted infections), 5, 25, 32
Stover, J., 97
stunting, 7, 85–93
  by country, 89m
  Cryptosporidium infection and, 167
  environmental enteric dysfunction and, 168
  Giardia infection and, 167
  global trends, 86, 226m
  H. pylori infection and, 167
height correlated with mental development, 245
  height-for-age in 2011, 87–88
interventions, 225–39
  child malnutrition, 232–36, 234–35t
  complementary feeding, 230–31
  maternal malnutrition, 227–30, 228f, 234–35t
  micronutrient supplementation, 231–32
  WASH strategies, 232–33
malnutrition and, 225. See also malnutrition
methods of study, 85–86
overview, 85
priority setting and, 88–92
regional trends, 86–87, 87f, 91f
in rural areas, 87–90, 88–89f, 90m, 91f
in urban areas, 88, 88–89f, 90m, 91f
Sub-Saharan Africa. See also specific countries
  accredited hospitals in, 292
  anemia in, 231, 244
  chikungunya in, 147
  child mortality (under five) in, 6, 19, 72–75, 73–74t,
    78, 80f
  community-base care, cost-effectiveness of, 276
  condom use in, 105
  contraception in, 101
  cost-effectiveness of malaria interventions in, 323
  diarrheal diseases in, 164, 164f, 167, 246
  early childhood development in, 243
  Expanded Program on Immunization
    (EPI) in, 187
  febrile children in, 137
  fertility rates in, 4, 4m, 6, 19
  group B streptococcus (GBS) in, 144
  health care service delivery in, 286–87, 287t
  HIV mortality in, 6, 55
  infertility in, 36t
  iodine deficiency in, 245
  malaria vaccine in, 196
  maternal depression’s effect on child
development in, 248
  maternal mortality and morbidity in, 4
  6, 19, 279–80n1
  disproportionate burden in, 53–55, 263
  meningococcal meningitis serogroup A conjugate
    vaccine in, 195
  number of hospital beds per 1,000 people in, 286
  number of nurses, midwives, and physicians per
    1,000 people in, 286
  obstetric fistula in, 60
  pneumococcal conjugate vaccines in, 193
  preterm infants and neurodevelopmental
disabilities in, 247
  rubella vaccine in, 194
  safe abortion technologies in, 106
  stunting and height-for-age in, 86–88, 87–88f, 225
  teenage pregnancy in, 28
  trachoma in, 245
  unintended pregnancy in, 27–28
  unsafe abortion in, 29
  wasting in, 91b
Sudan
  community-based nutrition
    programs in, 216
  Expanded Program on Immunization
    (EPI) in, 187
  health care service delivery in, 286–87, 287t
  infant mortality in, 3
  infant mortality (under five) in, 6, 73–74
  infant mortality (under five, female) in, 73–74, 73–74f
  infant mortality (under five, male) in, 73–74, 73–74f
  maternal mortality and morbidity in, 4m, 6, 19,
    65, 279–80n1
  stunting and height-for-age in, 86–88, 87–88f, 225
  wasting in, 91b
  stillbirths, 1, 8–14, 123–29
  antenatal interventions, 123–26
  cause of, 77–78, 77–78t
  child mortality including, 71, 75, 76, 115
  data sources, 72, 76
  interventions, 1, 8–14, 123–29
  intrapartum interventions, 126–28
  levels and trends, 6
  neonatal interventions, 128–29
  by regions, 77t
  research needs on, 81
Sustainable Development Goals, 19, 51, 187, 314, 330
symphysiotomy, 122
syphilis detection and treatment, 5, 124f, 125

Tanzania
adolescent-friendly contraceptive services in, 105
IMCI effectiveness in, 149
Integrated Community Case Management (iCCM) in, 153
mobile technology in, 274
quality of care in, 292
TRAAction Project in, 64
training of health care providers in, 293
telemedicine, 107
tetanus immunization, 124t, 125, 191, 288. See also diphtheria, tetanus, and pertussis vaccines

Thailand
diarrheal diseases in, 166, 167
pneumonia in, 145
three delays model of maternal mortality and morbidity, 63, 64

Timor-Leste
maternal mortality reduction in, 53
stunting and height-for-age in, 88
wasting in, 91b

Tofail, F., 247
Tozan, Y., 323
trachoma, 245–46, 251
TRAAction Project in Kenya and Tanzania, 64
training and supportive supervision. See also health workers/professionals
birth attendants’ training for newborn resuscitation, 128
innovations to expand access and improve health care quality, 293
tropical enteropathy, 167
tuberculosis
Bacille Calmette-Guérin Vaccine, 189–90
community-based interventions, 270
malnutrition and, 215
Tufts Cost-Effectiveness Analysis Registry, 329
Tulane University and evaluation of Ethiopia’s community-based nutrition initiative, 270
Tunisia, stunting and height-for-age in, 87
Turkey, contraceptive use in, 98, 100f
typhoid vaccine, 325

Uganda
adolescent-friendly contraceptive services in, 105
cerebral malaria in, 246
early child development in, 254
IMCI effectiveness in, 149

United Nations
Children’s Fund. See UNICEF
Declaration on the Elimination of Violence against Women, 37
Every Woman Every Child, 100
on family planning spending, 95
Global Strategy for Women’s and Children’s Health, 2, 19, 52
Population Division (UNPD), 40, 52, 96
Population Fund, 52, 96, 101

United States, continuous quality improvement (CQI) in, 293
United States Agency for International Development (USAID), 101, 292, 293
universal health coverage, 19, 300, 345
University of York, 329
unsafe abortion. See abortion
urban areas, stunting and height-for-age in, 88, 88–89f, 90m, 91f
urgent care, 14
urinary tract infections (UTIs), 144
U.S. President’s Malaria Initiative, 140
user fee removal, 290
uterine massage, 118
uterine tamponade, 118

Vaccines, 13f, 14, 187–204. See also Gavi

Advanced Market Commitment, 188b
Bacille Calmette-Guérin Vaccine, 189–90
cost and cost-effectiveness, 197–98
cost-effectiveness of, 15f, 197–98, 198r, 324–26
diarrheal diseases, 171
diphtheria, tetanus, and pertussis, 188b, 189, 190–91, 324–25
direct social and economic benefits, 198–99
Expanded Program on Immunization (EPI), 14, 187, 189–92, 319, 329
Haemophilus influenzae Type b (Hib), 193
hepatitis B, 188b, 192–93, 325
indirect social and economic benefits, 199
influenza, 189b, 196
innovations to expand access and improve health care quality, 199, 288
Japanese encephalitis (JE), 188b, 195
malaria, 187, 188b, 196, 325
measles, 188b, 191–92, 325
meningococcal meningitis serogroup A conjugate vaccine, 188b, 195, 325
methods, 189
oral cholera vaccine, 188b, 197, 325
pneumococcal conjugate, 188b, 193–94, 325
polio, 188b, 191, 325
rabies, 189b
rotavirus, 188b, 194
rubella, 188b, 194–95, 325
timeliness of administration, 198
vaccine-preventable diseases, 189–97, 324–25
yellow fever, 188b, 195, 325
vacuum and forceps delivery, 121–22
vaginal application of antiseptics
for cesarean delivery, 123
for vaginal delivery, 123
value of life years saved (VLY), 307–8
verbal autopsies, 76, 81
Verguet, S., 327, 348, 352
Vietnam
community-based interventions, costs of, 279
contraception in, 102
immunizations in, 325
Integrated Community Case Management (iCCM) in, 153
maternal depression’s effect on child development in, 248
stunting and height-for-age in, 87
violence against women, 4–5, 25, 37–39
definitions and measurements, 37–38
health and other consequences, 39
interventions, 107–8
magnitude of the problem, 38, 38m, 64
viral exanthems, 145–46
Viscusi, W., 307
vitamin A
deficiency, 7, 8, 227
supplementation, 13t, 231, 288
vitamin and mineral supplements, 7, 13t, 229, 245, 288
vouchers, use of, 19, 102–3, 291
vulvovaginal candidiasis, 32–33, 33t

W
Wagner, K., 59
Walker, G. J. A., 60
Walker, S. P., 247
wasting, 7, 8, 89, 91b, 205. See also malnutrition
water, sanitation, and hygiene (WASH), 13t
community-led total sanitation, 176–77
cost of interventions, 329
diarrheal diseases and, 165, 167, 174
early childhood development and, 251
malnutrition and, 207, 219, 232–33
maternal mortality and morbidity and, 65, 126
Waters, D., 143
Webb, P., 209
weight. See overweight; wasting
well-child visits
immunizations at, 189
stimulation programs and, 250b
West Africa
anemia in, 59
Ouagadougou Declaration (2011) on family planning and reproductive health, 100
White, M. T., 320
WHO. See World Health Organization
whooping cough. See diphtheria, tetanus, and pertussis vaccines
World Bank, 52
Ethiopia’s community-based nutrition initiative, evaluation of, 270
Gavi (Vaccine Alliance). See Gavi
Joint Malnutrition data set, 208
World Development Indicators, 321
World Bank Malaria Booster Program, 140
World Health Assembly
on stunting, 85
on wasting, 91b
World Health Organization (WHO), 6
acute respiratory infections (ARIs) and, 144
antiretroviral therapy (ART) and, 125
artery embolization and, 118
breastfeeding until age six months and, 128, 220n2
calcium supplementation for pregnant women and, 124
childbirth interventions recommended by, 273
childbirth safety checklist, 18
Child Growth Standards, 225

chlorhexidine application to umbilical cord, 129

cholera vaccines, approval of, 197

Choosing Interventions that are Cost-Effective project, 329

complementary feeding guidelines, 230

esential newborn care, 128

Expanded Program on Immunization, 178

female genital mutilation (FGM) study, 40

fever treatment guidelines, 140, 148, 149

Gavi (Vaccine Alliance). See Gavi

Global Action Plan for Prevention and Control of Pneumonia, 145

Global Database on Child Growth and Malnutrition, 85

Global Health Estimates, 61, 96

Guidance Panel on Task Shifting, 18

health system building blocks, 64

hepatitis B vaccine recommendations, 193

infant and young child feeding (IYCF) guidelines, 225, 226, 235–36

infertility, definition and measurement of, 35–36

Integrated Management of Childhood Illness (IMCI), 130, 137, 145, 146, 148–50, 149f, 266

Japanese encephalitis (JE) vaccine recommendations, 195

Joint Malnutrition data set, 208

malaria vaccine recommendations, 147, 196

maternal morbidity study, 56

Maternal Morbidity Working Group, 56

maternal mortality study, 52

measle vaccine recommendations, 191

Multi-country Study on Women's Health and Domestic Violence against Women, 38, 119

nutrition guidelines, 216

oral rehydration solutions, recommendations for, 169

pneumonia guidelines, 145

polio vaccine recommendations, 191

preeclampsia and eclampsia prevention, 119

rotavirus recommendations, 194

safe abortion technologies, 106

SAFE (surgery, antibiotics, facial cleanliness, and environmental improvements) strategy for trachoma elimination, 251

Special Programme for Research and Training in Tropical Diseases, 152

Strategic Advisory Group of Experts on

Immunization and Malaria Policy Advisory Committee, 188b, 196

10-step malnutrition program, 214

universal health coverage and, 300, 345

unsafe abortion

definition of, 28

indirect approach to study of, 29, 31

uterine massage, 118

violence against women

clinical and policy guidelines, 108

estimates on, 38

WHO/CHOICE model, 276, 329

WHO/PRE-EMPT Calcium in Pre-eclampsia (CAP), 120

World Health Report (2010), 342

Young Infants Study Group and Young Infants Clinical Signs Study Group, 143

World Report on Disability (WHO & World Bank), 36

worm and parasite infestations, 267–68

yellow fever vaccine, 188b, 195, 325

Yemen

female genital mutilation (FGM) in, 39–40

stunting and height-for-age in, 88

teenage pregnancy in, 28

youth centers, 105

Z

Zaidi, A. K. M., 143

Zambia

accredited hospitals in, 292

child health services, costs of, 328

community-based interventions in, 266

Lufwanyama Neonatal Survival Project, 277

nutrition, 217

Integrated Community Case Management (iCCM) in, 153, 154

malnutrition in, 215

maternal mortality and morbidity in, 65

pneumonia in, 145

training of birth attendants to administer neonatal resuscitation in, 151

Zimbabwe

adolescent-friendly contraceptive services in, 105

cash transfers in, 290

cholera in, 197

contraceptive use in, 97, 100f

zinc deficiencies, 7, 8, 173, 227, 231

diarrheal diseases and, 169, 173–74, 324

supplementation, 13t, 125
The World Bank Group is committed to reducing its environmental footprint. In support of this commitment, the Publishing and Knowledge Division leverages electronic publishing options and print-on-demand technology, which is located in regional hubs worldwide. Together, these initiatives enable print runs to be lowered and shipping distances decreased, resulting in reduced paper consumption, chemical use, greenhouse gas emissions, and waste.

The Publishing and Knowledge Division follows the recommended standards for paper use set by the Green Press Initiative. The majority of our books are printed on Forest Stewardship Council (FSC)–certified paper, with nearly all containing 50–100 percent recycled content. The recycled fiber in our book paper is either unbleached or bleached using totally chlorine-free (TCF), processed chlorine-free (PCF), or enhanced elemental chlorine-free (EECF) processes.

More information about the Bank’s environmental philosophy can be found at http://www.worldbank.org/corporateresponsibility.
About this Series: From its inception, the Disease Control Priorities series has focused attention on delivering effective health interventions that can result in dramatic reductions in mortality and disability at relatively modest cost. The approach has been multidisciplinary, and the recommendations have been evidence-based, scalable, and adaptable in multiple settings. Better and more equitable health care is the shared responsibility of governments and international agencies, public and private sectors, and societies and individuals, and all of these partners have been involved in the development of the series.

Disease Control Priorities, third edition (DCP3) builds on the foundation and analyses of the first and second editions (DCP1 and DCP2) to further inform program design and resource allocation at the global and country levels by providing an up-to-date comprehensive review of the effectiveness of priority health interventions. In addition, DCP3 presents systematic and comparable economic evaluations of selected interventions, packages, delivery platforms, and policies based on newly developed economic methods.

DCP3 presents its findings in nine individual volumes addressed to specific audiences. The volumes are structured around packages of conceptually related interventions, including those for maternal and child health, cardiovascular disease, infectious disease, cancer, and surgery. The volumes of DCP3 will constitute an essential resource for countries as they consider how best to improve health care, as well as for the global health policy community, technical specialists, and students.

About this Volume: Reproductive, Maternal, Newborn, and Child Health (RMNCH) addresses conditions along the reproductive health continuum, analyzing interventions that support healthy lives from adolescence, pregnancy care and delivery, until age five. This volume assesses the global burden from RMNCH conditions; highlights cost-effective interventions to address maternal and child mortality; and describes the economics and financing of care. Extensive systematic analyses indicate that scaling up interventions across the continuum can reduce maternal, neonatal, and child deaths in low- and middle-income countries. They further suggest that investing in quality childbirth care and family planning can lead to quadruple returns on investment by reducing maternal and neonatal mortality as well as stillbirths and disability.